

8/2020

Outdoor Living ► Patio awnings

# Patio awnings

Technical data

***Der SonnenLichtManager***





#### **Technical data, valid from 01.04.2020**

The publication of this document supersedes all previous corresponding documents. Our general terms and conditions (GTC) can be viewed and downloaded on our homepage at <http://www.warema.de/agb>.

We will gladly provide our information in printed form. Please note that in the event of updates, the online version is binding. Particular care was taken in producing the text and graphics in this documentation. In spite of this, we cannot accept liability for any existing (printing) errors, mistakes or the consequences thereof. Changes and deviations from the technical specifications and product presentations are possible as a result of the individual structural conditions.

Our products are individual or made-to-measure items and therefore cannot be exchanged or returned.

#### **Safety instructions**

Please see detailed information in the technical data or in the installation and operating instructions.

#### **Legal details**

WAREMA International GmbH  
Dillberg 14  
97828 Marktheidenfeld  
Germany

WAREMA and the WAREMA logo are trademarks of WAREMA Renkhoff SE. Other logos used here are brands or trademarks of their respective owners.

© WAREMA Renkhoff SE

# Contents

|                                                        |     |                           |
|--------------------------------------------------------|-----|---------------------------|
| Interesting facts about planning.....                  | 11  | Planning                  |
| General information.....                               | 16  |                           |
| Articulated arm/cassette awnings Terrea.....           | 17  | Terrea                    |
| Cassette awnings Terrea.....                           | 19  |                           |
| Articulated arm awnings Terrea, open.....              | 77  |                           |
| Articulated arm awnings Terrea , half open.....        | 111 |                           |
| Details.....                                           | 125 |                           |
| Pergola awnings Perea.....                             | 127 | Perea                     |
| Pergola awning Perea P40.....                          | 128 |                           |
| Pergola awning Perea P60.....                          | 144 |                           |
| Pergola awning Perea P70.....                          | 158 |                           |
| Patio side screens.....                                | 171 | Patio side screens        |
| Patio side screen 390.....                             | 172 |                           |
| Conservatory awnings Climara.....                      | 181 | Climara                   |
| Conservatory awnings Climara, under glass.....         | 183 |                           |
| Conservatory awnings Climara, on glass.....            | 211 |                           |
| Supplementary accessories.....                         | 257 |                           |
| WMS Wind sensor and WMS sensor system.....             | 258 |                           |
| Valance roller blind.....                              | 262 | Supplementary accessories |
| Lighting.....                                          | 274 |                           |
| Radiant heater.....                                    | 282 |                           |
| Other supplementary accessories.....                   | 286 |                           |
| Front-mounted awnings with easyZIP guidance.....       | 298 |                           |
| Multicube set.....                                     | 302 | Components                |
| Patio frame.....                                       | 304 |                           |
| Printed fabrics.....                                   | 316 |                           |
| Components.....                                        | 319 |                           |
| Guide rail bracket - Conservatory awnings Climara..... | 320 |                           |
| Awning collection.....                                 | 356 | Drive variants            |
| Fabrics.....                                           | 360 |                           |
| Valance.....                                           | 365 |                           |
| Drive variants.....                                    | 367 | Standards                 |
| Motor.....                                             | 368 |                           |
| Manual operation.....                                  | 400 |                           |
| Standards.....                                         | 403 |                           |



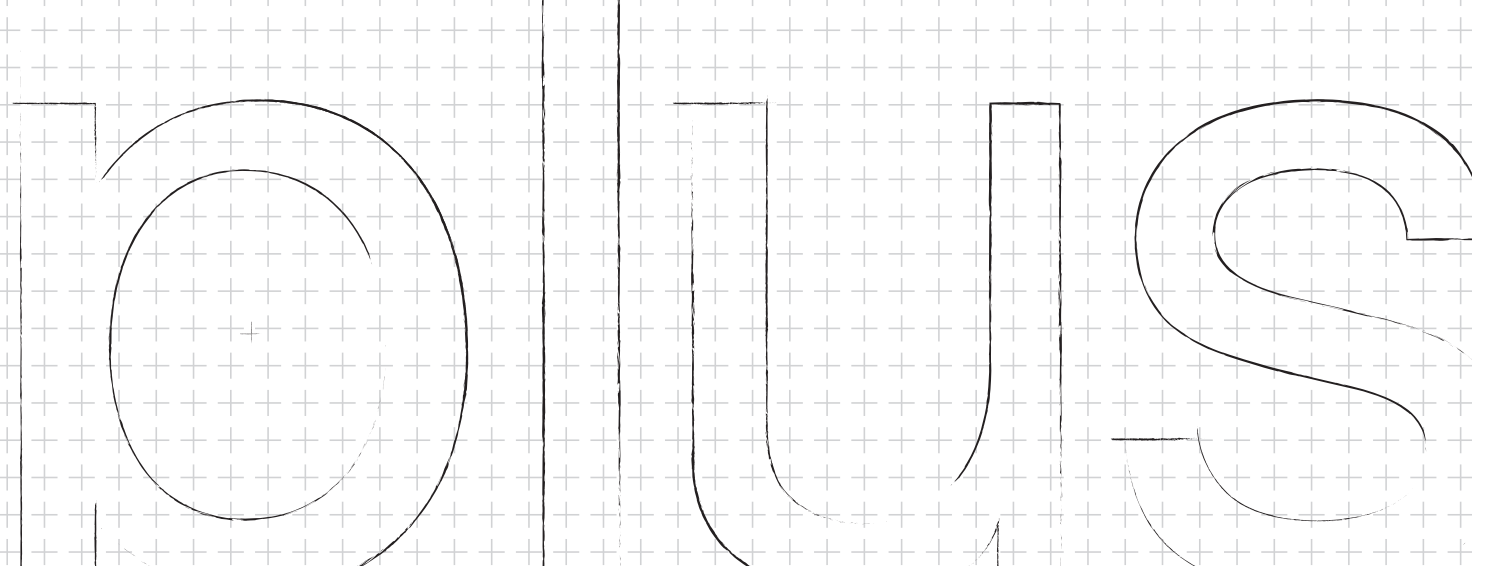


## New structure and contents

### Technical data for patio awnings

- New table of contents (consistent for all product segments)
- New chapters such as
  - Interesting facts for planning
  - Supplementary accessories: Includes lighting, valance roller blinds, radiant heaters as well as fixed frames and balcony fabrics.
  - Components: Fabrics and guide rail brackets for conservatory awnings Climara can be found here.
  - Drive variants: Includes motors and manual operations.
  - Standards: Details on rain classes, wind resistance and general information can be found here.
- Landing and overview pages in every chapter or for each awning type
- General coloured display format
- Uniform table presentations
- New drawing formats and drawing appearance
- Information about (standard) fixing materials can be found online in the Fastener Assistant
- Control systems can be found in Technical data/Price list





## Interesting facts about planning TechDataPLUS – more information

In the new, digital documents, TechDataPLUS, you will find information that is not provided in this printed technical data. A separate TechDataPLUS is available for each product chapter.

### In TechDataPLUS, you will find

- Interesting facts planning and standards
- Even more mounting examples
- More product variants
- More supplementary accessories
- And more detailed technical data

### The following TechDataPLUS are available for each chapter:

- Articulated arm/cassette awnings Terrea  
+ <https://docs.warema.com/1.1444.4>
- Pergola awnings Perea  
+ <https://docs.warema.com/1.1445.5>
- Patio side screens  
+ <https://docs.warema.com/1.1446.6>
- Conservatory awnings Climara  
+ <https://docs.warema.com/1.1447.7>
- Horizontal awnings  
+ <https://docs.warema.com/1.1621.1>

### There is also a TechDataPLUS for each of the following:

- Supplementary accessories  
+ <https://docs.warema.com/1.1448.8>
- Components  
+ <https://docs.warema.com/1.1449.9>
- Drive variants  
+ <https://docs.warema.com/1.1450.1>

You can also easily reach the relevant TechDataPLUS via the "Further information" info box at the end of each chapter. You can click on the corresponding link there.

You can find the TechDataPLUS documents in the sales document as well as on the WAREMA website + [www.warema.com](http://www.warema.com)



## News / Highlights

# Innovative products from the SunLight Manager



### Uniform LED lighting **HIGHLIGHT\***

For even more atmospheric evenings outdoors, there is the reworked LED lighting variant for WAREMA patio awnings. With this, the individual LEDs are positioned close enough to each other that a uniform harmonious light band is created, without annoying spots of light. The lighting can be dimmed in stages with the integrated WMS control - for the right ambience at any time.







## Vertical shading for the K50

Thanks to the new valance roller blind, the cassette awning K50 now also has the option of flexible vertical shading. This innovation is perfectly configured for the cubic design of the awning and can be conveniently operated by crank. Thus, optimal protection against low-lying sun, light evening breezes and from your neighbour's prying eyes is guaranteed.



## Elegant cubic radiant heater **NEW!**

Flat, chic and optimally adapted for cubic shapes, the new radiant heater variants creates optical accents and can, just like existing models, be ideally combined with all patio awnings and slat roofs from WAREMA. As the housing is powder-coated, it can be easily matched to the awning frame colour.



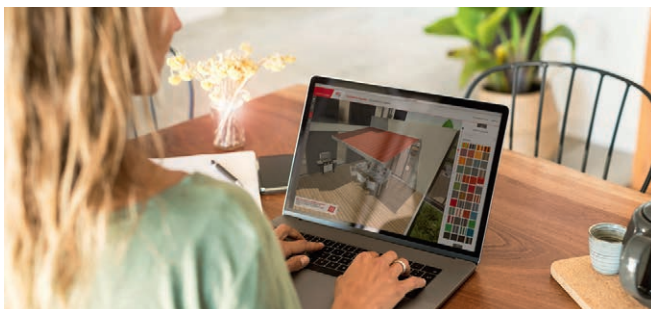
## New design options for the K60 **HIGHLIGHT\***

As a true all-rounder, the Terrea K60 now offers more attractive design options. With the new cover panel for the adjustable console, the technology is skilfully and invisibly concealed. This means the patio awning is an even more elegant addition to the environment. Additionally, the new wall connection profile creates a harmonious connection between the awning and the building.



## Multicube set

Anything but ordinary: With the new multicube set, WAREMA is offering an aesthetic and practical solution for pergola awnings. The poles of the pergola awnings are weighted with gabions as an alternative to conventional screw connections, thus providing the required stability. At the same time, they are perfect as trendy seating surfaces and are available in anthracite, grey and dark brown, depending on your design needs.



## Interactive tools for planning and purchasing

There are many interactive tools available for free to aid in the optimal planning, consultation and purchasing of WAREMA sun shading systems: from the Designer App available in the App Store and the live visualisation via the WAREMA Collection Assistant at [www.awnings-collection.com](http://www.awnings-collection.com) to the WAREMA Configurator ([www.warema.com/configuration](http://www.warema.com/configuration)), an individual support solution is guaranteed for every project requirement.



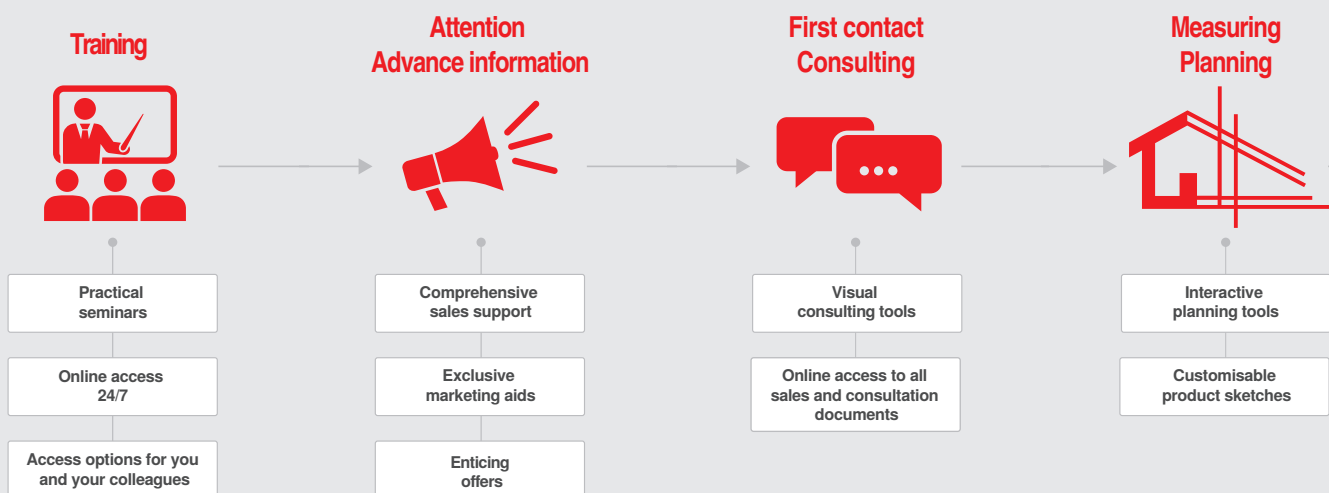
## Fully automatic control with the WMS sensor system **HIGHLIGHT\***

The conservatory awning Climara W20 and the pergola awning Perea P40 can now be equipped with a convenient WMS sensor system. This makes a fully automatic control possible according to brightness, precipitation and wind conditions. Emerging gusts are recorded on the awning itself - an additional wind sensor is not required. Another plus: The awning is conveniently operated via a WMS transmitter.





## The perfect planning and buying process with myWAREMA



# Let's get the digital ball rolling with the myWAREMA online platform

With our advantage platform, you can benefit from simple and secure digital applications which make your day-to-day business even more efficient. From order processing and price calculations to planning tools, practical seminars and marketing services, you can see everything at a glance at any time - no matter whether you're in the office or on a smartphone or tablet when you're out and about. Optimise your planning and buying process with myWAREMA. This is how you are sure to succeed in your digital sales revolution!

## Simply login for great turnover!

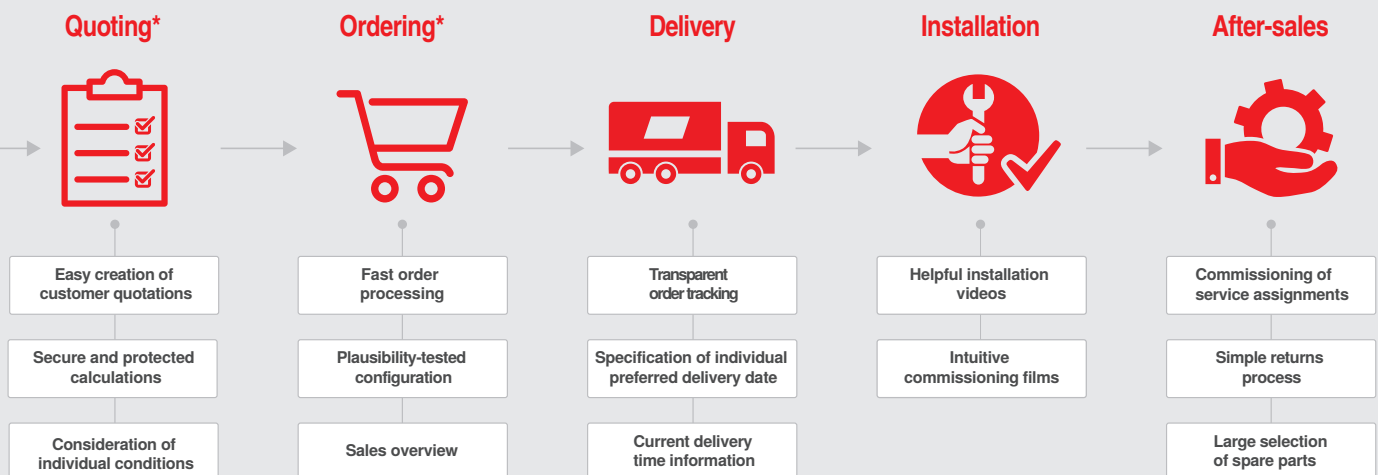
Request your personal access details today at [www.warema.com/mywarema](http://www.warema.com/mywarema) and see for yourself!

## Do you have questions?

Our expert team will be happy to help you:

☎ +49 9391 20-8080

✉ [my@warema.com](mailto:my@warema.com)



\*available optionally as system integration







# Contents

## Interesting facts about planning

|                                              |    |
|----------------------------------------------|----|
| General information.....                     | 16 |
| Manufacturing tolerances, patio awnings..... | 16 |
| Awning fabrics.....                          | 16 |

Planning

Terrea

Perea

Patio  
side screens

Climara

Supplementary  
accessories

Components

Drive  
variants

Standards

# The WAREMA Colour World

## Available for all powder-coated aluminium parts

Colour deviations are due to printing technology

Choose the perfect shade from over 250 attractive powder colours for the powder-coated aluminium parts such as guide rails, cover panels, profiles or boxes. The clearly arranged categories Highlight, Variation and Individual optimise your process of consultation and help to find the right colour for the individual sun shading system quickly and easily. Coatings in colours different to those of the WAREMA Colour World available on request.

### Categories

#### Highlight

12 RAL and DB basic colours form the foundation of the WAREMA Colour World. We offer you selected standard colours, which satisfy all of the latest colour trends.

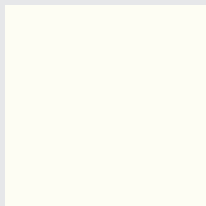
#### Variation

Make use of this opportunity to vary your design with a further 50 RAL basic colours and four surfaces. Any special colour concept can be realised.

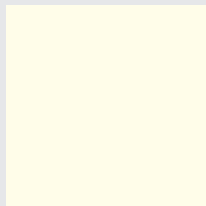
#### Individual

Over 200 additional colours complete the WAREMA Colour World and offer greater individuality. This means no wishes are left unfulfilled.

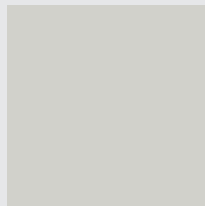
### Highlight Category



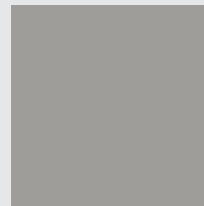
RAL 9016



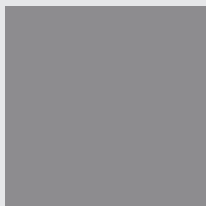
RAL 9010



RAL 7035



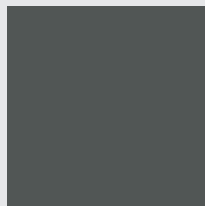
RAL 9006



RAL 9007



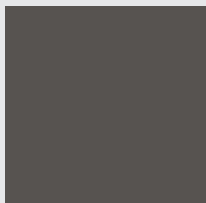
DB 702



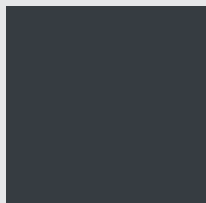
RAL 7012



RAL 7015



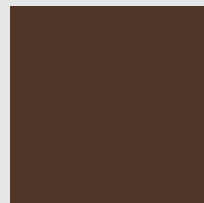
DB 703



RAL 7016



RAL 7021



RAL 8014

The displayed colours from the Highlight category form the basis of the WAREMA Colour World. The extended colour selection for the Variation and Individual categories can be found on the following page.



## Surface qualities

The various surfaces along with the comprehensive colour selection offer you the perfect opportunity to realise the individual wishes of customers. Choose from five surface qualities in order to perfectly optically adapt the gloss level and texture to the corresponding structural condition. The exceptional coating quality ensures longevity - independently tested by the German Quality Association for the Coating of Building Materials (GSB). The surface coating with chrome-free pretreatment is compliant with the directive GSB-AL 631. The aluminium parts are delivered in "GSB Sea-Proof" as standard.

You can find more information at [www.warema.com](http://www.warema.com)



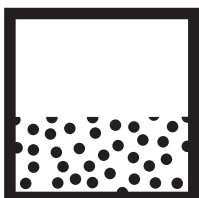
### Satin finish

Satin Finish is a slightly glossy surface with a smooth finish and optimal light and weather resistance.



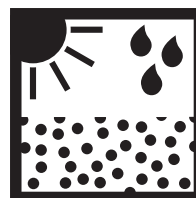
### Matt

A matt surface is distinguished by its smooth matt finish and optimal light and weather resistance.



### Fine texture

The fine text surface quality has striking effects and optimum light and weather resistance of the surface.



### Highly weather-resistant matt and fine texture

The highly weather-resistant surfaces in matt or fine texture are characterised by significantly improved weathering behaviour with regard to gloss retention, weathering, chalking and colour stability.



# The WAREMA Colour World

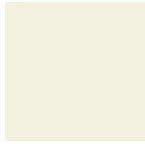
## Available for all powder-coated aluminium parts

Colour deviations are due to printing technology

### Variation Category



RAL 9003



RAL 9001



RAL 1015



RAL 1001



RAL 1019



RAL 7044



RAL 9002



RAL 7047



RAL 7038



RAL 7036



RAL 7004



RAL 7001



RAL 7040



RAL 7045



RAL 7042



RAL 7046



RAL 7037



RAL 7030



RAL 7039



RAL 7005



RAL 7043



RAL 7022



RAL 7024



RAL 7011



RAL 7031



RAL 5014



RAL 5007



RAL 5009



RAL 5010



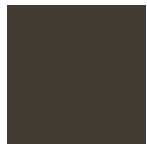
RAL 5002



RAL 5011



RAL 6005



RAL 6009



RAL 3000



RAL 3003



RAL 3004



RAL 3009



RAL 8001



RAL 8003



RAL 8007



RAL 8011



RAL 8016



RAL 8017



RAL 8019



RAL 8022



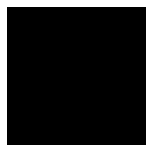
RAL 8077



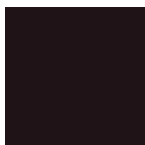
RAL 9011



RAL 9004



RAL 9005



RAL 9017

## Individual Category

|                                                                                                              |                                                                                                              |                                                                                                                |                                                                                                                         |                                                                                                                     |                                                                                                               |                                                                                                        |                                                                                                      |                                                                                                                 |                                                                                                           |                                                                                                           |                                                                                                   |                                                                                                                      |
|--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| <br>Trend Colour<br>(DM 05) | <br>Antique white<br>marble | <br>RAL 9018                  | <br>W 4914                             | <br>VEKA<br>Spectral<br>Light grey | <br>RAL 9006                 | <br>RAL 7004          | <br>RAL 9022        | <br>RAL 9007                  | <br>W 4915             | <br>RAL 9023           | <br>DB 701     | <br>VEKA<br>Spectral<br>Dark grey |
| <br>ALESTA<br>Grey          | <br>DB 704                  | <br>VEKA<br>Spectral<br>Brown | <br>Sparkling<br>iron effect<br>medium | <br>W 4916                         | <br>RAL 7010                 | <br>RAL 7048          | <br>WC 31           | <br>RAL 7023                  | <br>RAL 7033           | <br>RAL 7009           | <br>RAL 7003   | <br>WC 32                         |
| <br>RAL 7013                | <br>WC 33                   | <br>RAL 6014                  | <br>RAL 7329                           | <br>W 7329                         | <br>RAL 8019                 | <br>ALESTA<br>Brown   | <br>W 4918          | <br>W 4919                    | <br>RAL 8017           | <br>Rusted Iron<br>HWR | <br>RAL 8028   | <br>RAL 8025                      |
| <br>RAL 8008                | <br>RAL 8024                | <br>RAL 8003                  | <br>RAL 8002                           | <br>RAL 8015                       | <br>Rust Metal-<br>lic HWR   | <br>RAL 8001          | <br>RAL 1011        | <br>RAL 8023                  | <br>RAL 8004           | <br>RAL 8029           | <br>RAL 8012   | <br>Rust-Brown<br>Metallic        |
| <br>W 4922                  | <br>RAL 7006                | <br>RAL 8000                  | <br>RAL 1036                           | <br>RAL 7008                       | <br>RAL 1035                 | <br>RAL 7032          | <br>Sable BL<br>961 | <br>Beige<br>Metallic         | <br>Quartz 2<br>Satine | <br>Desert<br>Beige    | <br>RAL 1013   | <br>W 4800                        |
| <br>RAL 1014                | <br>RAL 1002                | <br>RAL 1024                  | <br>RAL 1027                           | <br>RAL 1005                       | <br>RAL 1012                 | <br>W 4912            | <br>RAL 1016        | <br>RAL 1018                  | <br>RAL 1023           | <br>RAL 1021           | <br>RAL 1032   | <br>RAL 1004                      |
| <br>RAL 1003                | <br>RAL 1017                | <br>RAL 1006                  | <br>RAL 1007                           | <br>RAL 1037                       | <br>RAL 1028                 | <br>RAL 1033          | <br>RAL 1034        | <br>RAL 2000                  | <br>RAL 2011           | <br>RAL 2003           | <br>RAL 2008   | <br>RAL 2009                      |
| <br>RAL 2004               | <br>RAL 2010               | <br>RAL 2001                 | <br>RAL 2012                          | <br>RAL 3022                      | <br>RAL 3012                | <br>RAL 2013         | <br>RAL 3033       | <br>RAL 3016                 | <br>RAL 2002          | <br>RAL 3020          | <br>RAL 3001  | <br>RAL 3002                     |
| <br>RAL 3013              | <br>RAL 3011              | <br>RAL 3032                | <br>RAL 3004                         | <br>W 3005                       | <br>RAL 3005               | <br>RAL 3007        | <br>RAL 3015      | <br>RAL 3014                | <br>RAL 3017         | <br>RAL 3018         | <br>RAL 3027 | <br>RAL 3031                    |
| <br>RAL 4002              | <br>RAL 4004              | <br>RAL 4007                | <br>W 4911                           | <br>RAL 4009                     | <br>RAL 4001               | <br>RAL 4011        | <br>RAL 4005      | <br>RAL 4003                | <br>RAL 4010         | <br>RAL 4006         | <br>RAL 4008 | <br>W 4913<br>(DM 04)           |
| <br>RAL 4012              | <br>RAL 5022              | <br>RAL 5013                | <br>RAL 5003                         | <br>RAL 5026                     | <br>RAL 5000               | <br>RAL 5007        | <br>RAL 5023      | <br>RAL 5014                | <br>RAL 7000         | <br>RAL 5024         | <br>RAL 5012 | <br>RAL 5015                    |
| <br>RAL 5005              | <br>RAL 5017              | <br>RAL 5019                | <br>RAL 5025                         | <br>RAL 5001                     | <br>W 4920                 | <br>RAL 5008        | <br>W 4917        | <br>RAL 5004                | <br>RAL 6027         | <br>RAL 6034         | <br>RAL 6033 | <br>RAL 5018                    |
| <br>RAL 5021              | <br>DB 502                | <br>RAL 5020                | <br>RAL 6004                         | <br>DB 603                       | <br>W 4921                 | <br>ALESTA<br>Green | <br>RAL 6005      | <br>Trend Colour<br>(DM 01) | <br>RAL 6028         | <br>RAL 6036         | <br>RAL 6026 | <br>RAL 6000                    |
| <br>RAL 6016              | <br>RAL 6029              | <br>RAL 6032                | <br>RAL 6024                         | <br>RAL 6019                     | <br>RAL 6021               | <br>RAL 6011        | <br>RAL 6035      | <br>RAL 6002                | <br>RAL 6001         | <br>RAL 6017         | <br>RAL 6018 | <br>RAL 6010                    |
| <br>RAL 6025              | <br>RAL 6013              | <br>RAL 7002                | <br>RAL 7034                         | <br>RAL 1020                     | <br>RAL 1000               | <br>RAL 6003        | <br>RAL 6020      | <br>RAL 6007                | <br>RAL 6012         | <br>RAL 7026         | <br>RAL 6006 | <br>RAL 6022                    |
| <br>RAL 6008              | <br>RAL 6015              | <br>WC 34                   | <br>Trend Colour<br>(DM 02)          | <br>Trend Colour<br>(DM 03)      | <br>P7 Iron<br>mica effect |                                                                                                        |                                                                                                      |                                                                                                                 |                                                                                                           |                                                                                                           |                                                                                                   |                                                                                                                      |



## Interesting facts about planning

### General information

### Manufacturing tolerances, patio awnings

Perfection is in the detail - no wonder, then, that WAREMA sees even the minor details as paramount: each product is manufactured with millimetre precision according to the customer's requirements. Please note that when manufacturing to this degree of precision, production-related deviations can occur:

| Manufacturing tolerances                    | Order width B in mm    | T in mm   | Order height H/length L in mm | T in mm  |
|---------------------------------------------|------------------------|-----------|-------------------------------|----------|
| Articulated arm and cassette awnings Terrea | $W \leq 6000$          | $\pm 5$   | All projections               | $\pm 40$ |
|                                             | $6000 < W \leq 12000$  | $\pm 10$  | All projections               | $\pm 40$ |
|                                             | $12000 < W \leq 13500$ | $\pm 12$  | All projections               | $\pm 40$ |
| Pergola awnings Perea                       | $W \leq 2000$          | $\pm 1.5$ | $H/L \leq 1500$               | $\pm 2$  |
|                                             | $2000 < W \leq 4000$   | $\pm 2$   | $1500 < H/L \leq 2500$        | $\pm 3$  |
|                                             | $W > 4000$             | $\pm 2.5$ | $H/L > 2500$                  | $\pm 5$  |
| Conservatory awnings Climara                | $W \leq 2000$          | $\pm 1.5$ | $L \leq 1500$                 | $\pm 2$  |
|                                             | $2000 < W \leq 4000$   | $\pm 2$   | $1500 < L \leq 2500$          | $\pm 3$  |
|                                             | $W > 4000$             | $\pm 2.5$ | $L > 2500$                    | $\pm 5$  |
| Horizontal awnings                          | $W \leq 4000$          | $\pm 5$   | $L \leq 1500$                 | $\pm 2$  |
|                                             | $W \leq 4000$          | $\pm 5$   | $1500 < L \leq 2500$          | $\pm 3$  |
|                                             | $W \leq 4000$          | $\pm 5$   | $2500 < L \leq 6000$          | $\pm 5$  |
|                                             | $W \leq 4000$          | $\pm 5$   | $6000 < L \leq 10000$         | $\pm 10$ |
| Fabrics                                     | $W \leq 12500$         | $\pm 10$  | All projections               | $\pm 10$ |

### Awning fabrics

Awning fabrics are high-performance products. Nevertheless, there are also limits to their perfection, set according to the current state-of-the-art technology and by the environmental protection requirements. Certain fabric characteristics such as wrinkles, chalk effect and waviness, which laypeople occasionally find fault with, may occur in spite of advanced production and processing technology and do not justify any complaints. For more information, please refer to the awning collection and the document "Regulation about the Evaluation of Finished Awning Fabrics" by the Industrieverband Technische Textilien - Rollladen - Sonnenschutz in Mönchengladbach, Germany.

# Contents

## Articulated arm/cassette awnings Terrea

|                                                 |     |
|-------------------------------------------------|-----|
| Cassette awnings Terrea.....                    | 19  |
| Cassette awning Terrea 550.....                 | 20  |
| Cassette awning Terrea 580.....                 | 30  |
| Cassette awning Terrea K50.....                 | 42  |
| Cassette awning Terrea K60.....                 | 52  |
| Cassette awning Terrea K70.....                 | 68  |
| Articulated arm awnings Terrea, open.....       | 77  |
| Articulated arm awning Terrea 530.....          | 78  |
| Articulated arm awning Terrea 700S.....         | 88  |
| Articulated arm awning Terrea G60.....          | 98  |
| Articulated arm awnings Terrea , half open..... | 111 |
| Articulated arm awning Terrea H60.....          | 112 |
| Details.....                                    | 125 |

Planning

Terrea

Perea

Patio  
side screens

Climara

Supplementary  
accessories

Components

Drive  
variants

Standards





# Cassette awnings Terrea

|                                 |    |
|---------------------------------|----|
| Cassette awning Terrea 550..... | 20 |
| Cassette awning Terrea 580..... | 30 |
| Cassette awning Terrea K50..... | 42 |
| Cassette awning Terrea K60..... | 52 |
| Cassette awning Terrea K70..... | 68 |

Planning

Terrea

Perea

Patio  
side screens

Climara

Supplementary  
accessories

Components

Drive  
variants

Standards



## Cassette awnings Terrea

### Cassette awning Terrea 550

#### Attractive

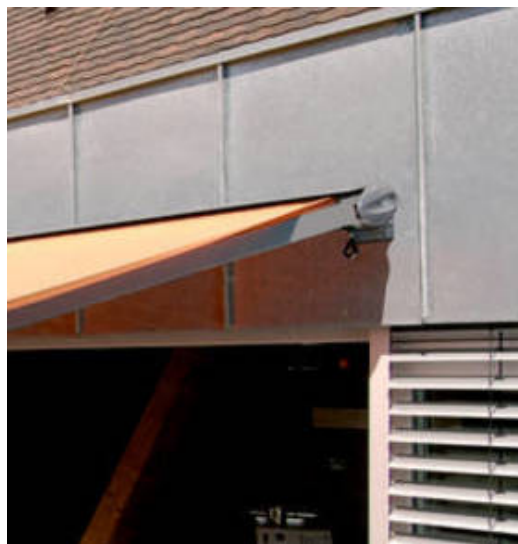
The small cassette with a perfectly fitting front rail can be harmoniously integrated into any facade.

#### Protected

The cassette reliably protects the fabric from rain and dirt.

#### Compact

Despite its compact and flat construction, the cassette awning Terrea 550 offers a full range of functions.



#### Construction limit values

|                     |         |
|---------------------|---------|
| Maximum order width | 4500 mm |
| Maximum projection  | 2500 mm |

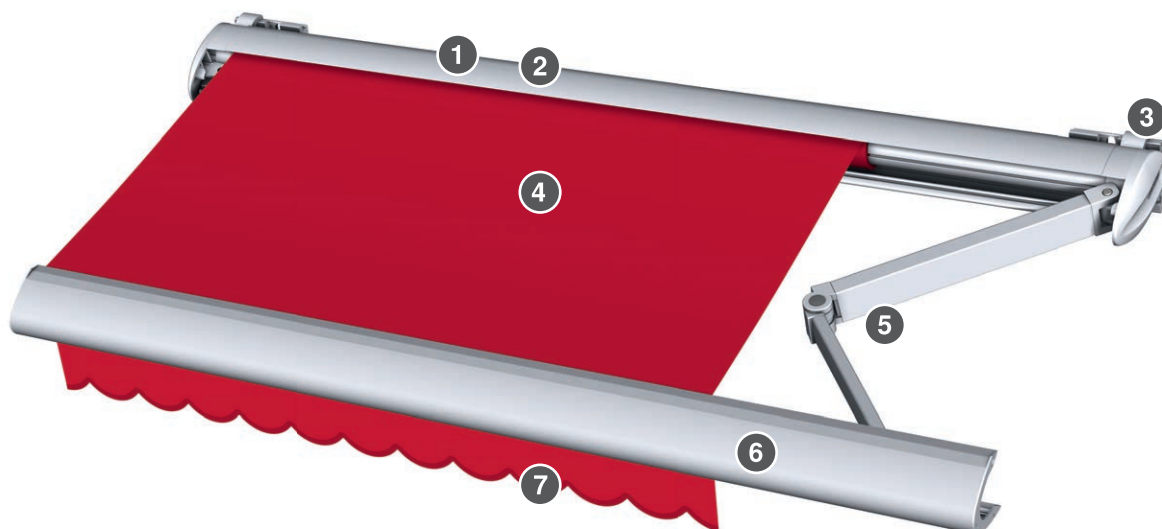


#### Product characteristics

- An especially slender cassette awning for small balconies and patios
- Installation regardless of the weather, as awning fabric and articulated arms are protected by the cassette.

# Components

## Cassette awning Terrea 550



Planning

Terrea

Perea

Patio  
side screens

Climara

Supplementary  
accessories

Components

Drive  
variants

Standards

- 1 Cassette
- 2 Shaft
- 3 Console
- 4 Fabric

- 5 Articulated arm
- 6 Front rail
- 7 Valance

### Cassette

#### Cassette - 550

|          |                     |
|----------|---------------------|
| Material | Aluminium, extruded |
| Surface  | Powder-coated       |
| Width    | 182 mm              |
| Height   | 108 mm              |

#### + Side cover

##### Cassette side cover - 550

|          |                   |
|----------|-------------------|
| Material | Diecast aluminium |
| Surface  | Powder-coated     |

### Shaft

#### Fabric shaft Ø 63 mm

|          |                  |
|----------|------------------|
| Material | Galvanised steel |
| Surface  | Plain            |
| Profile  | Groove tube      |
| Diameter | 63 mm            |

### Front rail

#### Front rail - 550

|          |                     |
|----------|---------------------|
| Material | Aluminium, extruded |
| Surface  | Powder-coated       |
| Width    | 102 mm              |
| Height   | 99 mm               |

#### + Side cover

##### Front rail side cover - 550

|          |                   |
|----------|-------------------|
| Material | Diecast aluminium |
| Surface  | Powder-coated     |

### Articulated arm

#### Articulated arm - 550

##### + Articulated arm profile

##### Articulated arm profile, front, 25x44 mm

|          |                     |
|----------|---------------------|
| Material | Aluminium, extruded |
| Surface  | Powder-coated       |
| Width    | 25 mm               |
| Height   | 44 mm               |

##### Articulated arm profile, rear, 29x55 mm

|          |                     |
|----------|---------------------|
| Material | Aluminium, extruded |
| Surface  | Powder-coated       |
| Width    | 29 mm               |
| Height   | 55 mm               |

##### + Articulated arm seat

##### Articulated arm seat - 550

|          |                                 |
|----------|---------------------------------|
| Material | Aluminium, permanent mould cast |
| Surface  | Powder-coated                   |

##### + Power transmission

##### Flexband

Steel tension spring and flexband with integrated steel strands



## Valance, optional

### Valance - 550/580

|        |       |
|--------|-------|
| Height | 95 mm |
|--------|-------|

The valance has a matching frame, is individually removable and is available in 3 shapes.

If no shape is stated, we will supply valance shape no. 11 (curved).

## Console

### Wall console type A - 550/P40/P60

|          |                     |
|----------|---------------------|
| Material | Aluminium, extruded |
| Surface  | Powder-coated       |
| Width    | 140 mm              |
| Height   | 140 mm              |
| Depth    | 29 mm               |

### Wall console type B - 550/P40/P60

|          |                     |
|----------|---------------------|
| Material | Aluminium, extruded |
| Surface  | Powder-coated       |
| Width    | 185 mm              |
| Height   | 140 mm              |
| Depth    | 29 mm               |

Wall installation with 3 drilled holes

### Wall console type C - 550

|          |               |
|----------|---------------|
| Material | Steel         |
| Surface  | Powder-coated |
| Width    | 210 mm        |
| Height   | 285 mm        |
| Depth    | 39 mm         |

Wall console type A with mounting plate, small (steel).

### Wall console type D - 550

|          |               |
|----------|---------------|
| Material | Steel         |
| Surface  | Powder-coated |
| Width    | 330 mm        |
| Height   | 285 mm        |
| Depth    | 39 mm         |

Wall console type A with mounting plate, large (steel).

### Ceiling console type E - 550/P40/P60

|          |                     |
|----------|---------------------|
| Material | Aluminium, extruded |
| Surface  | Powder-coated       |
| Width    | 100 mm              |
| Height   | 183 mm              |
| Depth    | 182 mm              |

### Console for rafters type F - 550/P40/P60

|          |               |
|----------|---------------|
| Material | Aluminium     |
| Surface  | Powder-coated |
| Width    | 100 mm        |
| Height   | 413 mm        |
| Depth    | 182 mm        |

## Drive variants

- Motor

Drive variant, optional:

- Crank

## Motor

- Orea WT

## Radio motor, optional

- WMS-MM (WMS)
- W-MM (EWFS)

## Crank, optional

- Crank with ball hook

## Gear, optional

- Bevel gear with integrated limit stop 5.33:1

+ see "Drive variants", Page 367

## Colours

- RAL 9016 traffic white, satin finish
- RAL 9006 white aluminium, satin finish
- W 4916 Anthracite iron mica effect, fine texture

Colours, optional:

- WAREMA Colour World

+ see "WAREMA Colour World", Page 12

## Fabric qualities

- Standard acrylic fabric
- Lumera acrylic fabric

Fabric qualities, optional:

- Perfora acrylic
- All Weather acrylic
- Soltis 92
- Twilight Pearl

+ see "Awning collection", Page 356

## Supplementary accessories

- WMS Wind sensor
- LED strip light rail
- Radiant heater
- Fabric lettering, painted
- Sunprint
- Patio frame

+ see "Supplementary accessories", Page 257

## Construction limit values

The construction limit values and number of consoles indicated in this document relate to the concrete substructure C20/25 (B25) and installation on rafters.

| Configuration variants                                                | Projection          | 1500 mm | 2000 mm | 2500 mm |
|-----------------------------------------------------------------------|---------------------|---------|---------|---------|
| <b>Fabric qualities + Drive variants</b>                              |                     |         |         |         |
| Acrylic fabric / Soltis 92 / Twilight Pearl + Motor / Crank           | Minimum order width | 1760 mm | 2260 mm | 2770 mm |
|                                                                       | Maximum order width | 4500 mm | 4500 mm | 4500 mm |
| <b>Fabric qualities + Drive variants + Control systems</b>            |                     |         |         |         |
| Acrylic fabric / Soltis 92 / Twilight Pearl + Motor + WMS Wind sensor | Minimum order width | 1830 mm | 2330 mm | 2840 mm |
|                                                                       | Maximum order width | 4500 mm | 4500 mm | 4500 mm |

2500 mm projection not possible with **bonded fabric connection**.

## Dimensions

Weight per running metre: 14 kg/lfm

Weight per running metre, notes: Without consoles, depending on fitted equipment

## Inclination

Inclination angle: 5 - 40 °

Inclination angle, standard: 10 °

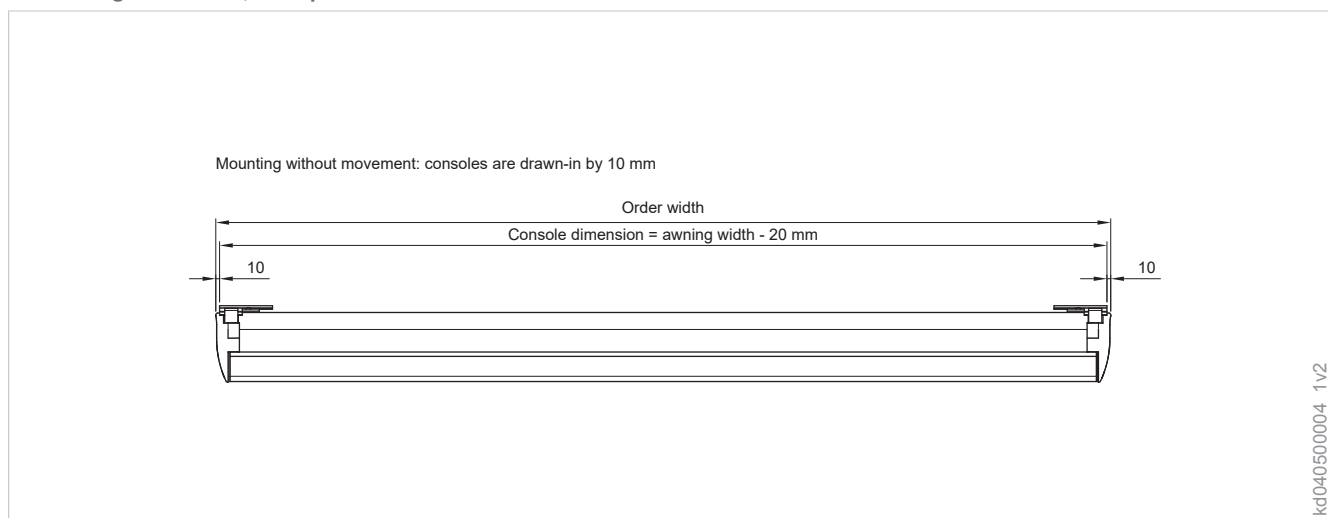
Inclination angle for rain class 2: 25 - 40 °

- Inclination angle with **crank** 5°-25°
- Fine adjustment of inclination angle during installation.
- Basic inclination depending on building size and model, tolerance  $\pm 5^\circ$ .

## Dimension determination

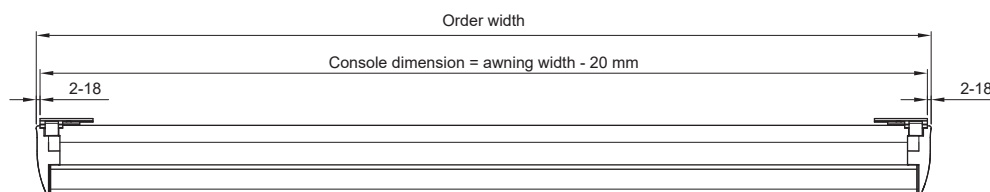
The **projection** is defined from the back edge of the console to the leading edge of the front rail, measured across the inclination angle of the fabric.

Wall/ceiling installation, ideal position - 550



## Wall and ceiling installation, shifting range of consoles - 550

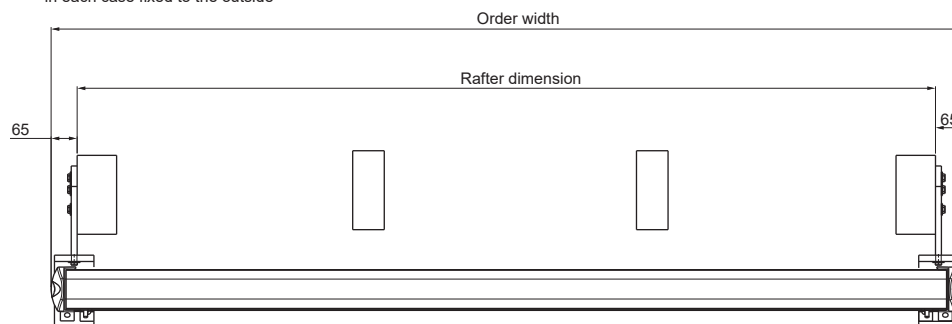
For difficult installation situations, the consoles can be shifted by  $\pm 10$  mm



kd040500004\_2v2

## Rafter installation, outside fixing - 550

Rafter installation  
in each case fixed to the outside

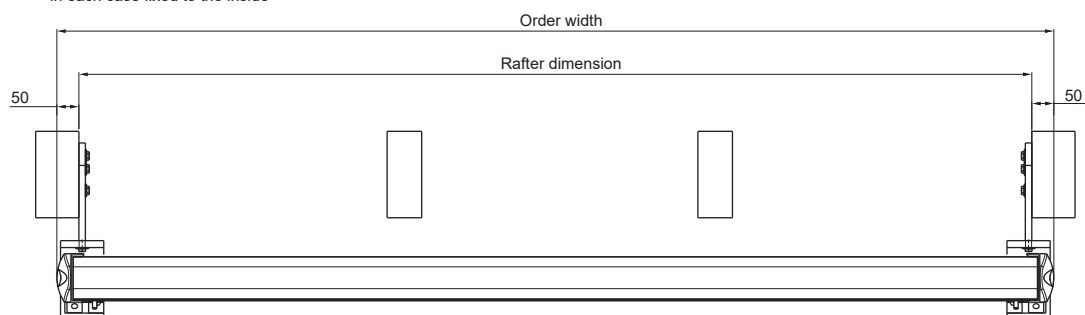


Awning width = width between the outer rafter edges + 130 mm

kd040500004\_3v1

## Rafter installation, inside fixing - 550

Rafter installation  
in each case fixed to the inside



Awning width = width between the inner rafter edges + 100 mm

kd040500004\_4v1

## Quantity determination

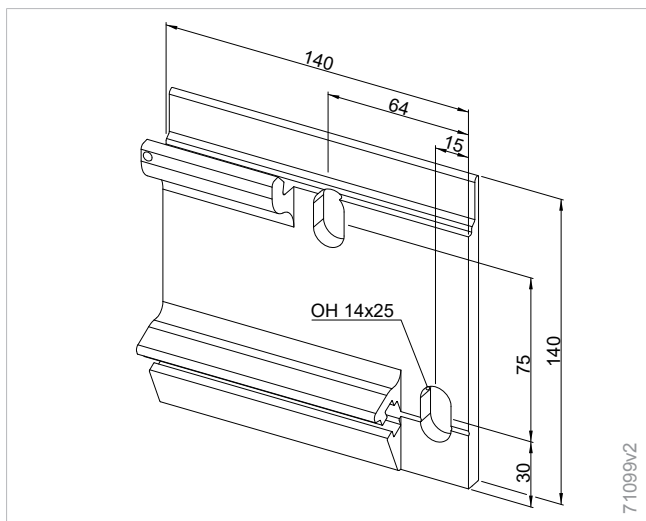
### Number of consoles, individual unit

| Configuration variants                               | Order width | Projection |         |         |
|------------------------------------------------------|-------------|------------|---------|---------|
|                                                      |             | 1500 mm    | 2000 mm | 2500 mm |
| Console/Bracket                                      |             |            |         |         |
| Wall console / Ceiling console / Console for rafters | 0 - 4500 mm | 2          | 2       | 2       |

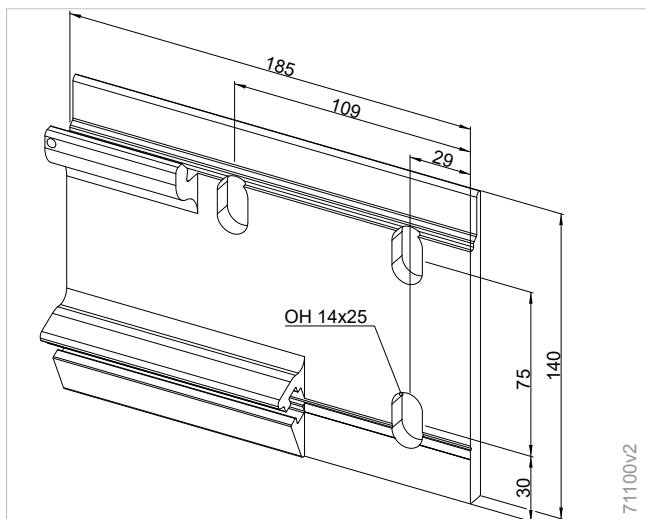
Number of consoles in relation to the concrete substructure C20/25 (B25) and installation on rafters.

## Details

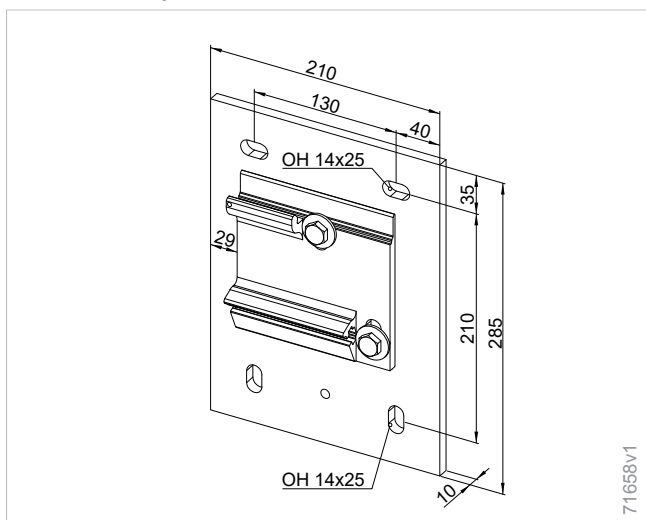
Wall console type A, left console; right console laterally reversed - 550/P40/P60



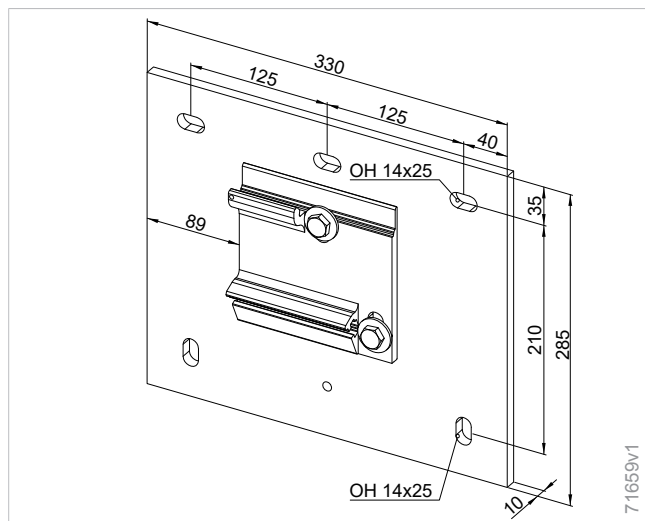
Wall console type B, left console; right console laterally reversed - 550/P40/P60



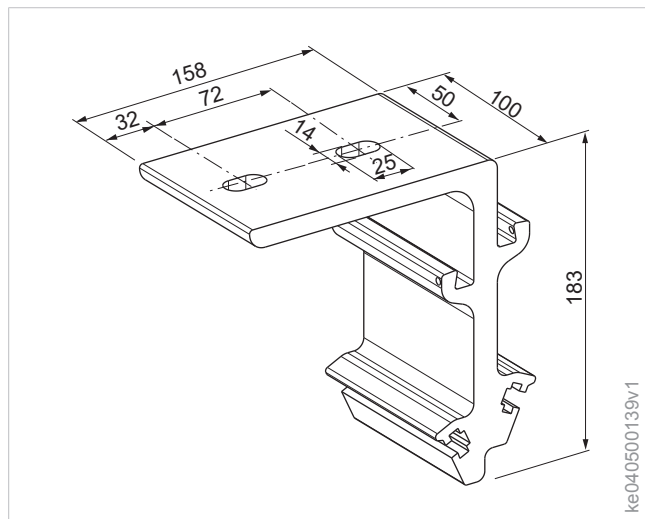
Wall console type C with mounting plate, left console; right console laterally reversed - 550



Wall console type D with mounting plate, left console; right console laterally reversed - 550

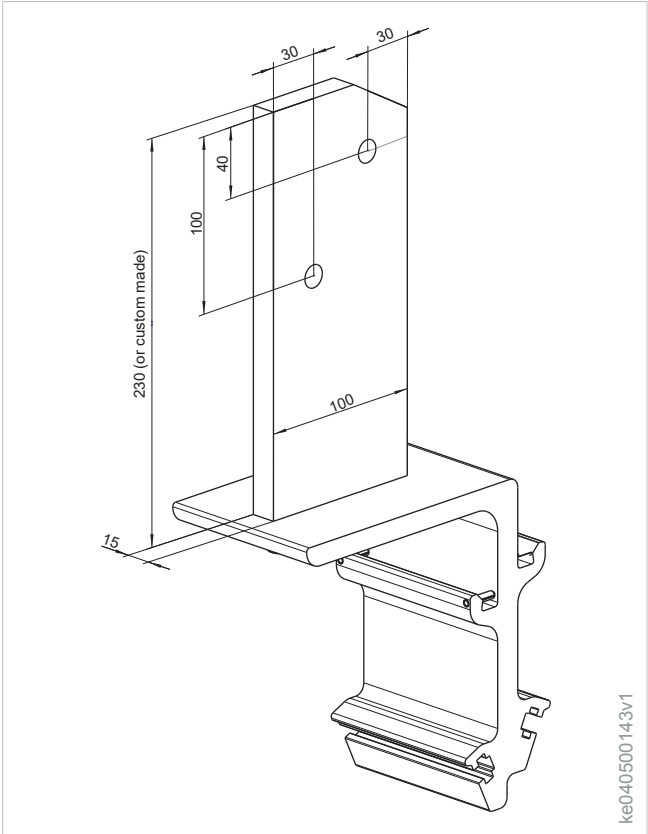


Ceiling console type E - 550/P40/P60

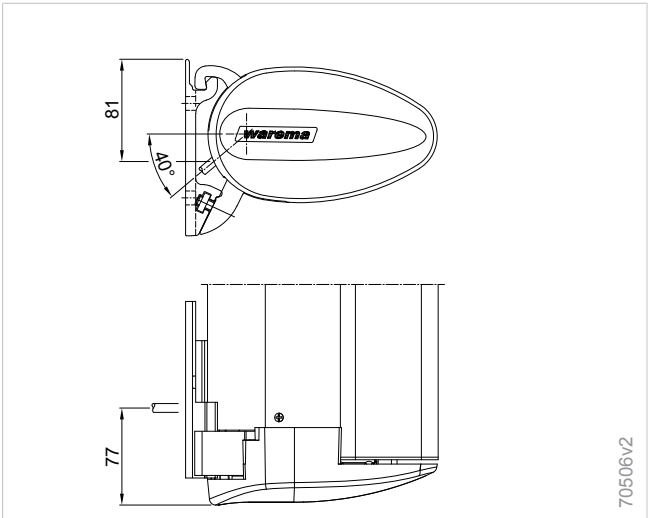




Console for rafters type F - 550/P40/P60



Cable exit - 550



Planning

Terrea

Perea

Patio  
side screens

Climara

Supplementary  
accessories

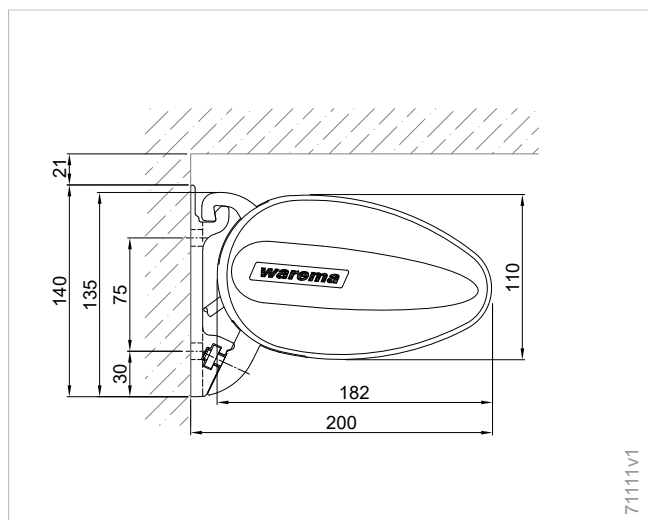
Components

Drive  
variants

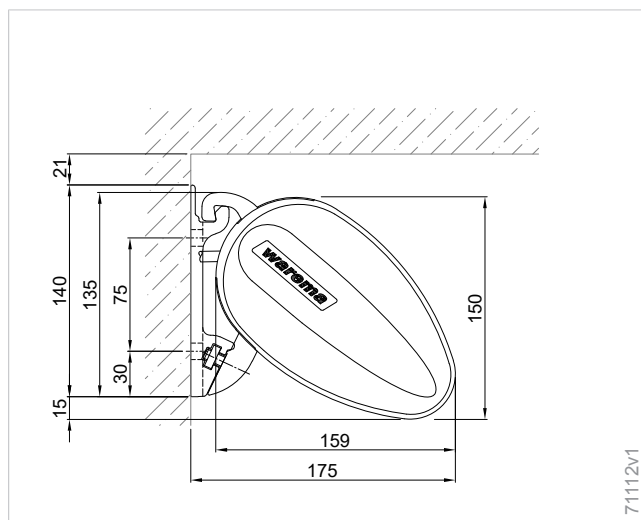
Standards

## Mounting examples

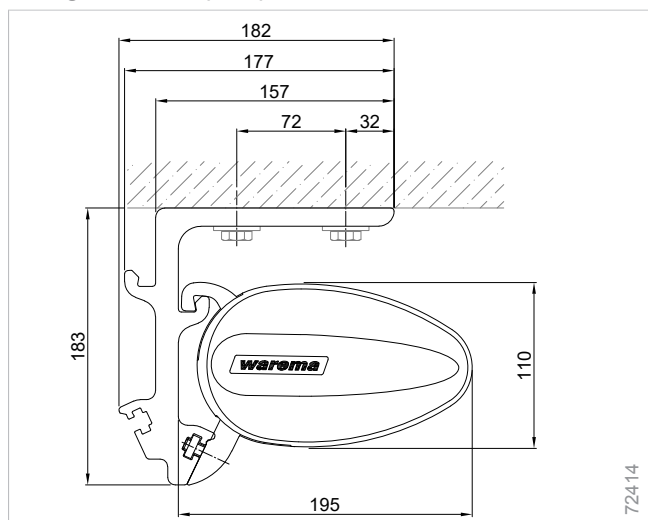
Wall installation, inclination 5° - 550



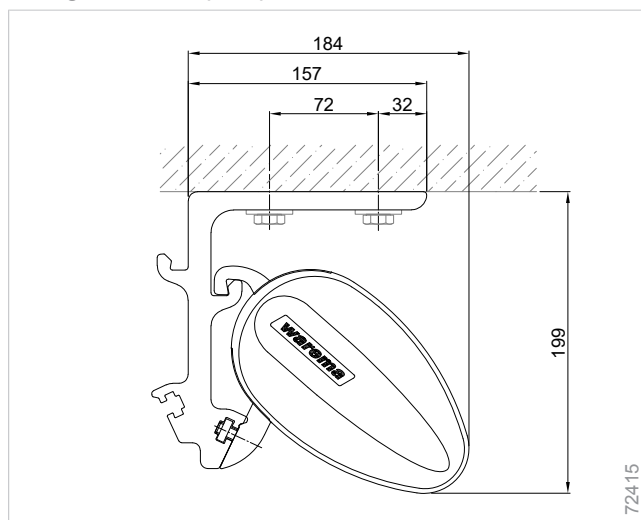
Wall installation, inclination 40° - 550



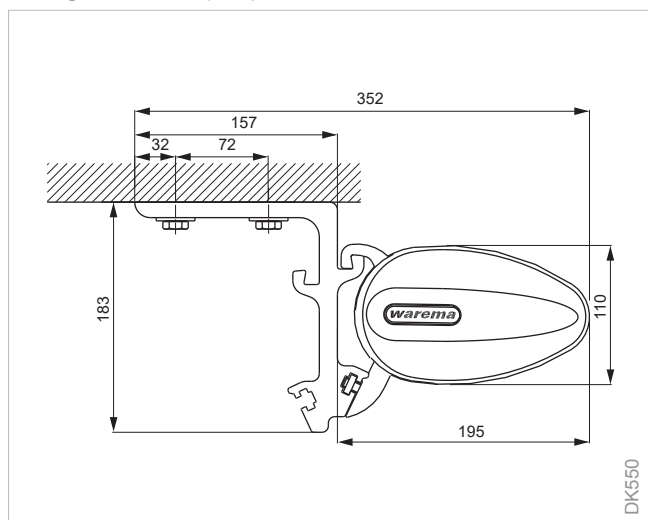
Ceiling installation (front), inclination 5° - 550



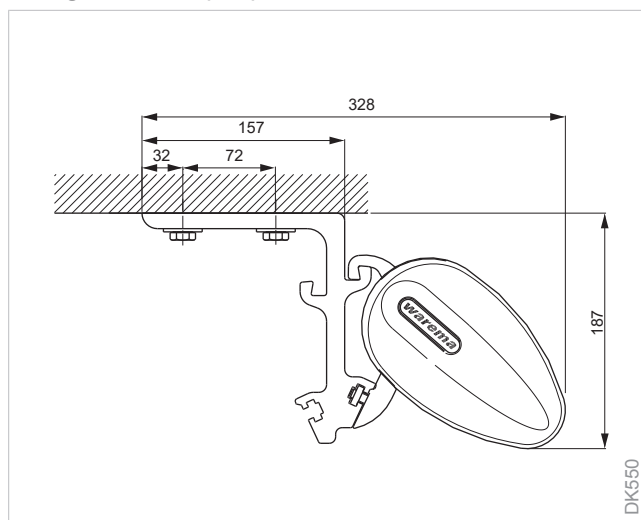
Ceiling installation (front), inclination 40° - 550



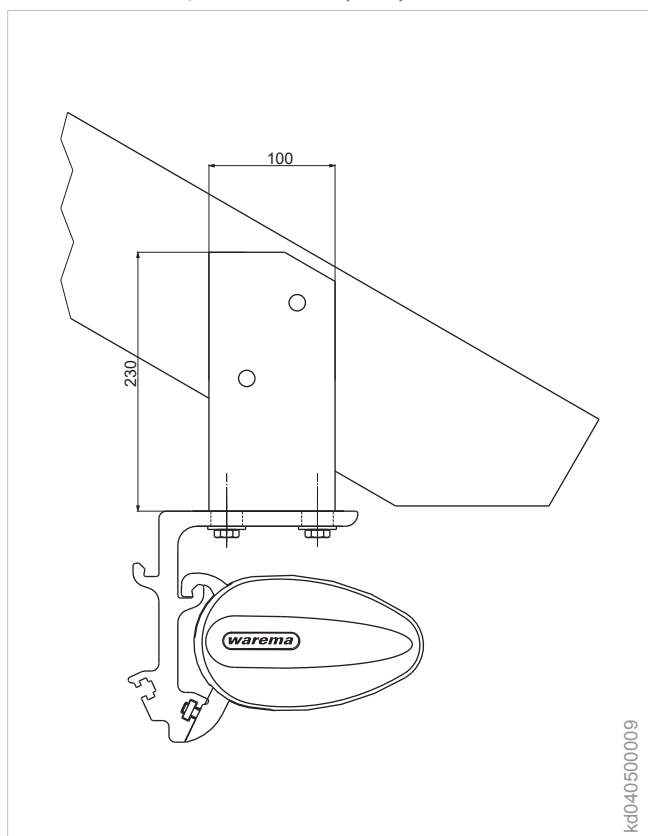
Ceiling installation (rear), inclination 5° - 550



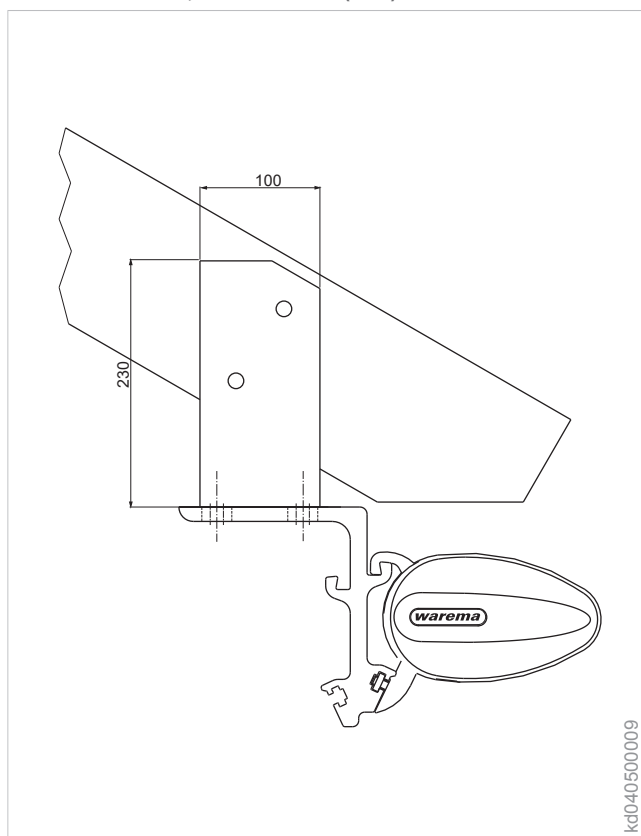
Ceiling installation (rear), inclination 40° - 550



Rafter installation, inclination 0° (front) - 550



Rafter installation, inclination 0° (rear) - 550



Planning

Terrea

Perea

Patio  
side screens

Climara

Supplementary  
accessories

Components

Drive  
variants

Standards

## Further information

Calculate the exact position of the console, tensile force and wind resistance class  
<https://konsolenplaner.warema.de/v2/>



Visualise your product with the WAREMA Designer  
 You can download the app for free from your app store.



Use our free planning programme to plan your sun protection systems  
<https://sonnenschutzplaner.com/>



Configure and plan your product with myWAREMA  
<https://my.warema.com>



Experience the range of colours and fabrics of the WAREMA collections  
<https://www.warema.de/Tools/Kollektionsberater.php>



TechDataPLUS Articulated arm/cassette awnings  
<https://docs.warema.com/1.1444.4>





# Cassette awnings Terrea

## Cassette awning Terrea 580

### Attractive

The modern design offers you a wide range of configuration options.

### Sophisticated

Sophisticated functionality down to the last detail.

### Protected

The cassette provides the awning fabric with reliable protection against dirt and the effects of the weather.



### Construction limit values

|                     |         |
|---------------------|---------|
| Maximum order width | 5500 mm |
| Maximum projection  | 3000 mm |

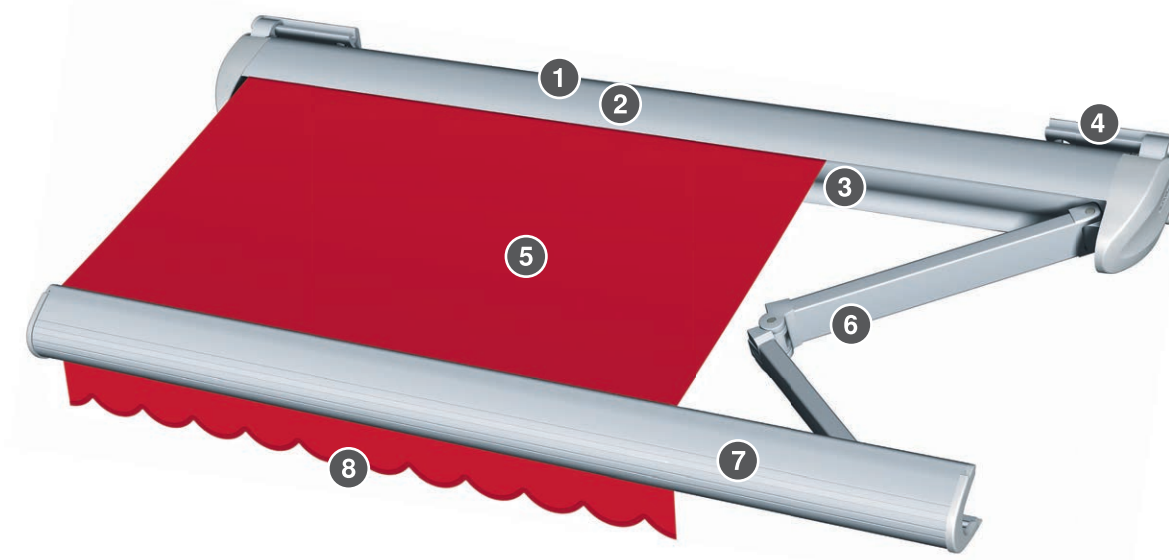


### Product characteristics

- A compact cassette awning for medium-sized patios
- Also suitable for south-westerly orientation thanks to the optional valance roller blind

## Components

### Cassette awning Terrea 580



- 1 Cassette
- 2 Shaft
- 3 Fabric bearing shell
- 4 Console

- 5 Fabric
- 6 Articulated arm
- 7 Front rail
- 8 Valance

### Cassette

#### Cassette - 580

|          |                     |
|----------|---------------------|
| Material | Aluminium, extruded |
| Surface  | Powder-coated       |
| Width    | 226 mm              |
| Height   | 129 mm              |

#### + Side cover

#### Cassette side cover - 580

|          |                                 |
|----------|---------------------------------|
| Material | Plastic, injection moulded part |
| Surface  | Powder-coated                   |

### Shaft

#### Fabric shaft Ø 78 mm

|          |                  |
|----------|------------------|
| Material | Galvanised steel |
| Surface  | Plain            |
| Profile  | Groove tube      |
| Diameter | 78 mm            |

### Front rail

#### Front rail - 580

|          |                     |
|----------|---------------------|
| Material | Aluminium, extruded |
| Surface  | Powder-coated       |
| Width    | 99 mm               |
| Height   | 111 mm              |

#### + Side cover

#### Front rail side cover - 580

|          |                   |
|----------|-------------------|
| Material | Diecast aluminium |
| Surface  | Powder-coated     |

### Front rail, optional

#### Front rail - 580 with valance roller blind

|          |                     |
|----------|---------------------|
| Material | Aluminium, extruded |
| Surface  | Powder-coated       |
| Width    | 144 mm              |
| Height   | 111 mm              |

#### + Side cover

#### Front rail side cover - 580 with valance roller blind

|          |               |
|----------|---------------|
| Material | Aluminium     |
| Surface  | Powder-coated |

### Articulated arm

#### Articulated arm - 580

Depending on the projection or equipment, the small or large **articulated arm profiles** are used.

#### + Articulated arm profile

#### Articulated arm profile, front, 25x44 mm

|          |                     |
|----------|---------------------|
| Material | Aluminium, extruded |
| Surface  | Powder-coated       |
| Width    | 25 mm               |
| Height   | 44 mm               |

#### Articulated arm profile, front, 30x56 mm

|          |                     |
|----------|---------------------|
| Material | Aluminium, extruded |
| Surface  | Powder-coated       |
| Width    | 30 mm               |
| Height   | 56 mm               |



#### Articulated arm profile, rear, 29x55 mm

|          |                     |
|----------|---------------------|
| Material | Aluminium, extruded |
| Surface  | Powder-coated       |
| Width    | 29 mm               |
| Height   | 55 mm               |

#### Articulated arm profile, rear, 35x67 mm

|          |                     |
|----------|---------------------|
| Material | Aluminium, extruded |
| Surface  | Powder-coated       |
| Width    | 35 mm               |
| Height   | 67 mm               |

#### + Articulated arm seat

##### Articulated arm seat - 580

|          |                                 |
|----------|---------------------------------|
| Material | Aluminium, permanent mould cast |
| Surface  | Powder-coated                   |

#### + Power transmission

##### Flexband

Steel tension spring and flexband with integrated steel strands

#### Valance, optional

##### Valance - 550/580

|        |       |
|--------|-------|
| Height | 95 mm |
|--------|-------|

The valance has a matching frame, is individually removable and is available in 3 shapes.

If no shape is stated, we will supply valance shape no. 11 (curved).

#### Console

##### Wall console type B - 580

|          |                     |
|----------|---------------------|
| Material | Aluminium, extruded |
| Surface  | Powder-coated       |
| Width    | 160 mm              |
| Height   | 148 mm              |
| Depth    | 34 mm               |

##### Wall console type D - 580

|          |               |
|----------|---------------|
| Material | Steel         |
| Surface  | Powder-coated |
| Width    | 330 mm        |
| Height   | 285 mm        |
| Depth    | 44 mm         |

Wall console type B with mounting plate, large (steel).

##### Ceiling console type E - 580

|          |                     |
|----------|---------------------|
| Material | Aluminium, extruded |
| Surface  | Powder-coated       |
| Width    | 150 mm              |
| Height   | 182 mm              |
| Depth    | 180 mm              |

#### Console for rafters Type F - 580

|          |               |
|----------|---------------|
| Material | Aluminium     |
| Surface  | Powder-coated |
| Width    | 150 mm        |
| Height   | 412 mm        |
| Depth    | 180 mm        |

#### Drive variants

- Motor

Drive variant, optional:

- Crank

#### Motor

- Orea WT

#### Motor optional

- R35/8G (solar)

#### Radio motor, optional

- WMS-MM (WMS)
- W-MM (EWFS)

#### Crank, optional

- Crank with ball hook

#### Gear, optional

- Bevel gear with integrated limit stop 3:1

+ see "Drive variants", Page 367

#### Colours

- RAL 9016 traffic white, satin finish
- RAL 9006 white aluminium, satin finish
- W 4916 Anthracite iron mica effect, fine texture

Colours, optional:

- WAREMA Colour World

+ see "WAREMA Colour World", Page 12

#### Fabric qualities

- Standard acrylic fabric
- Lumera acrylic fabric

Fabric qualities, optional:

- Perfora acrylic
- All Weather acrylic
- Soltis 92
- Twilight Pearl

+ see "Awning collection", Page 356

## Supplementary accessories

- Solar drive
- WMS Wind sensor
- Valance roller blind with crank
- Integrated lighting

- LED strip light rail
- Radiant heater
- Fabric lettering, painted
- Sunprint
- Patio frame

+ see "Supplementary accessories", Page 257

## Construction limit values

The construction limit values and number of consoles indicated in this document relate to the concrete substructure C20/25 (B25) and installation on rafters.

| Configuration variants                                                                 | Projection          | 1500 mm | 2000 mm | 2500 mm | 3000 mm |
|----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|---------------------|---------|---------|---------|---------|
| <b>Fabric qualities + Drive variants</b>                                               |                     |         |         |         |         |
| Acrylic fabric / Twilight Pearl + Motor / Crank                                        | Minimum order width | 1840 mm | 2340 mm | 2850 mm | 3340 mm |
|                                                                                        | Maximum order width | 5500 mm | 5500 mm | 5500 mm | 5500 mm |
| Soltis 92 + Motor / Crank                                                              | Minimum order width | 1840 mm | 2340 mm | 2850 mm |         |
|                                                                                        | Maximum order width | 5500 mm | 5500 mm | 5500 mm |         |
| <b>Fabric qualities + Drive variants + Control systems</b>                             |                     |         |         |         |         |
| Acrylic fabric / Twilight Pearl + Motor + WMS Wind sensor                              | Minimum order width | 1910 mm | 2410 mm | 2920 mm | 3410 mm |
|                                                                                        | Maximum order width | 5500 mm | 5500 mm | 5500 mm | 5500 mm |
| Soltis 92 + Motor + WMS Wind sensor                                                    | Minimum order width | 1910 mm | 2410 mm | 2920 mm |         |
|                                                                                        | Maximum order width | 5500 mm | 5500 mm | 5500 mm |         |
| <b>Fabric qualities + Drive variants + Supplementary accessories</b>                   |                     |         |         |         |         |
| Acrylic fabric / Twilight Pearl + Motor / Crank + Valance roller blind                 | Minimum order width | 1840 mm | 2340 mm | 2850 mm |         |
|                                                                                        | Maximum order width | 5500 mm | 5500 mm | 5500 mm |         |
| Soltis 92 + Motor / Crank + Valance roller blind                                       | Minimum order width | 1840 mm | 2340 mm | 2850 mm |         |
|                                                                                        | Maximum order width | 5500 mm | 5500 mm | 5500 mm |         |
| <b>Fabric qualities + Drive variants + Supplementary accessories + Control systems</b> |                     |         |         |         |         |
| Acrylic fabric / Twilight Pearl + Motor + Valance roller blind + WMS Wind sensor       | Minimum order width | 1910 mm | 2410 mm | 2920 mm |         |
|                                                                                        | Maximum order width | 5500 mm | 5500 mm | 5500 mm |         |
| Soltis 92 + Motor + Valance roller blind + WMS Wind sensor                             | Minimum order width | 1910 mm | 2410 mm | 2920 mm |         |
|                                                                                        | Maximum order width | 5500 mm | 5500 mm | 5500 mm |         |

## Dimensions

Weight per running metre: 15 - 18 kg/lfm

Weight per running metre, notes: Without consoles, depending on fitted equipment

## Inclination

Inclination angle: 5 - 40 °

Inclination angle, standard: 5 °

Inclination angle for rain class 2: 25 - 40 °

- Inclination angle with **crank** 5°-25°
- Fine adjustment of inclination angle during installation.
- Basic inclination depending on building size and model, tolerance ±5°.

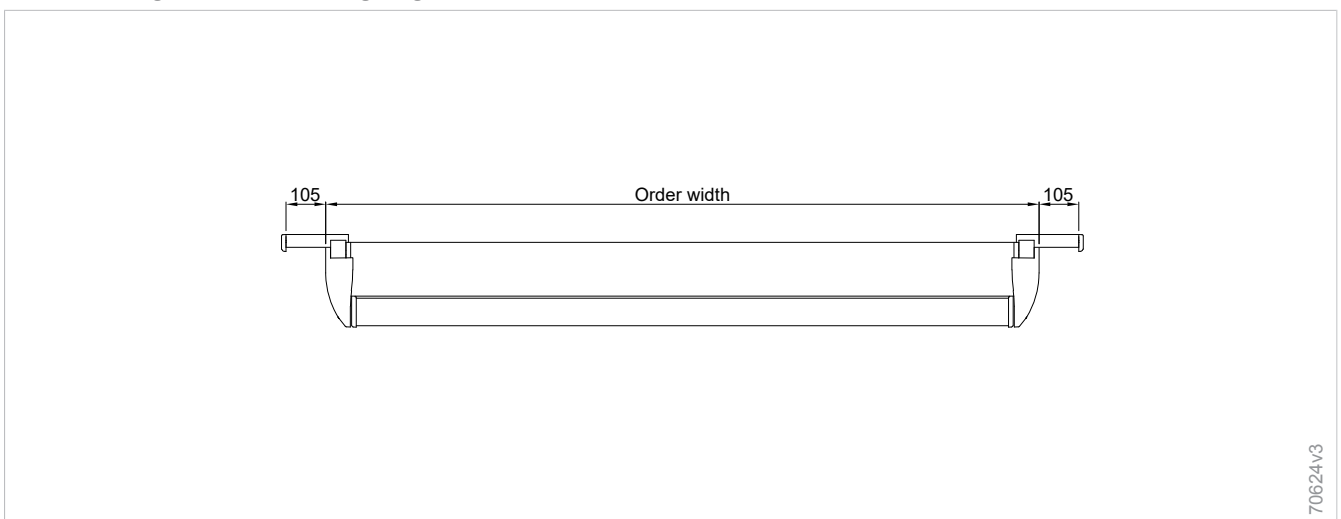
## Dimension determination

The **projection** is defined from the back edge of the console to the leading edge of the front rail, measured across the inclination angle of the fabric.

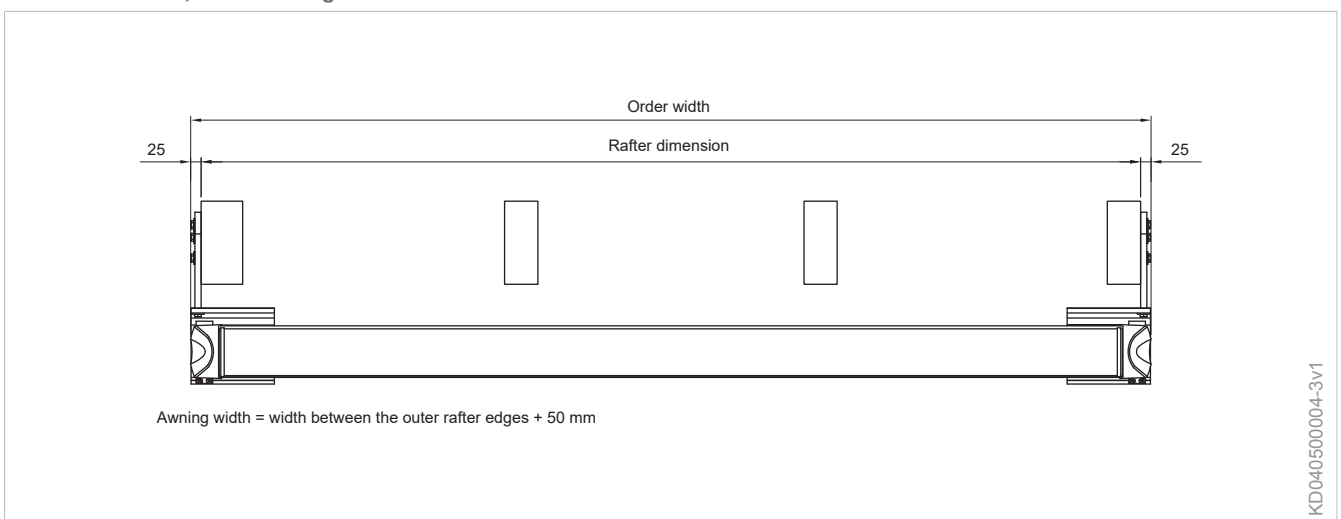
### Wall/ceiling installation, ideal position - 580



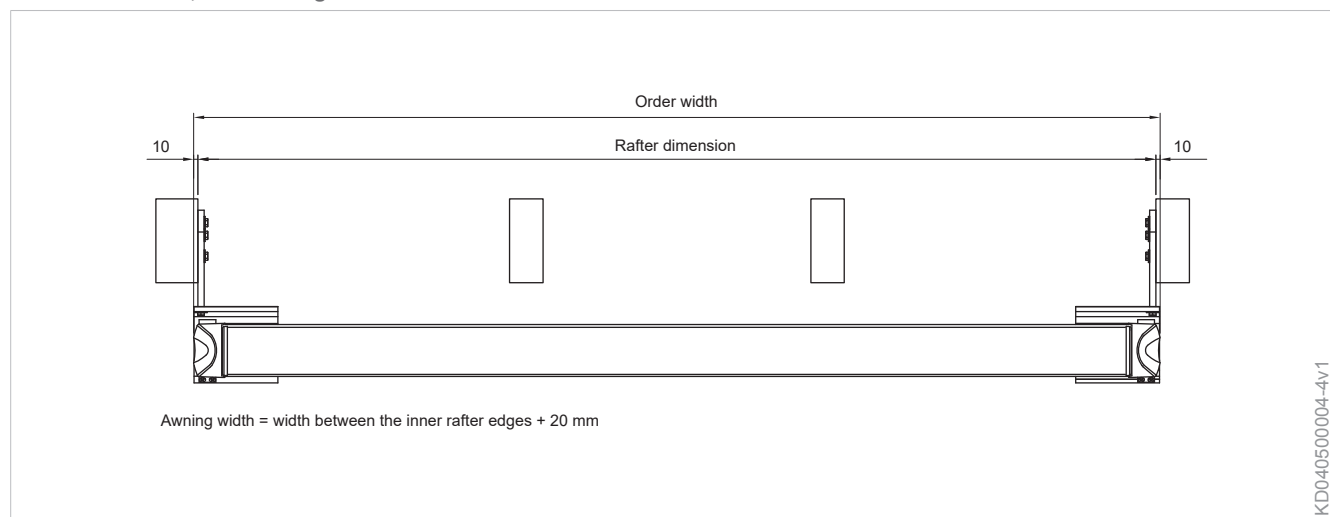
### Wall and ceiling installation, shifting range of consoles - 580



### Rafter installation, outside fixing - 580



## Rafter installation, inside fixing - 580



## Quantity determination

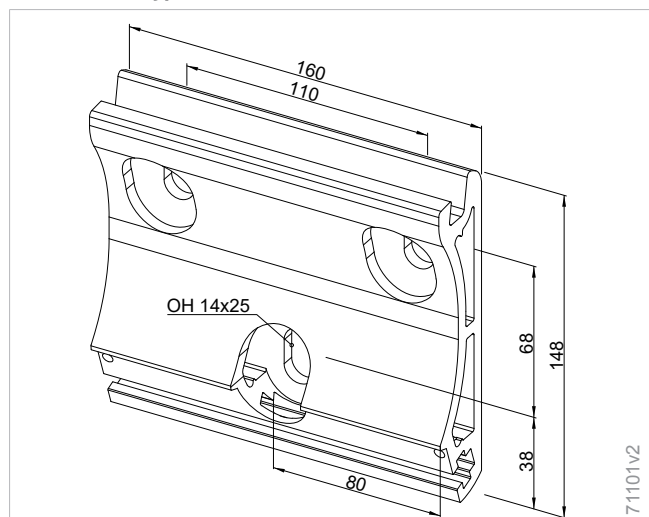
### Number of consoles, individual unit

| Configuration variants                                                         | Order width | Projection |         |         |         |
|--------------------------------------------------------------------------------|-------------|------------|---------|---------|---------|
|                                                                                |             | 1500 mm    | 2000 mm | 2500 mm | 3000 mm |
| Console/Bracket                                                                |             |            |         |         |         |
| Wall console / Ceiling console / Console for rafters                           | 0 - 5500 mm | 2          | 2       | 2       | 2       |
| Console/Bracket + Supplementary accessories                                    |             |            |         |         |         |
| Wall console / Ceiling console / Console for rafters +<br>Valance roller blind | 0 - 5500 mm | 2          | 2       | 2       |         |

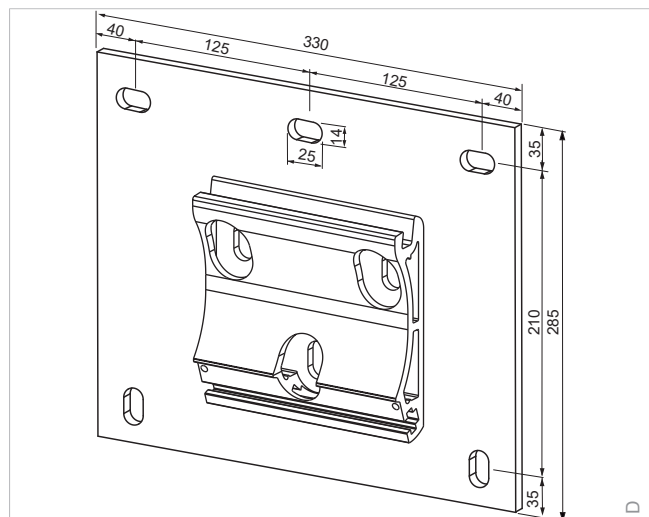
Number of consoles in relation to the concrete substructure C20/25 (B25) and installation on rafters.

## Details

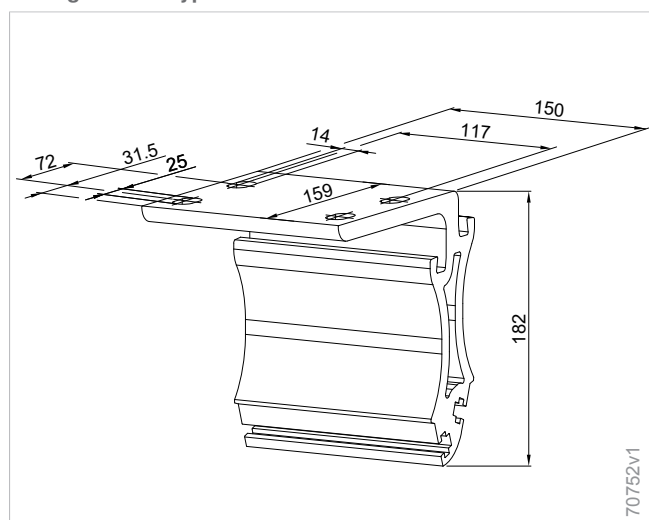
Wall console type B - 580



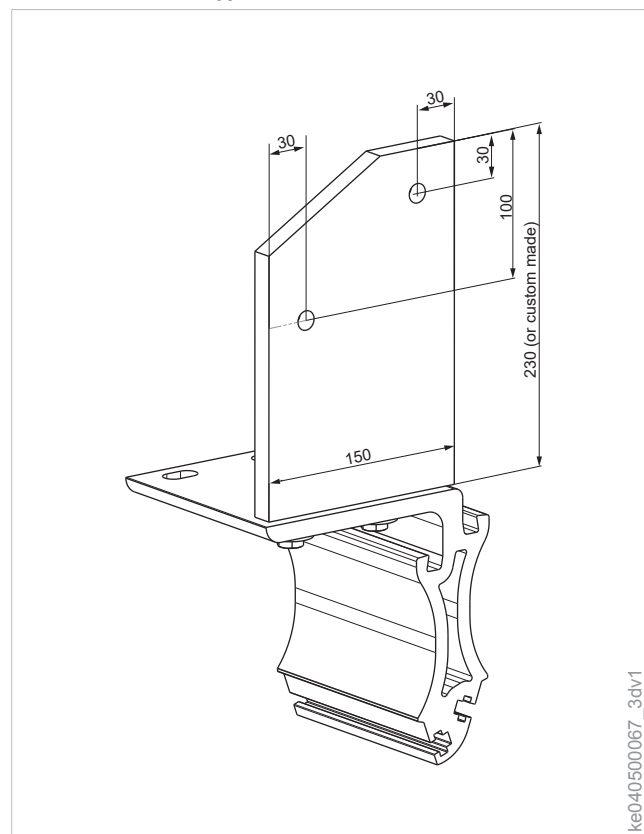
Wall console type D mounting plate - 580



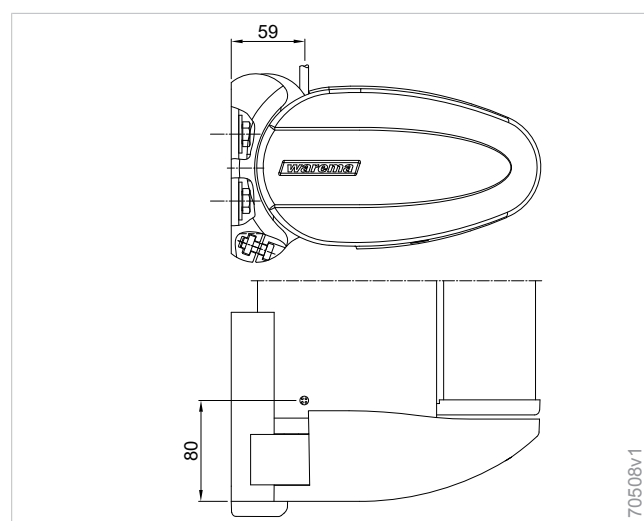
Ceiling console type E - 580



Console for rafters type F - 580

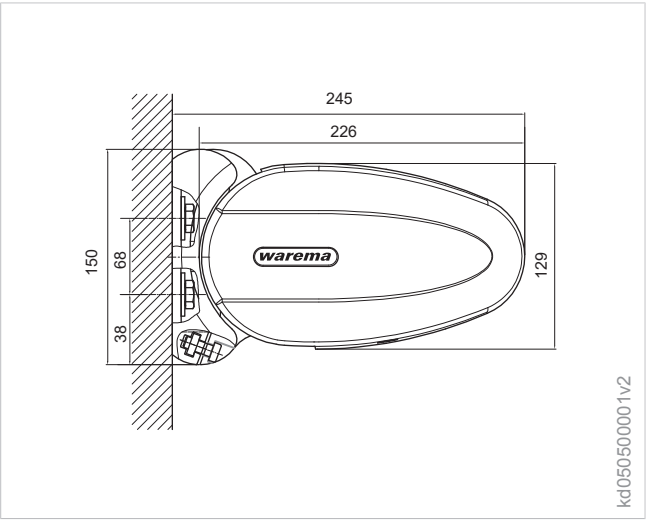


Cable exit - 580

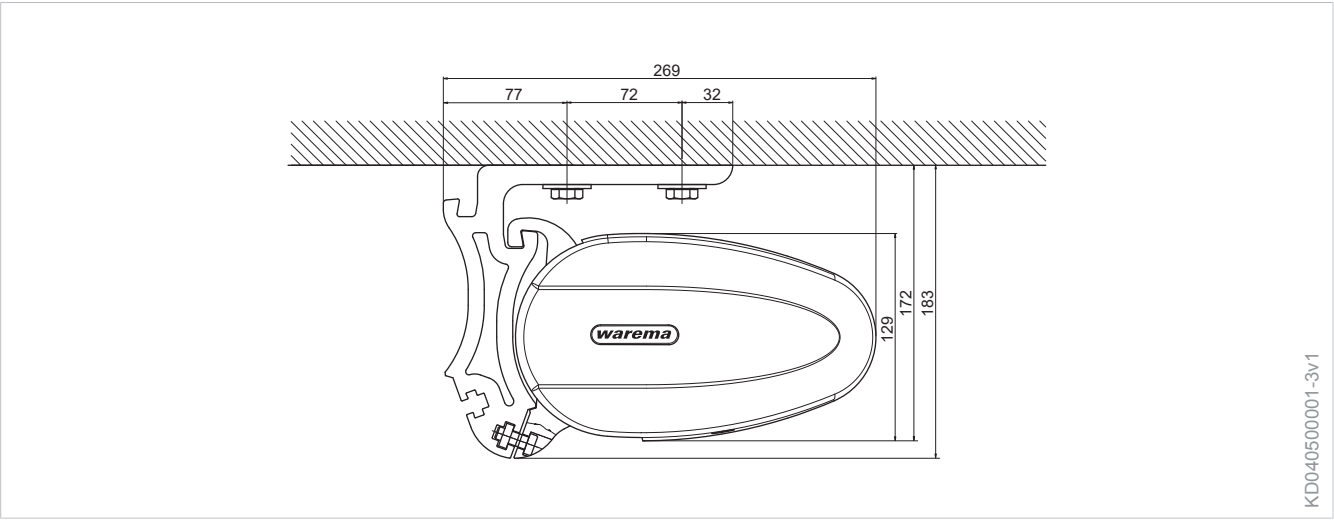


# Mounting examples

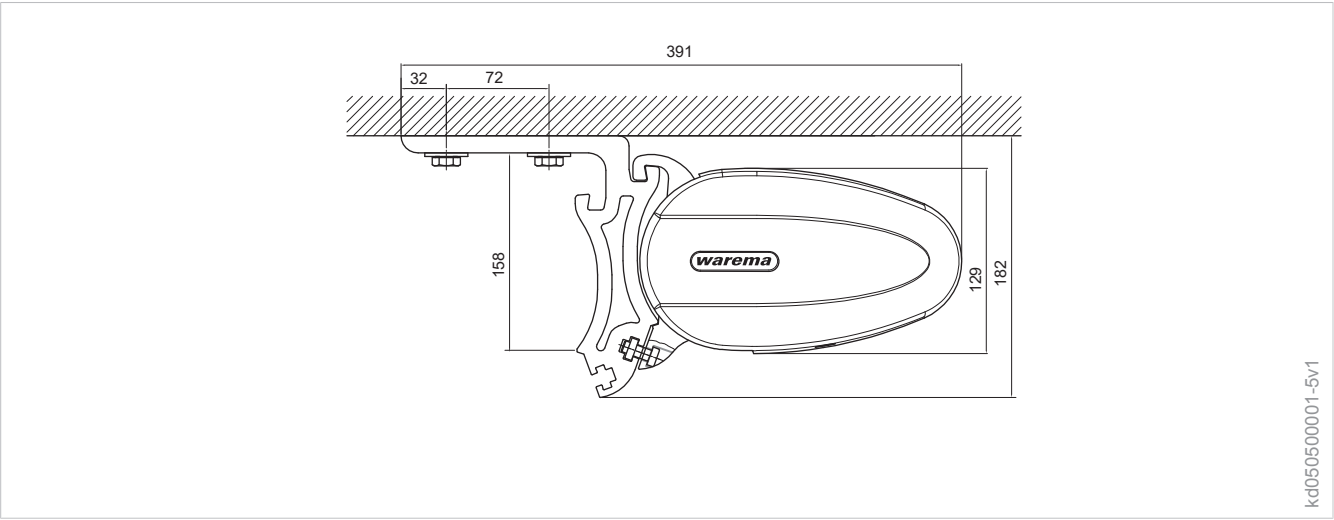
Wall installation, inclination 5° - 580



Ceiling installation (front), inclination 5° - 580

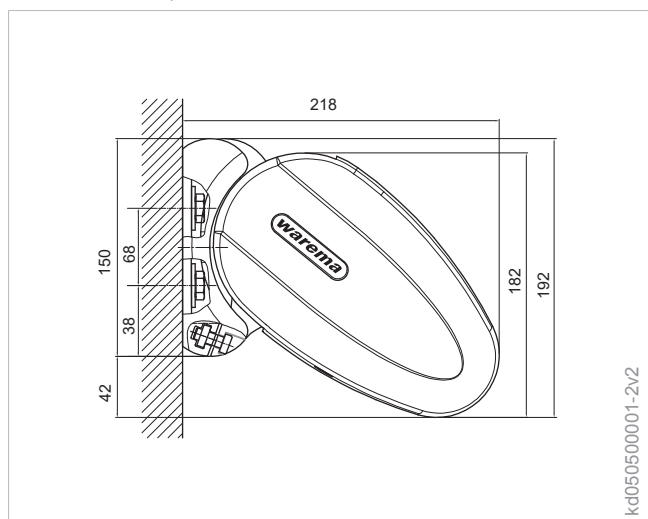


Ceiling installation (rear), inclination 5° - 580

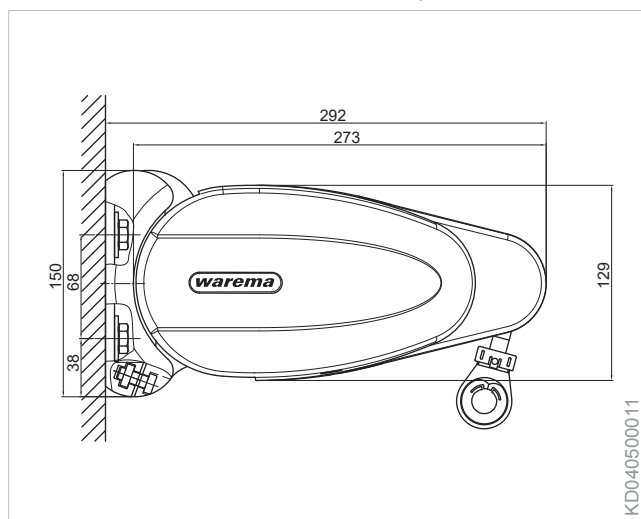




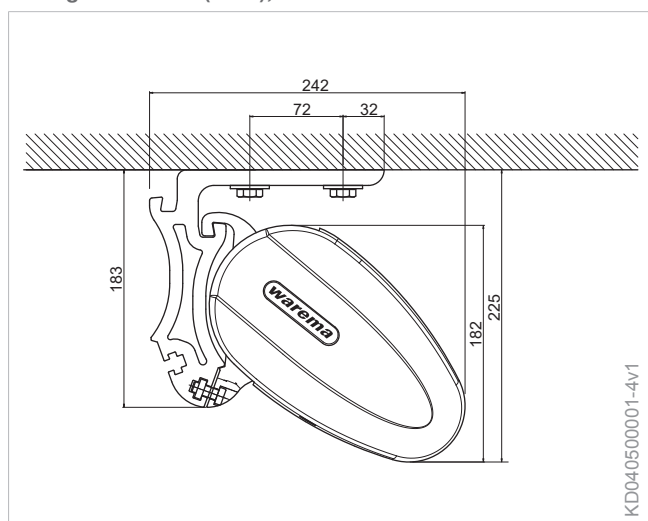
Wall installation, inclination 40° - 580



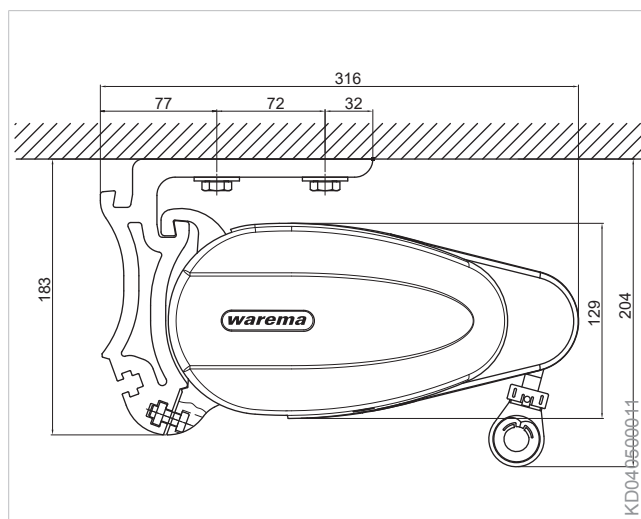
Wall installation with valance roller blind, inclination 5° - 580



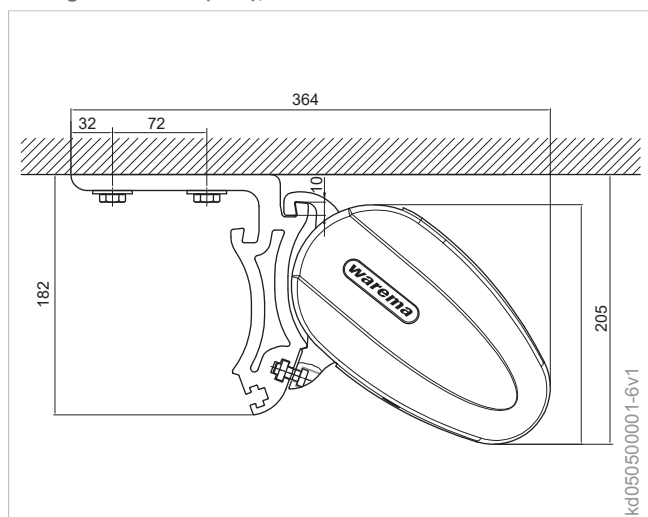
Ceiling installation (front), inclination 40° - 580



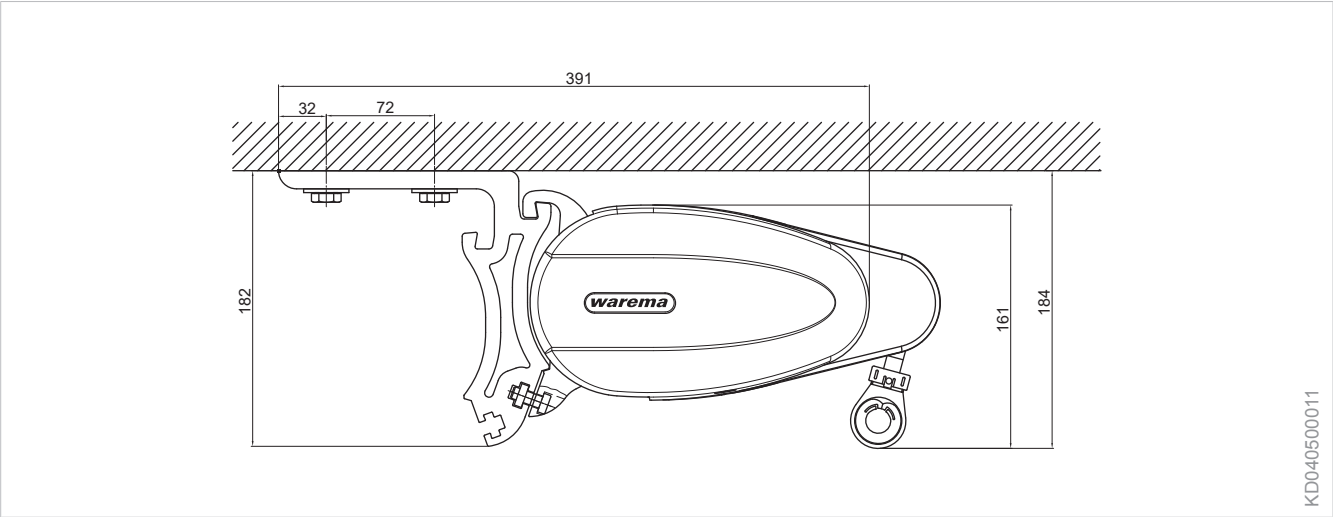
Ceiling installation (front) with valance roller blind, inclination 5° - 580



Ceiling installation (rear), inclination 40° - 580

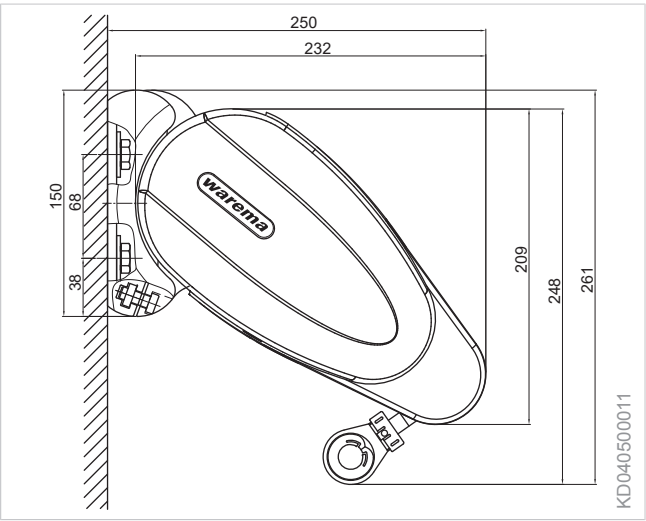


Ceiling installation (rear) with valance roller blind, inclination 5° - 580



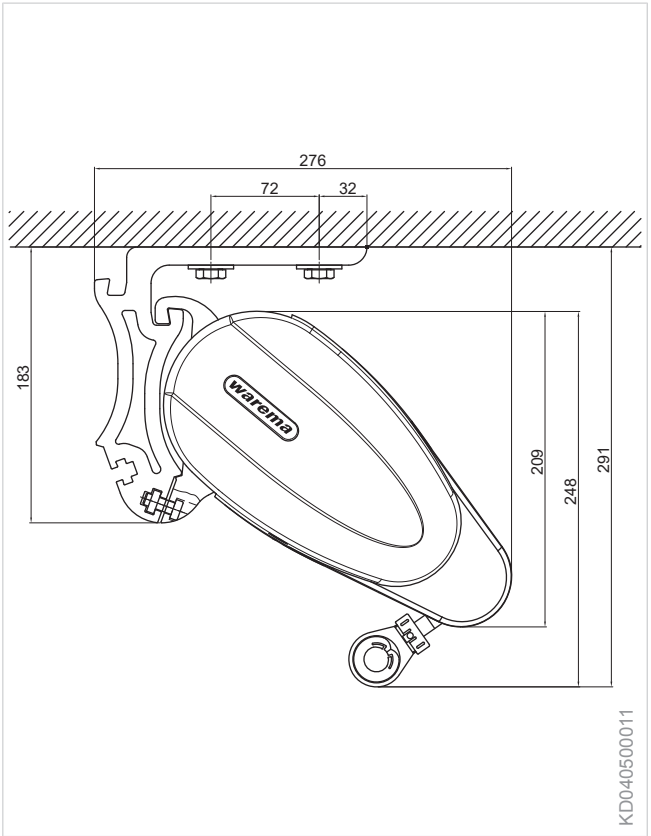
KD040500011

Wall installation with valance roller blind, inclination 40° - 580



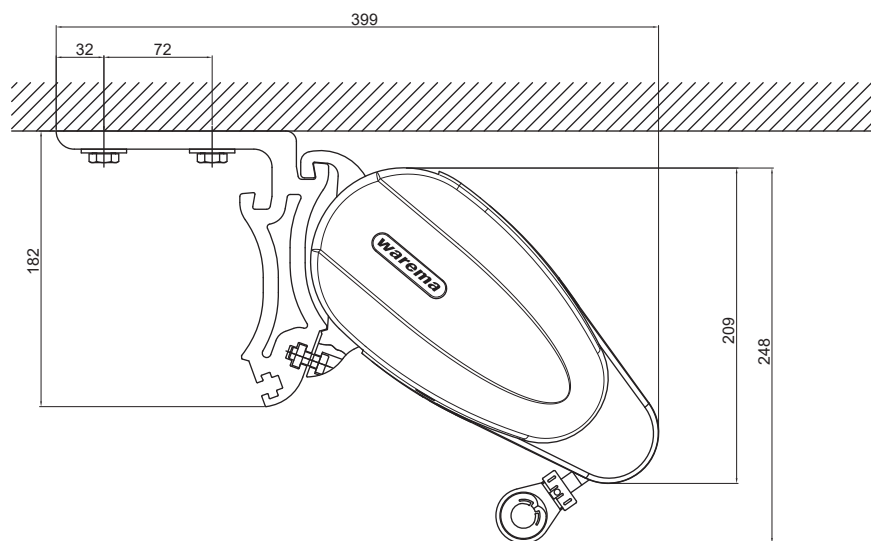
KD040500011

Ceiling installation (front) with valance roller blind, inclination 40° - 580



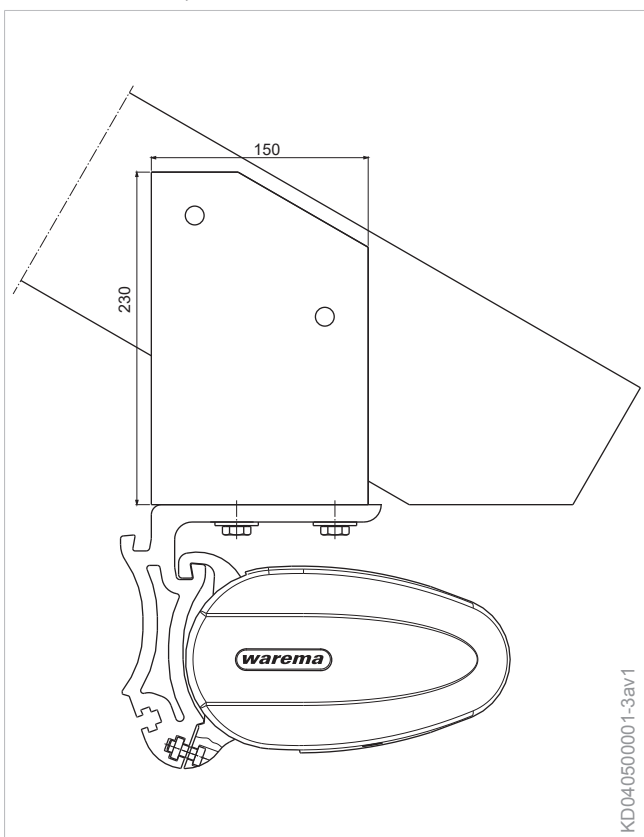
KD040500011

Ceiling installation (rear) with valance roller blind, inclination 40° - 580



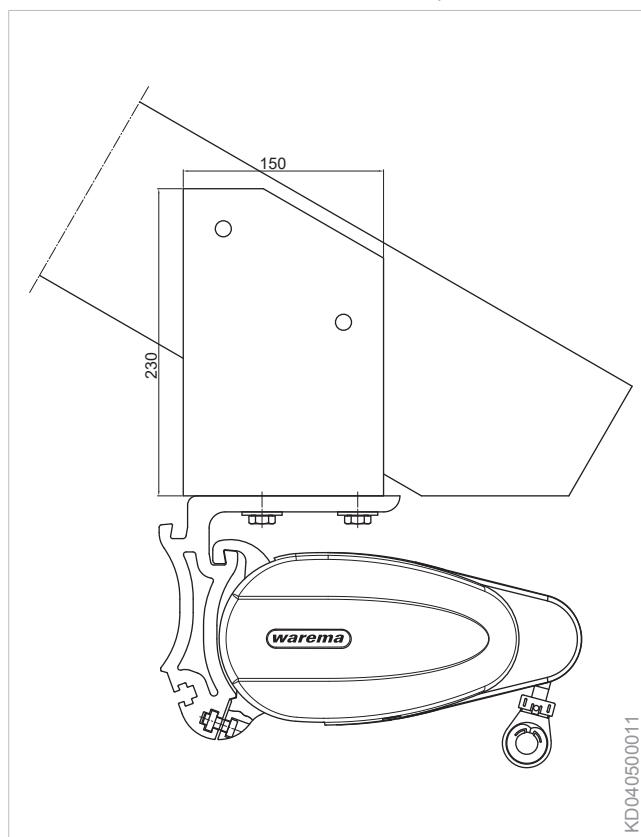
KD040500011

Rafter installation, inclination 5° - 580



KD040500001-3av1

Rafter installation with valance roller blind, inclination 5° - 580



KD040500011

## Further information

Calculate the exact position of the console, tensile force and wind resistance class  
<https://konsolenplaner.warema.de/v2/>



Visualise your product with the WAREMA Designer  
 You can download the app for free from your app store.



Use our free planning programme to plan your sun protection systems  
<https://sonnenschutzplaner.com/>



Configure and plan your product with myWAREMA  
<https://my.warema.com>



Experience the range of colours and fabrics of the WAREMA collections  
<https://www.warema.de/Tools/Kollektionsberater.php>



TechDataPLUS Articulated arm/cassette awnings  
<https://docs.warema.com/1.1444.4>





# Cassette awnings Terrea

## Cassette awning Terrea K50

### Attractive

The remarkable product design is in keeping with the modern architecture.

### Compact

Especially small installation distance from wall and ceiling, meaning that the awning can be unobtrusively integrated into the patio.

### Award-winning

Recipient of the Red Dot Design award 2016.



### Construction limit values

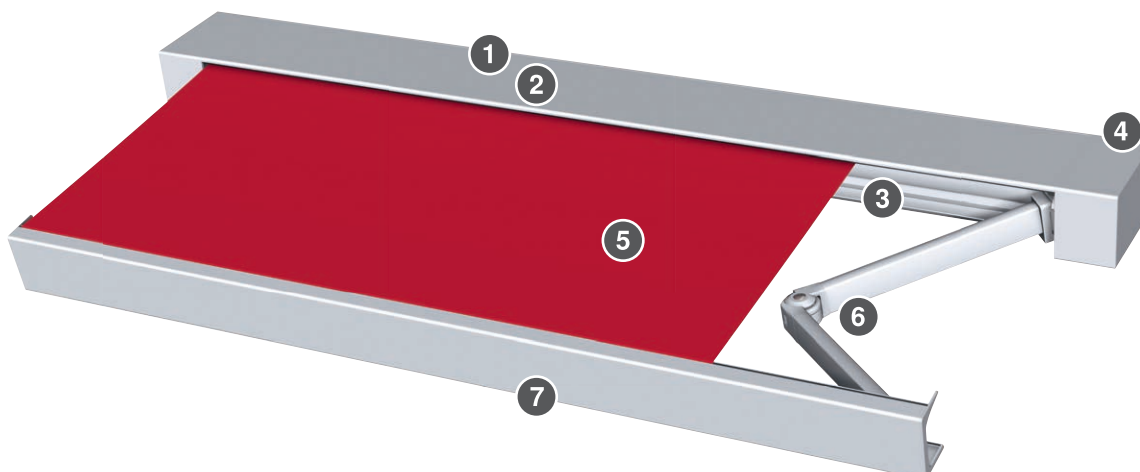
|                     |         |
|---------------------|---------|
| Maximum order width | 5000 mm |
| Maximum projection  | 3000 mm |

### Product characteristics

- Small rectangular cassette awning
- Also suitable for south-westerly orientation thanks to the optional valance roller blind

# Components

## Cassette awning Terrea K50



- 1 Cassette
- 2 Shaft
- 3 Fabric bearing shell
- 4 Console

- 5 Fabric
- 6 Articulated arm
- 7 Front rail

### Cassette

#### Cassette - K50

|          |                     |
|----------|---------------------|
| Material | Aluminium, extruded |
| Surface  | Powder-coated       |
| Width    | 200 mm              |
| Height   | 130 mm              |

#### + Side cover

##### Cassette side cover - K50

|          |               |
|----------|---------------|
| Material | Aluminium     |
| Surface  | Powder-coated |

### Cassette, optional

#### Cassette - K50 with valance roller blind

|          |                     |
|----------|---------------------|
| Material | Aluminium, extruded |
| Surface  | Powder-coated       |
| Width    | 260 mm              |
| Height   | 130 mm              |

#### + Side cover

##### Cassette side cover - K50

|          |               |
|----------|---------------|
| Material | Aluminium     |
| Surface  | Powder-coated |

### Shaft

#### Fabric shaft Ø 78 mm

|          |                  |
|----------|------------------|
| Material | Galvanised steel |
| Surface  | Plain            |
| Profile  | Groove tube      |
| Diameter | 78 mm            |

### Fabric bearing shell

#### Fabric bearing shell - K50

|          |                     |
|----------|---------------------|
| Material | Aluminium, extruded |
| Surface  | Powder-coated       |

### Front rail

#### Front rail - K50

|          |                     |
|----------|---------------------|
| Material | Aluminium, extruded |
| Surface  | Powder-coated       |
| Width    | 78 mm               |
| Height   | 116 mm              |

#### + Side cover

##### Front rail side cover - K50

|          |               |
|----------|---------------|
| Material | Aluminium     |
| Surface  | Powder-coated |

### Front rail, optional

#### Front rail - K50 with valance roller blind

|          |                     |
|----------|---------------------|
| Material | Aluminium, extruded |
| Surface  | Powder-coated       |
| Width    | 138 mm              |
| Height   | 116 mm              |

#### + Side cover

##### Front rail side cover - K50

|          |               |
|----------|---------------|
| Material | Aluminium     |
| Surface  | Powder-coated |



## Articulated arm

### Articulated arm - K50

Depending on the projection or equipment, the small or large **articulated arm profiles and power transmission** are used.

#### + Articulated arm profile

##### Articulated arm profile 27x54 mm

|          |                     |
|----------|---------------------|
| Material | Aluminium, extruded |
| Surface  | Powder-coated       |
| Width    | 27 mm               |
| Height   | 54 mm               |

##### Articulated arm profile, front, 25x44 mm

|          |                     |
|----------|---------------------|
| Material | Aluminium, extruded |
| Surface  | Powder-coated       |
| Width    | 25 mm               |
| Height   | 44 mm               |

##### Articulated arm profile, front, 30x56 mm

|          |                     |
|----------|---------------------|
| Material | Aluminium, extruded |
| Surface  | Powder-coated       |
| Width    | 30 mm               |
| Height   | 56 mm               |

##### Articulated arm profile, rear, 29x55 mm

|          |                     |
|----------|---------------------|
| Material | Aluminium, extruded |
| Surface  | Powder-coated       |
| Width    | 29 mm               |
| Height   | 55 mm               |

##### Articulated arm profile, rear, 35x67 mm

|          |                     |
|----------|---------------------|
| Material | Aluminium, extruded |
| Surface  | Powder-coated       |
| Width    | 35 mm               |
| Height   | 67 mm               |

#### + Articulated arm seat

##### Tilting joint - K50

|          |                                 |
|----------|---------------------------------|
| Material | Aluminium, permanent mould cast |
| Surface  | Powder-coated                   |

Tilting joint with windlock mechanism

#### + Power transmission

##### Textile tape

##### Flexband

Steel tension spring and flexband with integrated steel strands

## Console

### Wall console type A - K50

|          |                     |
|----------|---------------------|
| Material | Aluminium, extruded |
| Surface  | Powder-coated       |
| Width    | 72 mm               |
| Height   | 123 mm              |
| Depth    | 94 mm               |

### Wall console type C - K50

|          |               |
|----------|---------------|
| Material | Steel         |
| Surface  | Powder-coated |
| Width    | 210 mm        |
| Height   | 285 mm        |
| Depth    | 104 mm        |

Wall console type A with mounting plate, small (steel).

### Wall console type D - K50

|          |               |
|----------|---------------|
| Material | Steel         |
| Surface  | Powder-coated |
| Width    | 330 mm        |
| Height   | 285 mm        |
| Depth    | 104 mm        |

Wall console type A with mounting plate, large (steel).

### Ceiling console Type E - K50

|          |               |
|----------|---------------|
| Material | Aluminium     |
| Surface  | Powder-coated |
| Width    | 72 mm         |
| Height   | 114 mm        |
| Depth    | 182 mm        |

### Console for rafters type F - K50

|          |               |
|----------|---------------|
| Material | Aluminium     |
| Surface  | Powder-coated |
| Width    | 72 mm         |
| Height   | 344 mm        |
| Depth    | 182 mm        |

## Drive variants

- Motor

Drive variant, optional:

- Crank

## Motor

- Orea WT

Motor optional:

- R35/8G (solar)

## Radio motor, optional

- WMS-MM (WMS)
- W-MM (EWFS)

## Crank, optional

- Crank with ball hook

## Gear, optional

- Bevel gear with integrated limit stop 3:1

⊕ see "Drive variants", Page 367

## Colours

- RAL 9016 traffic white, satin finish
- RAL 9006 white aluminium, satin finish
- W 4916 Anthracite iron mica effect, fine texture

Colours, optional:

- WAREMA Colour World

⊕ see "WAREMA Colour World", Page 12

## Fabric qualities

- Standard acrylic fabric
- Lumera acrylic fabric

Fabric qualities, optional:

- Perfora acrylic
- All Weather acrylic
- Soltis 92
- Twilight Pearl

⊕ see "Awning collection", Page 356

## Supplementary accessories

- Solar drive
- WMS Wind sensor
- Valance roller blind with crank
- Integrated lighting
- LED strip light rail
- Radiant heater
- Fabric lettering, painted
- Sunprint
- Patio frame

⊕ see "Supplementary accessories", Page 257

## Construction limit values

The construction limit values and number of consoles indicated in this document relate to the concrete substructure C20/25 (B25) and installation on rafters.

| Configuration variants                                                                 | Projection          | 1500 mm | 2000 mm | 2500 mm | 3000 mm |
|----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|---------------------|---------|---------|---------|---------|
| <b>Fabric qualities + Drive variants</b>                                               |                     |         |         |         |         |
| Acrylic fabric / Twilight Pearl + Motor / Crank                                        | Minimum order width | 1870 mm | 2370 mm | 2880 mm | 3370 mm |
|                                                                                        | Maximum order width | 5000 mm | 5000 mm | 5000 mm | 5000 mm |
| Soltis 92 + Motor / Crank                                                              | Minimum order width | 1870 mm | 2370 mm | 2880 mm |         |
|                                                                                        | Maximum order width | 5000 mm | 5000 mm | 5000 mm |         |
| <b>Fabric qualities + Drive variants + Control systems</b>                             |                     |         |         |         |         |
| Acrylic fabric / Twilight Pearl + Motor + WMS Wind sensor                              | Minimum order width | 1950 mm | 2450 mm | 2950 mm | 3440 mm |
|                                                                                        | Maximum order width | 5000 mm | 5000 mm | 5000 mm | 5000 mm |
| Soltis 92 + Motor + WMS Wind sensor                                                    | Minimum order width | 1950 mm | 2450 mm | 2950 mm |         |
|                                                                                        | Maximum order width | 5000 mm | 5000 mm | 5000 mm |         |
| <b>Fabric qualities + Drive variants + Supplementary accessories</b>                   |                     |         |         |         |         |
| Acrylic fabric / Twilight Pearl + Motor / Crank + Valance roller blind                 | Minimum order width | 1870 mm | 2370 mm | 2880 mm |         |
|                                                                                        | Maximum order width | 5000 mm | 5000 mm | 5000 mm |         |
| Soltis 92 + Motor / Crank + Valance roller blind                                       | Minimum order width | 1870 mm | 2370 mm | 2880 mm |         |
|                                                                                        | Maximum order width | 5000 mm | 5000 mm | 5000 mm |         |
| <b>Fabric qualities + Drive variants + Supplementary accessories + Control systems</b> |                     |         |         |         |         |
| Acrylic fabric / Twilight Pearl + Motor + Valance roller blind + WMS Wind sensor       | Minimum order width | 1950 mm | 2450 mm | 2950 mm |         |
|                                                                                        | Maximum order width | 5000 mm | 5000 mm | 5000 mm |         |
| Soltis 92 + Motor + Valance roller blind + WMS Wind sensor                             | Minimum order width | 1950 mm | 2450 mm | 2950 mm |         |
|                                                                                        | Maximum order width | 5000 mm | 5000 mm | 5000 mm |         |

## Dimensions

Weight per running metre: 15 - 18 kg/lfm

Weight per running metre, notes: Without consoles, depending on fitted equipment

## Inclination

Inclination angle: 5 - 35 °

Inclination angle, standard: 5 °

Inclination angle for rain class 2: 20 - 35 °

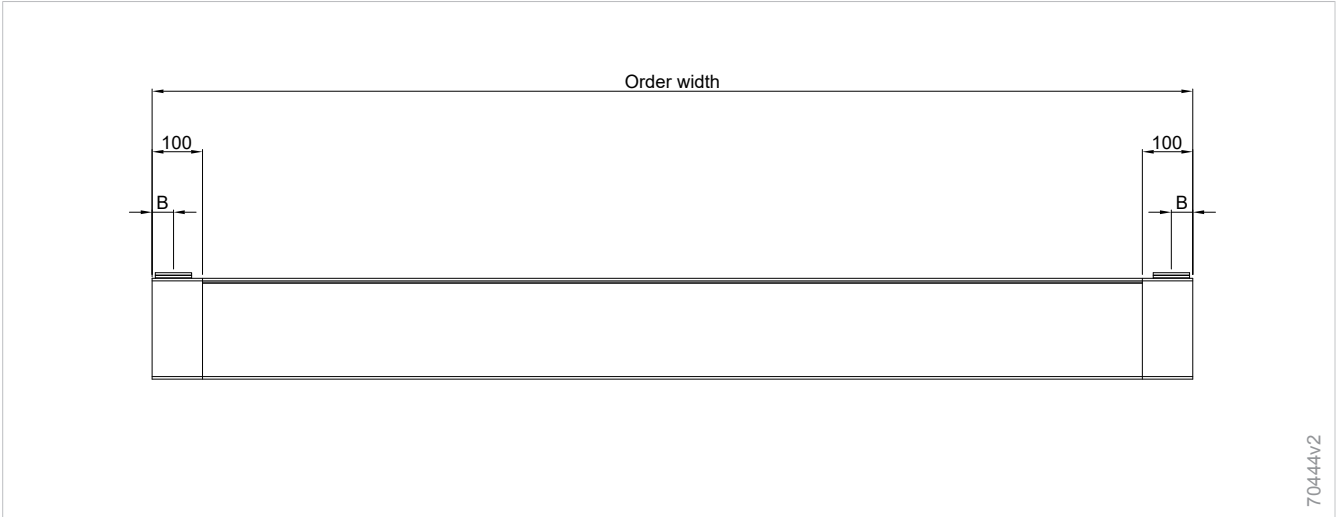
- Fine adjustment of inclination angle during installation.
- Basic inclination depending on building size and model, tolerance  $\pm 5^\circ$ .

## Dimension determination

The **projection** is defined from the back edge of the console to the leading edge of the front rail, measured across the inclination angle of the fabric.

For **recess installation**, additional lateral space of at least 60 mm is required.

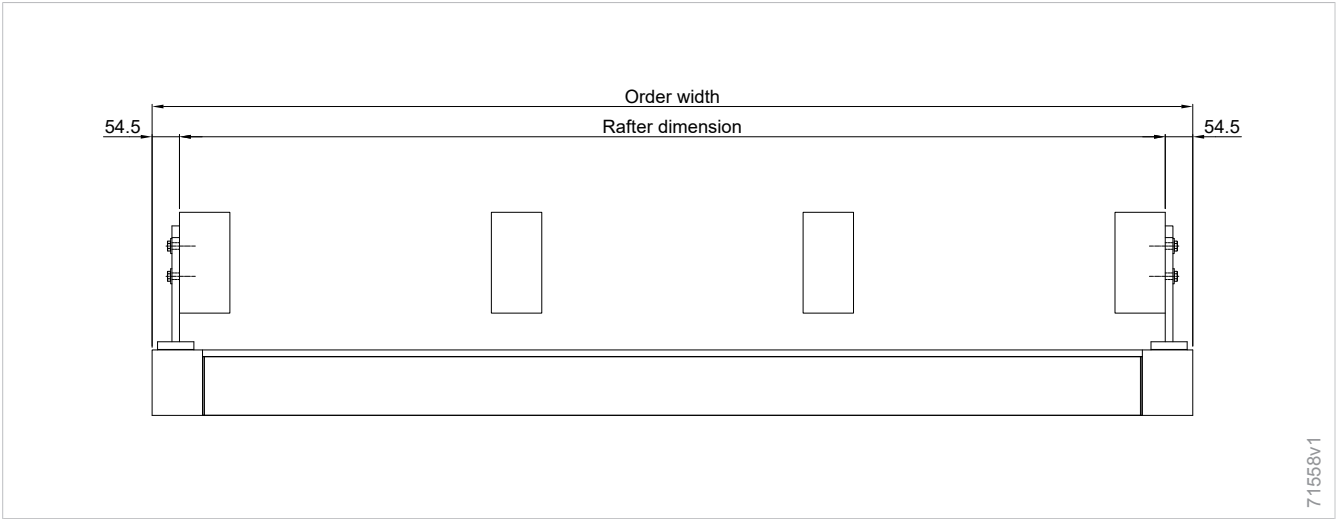
Wall/ceiling installation - K50



Planning

Terrea

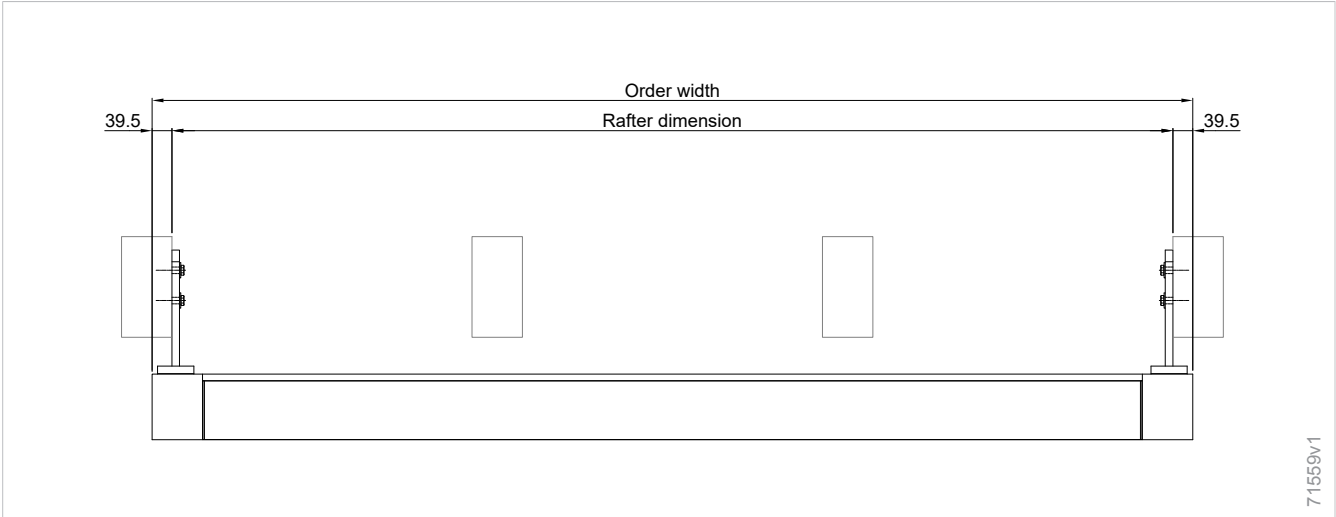
Rafter installation, outside fixing - K50



Perea

Patio  
side screens

Rafter installation, inside fixing - K50



Climara

Supplementary  
accessories

Components

Drive  
variants

Standards

## Quantity determination

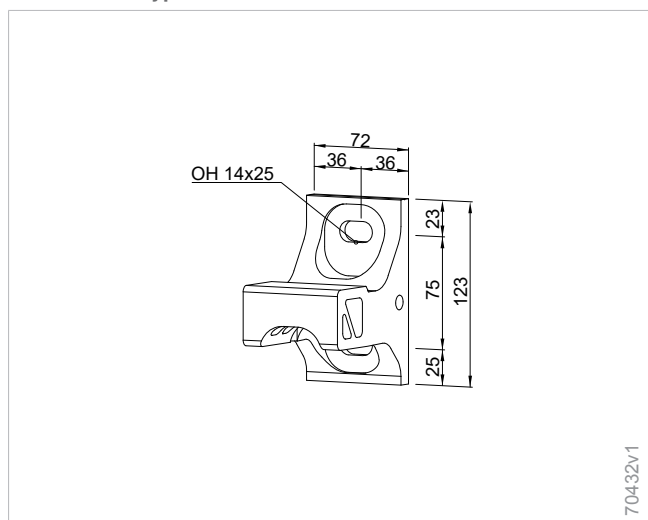
### Number of consoles, individual unit

| Configuration variants                                                         | Order width | Projection |         |         |         |
|--------------------------------------------------------------------------------|-------------|------------|---------|---------|---------|
|                                                                                |             | 1500 mm    | 2000 mm | 2500 mm | 3000 mm |
| Console/Bracket                                                                |             |            |         |         |         |
| Wall console / Ceiling console / Console for rafters                           | 0 - 5000 mm | 2          | 2       | 2       | 2       |
| Console/Bracket + Supplementary accessories                                    |             |            |         |         |         |
| Wall console / Ceiling console / Console for rafters +<br>Valance roller blind | 0 - 5000 mm | 2          | 2       | 2       |         |

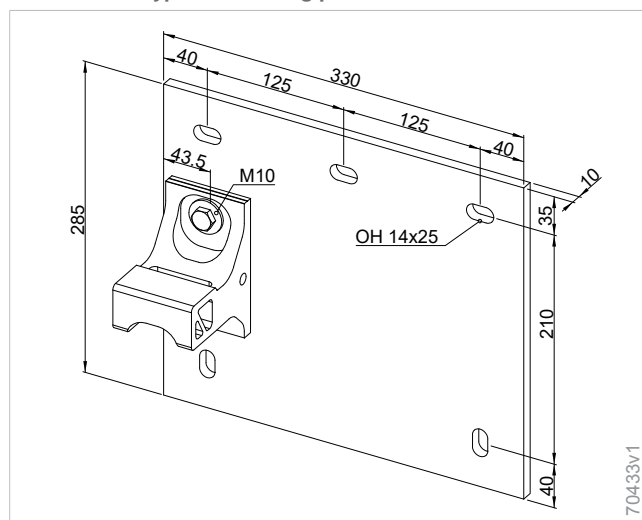
Number of consoles in relation to the concrete substructure C20/25 (B25)  
and installation on rafters.

## Details

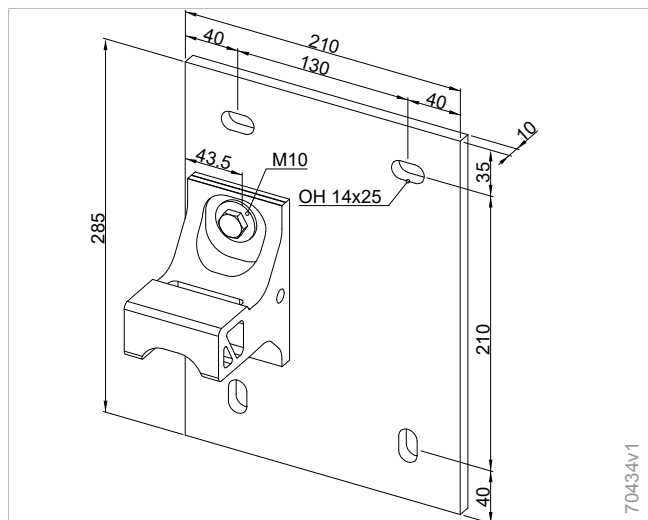
Wall console type A - K50



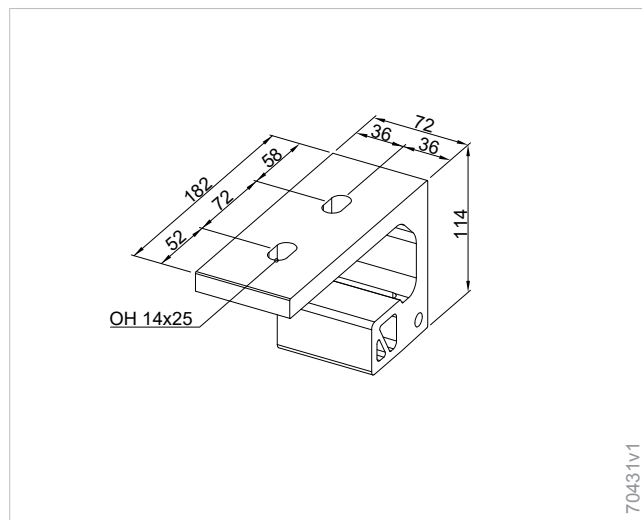
Wall console type D mounting plate - K50



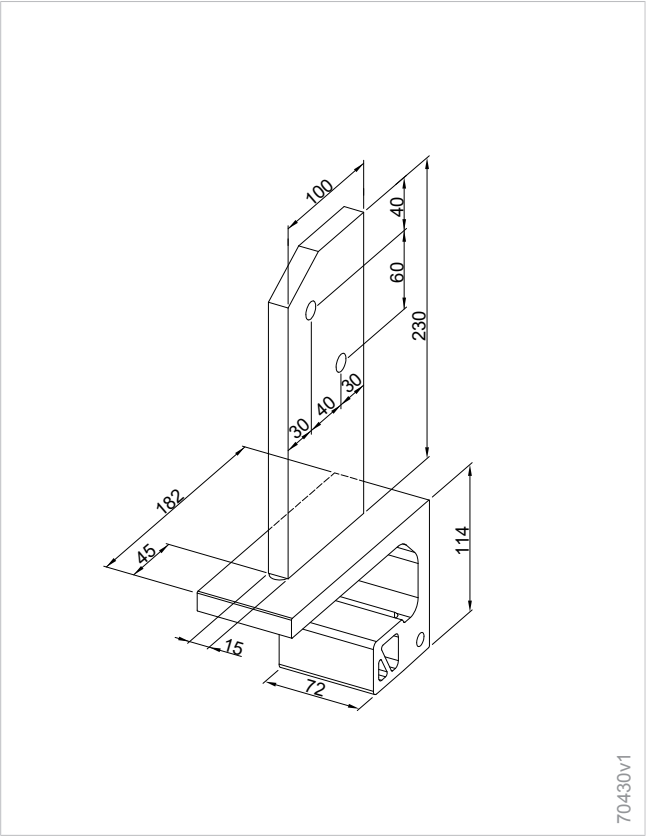
Wall console type C mounting plate - K50



Ceiling console type E - K50

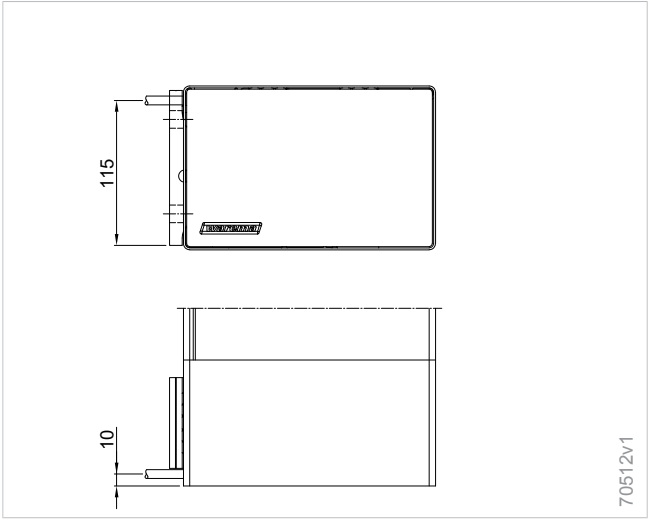


Console for rafters type F - K50



70430v1

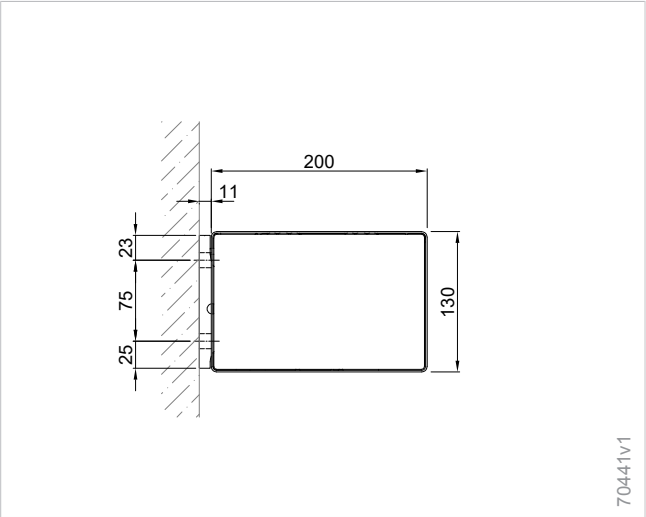
Cable exit - K50



70512v1

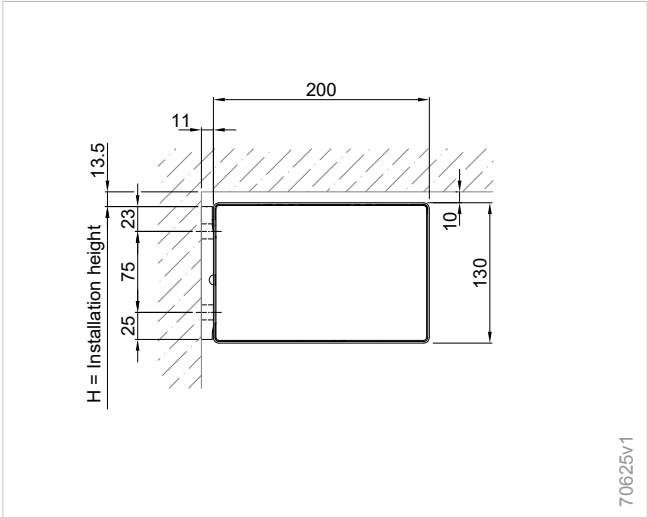
## Mounting examples

Wall installation - K50



70441v1

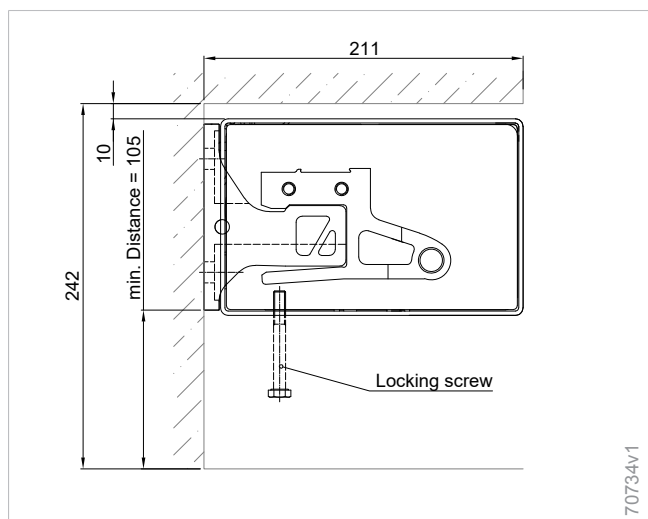
Under eaves - K50



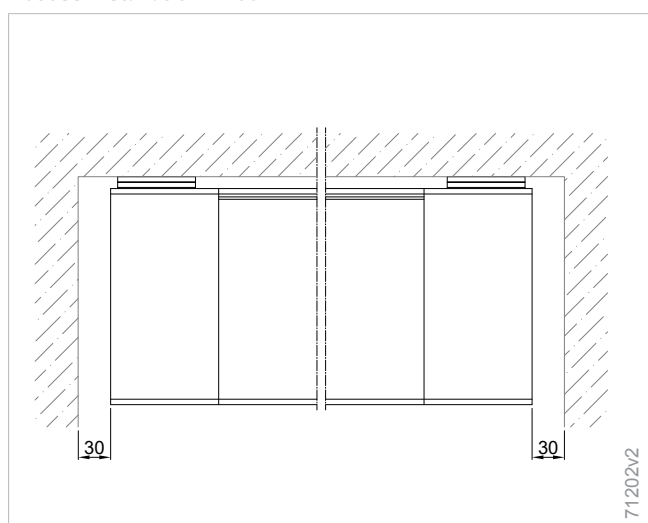
70625v1



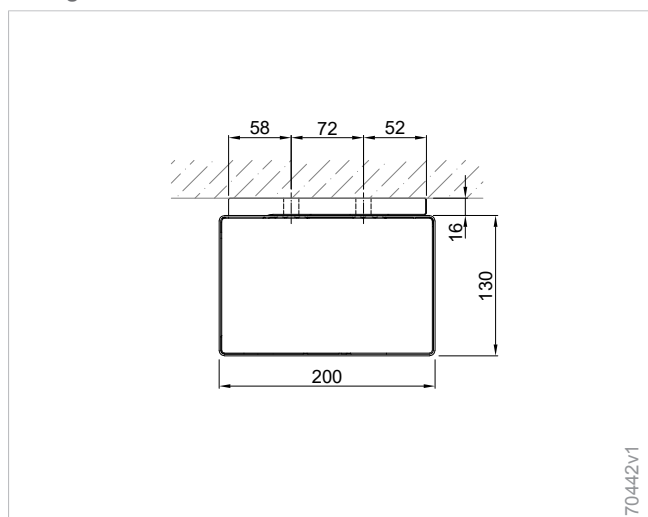
Shaft installation - K50



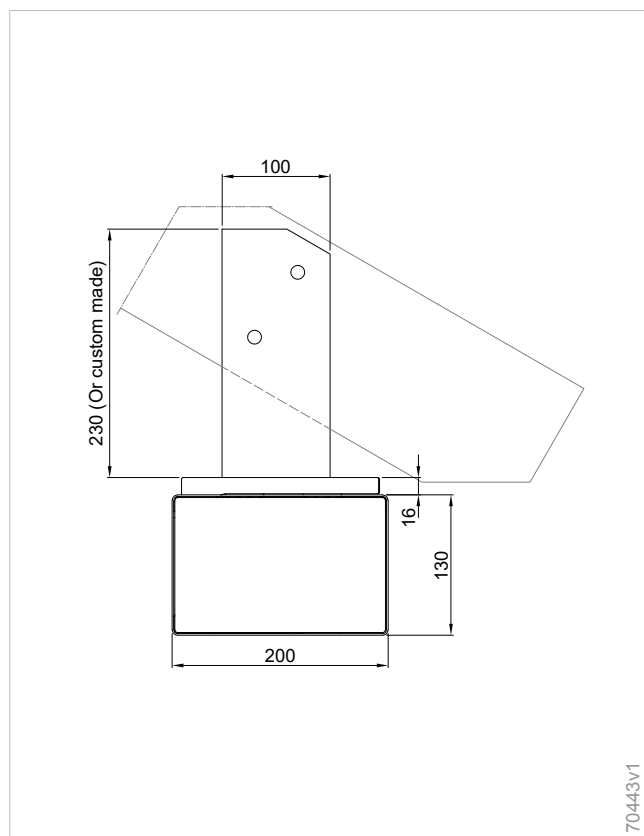
Recess installation - K50



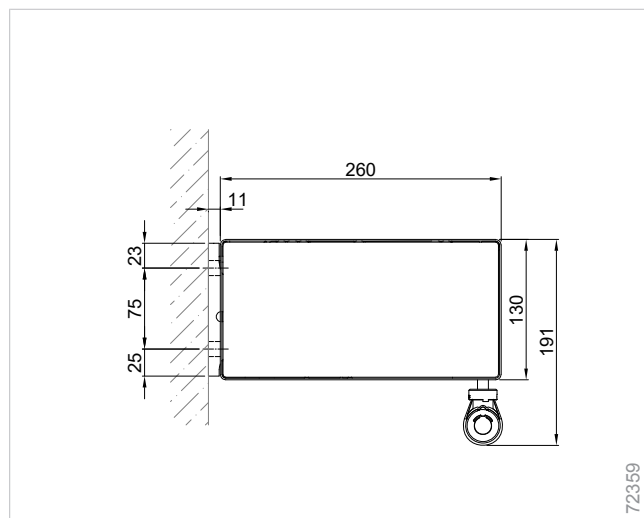
Ceiling installation - K50



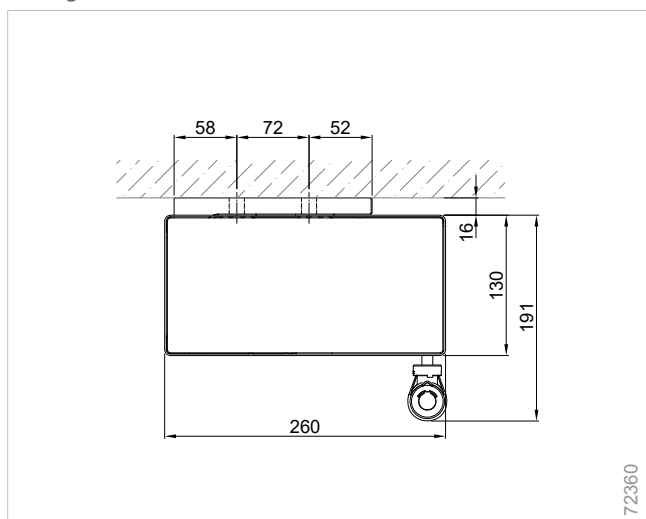
Rafter installation - K50



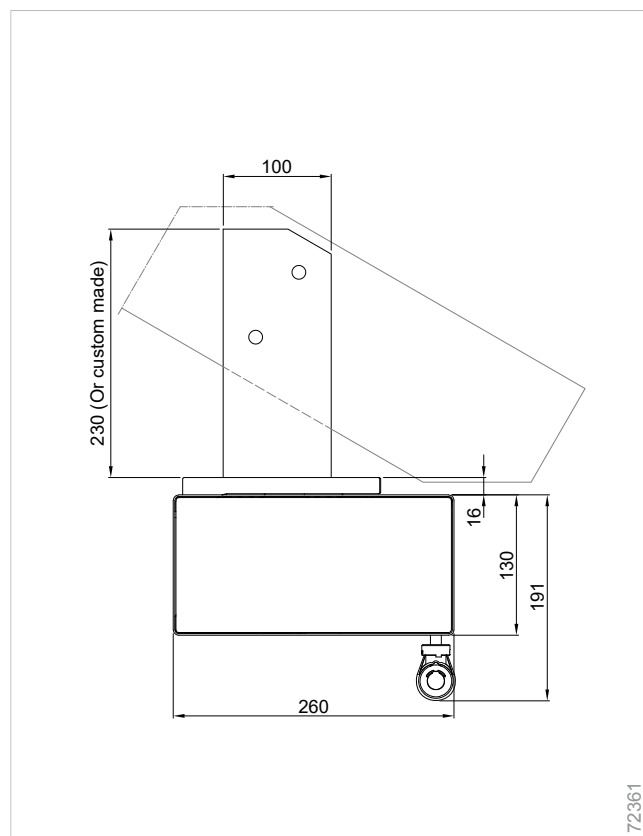
Wall installation with valance roller blind - K50



Ceiling installation with valance roller blind - K50



Rafter installation with valance roller blind - K50



Planning

Terrea

Perea

Patio  
side screens

Climara

Supplementary  
accessories

Components

Drive  
variants

Standards

## Further information

Calculate the exact position of the console, tensile force and wind resistance class  
<https://konsolenplaner.warema.de/v2/>



Visualise your product with the WAREMA Designer  
You can download the app for free from your app store.



Use our free planning programme to plan your sun protection systems  
<https://sonnenschutzplaner.com/>



Configure and plan your product with myWAREMA  
<https://my.warema.com>



Experience the range of colours and fabrics of the WAREMA collections  
<https://www.warema.de/Tools/Kollektionsberater.php>



TechDataPLUS Articulated arm/cassette awnings  
<https://docs.warema.com/1.1444.4>





# Cassette awnings Terrea

## Cassette awning Terrea K60

### Versatile

With a wide selection of colours, fabrics and accessories, the awning can be adapted to individual wishes.

### Comfortable

The optional WMS Comfort control ensures comfortable operation.

### Reliable

The cassette awning K60 is also a reliable shading system for large areas.



### Construction limit values

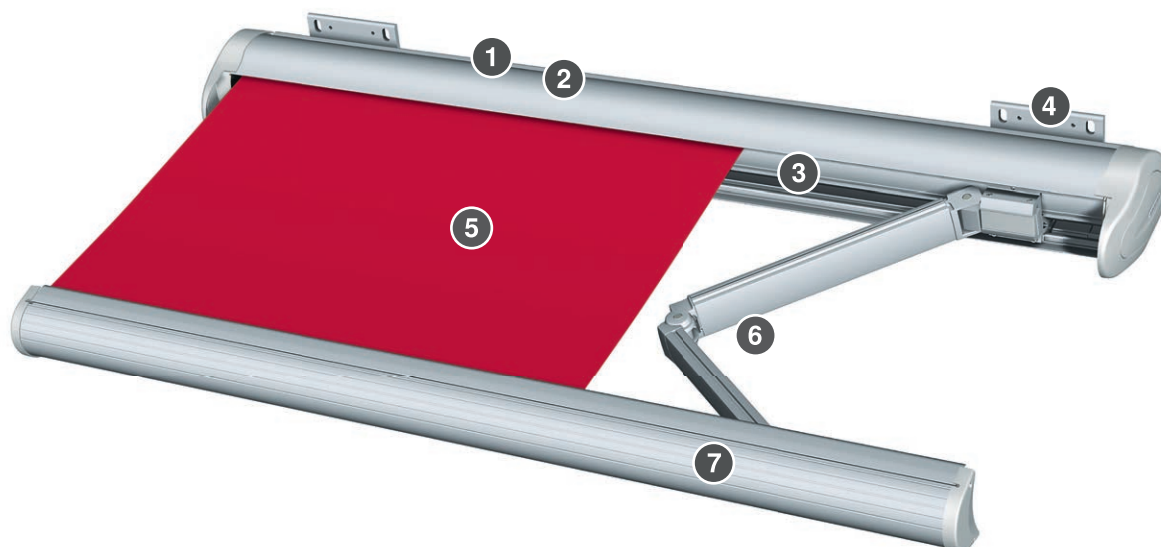
|                                   |          |
|-----------------------------------|----------|
| Maximum order width               | 7000 mm  |
| Maximum projection                | 4000 mm  |
| Maximum order width of group unit | 13500 mm |

### Product characteristics

- Large cassette awning with corresponding design
- Diverse solutions for almost any patio situation

# Components

## Cassette awning Terrea K60



- 1 Cassette
- 2 Shaft
- 3 Fabric bearing shell
- 4 Console

- 5 Fabric
- 6 Articulated arm
- 7 Front rail

### Cassette

#### Cassette - K60

|          |                     |
|----------|---------------------|
| Material | Aluminium, extruded |
| Surface  | Powder-coated       |
| Width    | 240 mm              |
| Height   | 165 mm              |

#### + Side cover

##### Cassette side cover - K60

|          |               |
|----------|---------------|
| Material | Aluminium     |
| Surface  | Powder-coated |

### Shaft

#### Fabric shaft Ø 78 mm

|          |                  |
|----------|------------------|
| Material | Galvanised steel |
| Surface  | Plain            |
| Profile  | Groove tube      |
| Diameter | 78 mm            |

### Fabric bearing shell

#### Fabric bearing shell - K60

|          |                     |
|----------|---------------------|
| Material | Aluminium, extruded |
| Surface  | Powder-coated       |

### Front rail

#### Front rail - K60

|          |                     |
|----------|---------------------|
| Material | Aluminium, extruded |
| Surface  | Powder-coated       |
| Width    | 83 mm               |
| Height   | 112 mm              |

#### + Side cover

##### Front rail side cover - K60

|          |               |
|----------|---------------|
| Material | Aluminium     |
| Surface  | Powder-coated |

### Front rail, optional

#### Front rail - K60 with valance roller blind

|          |                     |
|----------|---------------------|
| Material | Aluminium, extruded |
| Surface  | Powder-coated       |
| Width    | 144 mm              |
| Height   | 112 mm              |

#### + Side cover

##### Front rail side cover - K60 with valance roller blind

|          |               |
|----------|---------------|
| Material | Aluminium     |
| Surface  | Powder-coated |

### Articulated arm

#### Articulated arm - K60

#### + Articulated arm seat

##### Articulated arm profile, front, 33x61 mm

|          |                     |
|----------|---------------------|
| Material | Aluminium, extruded |
| Surface  | Powder-coated       |
| Width    | 33 mm               |
| Height   | 61 mm               |

##### Articulated arm profile, rear, 35x68 mm

|          |                     |
|----------|---------------------|
| Material | Aluminium, extruded |
| Surface  | Powder-coated       |
| Width    | 35 mm               |
| Height   | 68 mm               |

#### + Articulated arm profile

##### Articulated arm seat - K60

|          |                     |
|----------|---------------------|
| Material | Aluminium, extruded |
| Surface  | Powder-coated       |

#### + Power transmission

##### Steel cable

##### Link chain

#### + Power transmission, optional

##### Segment

|          |                     |
|----------|---------------------|
| Material | Aluminium, extruded |
|----------|---------------------|

#### Wall connection profile, optional

|          |                     |
|----------|---------------------|
| Material | Aluminium, extruded |
| Surface  | Powder-coated       |
| Width    | 191 mm              |
| Height   | 120 mm              |

When using console type D, the mounting plate must be used crosswise.

#### Console

##### Wall console type B - K60, adjustable

|          |                     |
|----------|---------------------|
| Material | Aluminium, extruded |
| Surface  | Powder-coated       |
| Width    | 191 mm              |
| Height   | 174 mm              |
| Depth    | 100 mm              |

##### Wall console type D - K60, adjustable

|          |               |
|----------|---------------|
| Material | Steel         |
| Surface  | Powder-coated |
| Width    | 330 mm        |
| Height   | 285 mm        |
| Depth    | 110 mm        |

Wall console type B with mounting plate, large (steel).

##### Wall console type D - K60, adjustable with crosswise mounting plate

|          |               |
|----------|---------------|
| Material | Steel         |
| Surface  | Powder-coated |
| Width    | 660 mm        |
| Height   | 230 mm        |
| Depth    | 110 mm        |

Wall console type B with mounting plate, crosswise (steel).

The console and mounting plate largely disappear behind the awning, even on poor substructures.

##### Ceiling console type E - K60, adjustable

|          |                     |
|----------|---------------------|
| Material | Aluminium, extruded |
| Surface  | Powder-coated       |
| Width    | 175 mm              |
| Height   | 189 mm              |
| Depth    | 110 mm              |

##### Ceiling console type E - K60, adjustable, large

|          |                     |
|----------|---------------------|
| Material | Aluminium, extruded |
| Surface  | Powder-coated       |
| Width    | 330 mm              |
| Height   | 184 mm              |
| Depth    | 285 mm              |

Ceiling console type E, adjustable with mounting plate, large (steel)

##### Console for rafters type F - K60, adjustable

|          |                  |
|----------|------------------|
| Material | Galvanised steel |
| Surface  | Powder-coated    |
| Width    | 120 mm           |
| Height   | 399 mm           |
| Depth    | 206 mm           |

##### Wall console type B - K60, fixed

|          |                     |
|----------|---------------------|
| Material | Aluminium, extruded |
| Surface  | Powder-coated       |
| Width    | 191 mm              |
| Height   | 187 mm              |
| Depth    | 51 mm               |

##### Wall console type D - K60, fixed

|          |               |
|----------|---------------|
| Material | Steel         |
| Surface  | Powder-coated |
| Width    | 330 mm        |
| Height   | 285 mm        |
| Depth    | 61 mm         |

Wall console type B with mounting plate, large (steel).

##### Ceiling console type E - K60, fixed

|          |                     |
|----------|---------------------|
| Material | Aluminium, extruded |
| Surface  | Powder-coated       |
| Width    | 175 mm              |
| Height   | 188 mm              |
| Depth    | 193 mm              |

##### Ceiling console type E - K60, fixed, large

|          |               |
|----------|---------------|
| Material | Steel         |
| Surface  | Powder-coated |
| Width    | 330 mm        |
| Height   | 198 mm        |
| Depth    | 285 mm        |

Ceiling console type E, fixed, large (steel)

##### Console for rafters type F - K60, fixed

|          |                  |
|----------|------------------|
| Material | Galvanised steel |
| Surface  | Powder-coated    |
| Width    | 175 mm           |
| Height   | 398 mm           |
| Depth    | 206 mm           |

## Console, optional

### Console cover for adjustable consoles K60

|          |                                 |
|----------|---------------------------------|
| Material | Aluminium, permanent mould cast |
| Surface  | Powder-coated                   |
| Width    | 203 mm                          |
| Height   | 187 mm                          |

For facing the adjustable console mechanism. Can be used with all adjustable consoles.

## Drive variants

- Motor

Drive variant, optional:

- Crank

## Motor

- Orea WT

Motor optional:

- R35/8G (solar)
- LT50 NHK

## Radio motor, optional

- WMS-MM (WMS)
- W-MM (EWFS)

## Crank, optional

- Crank with ball hook

## Gear, optional

- Bevel gear with free wheel at the lower limit point

➤ see "Drive variants", Page 367

## Colours

- WAREMA Colour World

➤ see "WAREMA Colour World", Page 12

## Fabric qualities

- Standard acrylic fabric
- Lumera acrylic fabric

Fabric qualities, optional:

- Perfora acrylic
- All Weather acrylic
- Soltis 92
- Twilight Pearl

➤ see "Awning collection", Page 356

## Supplementary accessories

- Motor with additional collapsible crank ZHK
- Solar drive
- WMS Wind sensor
- Valance roller blind with motor and integrated WMS comfort control
- Valance roller blind with motor and basic model
- Valance roller blind with crank
- Integrated lighting
- LED strip light rail
- Radiant heater
- Fabric lettering, painted
- Sunprint
- Patio frame

➤ see "Supplementary accessories", Page 257

## Construction limit values

The construction limit values and number of consoles indicated in this document relate to the concrete substructure C20/25 (B25) and installation on rafters.

| Configuration variants                                               | Projection                        | 1500 mm  | 2000 mm  | 2500 mm  | 3000 mm  | 3500 mm  | 4000 mm |
|----------------------------------------------------------------------|-----------------------------------|----------|----------|----------|----------|----------|---------|
| <b>Fabric qualities + Drive variants</b>                             |                                   |          |          |          |          |          |         |
| Acrylic fabric / Twilight Pearl + Motor                              | Minimum order width               | 1930 mm  | 2450 mm  | 2950 mm  | 3460 mm  | 3970 mm  | 4480 mm |
|                                                                      | Maximum order width               | 7000 mm  | 7000 mm  | 7000 mm  | 7000 mm  | 7000 mm  | 7000 mm |
|                                                                      | Minimum group unit order width    | 4360 mm  | 5400 mm  | 6400 mm  | 7420 mm  | 8440 mm  |         |
|                                                                      | Maximum order width of group unit | 13500 mm | 13500 mm | 13500 mm | 13500 mm | 13500 mm |         |
| Acrylic fabric / Twilight Pearl + Crank                              | Minimum order width               | 1950 mm  | 2470 mm  | 2970 mm  | 3480 mm  | 3990 mm  | 4500 mm |
|                                                                      | Maximum order width               | 6500 mm  | 6500 mm  | 6500 mm  | 6500 mm  | 6500 mm  | 6500 mm |
| Soltis 92 + Motor                                                    | Minimum order width               | 1930 mm  | 2450 mm  | 2950 mm  |          |          |         |
|                                                                      | Maximum order width               | 5500 mm  | 5500 mm  | 5500 mm  |          |          |         |
| Soltis 92 + Crank                                                    | Minimum order width               | 1950 mm  | 2470 mm  | 2970 mm  |          |          |         |
|                                                                      | Maximum order width               | 5500 mm  | 5500 mm  | 5500 mm  |          |          |         |
| <b>Fabric qualities + Drive variants + Supplementary accessories</b> |                                   |          |          |          |          |          |         |
| Acrylic fabric / Twilight Pearl + Motor + Valance roller blind       | Minimum order width               | 1930 mm  | 2450 mm  | 2950 mm  | 3460 mm  | 3970 mm  |         |
|                                                                      | Maximum order width               | 7000 mm  | 7000 mm  | 7000 mm  | 7000 mm  | 7000 mm  |         |
|                                                                      | Minimum group unit order width    | 4360 mm  | 5400 mm  | 6400 mm  | 7420 mm  |          |         |
|                                                                      | Maximum order width of group unit | 13500 mm | 13500 mm | 13500 mm | 13500 mm |          |         |
| Acrylic fabric / Twilight Pearl + Crank + Valance roller blind       | Minimum order width               | 1950 mm  | 2470 mm  | 2970 mm  | 3480 mm  | 3990 mm  |         |
|                                                                      | Maximum order width               | 6500 mm  | 6500 mm  | 6500 mm  | 6500 mm  | 6500 mm  |         |
| Soltis 92 + Motor + Valance roller blind                             | Minimum order width               | 1930 mm  | 2450 mm  | 2950 mm  |          |          |         |
|                                                                      | Maximum order width               | 5500 mm  | 5500 mm  | 5500 mm  |          |          |         |
| Soltis 92 + Crank + Valance roller blind                             | Minimum order width               | 1950 mm  | 2470 mm  | 2970 mm  |          |          |         |
|                                                                      | Maximum order width               | 5500 mm  | 5500 mm  | 5500 mm  |          |          |         |

4000 mm projection not possible with **bonded fabric connection**.



## Dimensions

Weight per running metre: 20,5 - 22,5 kg/lfm

Weight per running metre, notes: Without consoles, depending on fitted equipment

## Inclination

Inclination angle: 5 - 30 °

Inclination angle, standard: 5 °

Inclination angle for rain class 2: 14 - 30 °

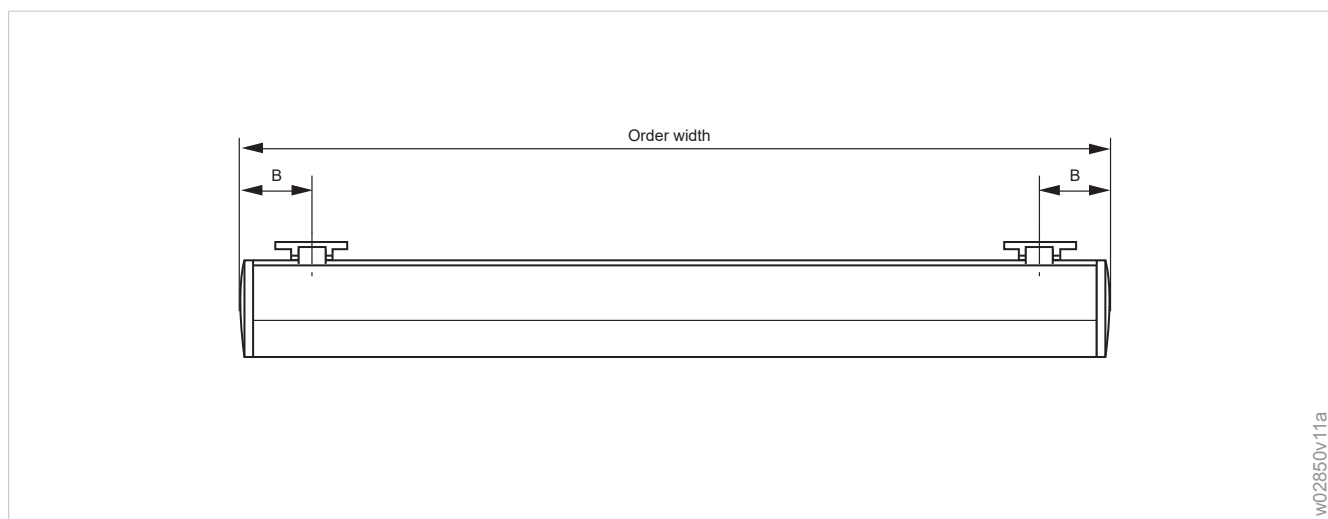
- Inclination angle with **rigid console** approx. 0°–20° depending on projection and fitted equipment according to inclination table
- Fine adjustment of inclination angle during installation.
- Basic inclination depending on building size and model, tolerance  $\pm 5^\circ$ .

## Dimension determination

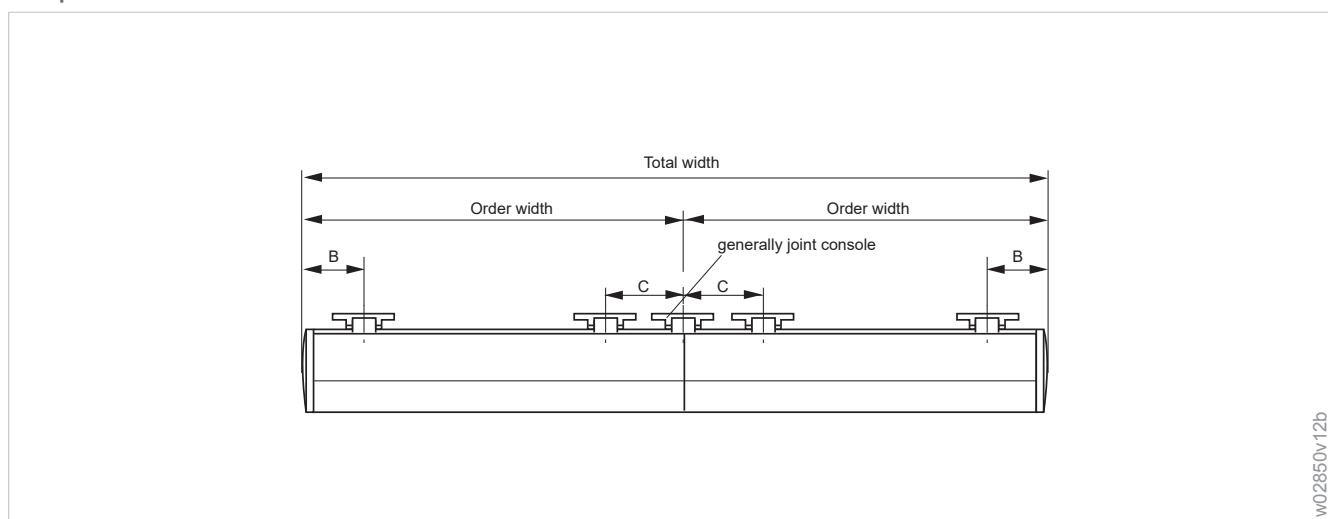
The **projection** is defined from the back edge of the console to the leading edge of the front rail, measured across the inclination angle of the fabric.

When **installing group units in recesses**, additional space of at least 100 mm is required for installation.

### Individual unit - K60



### Group unit with slit cover blind - K60



## Quantity determination

### Number of consoles, individual unit

| Configuration variants                                                      | Order width | Projection |         |         |         |         |         |
|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------|-------------|------------|---------|---------|---------|---------|---------|
|                                                                             |             | 1500 mm    | 2000 mm | 2500 mm | 3000 mm | 3500 mm | 4000 mm |
| Console/Bracket                                                             |             |            |         |         |         |         |         |
| Wall console / Ceiling console / Console for rafters                        | 0 - 7000 mm | 2          | 2       | 2       | 2       | 2       | 2       |
| Console/Bracket + Supplementary accessories                                 |             |            |         |         |         |         |         |
| Wall console / Ceiling console / Console for rafters + Valance roller blind | 0 - 7000 mm | 2          | 2       | 2       | 2       | 2       |         |

### Number of consoles, group unit

| Configuration variants                                                      | Order width  | Projection |         |         |         |         |
|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------|--------------|------------|---------|---------|---------|---------|
|                                                                             |              | 1500 mm    | 2000 mm | 2500 mm | 3000 mm | 3500 mm |
| Console/Bracket                                                             |              |            |         |         |         |         |
| Wall console / Ceiling console / Console for rafters                        | 0 - 13500 mm | 5          | 5       | 5       | 5       | 5       |
| Console/Bracket + Supplementary accessories                                 |              |            |         |         |         |         |
| Wall console / Ceiling console / Console for rafters + Valance roller blind | 0 - 13500 mm | 5          | 5       | 5       | 5       |         |

Number of consoles in relation to the concrete substructure C20/25 (B25) and installation on rafters.

#### Attention:

- With **special arm positions** and console axis distances of > 5200 mm, a third console is required.
- For the following sizes, an additional mounting plate is required for **ceiling installation**.
  - Individual unit with projection of up to 3500 mm from an order width of 6501 mm
  - Individual unit with projection of up to 4000 mm from an order width of 5001 mm
  - Individual unit with valance roller blinds with projection of up to 3500 mm from an order width of 5501 mm
  - Group unit with order width from 13001 mm

## Inclination angle table - K60 without valance roller blind

Inclination angle with rigid console depends on insert without valance roller blind

| Projection | No. 1    | No. 2     | No. 3     |
|------------|----------|-----------|-----------|
| 1500 mm    | 0° - 5°  | 5° - 10°  | 10° - 15° |
| 2000 mm    | 0° - 5°  | 5° - 10°  | 10° - 15° |
| 2500 mm    | 2° - 7°  | 7° - 12°  | 12° - 17° |
| 3000 mm    | 3° - 8°  | 8° - 13°  | 13° - 18° |
| 3500 mm    | 4° - 9°  | 9° - 14°  | 14° - 19° |
| 4000 mm    | 5° - 10° | 10° - 15° | 15° - 20° |

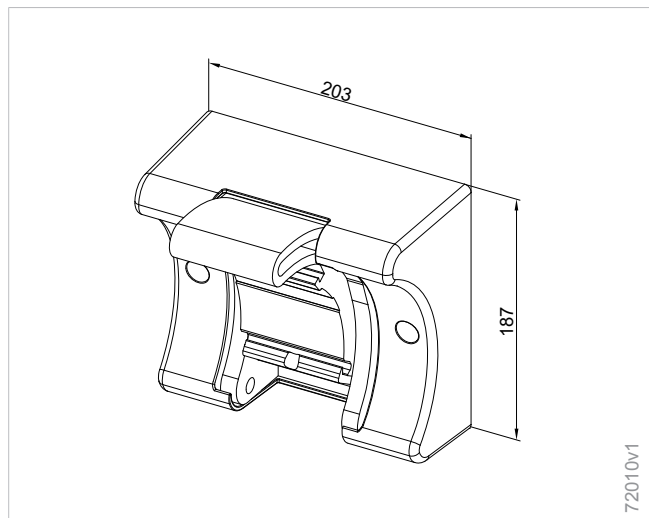
## Inclination angle table - K60 with valance roller blind

Inclination angle with rigid console depends on insert with valance roller blind

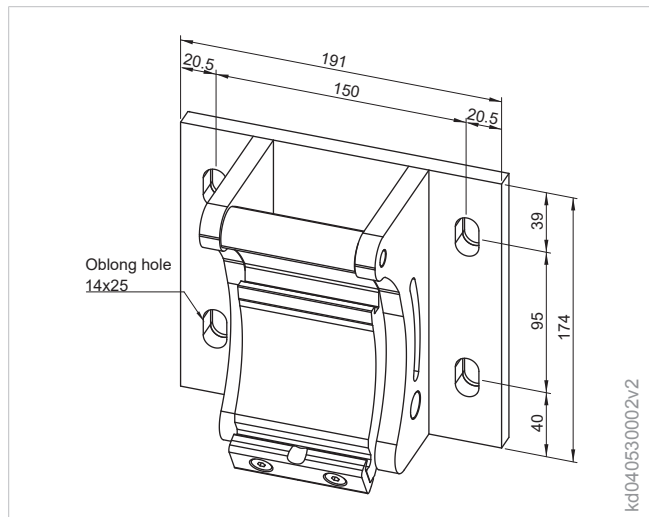
| Projection | No. 1    | No. 2     | No. 3     |
|------------|----------|-----------|-----------|
| 1500 mm    | 1° - 6°  | 6° - 11°  | 11° - 16° |
| 2000 mm    | 1° - 6°  | 6° - 11°  | 11° - 16° |
| 2500 mm    | 4° - 9°  | 9° - 14°  | 14° - 19° |
| 3000 mm    | 3° - 8°  | 8° - 13°  | 13° - 18° |
| 3500 mm    | 4° - 10° | 10° - 15° | 15° - 20° |

## Details

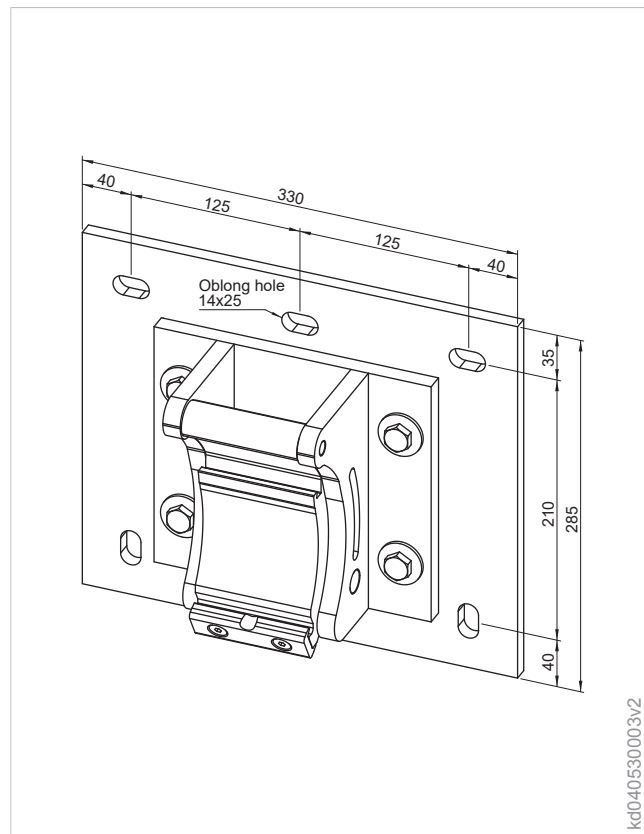
Wall console type B, adjustable with console cover - K60



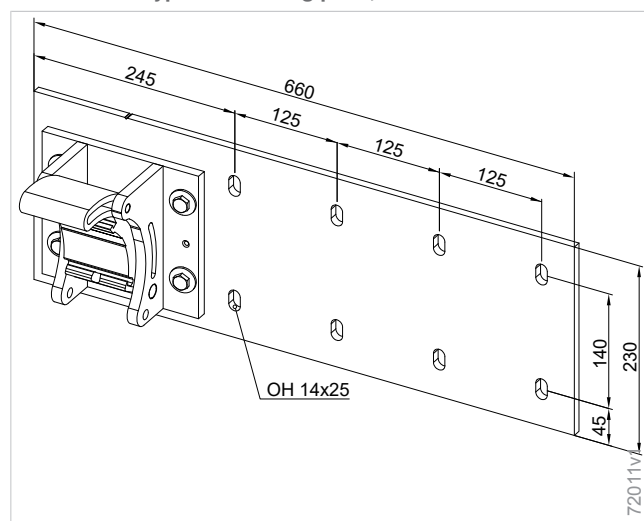
Wall console type B, adjustable - K60



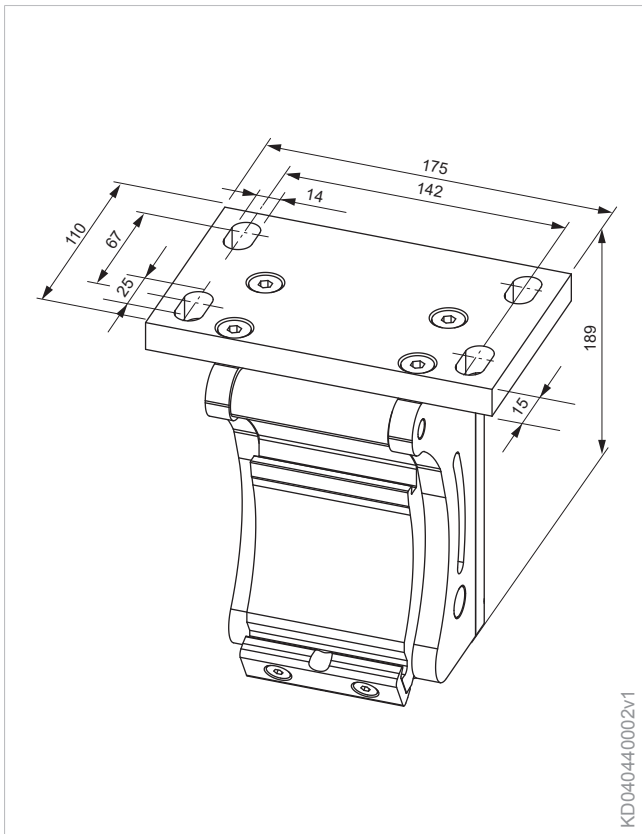
Wall console type D mounting plate, adjustable - K60



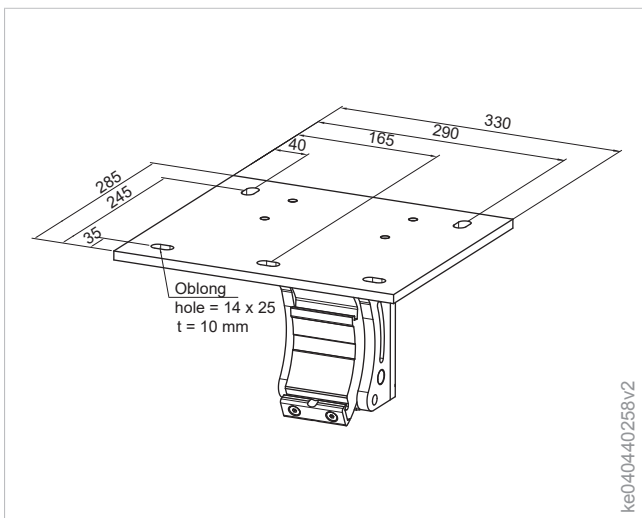
Wall console type D mounting plate, crosswise - K60



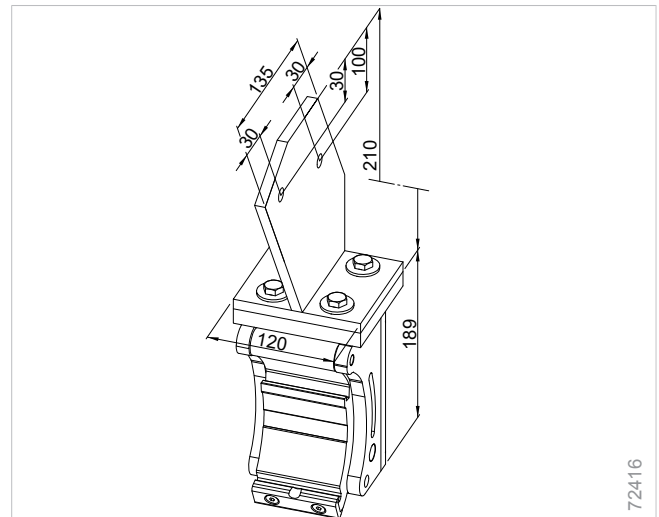
Ceiling console type E, adjustable - K60



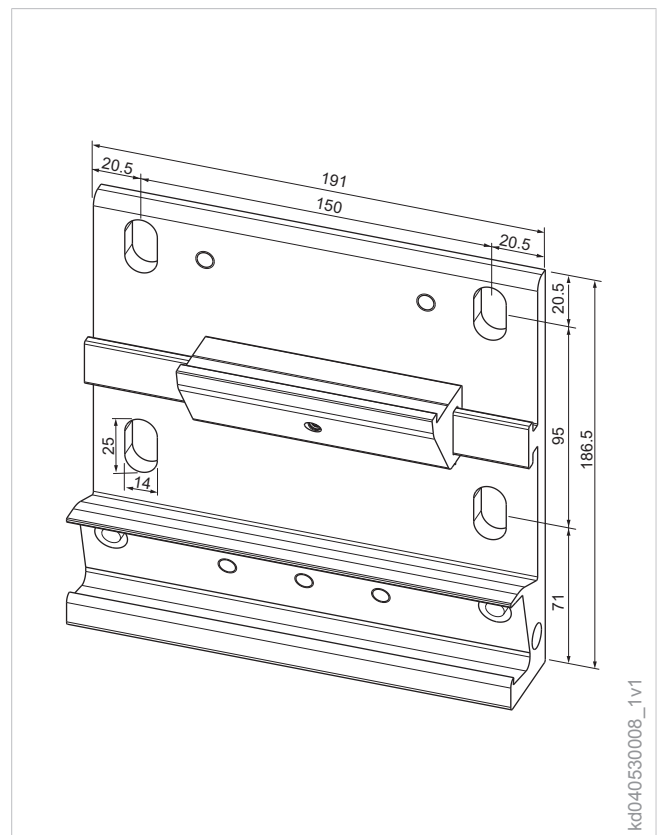
Ceiling console type E, adjustable 4000 mm projection (depending on width) - K60



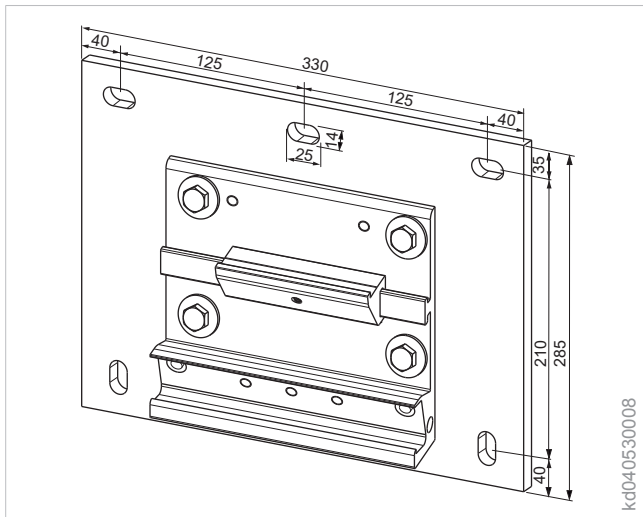
Console for rafters type F, adjustable - K60



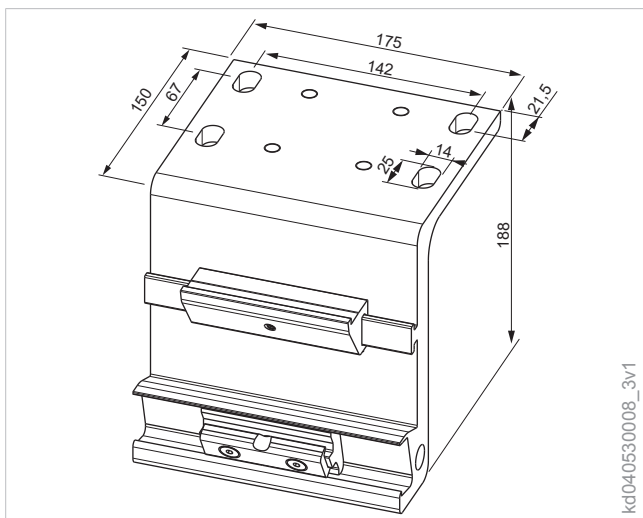
Wall console type B, fixed - K60



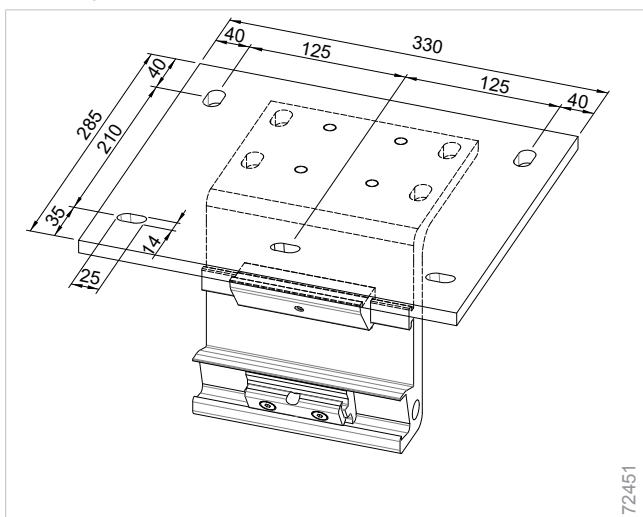
Wall console type D with mounting plate, fixed - K60



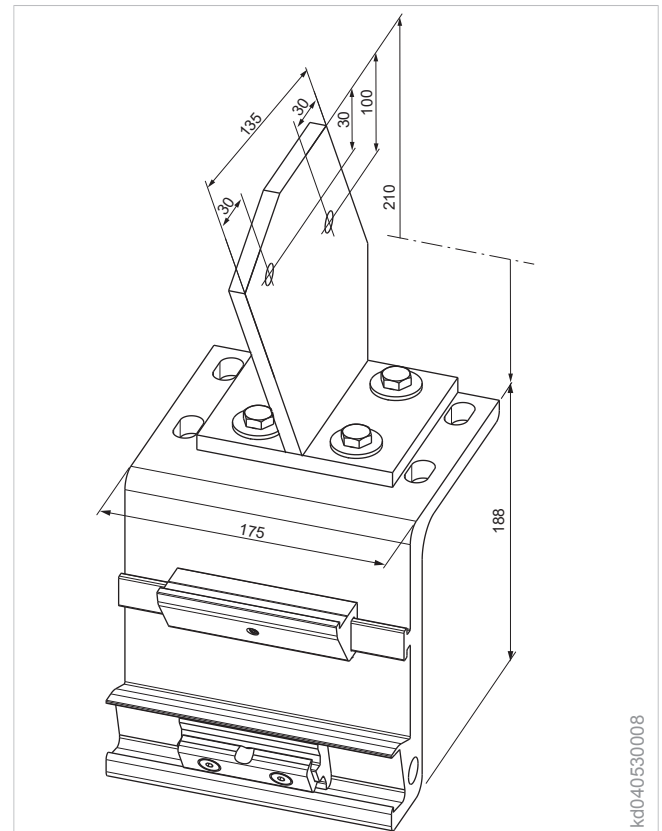
Ceiling console type E, fixed - K60



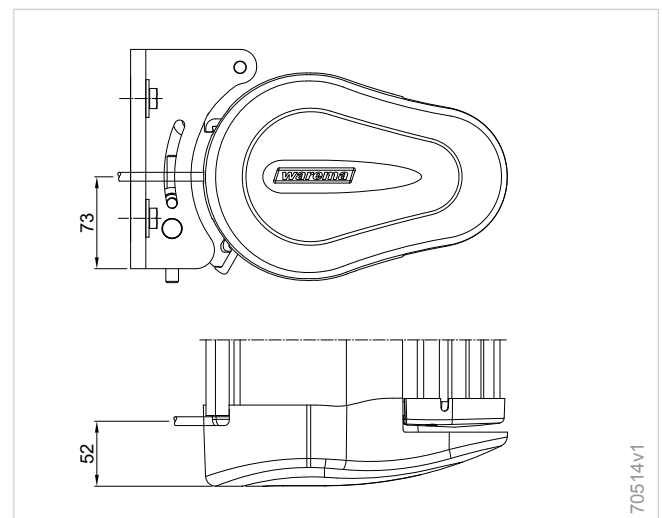
Ceiling console type E, fixed, 4000 mm projection (depending on width) - K60



Console for rafters type F, rigid - K60



Cable exit with adjustable console - K60



Planning

Terrea

Perea

Patio side screens

Climara

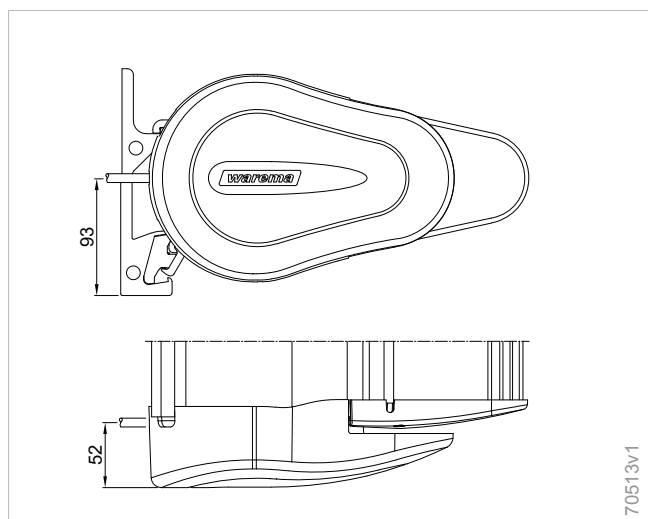
Supplementary accessories

Components

Drive variants

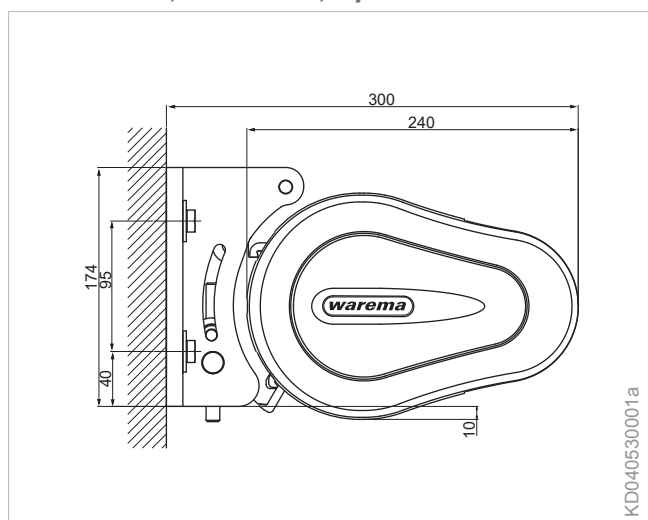
Standards

## Cable exit for fixed console - K60

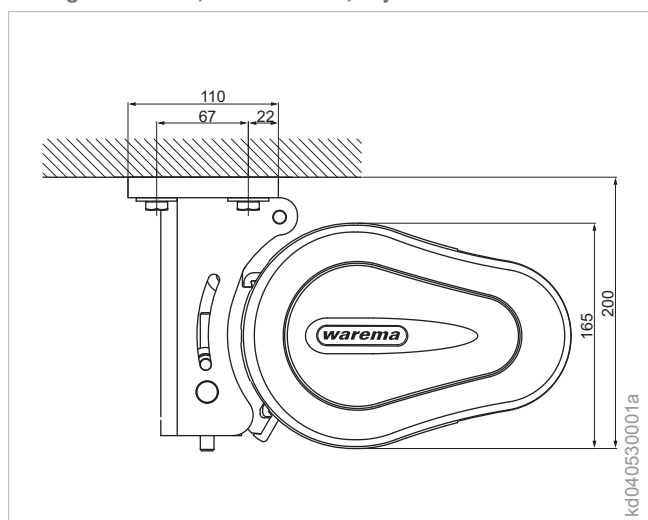


## Mounting examples

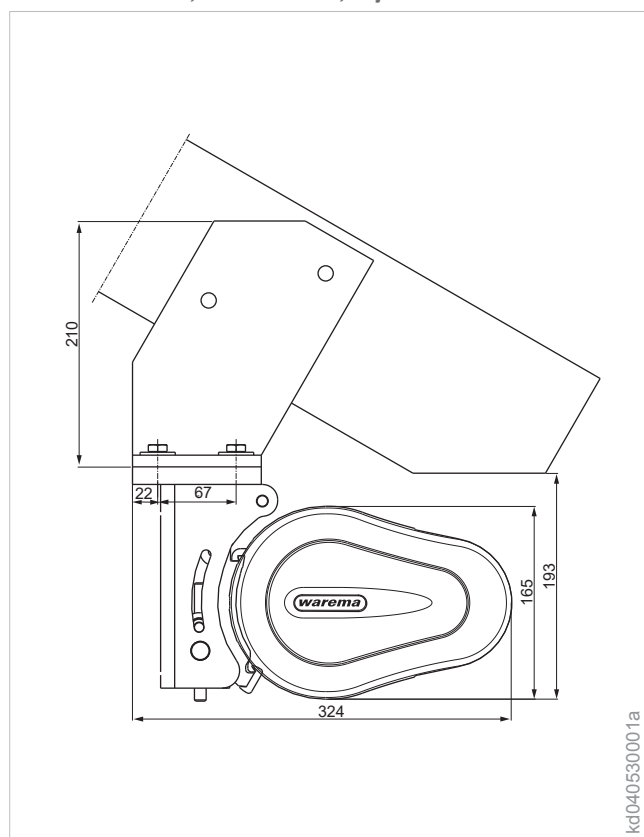
### Wall installation, inclination 5°, adjustable - K60



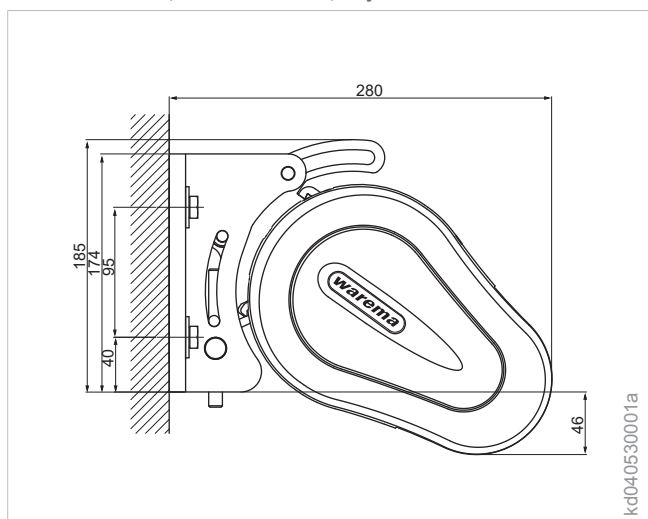
### Ceiling installation, inclination 5°, adjustable - K60



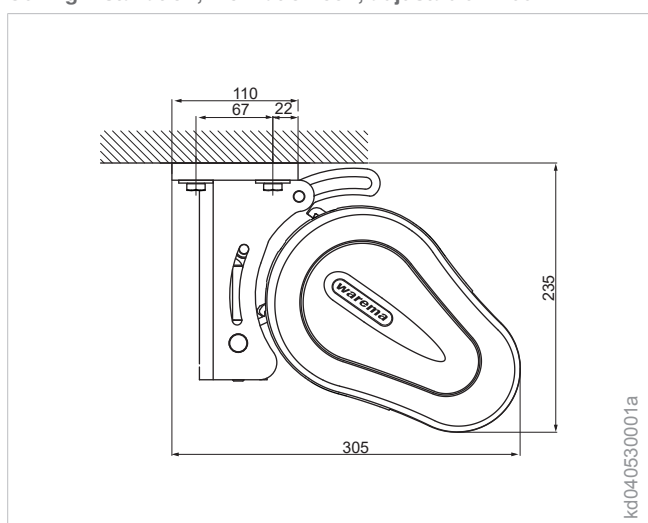
### Rafter installation, inclination 5°, adjustable - K60



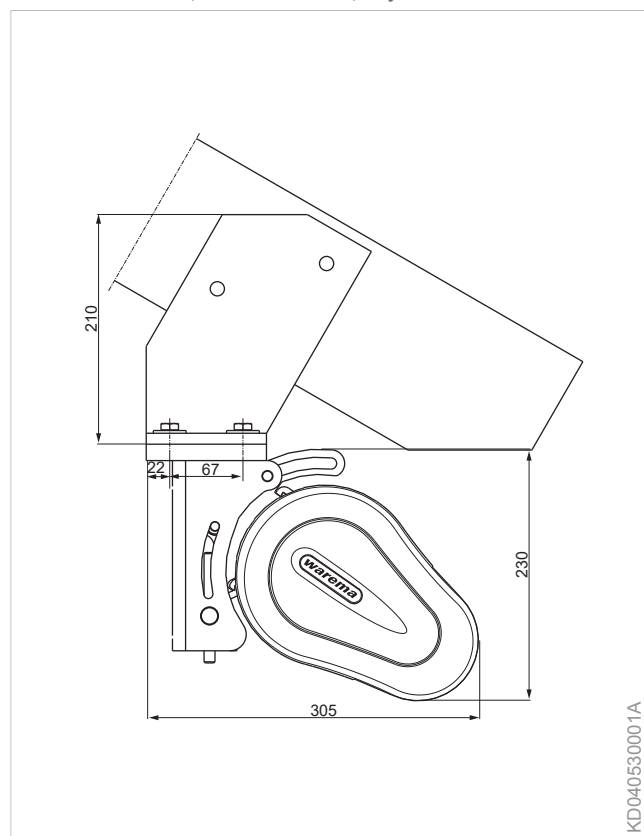
Wall installation, inclination 35°, adjustable - K60



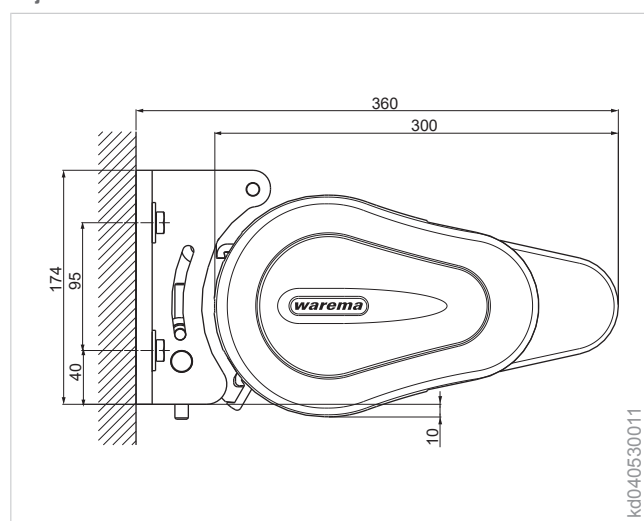
Ceiling installation, inclination 35°, adjustable - K60



Rafter installation, inclination 35°, adjustable - K60



Wall installation with valance roller blind, inclination 5°, adjustable - K60



Planning

Terrea

Perea

Patio  
side screens

Climara

Supplementary  
accessories

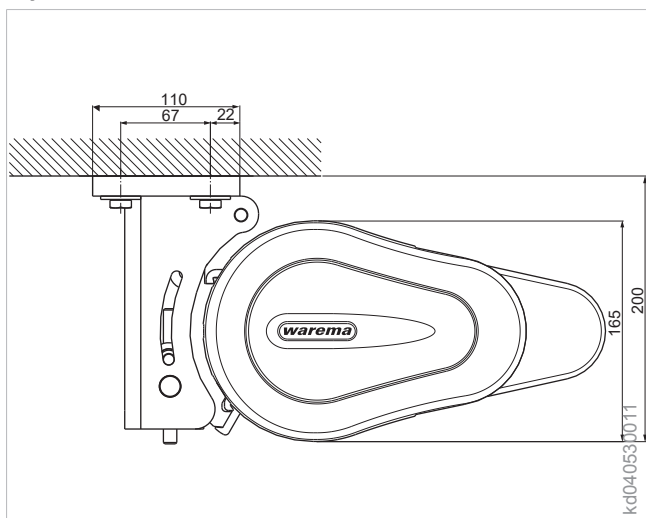
Components

Drive  
variants

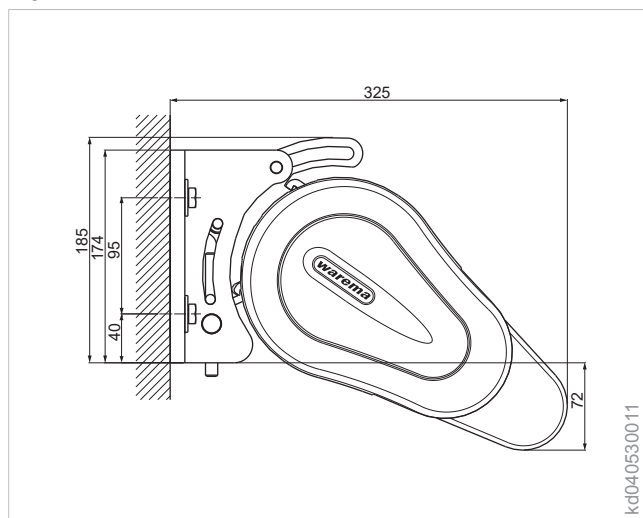
Standards



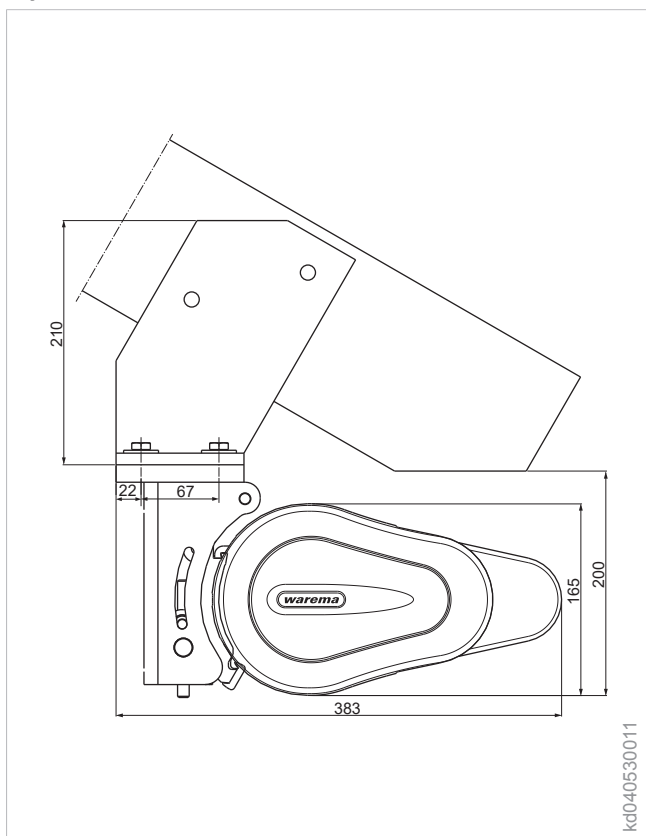
**Ceiling installation with valance roller blind, inclination 5°, adjustable - K60**



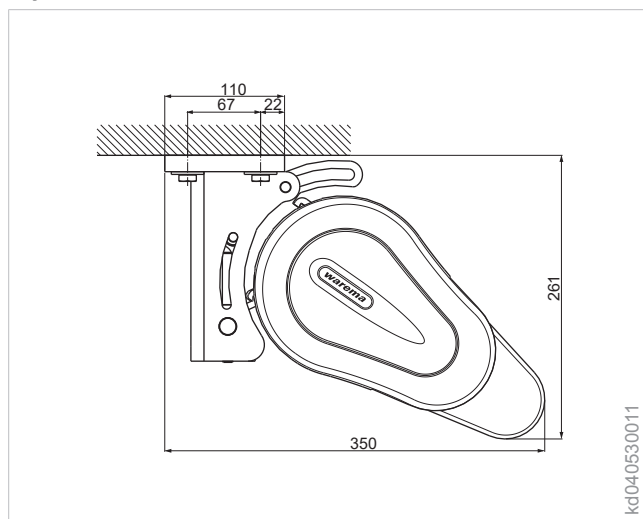
**Wall installation with valance roller blind, inclination 35°, adjustable - K60**



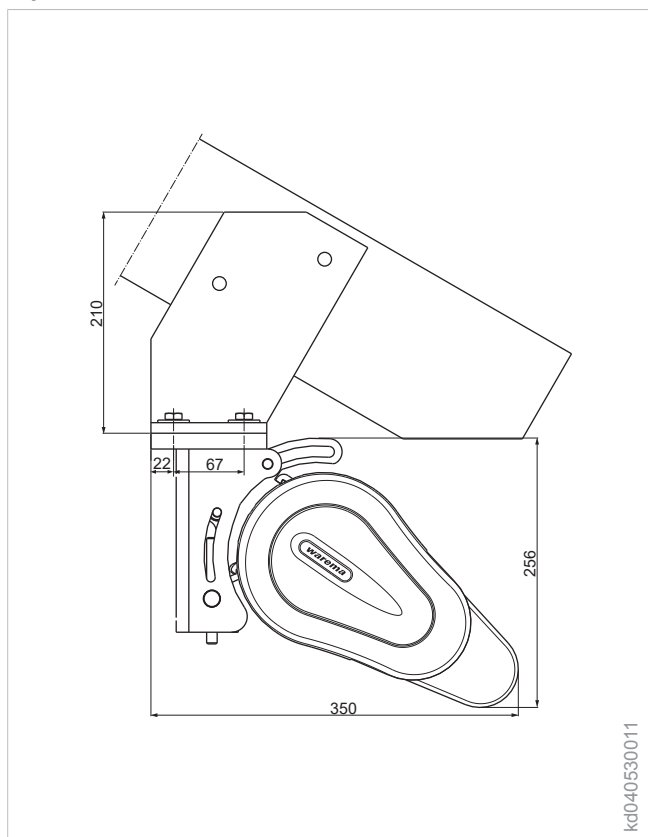
**Rafter installation with valance roller blind, inclination 5°, adjustable - K60**



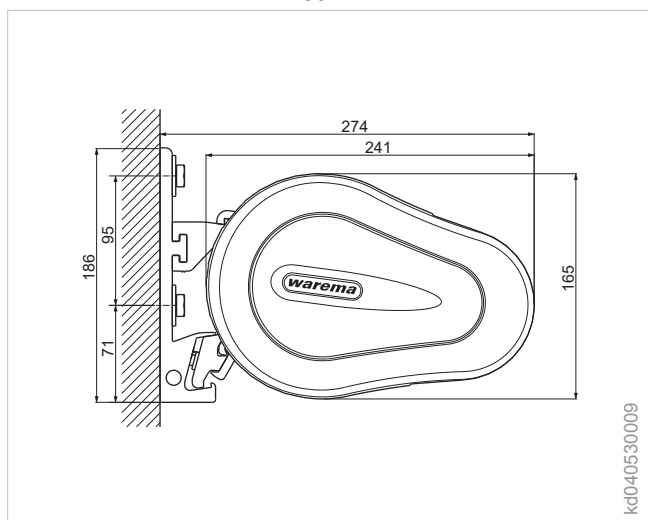
**Ceiling installation with valance roller blind, inclination 35°, adjustable - K60**



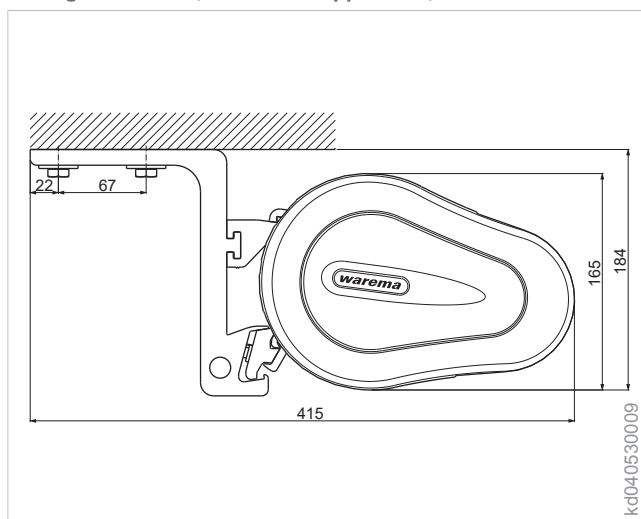
Rafter installation with valance roller blind, inclination 35°, adjustable - K60



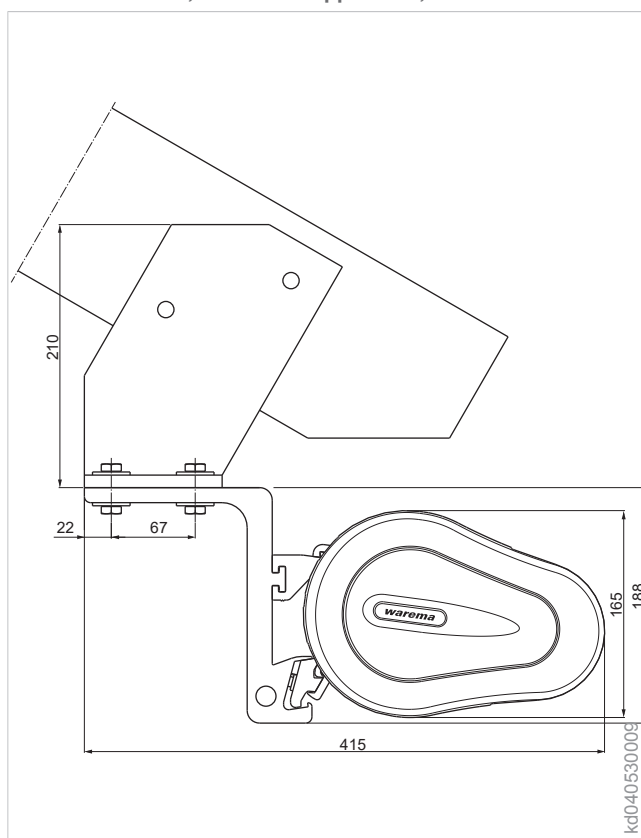
Wall installation, inclination approx. 5°, fixed - K60



Ceiling installation, inclination approx. 5°, fixed - K60



Rafter installation, inclination approx. 5°, fixed - K60



Planning

Terrea

Perea

Patio  
side screens

Climara

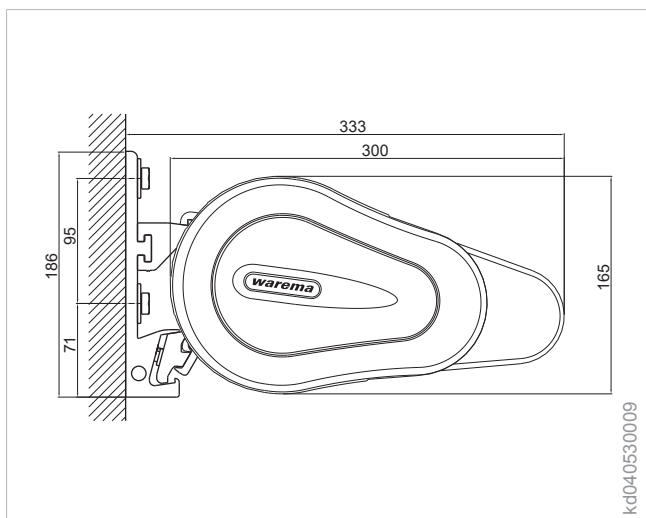
Supplementary  
accessories

Components

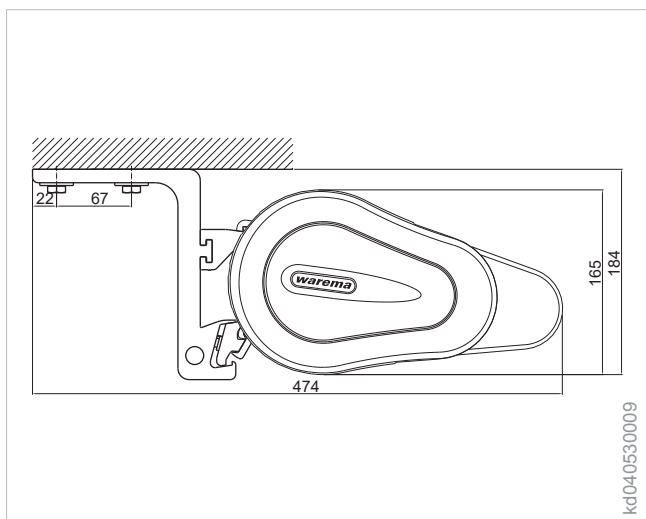
Drive  
variants

Standards

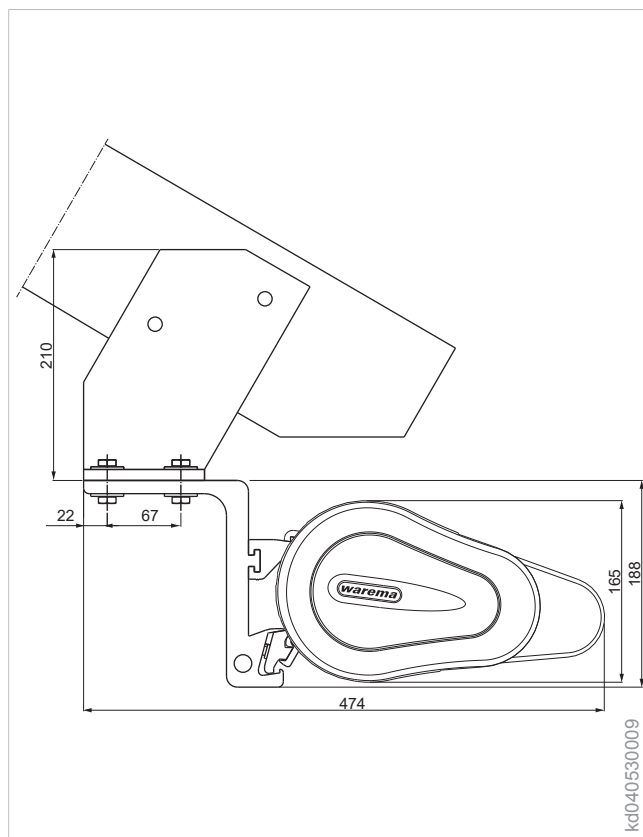
**Wall installation with valance roller blind, inclination approx. 5°, fixed - K60**



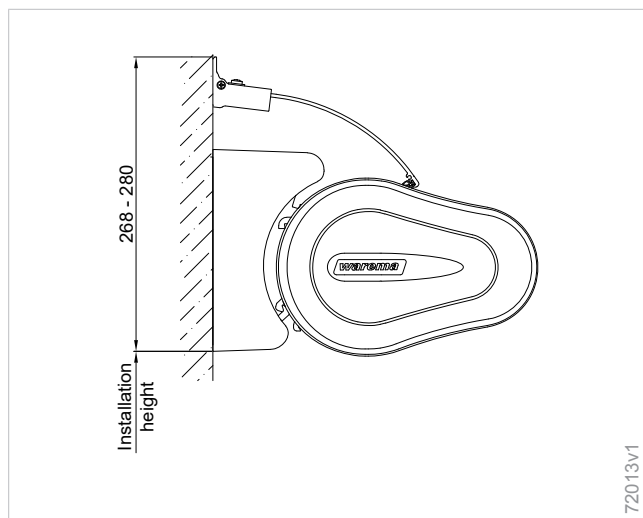
**Ceiling installation with valance roller blind, inclination approx. 5°, fixed - K60**



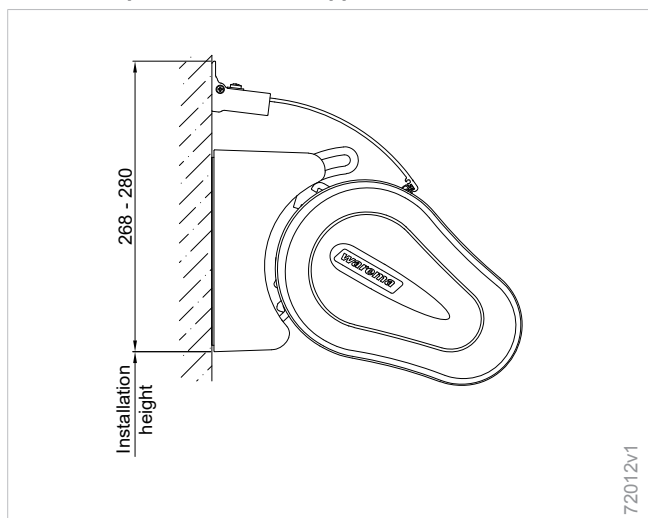
**Rafter installation with valance roller blind, inclination approx. 5°, fixed - K60**



**Wall console type B, adjustable with console cover, wall connection profile, inclination approx. 5° - K60**



Wall console type B, adjustable with console cover, wall connection profile, inclination approx. 30° - K60



Planning

Terrea

Perea

Patio  
side screens

Climara

Supplementary  
accessories

Components

Drive  
variants

Standards

## Further information

Calculate the exact position of the console, tensile force and wind resistance class  
<https://konsolenplaner.warema.de/v2/>



Visualise your product with the WAREMA Designer  
You can download the app for free from your app store.



Use our free planning programme to plan your sun protection systems  
<https://sonnenschutzplaner.com/>



Configure and plan your product with myWAREMA  
<https://my.warema.com>



Experience the range of colours and fabrics of the WAREMA collections  
<https://www.warema.de/Tools/Kollektionsberater.php>



TechDataPLUS Articulated arm/cassette awnings  
<https://docs.warema.com/1.1444.4>





# Cassette awnings Terrea

## Cassette awning Terrea K70

### Modern

The linear design perfectly matches the trend with regard to flat and pitched roofs.

### Individual

Thanks to the numerous options, the Terrea K70 can be precisely adapted to customer needs.

### Award-winning

Having been awarded the iF product design award 2014, the Terrea K70 sets design benchmarks for every patio.



### Construction limit values

|                                   |          |
|-----------------------------------|----------|
| Maximum order width               | 7000 mm  |
| Maximum projection                | 4000 mm  |
| Maximum order width of group unit | 13500 mm |

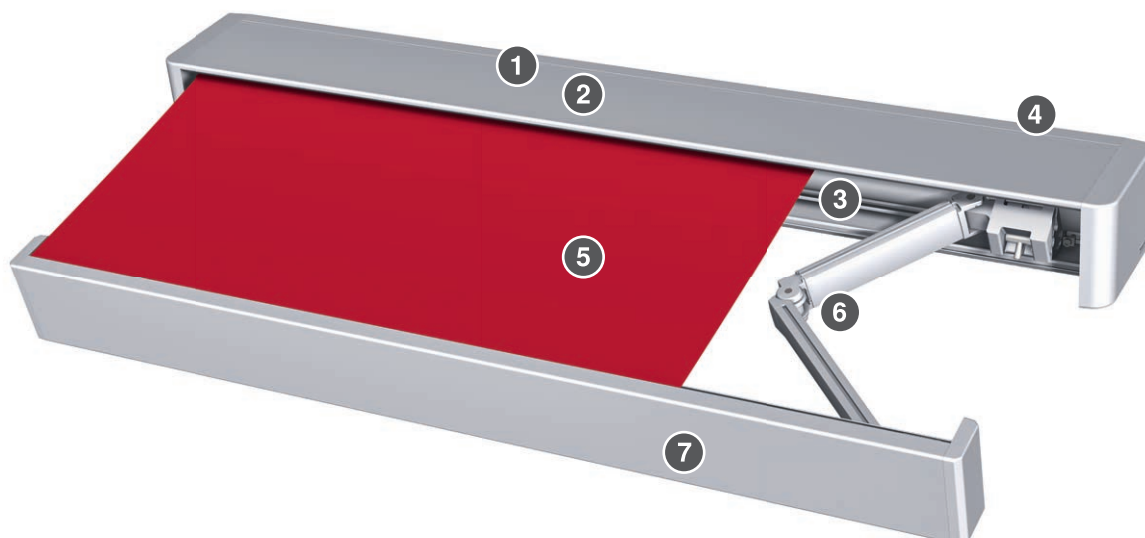


### Product characteristics

- Modern, rectangular cassette awnings for large patios
- Various design options thanks to a large selection of designs and supplementary accessories such as valance roller blinds and integrated lighting

# Components

## Cassette awning Terrea K70



Planning

Terrea

Perea

Patio  
side screens

Climara

Supplementary  
accessories

Components

Drive  
variants

Standards

- 1 Cassette
- 2 Shaft
- 3 Fabric bearing shell
- 4 Console

- 5 Fabric
- 6 Articulated arm
- 7 Front rail

### Cassette

#### Cassette - K70

|          |                     |
|----------|---------------------|
| Material | Aluminium, extruded |
| Surface  | Powder-coated       |
| Width    | 240 mm              |
| Height   | 190 mm              |

#### + Side cover

##### Cassette side cover - K70

|          |               |
|----------|---------------|
| Material | Aluminium     |
| Surface  | Powder-coated |

### Shaft

#### Fabric shaft Ø 78 mm

|          |                  |
|----------|------------------|
| Material | Galvanised steel |
| Surface  | Plain            |
| Profile  | Groove tube      |
| Diameter | 78 mm            |

### Fabric bearing shell

#### Fabric bearing shell - K70

|          |                     |
|----------|---------------------|
| Material | Aluminium, extruded |
| Surface  | Powder-coated       |

### Front rail

#### Front rail - K70

|          |                     |
|----------|---------------------|
| Material | Aluminium, extruded |
| Surface  | Powder-coated       |
| Width    | 92 mm               |
| Height   | 170 mm              |

#### + Side cover

##### Front rail side cover - K70

|          |               |
|----------|---------------|
| Material | Aluminium     |
| Surface  | Powder-coated |

### Articulated arm

#### Articulated arm - K70

##### + Articulated arm profile

##### Articulated arm profile, front, 33x61 mm

|          |                     |
|----------|---------------------|
| Material | Aluminium, extruded |
| Surface  | Powder-coated       |
| Width    | 33 mm               |
| Height   | 61 mm               |

##### Articulated arm profile, rear, 35x68 mm

|          |                     |
|----------|---------------------|
| Material | Aluminium, extruded |
| Surface  | Powder-coated       |
| Width    | 35 mm               |
| Height   | 68 mm               |

##### + Articulated arm seat

##### Tilting joint - K70

|          |                     |
|----------|---------------------|
| Material | Aluminium, extruded |
| Surface  | Powder-coated       |

Tilting joint with windlock mechanism

##### + Power transmission

##### Steel cable

##### Link chain

+ Power transmission, optional

#### Segment

|          |                     |
|----------|---------------------|
| Material | Aluminium, extruded |
|----------|---------------------|

### Console

#### Wall console type B - K70

|          |                     |
|----------|---------------------|
| Material | Aluminium, extruded |
| Surface  | Powder-coated       |
| Width    | 220 mm              |
| Height   | 181 mm              |
| Depth    | 44 mm               |

#### Wall console type D - K70

|          |                     |
|----------|---------------------|
| Material | Aluminium, extruded |
| Surface  | Powder-coated       |
| Width    | 520 mm              |
| Height   | 181 mm              |
| Depth    | 44 mm               |

#### Ceiling console type E - K70

|          |               |
|----------|---------------|
| Material | Steel         |
| Surface  | Powder-coated |
| Width    | 220 mm        |
| Height   | 230 mm        |
| Depth    | 259 mm        |

#### Console for rafters type F - K70

|          |                  |
|----------|------------------|
| Material | Galvanised steel |
| Surface  | Powder-coated    |
| Width    | 220 mm           |
| Height   | 480 mm           |
| Depth    | 259 mm           |

### Drive variants

- Motor

#### Motor

- Orea WT

#### Radio motor, optional

- WMS-MM (WMS)
- W-MM (EWFS)

+ see "Drive variants", Page 367

### Colours

- WAREMA Colour World

+ see "WAREMA Colour World", Page 12

### Fabric qualities

- Standard acrylic fabric
- Lumera acrylic fabric

Fabric qualities, optional:

- Perfora acrylic
- All Weather acrylic
- Soltis 92
- Twilight Pearl

+ see "Awning collection", Page 356

### Supplementary accessories

- WMS Wind sensor
- Valance roller blind with motor and integrated WMS comfort control
- Valance roller blind with motor and basic model
- Valance roller blind with crank
- Integrated lighting
- LED strip light rail
- Radiant heater
- Fabric lettering, painted
- Sunprint
- Patio frame

+ see "Supplementary accessories", Page 257



## Construction limit values

The construction limit values and number of consoles indicated in this document relate to the concrete substructure C20/25 (B25) and installation on rafters.

| Configuration variants                                               | Projection                        | 1500 mm  | 2000 mm  | 2500 mm  | 3000 mm  | 3500 mm  | 4000 mm |
|----------------------------------------------------------------------|-----------------------------------|----------|----------|----------|----------|----------|---------|
| <b>Fabric qualities + Drive variants</b>                             |                                   |          |          |          |          |          |         |
| Acrylic fabric / Twilight Pearl + Motor                              | Minimum order width               | 2210 mm  | 2730 mm  | 3230 mm  | 3740 mm  | 4250 mm  | 4760 mm |
|                                                                      | Maximum order width               | 7000 mm  | 7000 mm  | 7000 mm  | 7000 mm  | 7000 mm  | 5500 mm |
|                                                                      | Minimum group unit order width    | 4920 mm  | 5960 mm  | 6960 mm  | 7980 mm  | 9000 mm  |         |
|                                                                      | Maximum order width of group unit | 13500 mm | 13500 mm | 13500 mm | 13500 mm | 13500 mm |         |
| Soltis 92 + Motor                                                    | Minimum order width               | 2210 mm  | 2730 mm  | 3230 mm  |          |          |         |
|                                                                      | Maximum order width               | 5500 mm  | 5500 mm  | 5500 mm  |          |          |         |
| <b>Fabric qualities + Drive variants + Supplementary accessories</b> |                                   |          |          |          |          |          |         |
| Acrylic fabric / Twilight Pearl + Motor + Valance roller blind       | Minimum order width               | 2210 mm  | 2730 mm  | 3230 mm  | 3740 mm  | 4250 mm  |         |
|                                                                      | Maximum order width               | 7000 mm  | 7000 mm  | 7000 mm  | 7000 mm  | 6000 mm  |         |
|                                                                      | Minimum group unit order width    | 4920 mm  | 5960 mm  | 6960 mm  | 7980 mm  |          |         |
|                                                                      | Maximum order width of group unit | 13500 mm | 13500 mm | 13500 mm | 13500 mm |          |         |
| Soltis 92 + Motor + Valance roller blind                             | Minimum order width               | 2210 mm  | 2730 mm  | 3230 mm  |          |          |         |
|                                                                      | Maximum order width               | 5500 mm  | 5500 mm  | 5500 mm  |          |          |         |

Minimum width generally differs for **console type D**.

## Dimensions

Weight per running metre: 24,5 - 26,5 kg/lfm

Weight per running metre, notes: Without consoles, depending on fitted equipment

## Inclination

Inclination angle: 5 - 35 °

Inclination angle, standard: 10 °

Inclination angle for rain class 2: 14 - 35 °

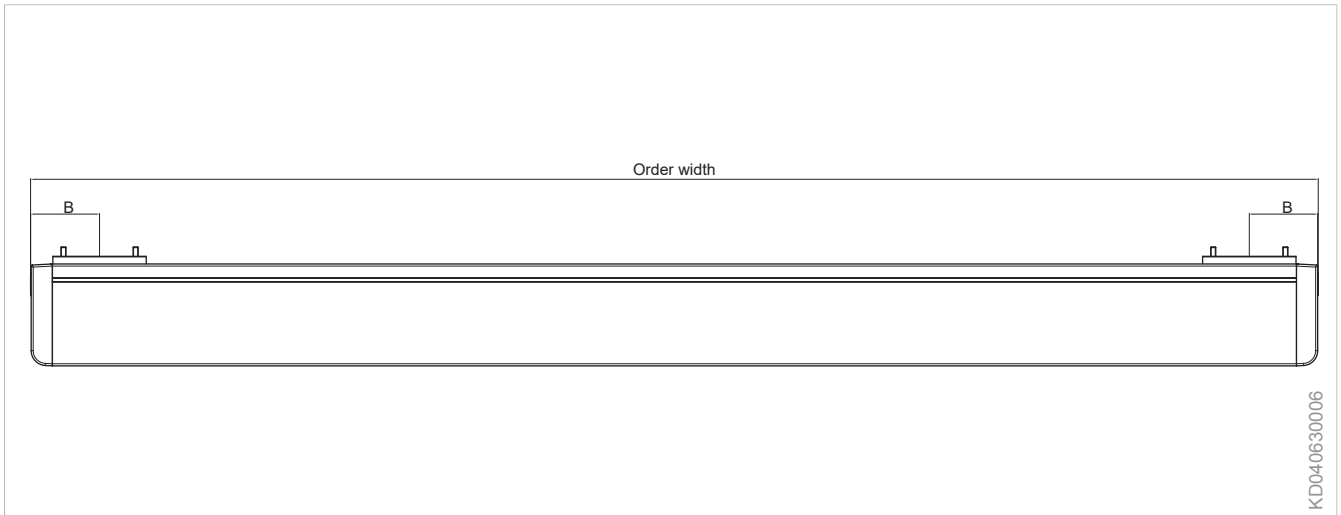
- Fine adjustment of inclination angle during installation.
- Basic inclination depending on building size and model, tolerance  $\pm 5^\circ$ .

## Dimension determination

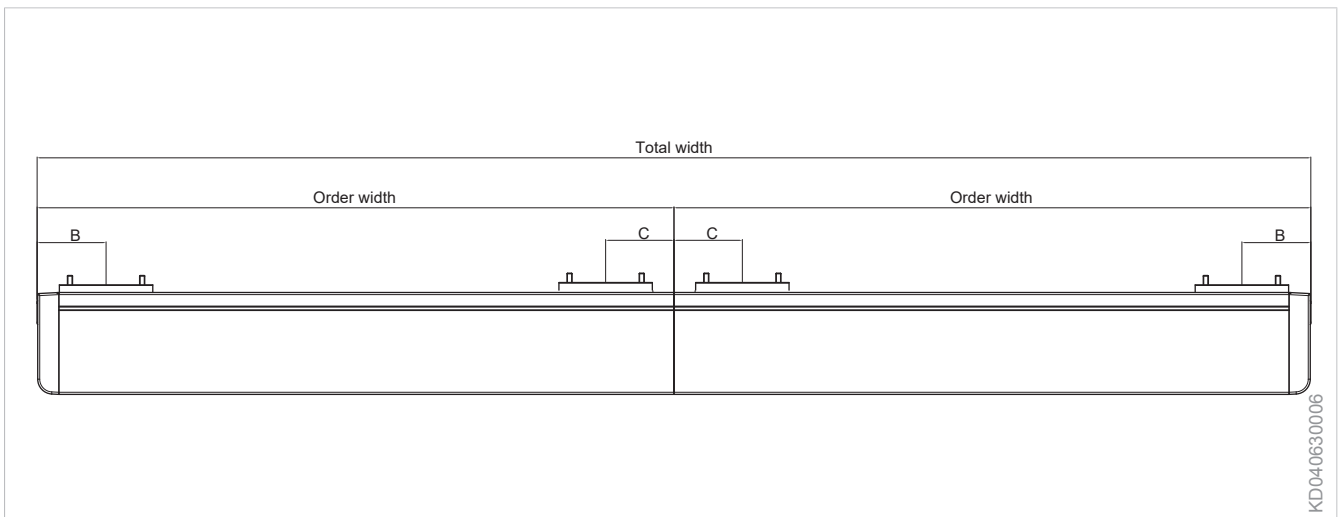
The **projection** is defined from the back edge of the console to the leading edge of the front rail, measured across the inclination angle of the fabric.

When **installing group units in recesses**, additional space of at least 100 mm is required for installation.

### Individual unit - K70



### Group unit with slit cover blind - K70



## Quantity determination

### Number of consoles, individual unit

| Configuration variants                                                      | Order width    | Projection |         |         |         |         |         |
|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------|----------------|------------|---------|---------|---------|---------|---------|
|                                                                             |                | 1500 mm    | 2000 mm | 2500 mm | 3000 mm | 3500 mm | 4000 mm |
| Console/Bracket                                                             |                |            |         |         |         |         |         |
| Wall console / Ceiling console / Console for rafters                        | 0 - 5500 mm    | 2          | 2       | 2       | 2       | 2       | 2       |
| Wall console / Ceiling console / Console for rafters                        | 5501 - 7000 mm | 2          | 2       | 2       | 2       | 2       |         |
| Console/Bracket + Supplementary accessories                                 |                |            |         |         |         |         |         |
| Wall console / Ceiling console / Console for rafters + Valance roller blind | 0 - 6000 mm    | 2          | 2       | 2       | 2       | 2       |         |
| Ceiling console / Wall console / Console for rafters + Valance roller blind | 6001 - 7000 mm | 2          | 2       | 2       | 2       |         |         |

### Number of consoles, group unit

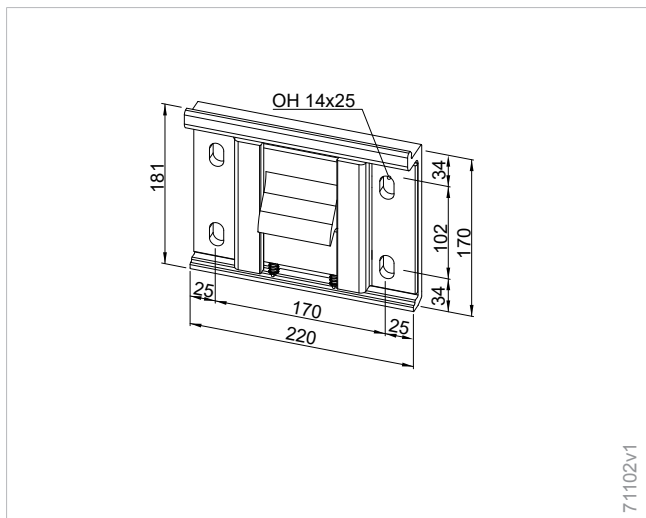
| Configuration variants                                                      | Order width  | Projection |         |         |         |         |
|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------|--------------|------------|---------|---------|---------|---------|
|                                                                             |              | 1500 mm    | 2000 mm | 2500 mm | 3000 mm | 3500 mm |
| Console/Bracket                                                             |              |            |         |         |         |         |
| Wall console / Ceiling console / Console for rafters                        | 0 - 13500 mm | 4          | 4       | 4       | 4       | 4       |
| Console/Bracket + Supplementary accessories                                 |              |            |         |         |         |         |
| Wall console / Ceiling console / Console for rafters + Valance roller blind | 0 - 13500 mm | 4          | 4       | 4       | 4       |         |

Number of consoles in relation to the concrete substructure C20/25 (B25) and installation on rafters.

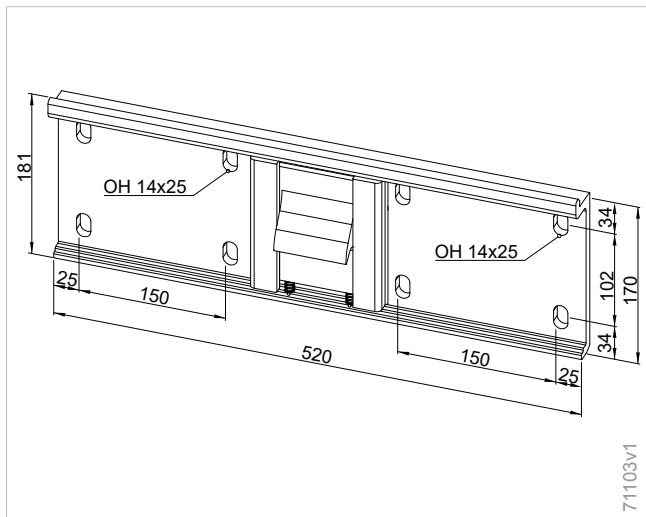
**Attention:** with **special arm positions** and console axis distances of > 5200 mm, a third console is required.

## Details

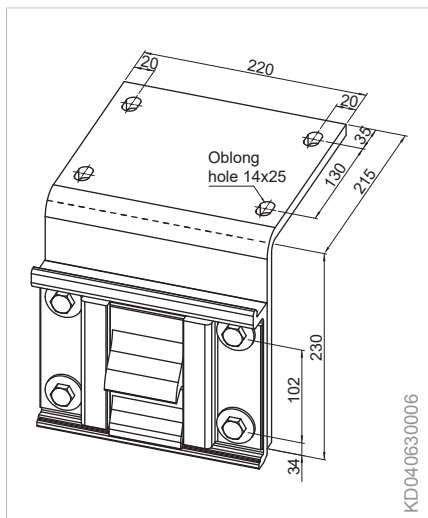
Wall console type B - K70



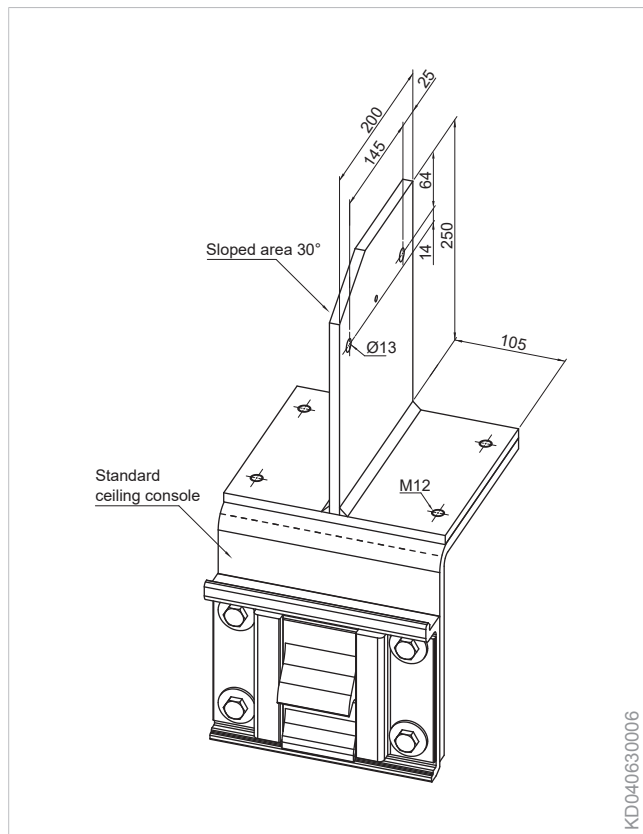
Wall console type D - K70



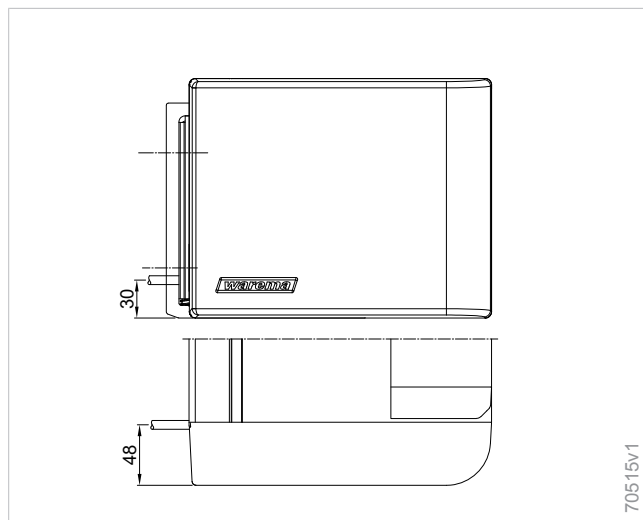
Ceiling console type E - K70



Console for rafters type F - K70

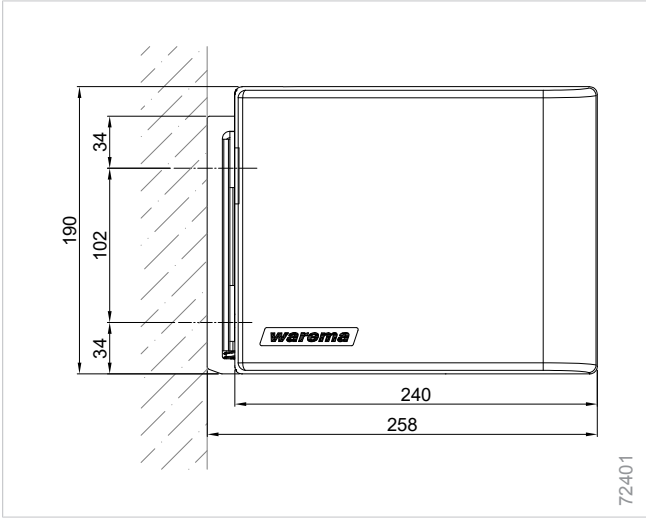


Cable exit - K70

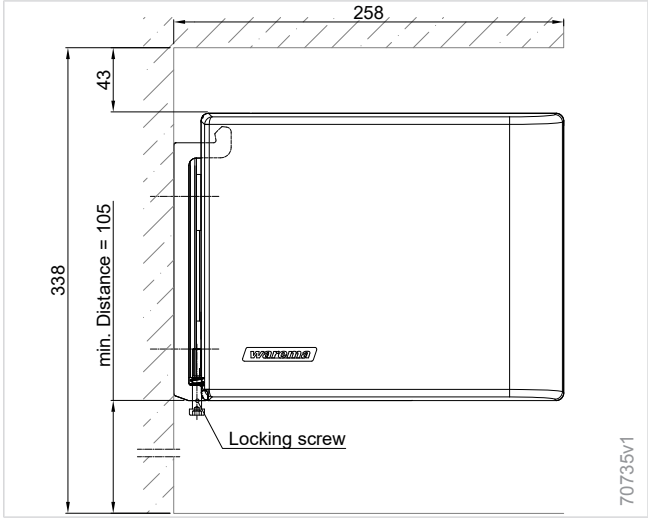


# Mounting examples

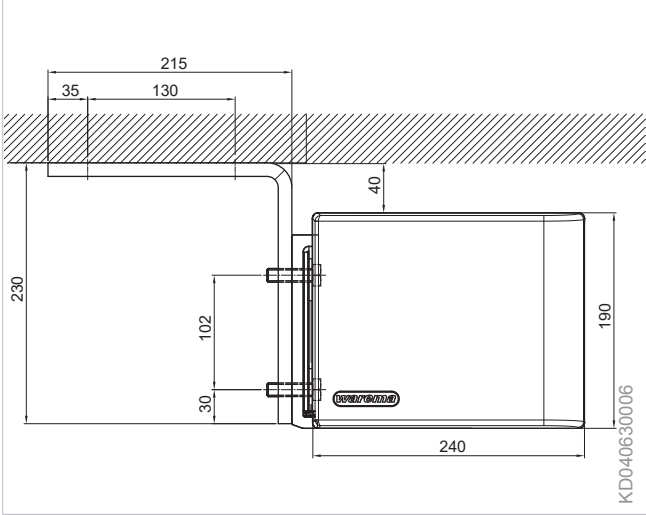
Wall installation - K70



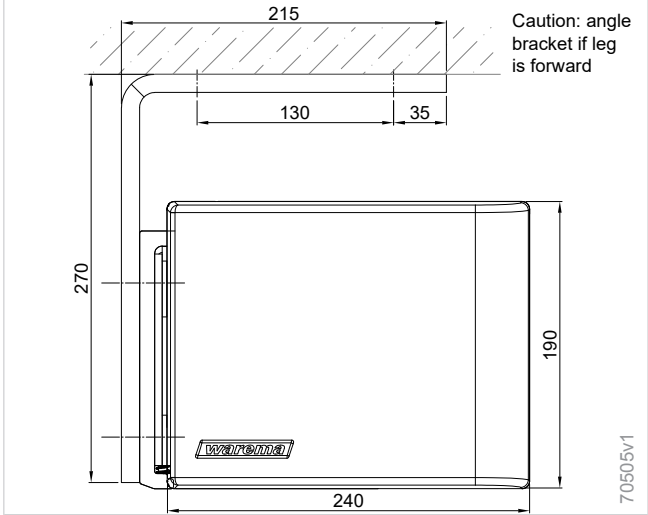
Shaft installation - K70

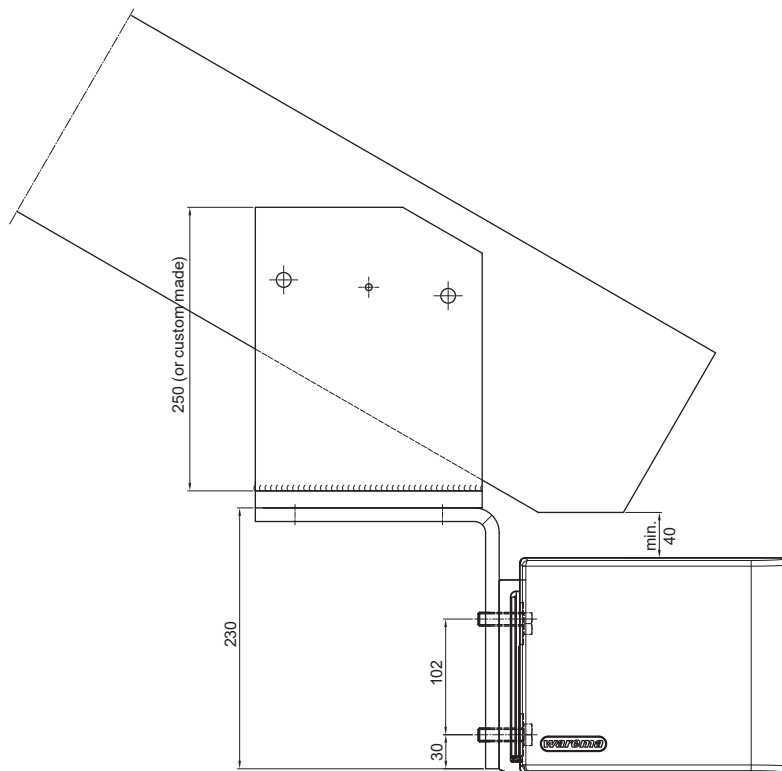


Ceiling installation, angle towards rear - K70



Ceiling installation, angle towards front - K70





KD040630006

## Further information

Calculate the exact position of the console, tensile force and wind resistance class  
<https://konsolenplaner.warema.de/v2/>



Visualise your product with the WAREMA Designer  
You can download the app for free from your app store.



Use our free planning programme to plan your sun protection systems  
<https://sonnenschutzplaner.com/>



Configure and plan your product with myWAREMA  
<https://my.warema.com>



Experience the range of colours and fabrics of the WAREMA collections  
<https://www.warema.de/Tools/Kollektionsberater.php>



TechDataPLUS Articulated arm/cassette awnings  
<https://docs.warema.com/1.1444.4>



# Articulated arm awnings Terrea, open

|                                         |    |
|-----------------------------------------|----|
| Articulated arm awning Terrea 530.....  | 78 |
| Articulated arm awning Terrea 700S..... | 88 |
| Articulated arm awning Terrea G60.....  | 98 |

Planning

Terrea

Perea

Patio  
side screens

Climara

Supplementary  
accessories

Components

Drive  
variants

Standards





# Articulated arm awnings Terrea, open

## Articulated arm awning Terrea 530

### Sophisticated

A functional shading system for balconies or patios.

### Versatile

Thanks to the LB model, both narrow and deep shaded areas can be created.

### Comfortable

The optional radio motor makes for effortless operation.



### Construction limit values

|                     |         |
|---------------------|---------|
| Maximum order width | 6000 mm |
| Maximum projection  | 3500 mm |

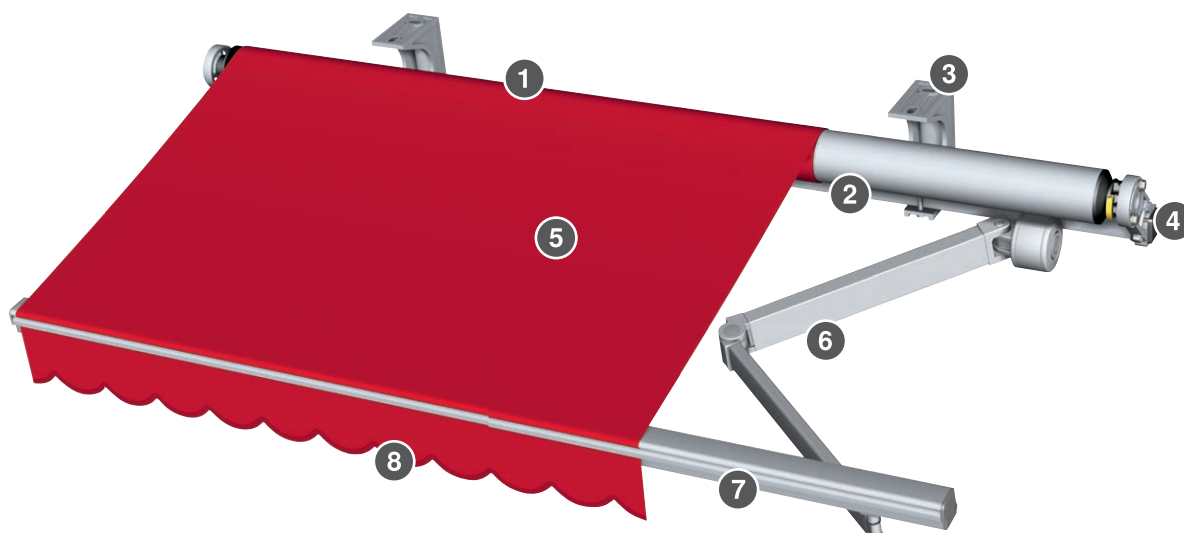


### Product characteristics

- Functional sun shading system for installed in protected situations
- Optionally with rain hood or as LB model

# Components

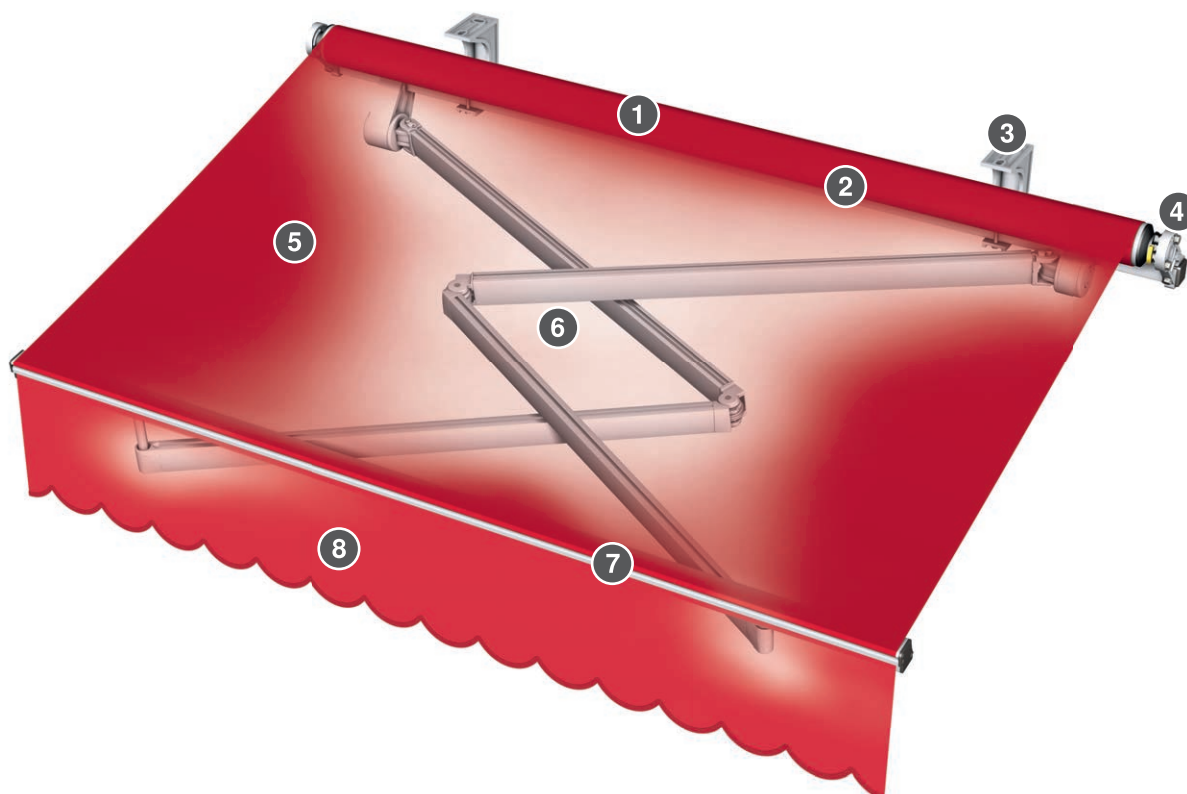
## Articulated arm awning Terrea 530



- 1 Shaft
- 2 Bearing tube
- 3 Console
- 4 Fabric shaft console

- 5 Fabric
- 6 Articulated arm
- 7 Front rail
- 8 Valance

## Articulated arm awning Terrea 530 LB



- 1 Shaft
- 2 Bearing tube
- 3 Console
- 4 Fabric shaft console

- 5 Fabric
- 6 Articulated arm
- 7 Front rail
- 8 Valance

## Shaft

### Fabric shaft Ø 78 mm

|          |                  |
|----------|------------------|
| Material | Galvanised steel |
| Surface  | Plain            |
| Profile  | Groove tube      |
| Diameter | 78 mm            |

## Front rail

### Front rail - 530

|          |                     |
|----------|---------------------|
| Material | Aluminium, extruded |
| Surface  | Powder-coated       |
| Width    | 53 mm               |
| Height   | 48 mm               |

#### + Side cover

### Front rail side cover - 530

|                 |         |
|-----------------|---------|
| Material        | Plastic |
| Material colour | Black   |

## Articulated arm

### Articulated arm - 530

#### + Articulated arm profile

### Articulated arm profile 27x54 mm

|          |                     |
|----------|---------------------|
| Material | Aluminium, extruded |
| Surface  | Powder-coated       |
| Width    | 27 mm               |
| Height   | 54 mm               |

#### + Articulated arm seat

### Articulated arm seat - 530

|          |                                 |
|----------|---------------------------------|
| Material | Aluminium, permanent mould cast |
| Surface  | Powder-coated                   |

#### + Power transmission

### Textile tape

## Rain hood, optional

### Rain hood - 530

|                   |                                                                                  |
|-------------------|----------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| Material          | Aluminium, extruded                                                              |
| Surface           | Powder-coated                                                                    |
| Width             | 290 mm                                                                           |
| Height            | 44 mm                                                                            |
| Dimensions, notes | For models with side covers, the rain hood is 50 mm wider than the awning width. |

#### + Side cover

### Rain hood side cover - 530

|          |               |
|----------|---------------|
| Material | Aluminium     |
| Surface  | Powder-coated |

## Bearing tube

### Bearing tube

|          |               |
|----------|---------------|
| Material | Steel         |
| Surface  | Powder-coated |
| Profile  | Square tube   |
| Width    | 40 mm         |
| Height   | 40 mm         |

## Valance

### Valance - G60/H60/530

|        |        |
|--------|--------|
| Height | 180 mm |
|--------|--------|

The valance has a matching frame, is individually removable and is available in 3 shapes.

If no shape is stated, we will supply valance shape no. 11 (curved).

## Valance, optional

### LB model with valance - G60/H60/530

|        |        |
|--------|--------|
| Height | 270 mm |
|--------|--------|

The valance has a matching frame, is individually removable and is available in 3 shapes.

If no shape is stated, we will supply valance shape no. 11 (curved).

## Fabric shaft console

### Fabric shaft console - 530

|          |                     |
|----------|---------------------|
| Material | Aluminium, extruded |
| Surface  | Powder-coated       |

#### + Side cover

### Bearing tube side cover - 530/700S

|                 |         |
|-----------------|---------|
| Material        | Plastic |
| Material colour | Black   |

## Console

### Wall/ceiling console type A/E - 530

|          |                                 |
|----------|---------------------------------|
| Material | Aluminium, permanent mould cast |
| Surface  | Powder-coated                   |
| Width    | 65 mm                           |
| Height   | 222 mm                          |
| Depth    | 125 mm                          |

### Wall console type B - 530/G60/H60

|          |                     |
|----------|---------------------|
| Material | Aluminium, extruded |
| Surface  | Powder-coated       |
| Width    | 85 mm               |
| Height   | 220 mm              |
| Depth    | 93 mm               |

Wall installation with 3 drilled holes

### Wall console type C - 530

|          |               |
|----------|---------------|
| Material | Steel         |
| Surface  | Powder-coated |
| Width    | 210 mm        |
| Height   | 285 mm        |
| Depth    | 135 mm        |

Wall console type A/E with mounting plate, small (steel).

### Wall console type D - 530

|          |               |
|----------|---------------|
| Material | Steel         |
| Surface  | Powder-coated |
| Width    | 330 mm        |
| Height   | 285 mm        |
| Depth    | 135 mm        |

Wall console type A/E with mounting plate, large (steel).

### Console for rafters type F - 530

|          |               |
|----------|---------------|
| Material | Aluminium     |
| Surface  | Powder-coated |
| Width    | 65 mm         |
| Height   | 450 mm        |
| Depth    | 125 mm        |

## Drive variants

- Motor

Drive variant, optional:

- Crank

## Motor

- LT50

Motor optional:

- R35/8G (solar)
- LT50 NHK

## Radio motor, optional

- WMS-MP (WMS)
- W-MP (EWFS)

## Crank, optional

- Crank with ball hook

## Gear, optional

- Screw gear with limit stop

+ see "Drive variants", Page 367

## Colours

- RAL 9016 traffic white, satin finish
- RAL 9006 white aluminium, satin finish
- W 4916 Anthracite iron mica effect, fine texture

Colours, optional:

- WAREMA Colour World

+ see "WAREMA Colour World", Page 12

## Fabric qualities

- Standard acrylic fabric
- Lumera acrylic fabric

Fabric qualities, optional:

- Perfora acrylic
- All Weather acrylic
- Soltis 92
- Twilight Pearl
- Lacquered fabric Precontraint 302

+ see "Awning collection", Page 356

## Supplementary accessories

- Motor with additional collapsible crank ZHK
- Solar drive
- WMS Wind sensor
- LB model
- LED strip light rail
- Radiant heater
- Fabric lettering, painted
- Sunprint
- Patio frame
- Protective fabric cover

+ see "Supplementary accessories", Page 257

## Construction limit values

The construction limit values and number of consoles indicated in this document relate to the concrete substructure C20/25 (B25) and installation on rafters.

| Configuration variants                                               | Projection          | 1500 mm | 2000 mm | 2500 mm | 3000 mm | 3500 mm |
|----------------------------------------------------------------------|---------------------|---------|---------|---------|---------|---------|
| <b>Fabric qualities + Drive variants</b>                             |                     |         |         |         |         |         |
| Acrylic fabric / Twilight Pearl + Motor                              | Minimum order width | 1890 mm | 2390 mm | 2890 mm | 3380 mm |         |
|                                                                      | Maximum order width | 6000 mm | 6000 mm | 6000 mm | 6000 mm |         |
| Acrylic fabric / Twilight Pearl + Crank                              | Minimum order width | 1940 mm | 2440 mm | 2940 mm | 3430 mm |         |
|                                                                      | Maximum order width | 6000 mm | 6000 mm | 6000 mm | 6000 mm |         |
| Lacquered fabric Precontraint 302 / Soltis 92 + Motor                | Minimum order width | 1890 mm | 2390 mm | 2890 mm |         |         |
|                                                                      | Maximum order width | 5500 mm | 5500 mm | 5500 mm |         |         |
| Lacquered fabric Precontraint 302 / Soltis 92 + Crank                | Minimum order width | 1940 mm | 2440 mm | 2940 mm |         |         |
|                                                                      | Maximum order width | 5500 mm | 5500 mm | 5500 mm |         |         |
| <b>Fabric qualities + Drive variants + Supplementary accessories</b> |                     |         |         |         |         |         |
| Acrylic fabric / Twilight Pearl + Motor + LB model                   | Minimum order width | 1270 mm | 1520 mm | 1770 mm | 2010 mm | 2550 mm |
|                                                                      | Maximum order width | 1930 mm | 2430 mm | 2930 mm | 3420 mm | 4000 mm |
| Acrylic fabric / Twilight Pearl + Crank + LB model                   | Minimum order width | 1320 mm | 1570 mm | 1820 mm | 2060 mm | 2600 mm |
|                                                                      | Maximum order width | 1930 mm | 2430 mm | 2930 mm | 3420 mm | 4000 mm |
| Lacquered fabric Precontraint 302 / Soltis 92 + Motor + LB model     | Minimum order width | 1270 mm | 1520 mm | 1770 mm |         |         |
|                                                                      | Maximum order width | 1930 mm | 2430 mm | 2930 mm |         |         |
| Lacquered fabric Precontraint 302 / Soltis 92 + Crank + LB model     | Minimum order width | 1320 mm | 1570 mm | 1820 mm |         |         |
|                                                                      | Maximum order width | 1930 mm | 2430 mm | 2930 mm |         |         |

**LB model:** Front rail seats and articulated arm seats are always height offset on the left on the non-drive end.

## Dimensions

Weight per running metre: 16 - 18 kg/lfm

Weight per running metre, notes: Without consoles, depending on fitted equipment

## Inclination

Inclination angle: 0 - 45 °

Inclination angle, optional: 46 - 90 °

Inclination angle, standard: 10 °

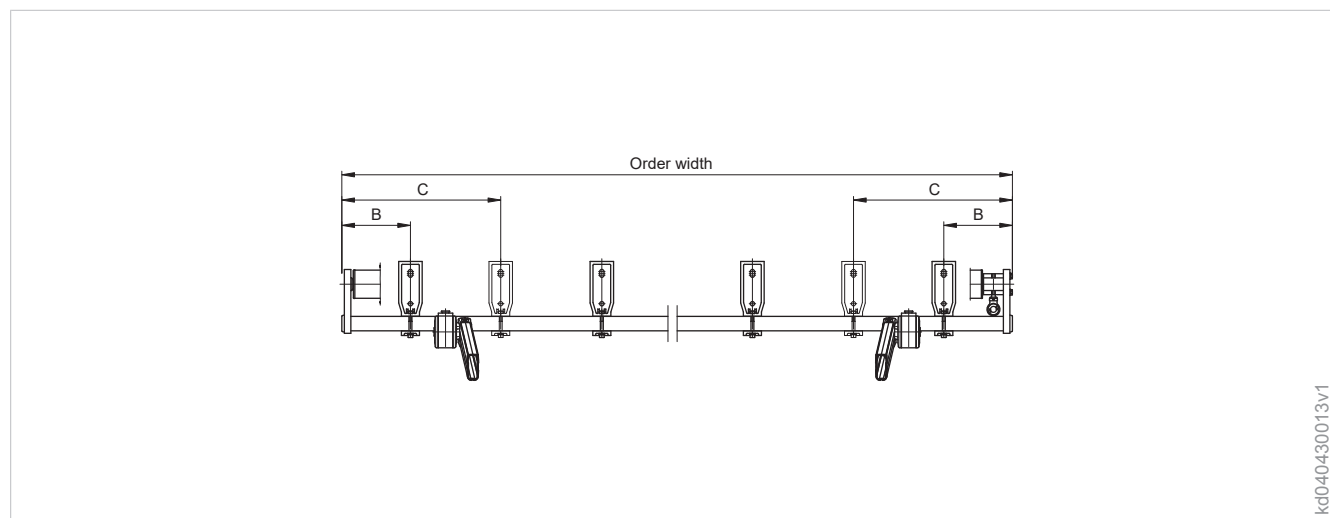
Inclination angle for rain class 2: 14 - 45 °

- Inclination angle with **LB model** 5° - 10°
- Inclination angle with **rain hood** 0° - 30°
- Fine adjustment of inclination angle during installation.
- Basic inclination depending on building size and model, tolerance ±5°.

## Dimension determination

The **projection** is defined from the back edge of the console to the leading edge of the front rail, measured across the inclination angle of the fabric.

### Individual unit - 530



## Quantity determination

### Number of consoles, individual unit

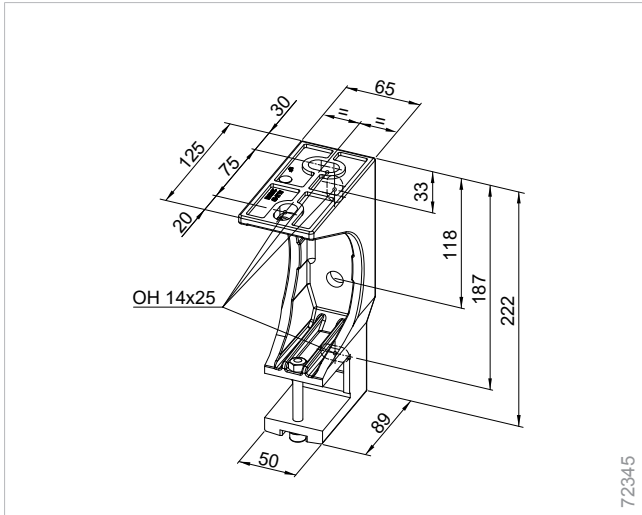
| Configuration variants                                          | Order width    | Projection |         |         |         |         |
|-----------------------------------------------------------------|----------------|------------|---------|---------|---------|---------|
|                                                                 |                | 1500 mm    | 2000 mm | 2500 mm | 3000 mm | 3500 mm |
| Console/Bracket                                                 |                |            |         |         |         |         |
| Wall console / Ceiling console / Console for rafters            | 0 - 4000 mm    | 2          | 2       | 2       | 2       |         |
| Wall console / Ceiling console / Console for rafters            | 4001 - 6000 mm | 3          | 3       | 3       | 5       |         |
| Console/Bracket + Supplementary accessories                     |                |            |         |         |         |         |
| Wall console / Ceiling console / Console for rafters + LB model | 0 - 4000 mm    | 2          | 2       | 2       | 2       | 4       |

Number of consoles in relation to the concrete substructure C20/25 (B25) and installation on rafters.

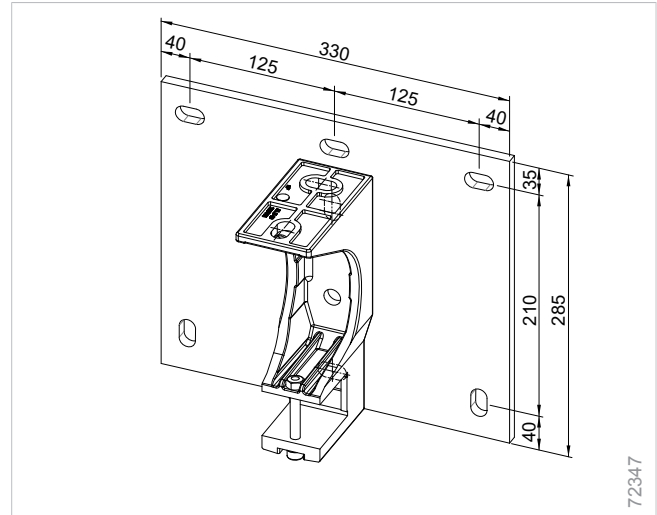


## Details

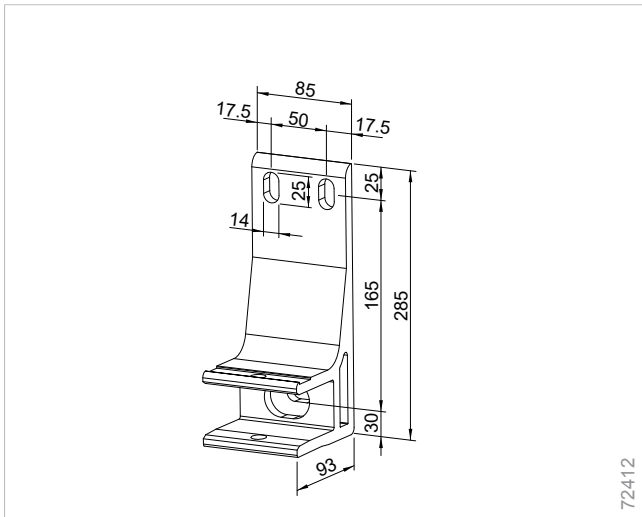
Wall/ceiling console type A/E - 530



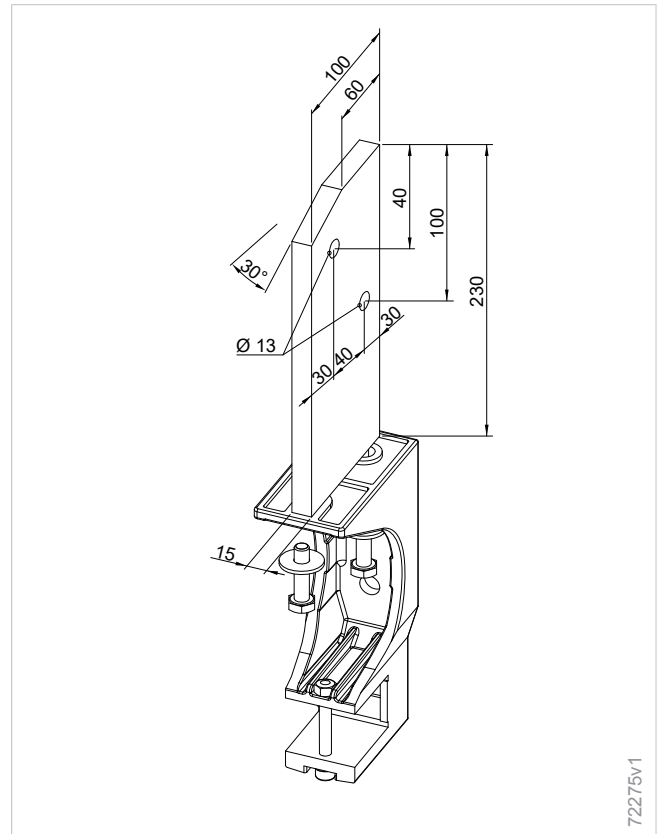
Wall console type D mounting plate - 530



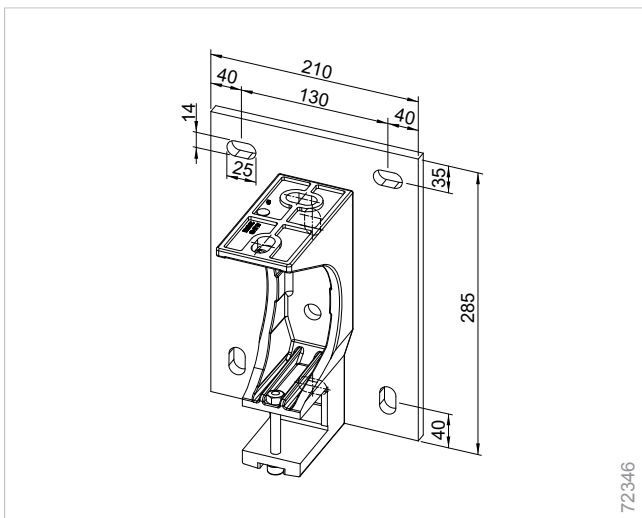
Wall console type B - 530/G60/H60



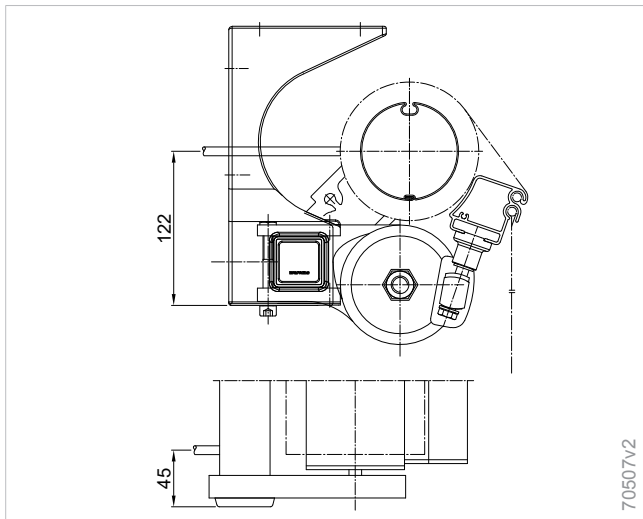
Console for rafters type F - 530



Wall console type C with mounting plate - 530

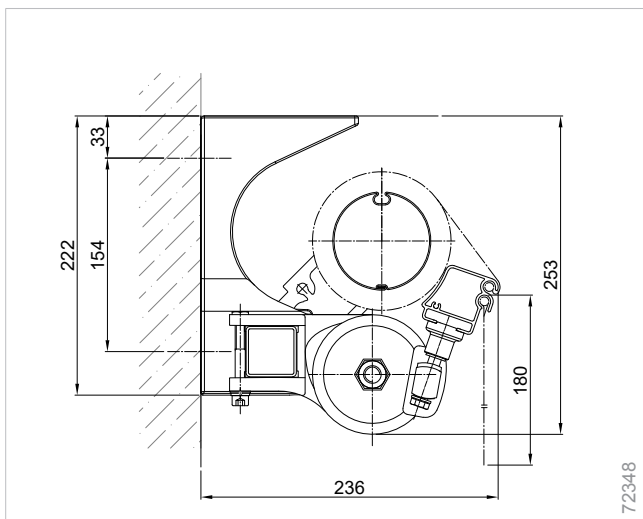


Cable exit - 530

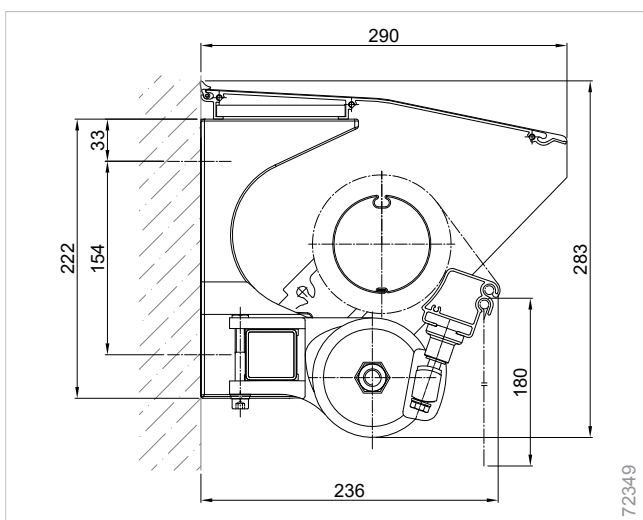


## Mounting examples

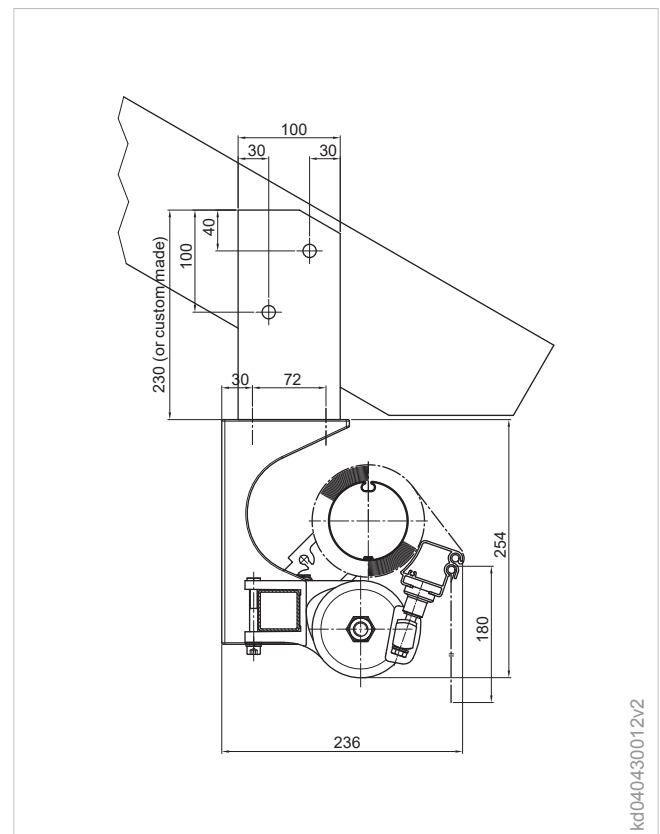
Wall installation - 530



Wall installation with rain hood - 530

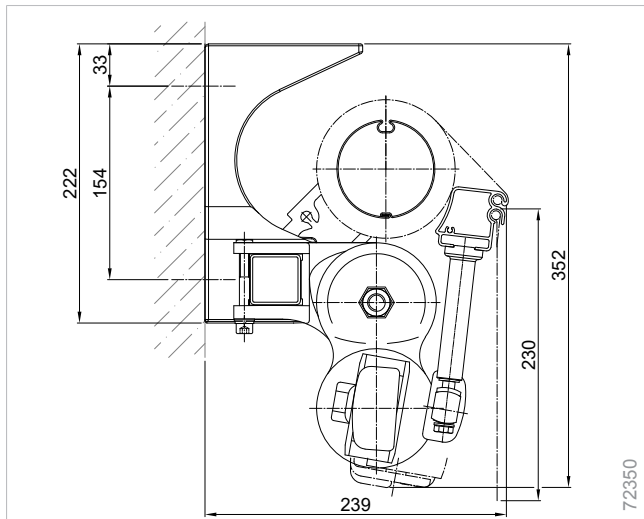


Rafter installation - 530

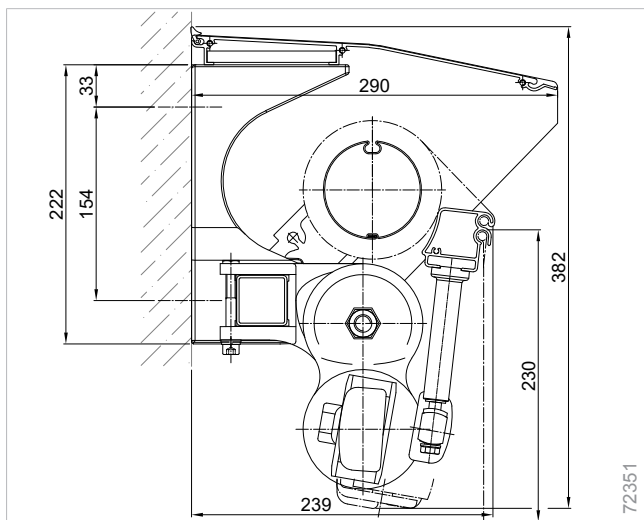




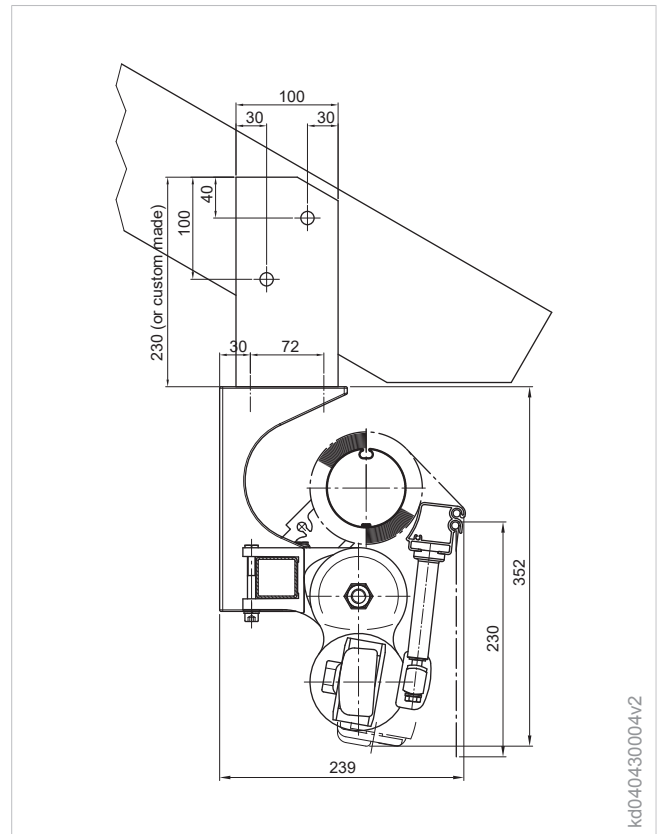
Wall installation - 530 LB



Wall installation with rain hood - 530 LB



Rafter installation - 530 LB



## Further information

Calculate the exact position of the console, tensile force and wind resistance class  
<https://konsolenplaner.warema.de/v2/>



Visualise your product with the WAREMA Designer  
 You can download the app for free from your app store.



Use our free planning programme to plan your sun protection systems  
<https://sonnenschutzplaner.com/>



Configure and plan your product with myWAREMA  
<https://my.warema.com>



Experience the range of colours and fabrics of the WAREMA collections  
<https://www.warema.de/Tools/Kollektionsberater.php>



TechDataPLUS Articulated arm/cassette awnings  
<https://docs.warema.com/1.1444.4>







## Articulated arm awnings Terrea, open

### Articulated arm awning Terrea 700S

#### Tidy

Thanks to the installation in the shaft, the awning completely disappears in the facade when retracted.

#### Personalised

The awning's cover panel can be individually adjusted to the facade design.

#### Attractive

Desired configurations are a possibility thanks to diverse colour and design options.



#### Construction limit values

|                     |         |
|---------------------|---------|
| Maximum order width | 5960 mm |
| Maximum projection  | 3000 mm |

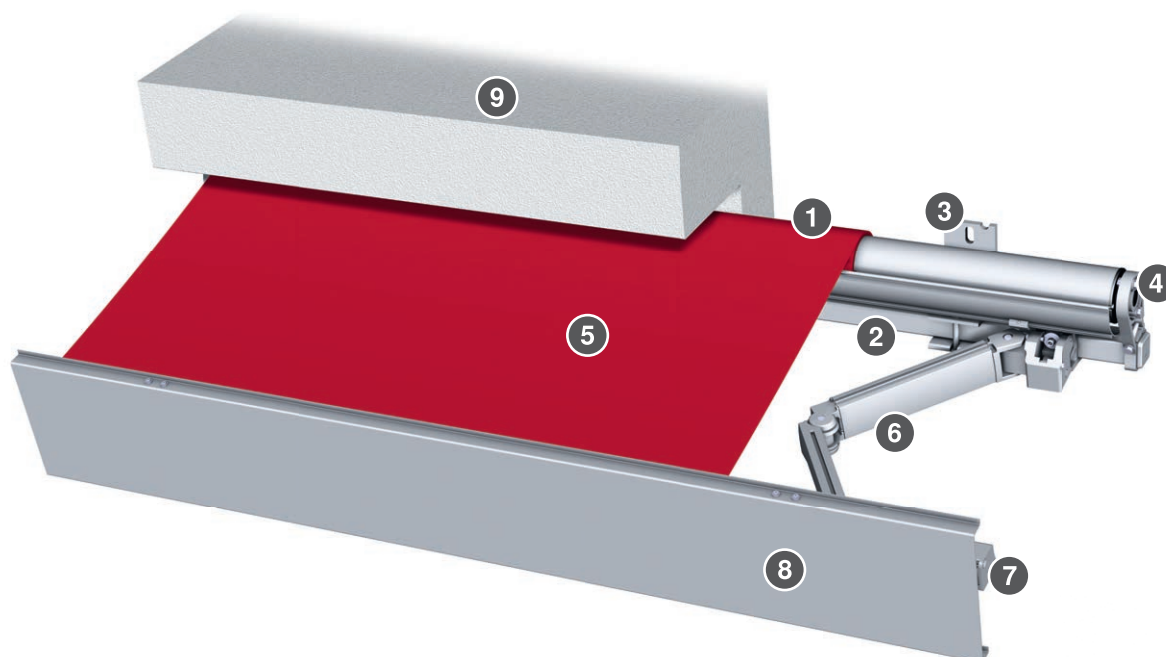


#### Product characteristics

- Articulated arm awning for installation in a shaft on-site
- Optionally with front cover panel

# Components

## Articulated arm awning Terrea 700S



- 1 Shaft
- 2 Bearing tube
- 3 Console
- 4 Fabric shaft console
- 5 Fabric

- 6 Articulated arm
- 7 Front rail
- 8 Front cover panel
- 9 On-site shaft

### Shaft

#### Fabric shaft Ø 85 mm

|          |                  |
|----------|------------------|
| Material | Galvanised steel |
| Surface  | Plain            |
| Profile  | Groove tube      |
| Diameter | 85 mm            |

### Front rail

#### Front rail - 700S

|          |                     |
|----------|---------------------|
| Material | Aluminium, extruded |
| Surface  | Powder-coated       |
| Width    | 57 mm               |
| Height   | 48 mm               |

#### + Side cover

#### Front rail side cover - 700S

|                 |         |
|-----------------|---------|
| Material        | Plastic |
| Material colour | Black   |

### Front rail, optional

#### Front rail - 700S with front cover panel

|          |                   |
|----------|-------------------|
| Material | Aluminium, folded |
| Surface  | Powder-coated     |
| Width    | 26 mm             |
| Height   | 230 mm            |

Dimensions, notes Weight, max. 2 kg per running metre  
For order widths of up to 4000 m, the cover panel is supplied as a single piece. Larger widths are joined.

### Articulated arm

#### Articulated arm - 700S

#### + Articulated arm profile

#### Articulated arm profile, front, 33x61 mm

|          |                     |
|----------|---------------------|
| Material | Aluminium, extruded |
| Surface  | Powder-coated       |
| Width    | 33 mm               |
| Height   | 61 mm               |

#### Articulated arm profile, rear, 35x68 mm

|          |                     |
|----------|---------------------|
| Material | Aluminium, extruded |
| Surface  | Powder-coated       |
| Width    | 35 mm               |
| Height   | 68 mm               |

#### + Articulated arm seat

##### Tilting joint - 700S

|          |                     |
|----------|---------------------|
| Material | Aluminium, extruded |
| Surface  | Powder-coated       |

Tilting joint with windlock mechanism

#### + Power transmission

##### Steel cable

##### Link chain

#### + Power transmission, optional

##### Segment

|          |                     |
|----------|---------------------|
| Material | Aluminium, extruded |
|----------|---------------------|

## Bearing tube

##### Bearing tube

|          |               |
|----------|---------------|
| Material | Steel         |
| Surface  | Powder-coated |
| Profile  | Square tube   |
| Width    | 40 mm         |
| Height   | 40 mm         |

## Fabric shaft console

##### Fabric shaft console - 700S

|          |                     |
|----------|---------------------|
| Material | Aluminium, extruded |
| Surface  | Powder-coated       |

#### + Side cover

##### Bearing tube side cover - 530/700S

|                 |         |
|-----------------|---------|
| Material        | Plastic |
| Material colour | Black   |

## Console

##### Wall console type A - 700S

|          |                     |
|----------|---------------------|
| Material | Aluminium, extruded |
| Surface  | Powder-coated       |
| Width    | 85 mm               |
| Height   | 191 mm              |
| Depth    | 94 mm               |

## Construction limit values

The construction limit values and number of consoles indicated in this document relate to the concrete substructure C20/25 (B25) and installation on rafters.

| Configuration variants                   | Projection          | 1500 mm | 2000 mm | 2500 mm | 3000 mm |
|------------------------------------------|---------------------|---------|---------|---------|---------|
| <b>Fabric qualities + Drive variants</b> |                     |         |         |         |         |
| Acrylic fabric / Twilight Pearl + Motor  | Minimum order width | 1850 mm | 2370 mm | 2870 mm | 3650 mm |
|                                          | Maximum order width | 5960 mm | 5960 mm | 5960 mm | 5960 mm |
| Soltis 92 + Motor                        | Minimum order width | 1850 mm | 2370 mm | 2870 mm |         |
|                                          | Maximum order width | 5500 mm | 5500 mm | 5500 mm |         |

Units with widths from 5001 mm include a thirds articulated arm.

## Drive variants

- Motor

## Motor

- Orea WT

## Radio motor, optional

- WMS-MM (WMS)
- W-MM (EWFS)

+ see "Drive variants", Page 367

## Colours

- WAREMA Colour World

+ see "WAREMA Colour World", Page 12

## Fabric qualities

- Standard acrylic fabric
- Lumera acrylic fabric

Fabric qualities, optional:

- Perfora acrylic
- All Weather acrylic
- Soltis 92
- Twilight Pearl

+ see "Awning collection", Page 356

## Supplementary accessories

- WMS Wind sensor
- Fabric lettering, painted
- Sunprint

+ see "Supplementary accessories", Page 257

## Dimensions

Weight per running metre: 16 - 18 kg/lfm

Weight per running metre, notes: Without consoles, depending on fitted equipment

## Inclination

Inclination angle: 5 - 20 °

Inclination angle, standard: 10 °

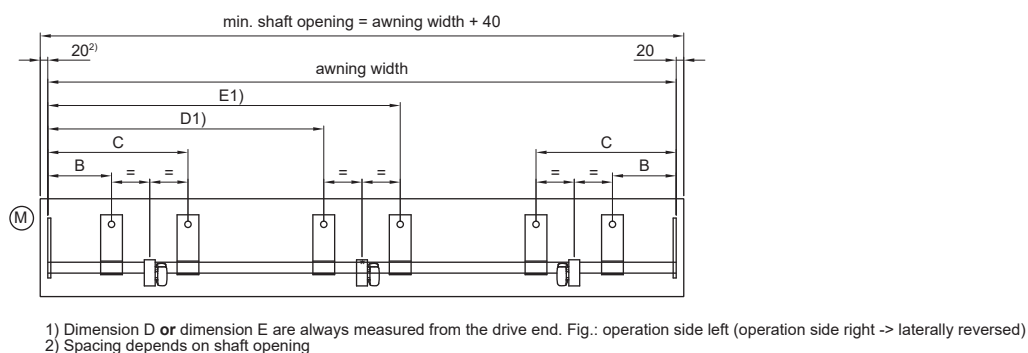
Inclination angle for rain class 2: 10 - 20 °

- Fine adjustment of inclination angle during installation.
- Basic inclination depending on building size and model, tolerance  $\pm 5^\circ$ .

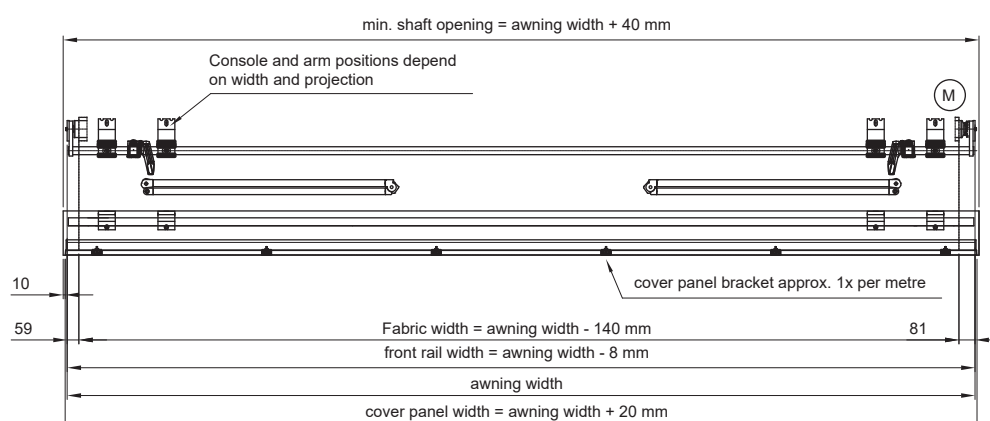
## Dimension determination

The **projection** is defined from the back edge of the console to the leading edge of the front rail, measured across the inclination angle of the fabric.

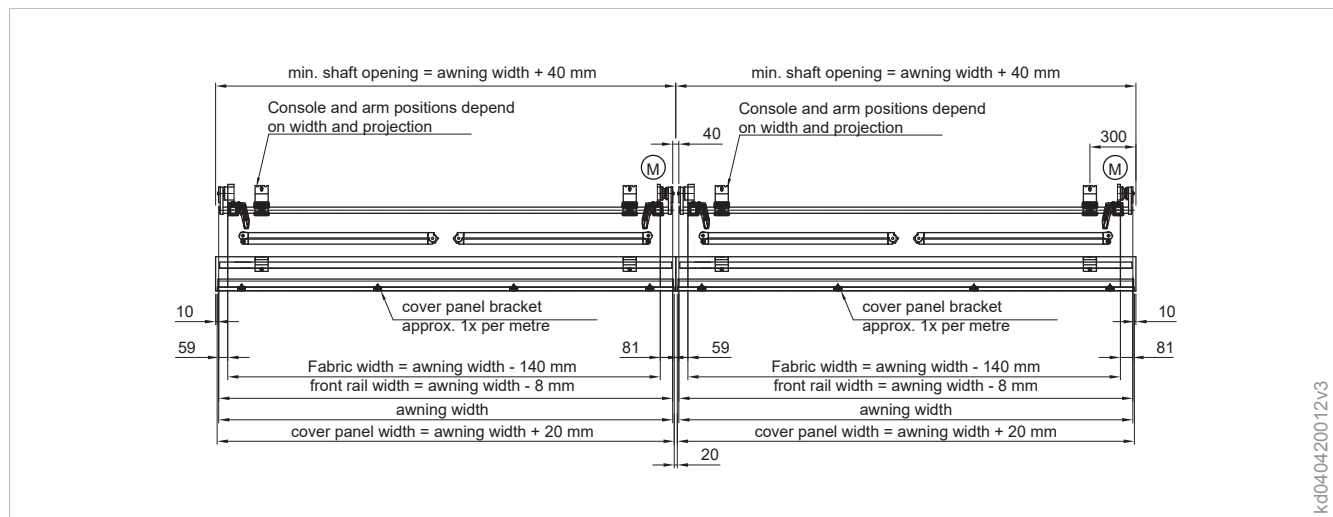
### Individual unit - 700S



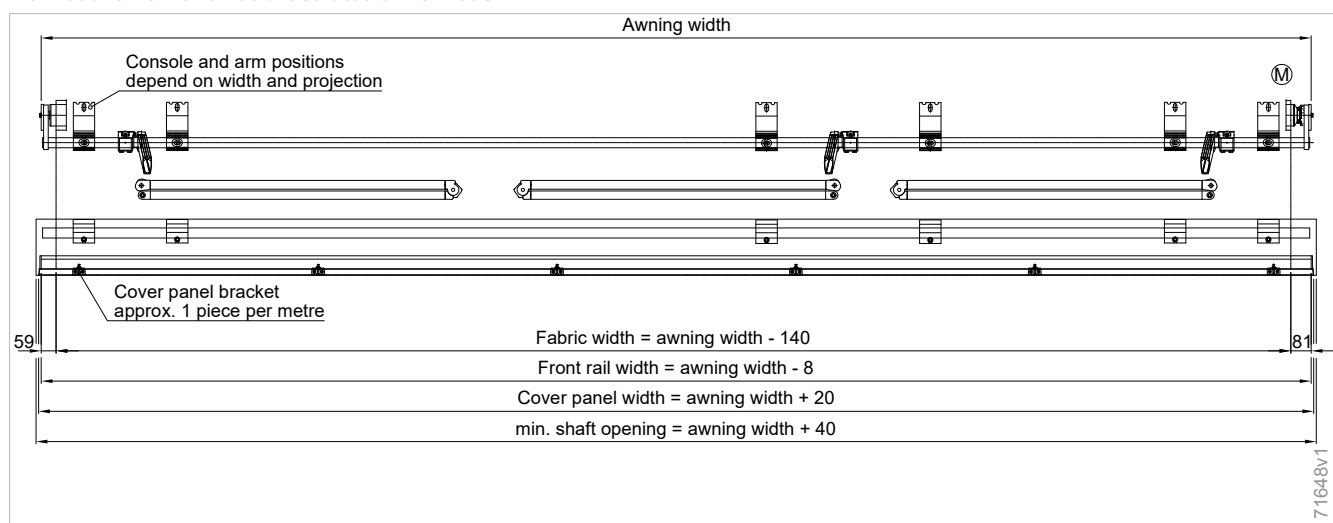
### Dimensions - 700S



## Serial mounting - 700S



## Individual unit with three articulated arms- 700S



## Quantity determination

### Number of consoles, individual unit

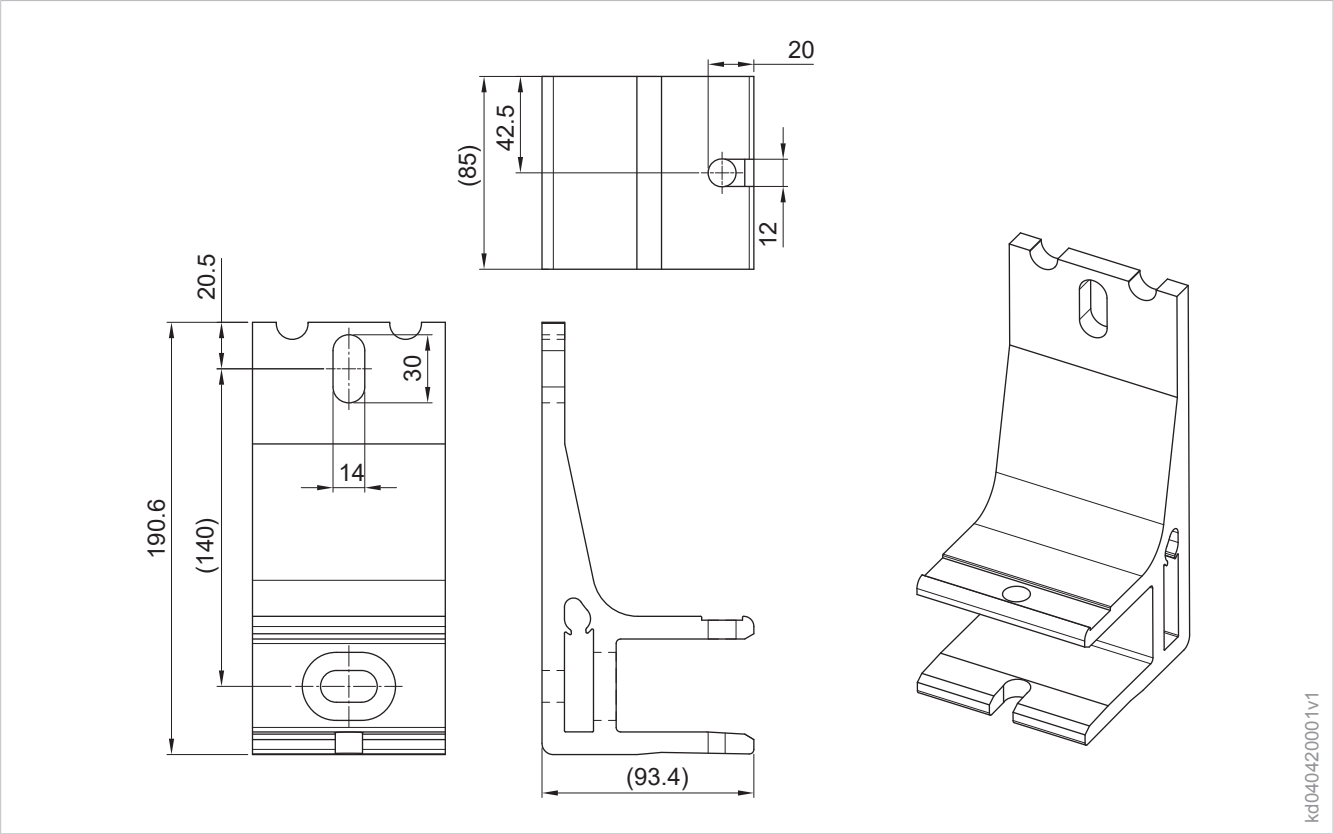
| Configuration variants | Order width    | Projection |         |         |         |
|------------------------|----------------|------------|---------|---------|---------|
|                        |                | 1500 mm    | 2000 mm | 2500 mm | 3000 mm |
| Console/Bracket        |                |            |         |         |         |
| Wall console           | 0 - 5000 mm    | 2          | 2       | 2       | 4       |
| Wall console           | 5001 - 5280 mm | 4          | 4       | 6       | 4       |
| Wall console           | 5281 - 5960 mm | 4          | 4       | 6       | 6       |

Number of consoles in relation to the concrete substructure C20/25 (B25).

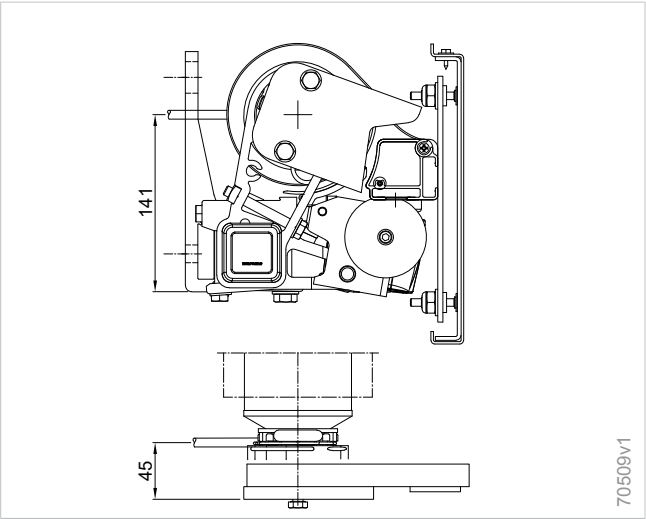


# Details

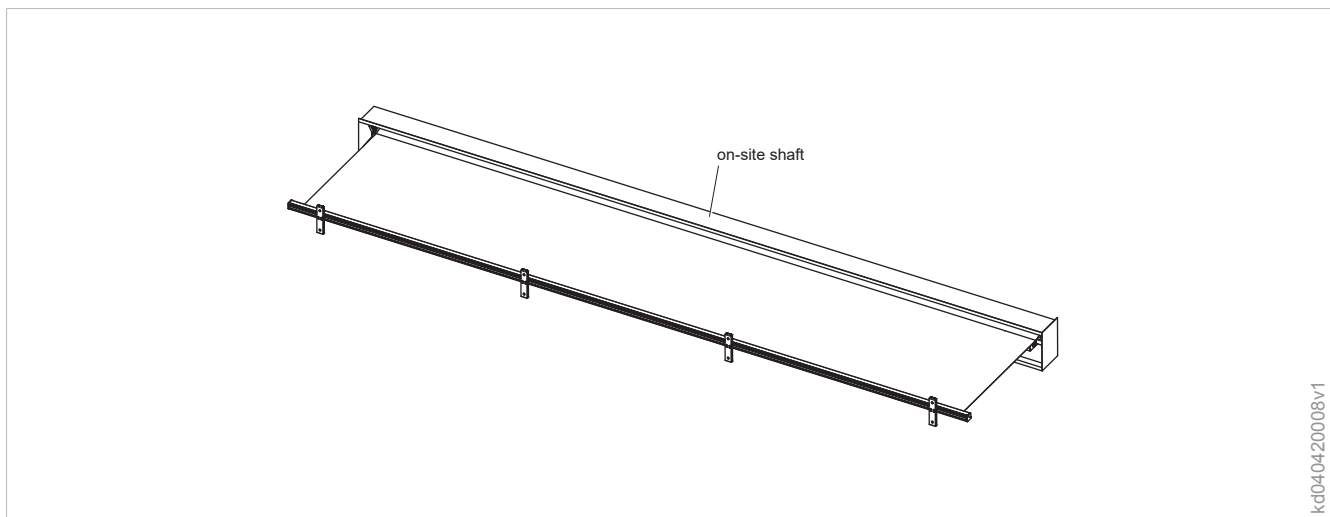
## Wall console type A - 700S



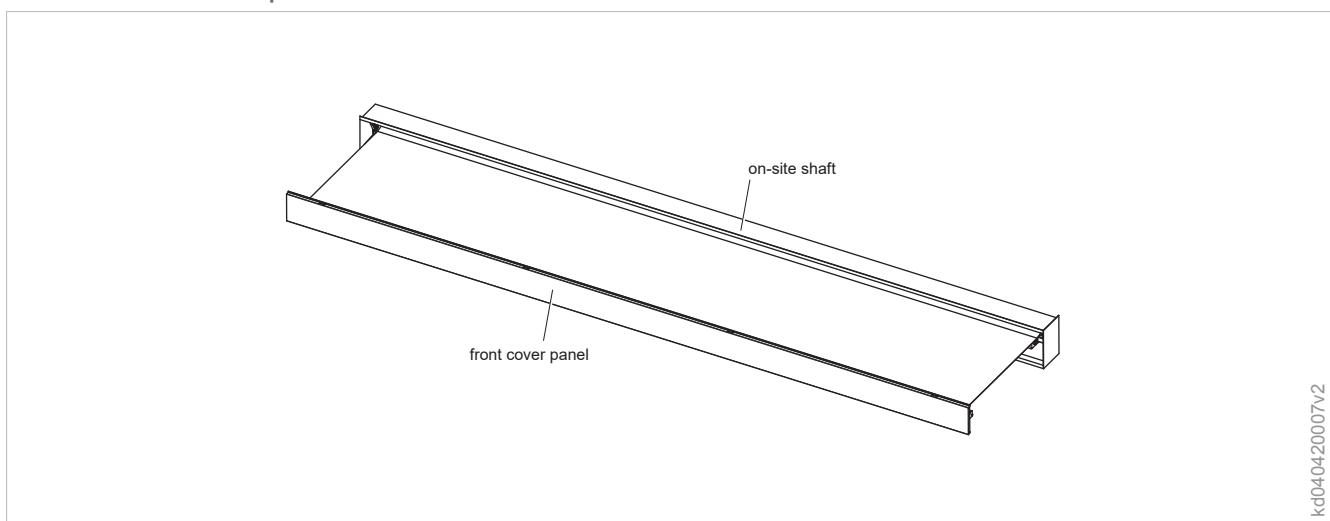
## Cable exit - 700S



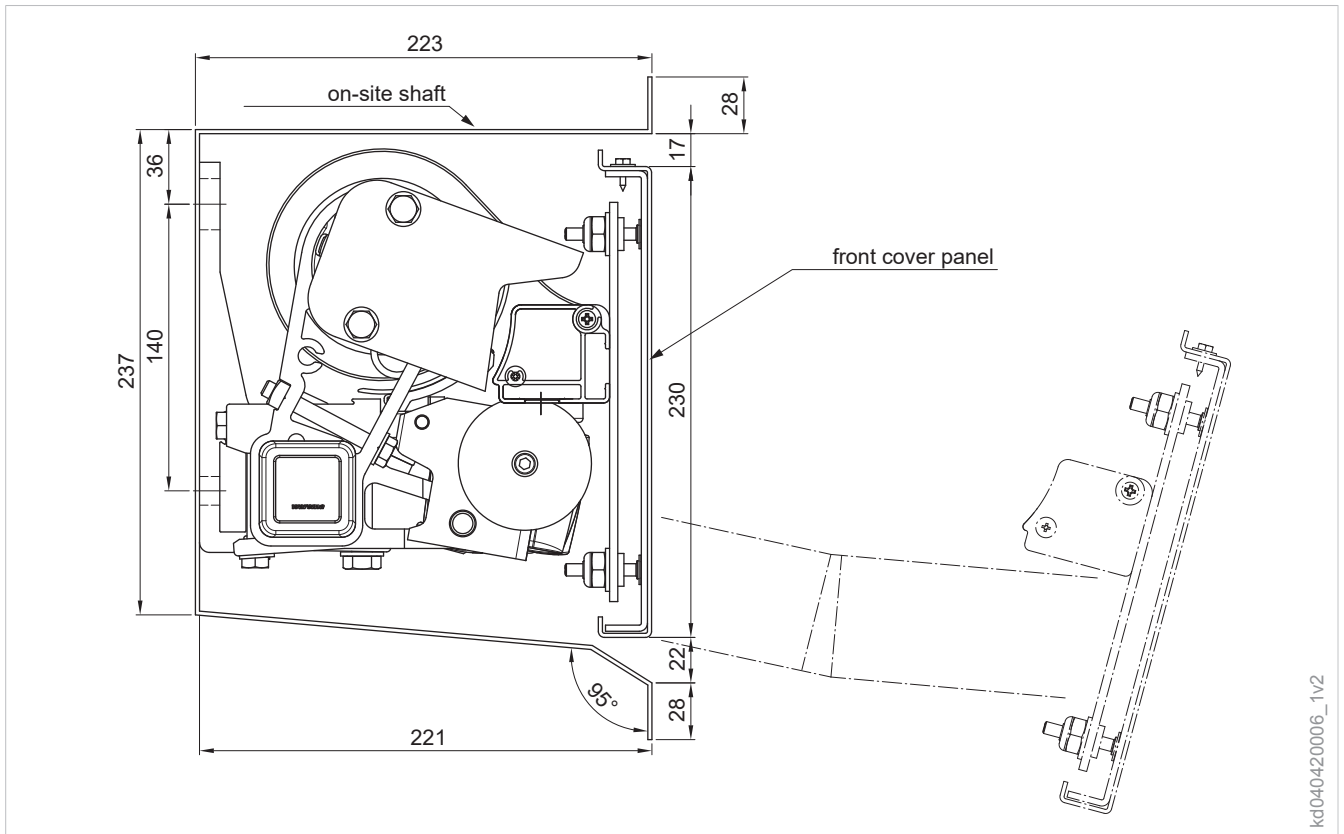
#### Front rail with screw-on plate and bracket - 700S



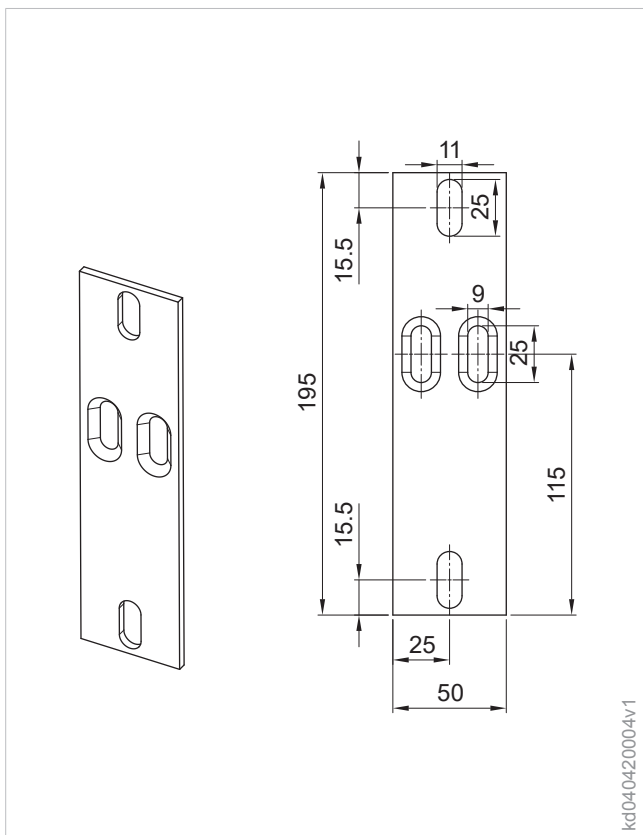
#### Front rail with front cover panel - 700S



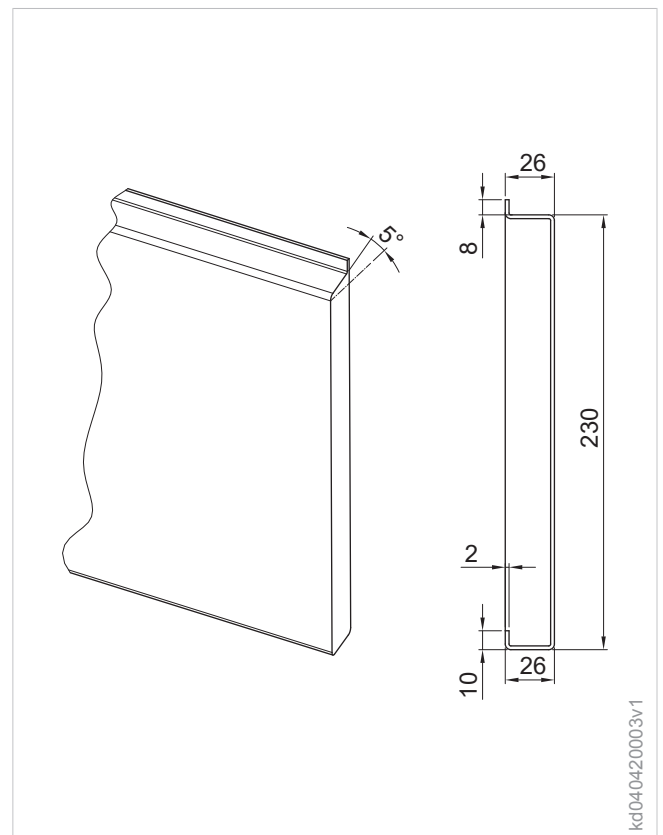
## Shaft installation with front cover panel - 700S



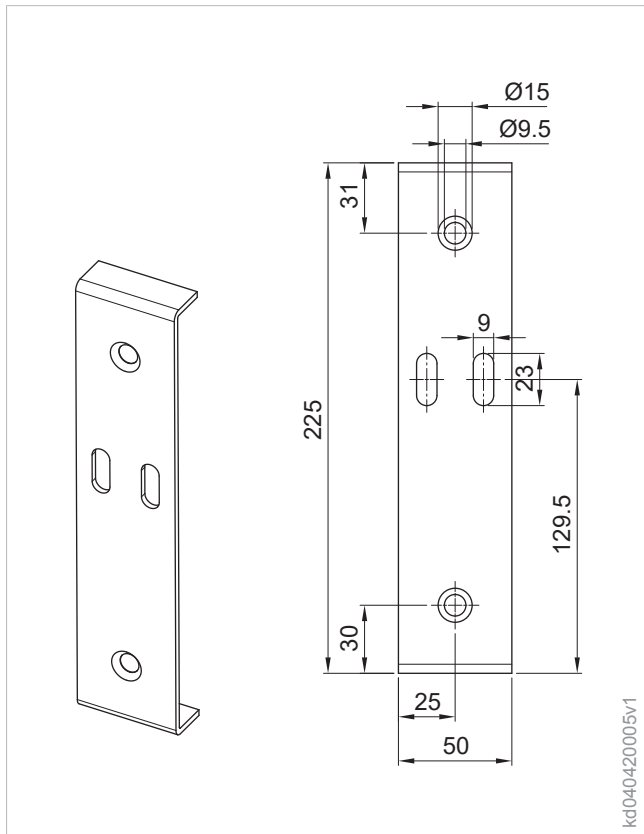
## Screw-on plate - 700S



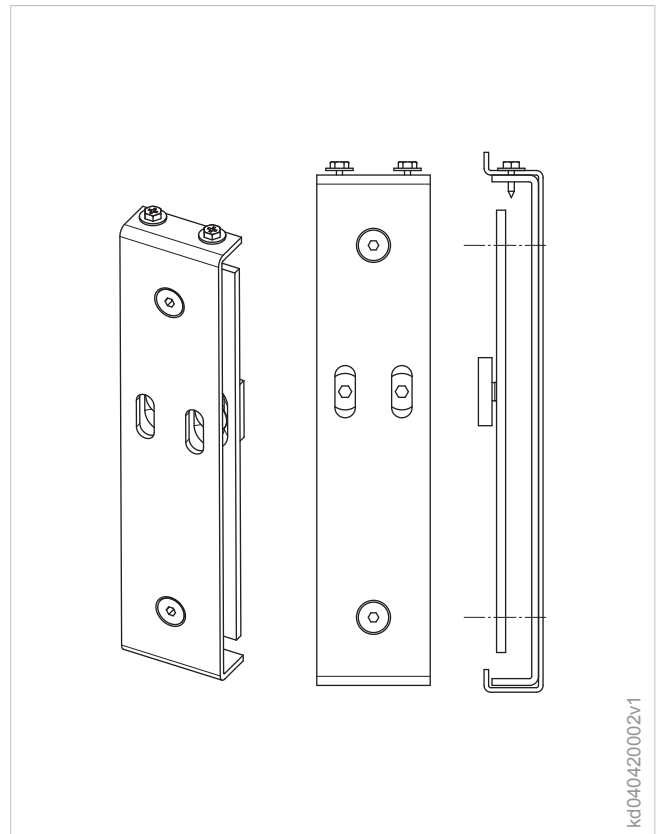
## Front cover panel - 700S



## Bracket - 700S



## Cover panel fixing, complete - 700S



## Further information

Use our free planning programme to plan your sun protection systems  
<https://sonnenschutzplaner.com/>



Experience the range of colours and fabrics of the WAREMA collections  
<https://www.warema.de/Tools/Kollektionsberater.php>



Calculate the exact position of the console, tensile force and wind resistance class  
<https://konsolenplaner.warema.de/v2/>



Visualise your product with the WAREMA Designer  
 You can download the app for free from your app store.



TechDataPLUS Articulated arm/cassette awnings  
<https://docs.warema.com/1.1444.4>







## Articulated arm awnings Terrea, open

### Articulated arm awning Terrea G60

#### Attractive

The slender product design makes the awning a sun shading system that is harmoniously integrated into the facade.

#### Brilliant extras

With optional extras such as integrated LED strips in the front rail or a radiant heater, the equipment can be extended as desired.

#### Comfortable

The optional valance roller blind provides protection from low-lying solar radiation.



#### Construction limit values

|                                   |          |
|-----------------------------------|----------|
| Maximum order width               | 7000 mm  |
| Maximum projection                | 4000 mm  |
| Maximum order width of group unit | 13500 mm |

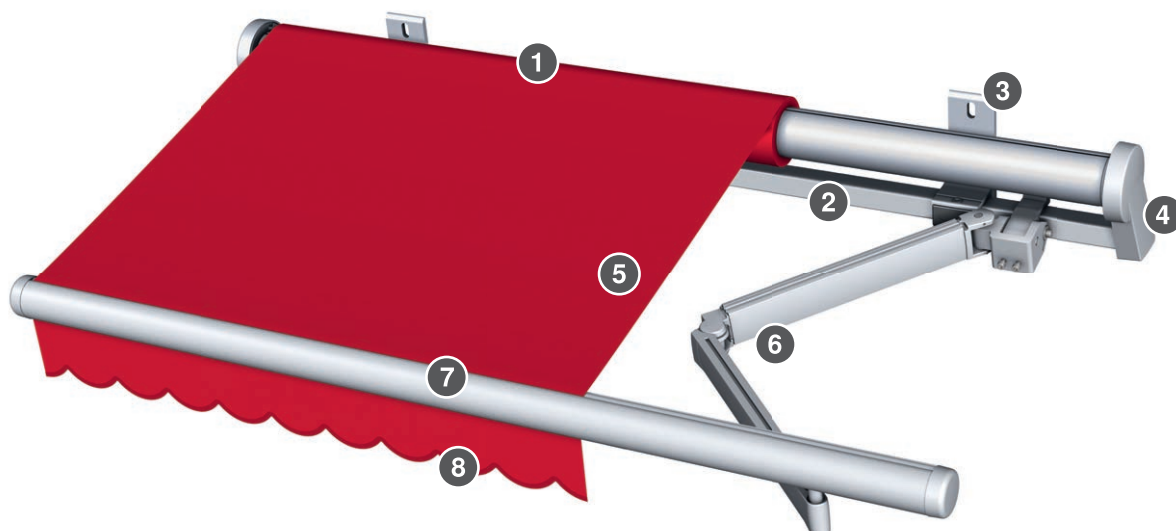


#### Product characteristics

- Large-area sun shading system for installation in a protected position
- Also suitable for narrow patios thanks to the LB model

# Components

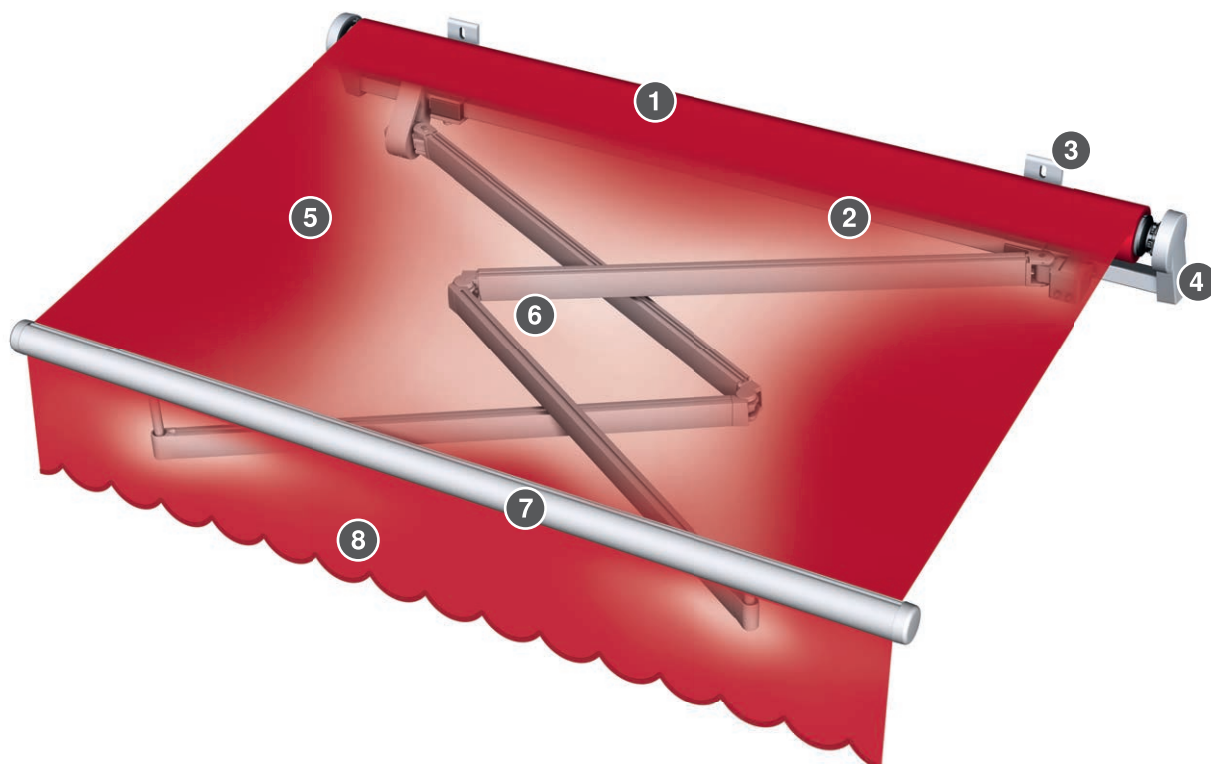
Articulated arm awning Terrea G60



- 1 Shaft
- 2 Bearing tube
- 3 Console
- 4 Fabric shaft console

- 5 Fabric
- 6 Articulated arm
- 7 Front rail
- 8 Valance

Articulated arm awning Terrea G60 LB



- 1 Shaft
- 2 Bearing tube
- 3 Console
- 4 Fabric shaft console

- 5 Fabric
- 6 Articulated arm
- 7 Front rail
- 8 Valance



## Shaft

### Fabric shaft Ø 85 mm

|          |                  |
|----------|------------------|
| Material | Galvanised steel |
| Surface  | Plain            |
| Profile  | Groove tube      |
| Diameter | 85 mm            |

## Front rail

### Front rail - G60/H60 Ø 70 mm

|          |                     |
|----------|---------------------|
| Material | Aluminium, extruded |
| Surface  | Powder-coated       |
| Diameter | 70 mm               |

#### + Side cover

### Front rail side cover - G60/H60 Ø 70 mm

|          |               |
|----------|---------------|
| Material | Aluminium     |
| Surface  | Powder-coated |

## Front rail, optional

### Front rail - G60/H60 with valance roller blind Ø 90 mm

|          |                     |
|----------|---------------------|
| Material | Aluminium, extruded |
| Surface  | Powder-coated       |
| Diameter | 90 mm               |

#### + Side cover

### Front rail side cover - G60/H60 Ø 90 mm

|          |               |
|----------|---------------|
| Material | Aluminium     |
| Surface  | Powder-coated |

## Articulated arm

### Articulated arm - G60

#### + Articulated arm profile

### Articulated arm profile, front, 33x61 mm

|          |                     |
|----------|---------------------|
| Material | Aluminium, extruded |
| Surface  | Powder-coated       |
| Width    | 33 mm               |
| Height   | 61 mm               |

### Articulated arm profile, rear, 35x68 mm

|          |                     |
|----------|---------------------|
| Material | Aluminium, extruded |
| Surface  | Powder-coated       |
| Width    | 35 mm               |
| Height   | 68 mm               |

#### + Articulated arm seat

### Articulated arm seat - G60

|          |                     |
|----------|---------------------|
| Material | Aluminium, extruded |
| Surface  | Powder-coated       |

#### + Power transmission

### Steel cable

### Link chain

#### + Power transmission, optional

### Segment

|          |                     |
|----------|---------------------|
| Material | Aluminium, extruded |
|----------|---------------------|

## Bearing tube

### Bearing tube

|          |               |
|----------|---------------|
| Material | Steel         |
| Surface  | Powder-coated |
| Profile  | Square tube   |
| Width    | 40 mm         |
| Height   | 40 mm         |

## Valance

### Valance - G60/H60/530

|        |        |
|--------|--------|
| Height | 180 mm |
|--------|--------|

The valance has a matching frame, is individually removable and is available in 3 shapes.

If no shape is stated, we will supply valance shape no. 11 (curved).

## Valance, optional

### LB model with valance - G60/H60/530

|        |        |
|--------|--------|
| Height | 270 mm |
|--------|--------|

The valance has a matching frame, is individually removable and is available in 3 shapes.

If no shape is stated, we will supply valance shape no. 11 (curved).

## Fabric shaft console

### Fabric shaft console - G60/H60

|          |                     |
|----------|---------------------|
| Material | Aluminium, extruded |
| Surface  | Powder-coated       |

#### + Side cover

### Fabric shaft console side cover - G60

|          |               |
|----------|---------------|
| Material | Aluminium     |
| Surface  | Powder-coated |

## Console

### Wall console type A - G60/H60

|          |                     |
|----------|---------------------|
| Material | Aluminium, extruded |
| Surface  | Powder-coated       |
| Width    | 80 mm               |
| Height   | 220 mm              |
| Depth    | 93 mm               |

### Wall console type B - 530/G60/H60

|          |                     |
|----------|---------------------|
| Material | Aluminium, extruded |
| Surface  | Powder-coated       |
| Width    | 85 mm               |
| Height   | 220 mm              |
| Depth    | 93 mm               |

Wall installation with 3 drilled holes

### Wall console type C - G60/H60

|          |               |
|----------|---------------|
| Material | Steel         |
| Surface  | Powder-coated |
| Width    | 210 mm        |
| Height   | 285 mm        |
| Depth    | 103 mm        |

Wall console type A with mounting plate, small (steel).

### Wall console type D - G60/H60

|          |               |
|----------|---------------|
| Material | Steel         |
| Surface  | Powder-coated |
| Width    | 330 mm        |
| Height   | 285 mm        |
| Depth    | 103 mm        |

Wall console type A with mounting plate, large (steel).

### Ceiling console type E - G60/H60

|          |                     |
|----------|---------------------|
| Material | Aluminium, extruded |
| Surface  | Powder-coated       |
| Width    | 80 mm               |
| Height   | 260 mm              |
| Depth    | 159 mm              |

### Console for rafters type F - G60/H60

|          |               |
|----------|---------------|
| Material | Aluminium     |
| Surface  | Powder-coated |
| Width    | 80 mm         |
| Height   | 490 mm        |
| Depth    | 159 mm        |

## Drive variants

- Motor

Drive variant, optional:

- Crank

## Motor

- LT50

Motor optional:

- R35/8G (solar)
- LT50 NHK

## Radio motor, optional

- WMS-MP (WMS)
- W-MP (EWFS)

## Crank, optional

- Crank with ball hook

## Gear, optional

- Bevel gear with free wheel at the lower limit point

+ see "Drive variants", Page 367

## Colours

- WAREMA Colour World

+ see "WAREMA Colour World", Page 12

## Fabric qualities

- Standard acrylic fabric
- Lumera acrylic fabric

Fabric qualities, optional:

- Perfora acrylic
- All Weather acrylic
- Soltis 92
- Twilight Pearl
- Lacquered fabric Precontraint 302

+ see "Awning collection", Page 356

## Supplementary accessories

- Motor with additional collapsible crank ZHK
- Solar drive
- WMS Wind sensor
- Integrated lighting
- LED strip light rail
- Radiant heater
- Valance roller blind with motor and integrated WMS comfort control
- Valance roller blind with motor and basic model
- Valance roller blind with crank
- Turning gear
- Fabric lettering, painted
- Sunprint
- LB model
- Patio frame
- Protective fabric cover

+ see "Supplementary accessories", Page 257

## Construction limit values

The construction limit values and number of consoles indicated in this document relate to the concrete substructure C20/25 (B25) and installation on rafters.

| Configuration variants                                                        | Projection                        | 1500 mm  | 2000 mm  | 2500 mm  | 3000 mm  | 3500 mm  | 4000 mm  |
|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------|-----------------------------------|----------|----------|----------|----------|----------|----------|
| <b>Fabric qualities + Drive variants</b>                                      |                                   |          |          |          |          |          |          |
| Acrylic fabric / Twilight Pearl + Motor                                       | Minimum order width               | 1870 mm  | 2390 mm  | 2890 mm  | 3400 mm  | 4180 mm  | 4690 mm  |
|                                                                               | Maximum order width               | 7000 mm  | 7000 mm  | 7000 mm  | 7000 mm  | 7000 mm  | 7000 mm  |
|                                                                               | Minimum group unit order width    | 4600 mm  | 5640 mm  | 6640 mm  | 7660 mm  | 8950 mm  | 9970 mm  |
|                                                                               | Maximum order width of group unit | 13500 mm | 13500 mm | 13500 mm | 13500 mm | 13500 mm | 13500 mm |
| Acrylic fabric / Twilight Pearl + Crank                                       | Minimum order width               | 1910 mm  | 2430 mm  | 2930 mm  | 3440 mm  | 4220 mm  | 4730 mm  |
|                                                                               | Maximum order width               | 6500 mm  | 6500 mm  | 6500 mm  | 6500 mm  | 6500 mm  | 6500 mm  |
| Soltis 92 / Lacquered fabric Preconstraint 302 + Motor                        | Minimum order width               | 1870 mm  | 2390 mm  | 2890 mm  |          |          |          |
|                                                                               | Maximum order width               | 5500 mm  | 5500 mm  | 5500 mm  |          |          |          |
| Soltis 92 / Lacquered fabric Preconstraint 302 + Crank                        | Minimum order width               | 1910 mm  | 2430 mm  | 2930 mm  |          |          |          |
|                                                                               | Maximum order width               | 5500 mm  | 5500 mm  | 5500 mm  |          |          |          |
| <b>Fabric qualities + Drive variants + Supplementary accessories</b>          |                                   |          |          |          |          |          |          |
| Acrylic fabric / Twilight Pearl + Motor + Valance roller blind                | Minimum order width               | 1870 mm  | 2390 mm  | 2890 mm  | 3400 mm  | 4180 mm  |          |
|                                                                               | Maximum order width               | 7000 mm  | 7000 mm  | 7000 mm  | 7000 mm  | 7000 mm  |          |
|                                                                               | Minimum group unit order width    | 4600 mm  | 5640 mm  | 6640 mm  | 7660 mm  | 8950 mm  |          |
|                                                                               | Maximum order width of group unit | 13500 mm | 13500 mm | 13500 mm | 13500 mm | 13500 mm |          |
| Acrylic fabric / Twilight Pearl + Crank + Valance roller blind                | Minimum order width               | 1910 mm  | 2430 mm  | 2930 mm  | 3440 mm  | 4220 mm  |          |
|                                                                               | Maximum order width               | 6500 mm  | 6500 mm  | 6500 mm  | 6500 mm  | 6500 mm  |          |
| Acrylic fabric / Twilight Pearl + Motor + Turning gear                        | Minimum order width               | 2110 mm  | 2630 mm  | 3130 mm  | 3640 mm  | 4420 mm  |          |
|                                                                               | Maximum order width               | 6500 mm  | 6500 mm  | 6500 mm  | 6500 mm  | 6000 mm  |          |
| Acrylic fabric / Twilight Pearl + Crank + Turning gear                        | Minimum order width               | 2160 mm  | 2680 mm  | 3180 mm  | 3690 mm  | 4470 mm  |          |
|                                                                               | Maximum order width               | 6500 mm  | 6500 mm  | 6500 mm  | 6500 mm  | 6000 mm  |          |
| Acrylic fabric / Twilight Pearl + Motor + Turning gear / Valance roller blind | Minimum order width               | 2110 mm  | 2630 mm  | 3130 mm  | 3640 mm  | 4420 mm  |          |
|                                                                               | Maximum order width               | 6500 mm  | 6500 mm  | 6500 mm  | 5500 mm  | 4500 mm  |          |
| Acrylic fabric / Twilight Pearl + Crank + Turning gear / Valance roller blind | Minimum order width               | 2160 mm  | 2680 mm  | 3180 mm  | 3690 mm  | 4470 mm  |          |
|                                                                               | Maximum order width               | 6500 mm  | 6500 mm  | 6500 mm  | 5500 mm  | 4500 mm  |          |
| Acrylic fabric / Twilight Pearl + Motor + LB model                            | Minimum order width               | 1180 mm  | 1440 mm  | 1690 mm  | 1940 mm  | 2470 mm  | 2720 mm  |
|                                                                               | Maximum order width               | 1900 mm  | 2420 mm  | 2920 mm  | 3430 mm  | 4210 mm  | 4720 mm  |
| Acrylic fabric / Twilight Pearl + Crank + LB model                            | Minimum order width               | 1220 mm  | 1480 mm  | 1730 mm  | 1980 mm  | 2510 mm  | 2760 mm  |
|                                                                               | Maximum order width               | 1900 mm  | 2420 mm  | 2920 mm  | 3430 mm  | 4210 mm  | 4720 mm  |
| Acrylic fabric / Twilight Pearl + Motor + LB model / Valance roller blind     | Minimum order width               | 1180 mm  | 1440 mm  | 1690 mm  | 1940 mm  | 2470 mm  |          |
|                                                                               | Maximum order width               | 1900 mm  | 2420 mm  | 2920 mm  | 3430 mm  | 4210 mm  |          |
| Acrylic fabric / Twilight Pearl + Crank + LB model / Valance roller blind     | Minimum order width               | 1220 mm  | 1480 mm  | 1730 mm  | 1980 mm  | 2510 mm  |          |
|                                                                               | Maximum order width               | 1900 mm  | 2420 mm  | 2920 mm  | 3430 mm  | 4210 mm  |          |
| Soltis 92 + Motor + Valance roller blind                                      | Minimum order width               | 1870 mm  | 2390 mm  | 2890 mm  |          |          |          |
|                                                                               | Maximum order width               | 5500 mm  | 5500 mm  | 5500 mm  |          |          |          |
| Soltis 92 + Crank + Valance roller blind                                      | Minimum order width               | 1910 mm  | 2430 mm  | 2930 mm  |          |          |          |
|                                                                               | Maximum order width               | 5500 mm  | 5500 mm  | 5500 mm  |          |          |          |

| Configuration variants                                                     | Projection          | 1500 mm | 2000 mm | 2500 mm | 3000 mm | 3500 mm | 4000 mm |
|----------------------------------------------------------------------------|---------------------|---------|---------|---------|---------|---------|---------|
| Soltis 92 / Lacquered fabric<br>Precontraint 302 + Motor +<br>Turning gear | Minimum order width | 2110 mm | 2630 mm | 3130 mm |         |         |         |
|                                                                            | Maximum order width | 5500 mm | 5500 mm | 5500 mm |         |         |         |
| Soltis 92 / Lacquered fabric<br>Precontraint 302 + Crank +<br>Turning gear | Minimum order width | 2160 mm | 2680 mm | 3180 mm |         |         |         |
|                                                                            | Maximum order width | 5500 mm | 5500 mm | 5500 mm |         |         |         |
| Soltis 92 + Motor + Turning<br>gear / Valance roller blind                 | Minimum order width | 2110 mm | 2630 mm | 3130 mm |         |         |         |
|                                                                            | Maximum order width | 5500 mm | 5500 mm | 5500 mm |         |         |         |
| Soltis 92 + Crank + Turning<br>gear / Valance roller blind                 | Minimum order width | 2160 mm | 2680 mm | 3180 mm |         |         |         |
|                                                                            | Maximum order width | 5500 mm | 5500 mm | 5500 mm |         |         |         |
| Soltis 92 / Lacquered fabric<br>Precontraint 302 + Motor +<br>LB model     | Minimum order width | 1180 mm | 1440 mm | 1690 mm |         |         |         |
|                                                                            | Maximum order width | 1900 mm | 2420 mm | 2920 mm |         |         |         |
| Soltis 92 / Lacquered fabric<br>Precontraint 302 + Crank +<br>LB model     | Minimum order width | 1220 mm | 1480 mm | 1730 mm |         |         |         |
|                                                                            | Maximum order width | 1900 mm | 2420 mm | 2920 mm |         |         |         |
| Soltis 92 + Motor + LB<br>model / Valance roller blind                     | Minimum order width | 1180 mm | 1440 mm | 1690 mm |         |         |         |
|                                                                            | Maximum order width | 1900 mm | 2420 mm | 2920 mm |         |         |         |
| Soltis 92 + Crank + LB<br>model / Valance roller blind                     | Minimum order width | 1220 mm | 1480 mm | 1730 mm |         |         |         |
|                                                                            | Maximum order width | 1900 mm | 2420 mm | 2920 mm |         |         |         |

**Lacquered fabric** not possible in combination with a fabric bearing shell or valance roller blind.

#### Minimum width:

- Increased by 270 mm for rafter installation and projection 3000 mm
- Increased by 270 mm for LB model rafter installation with valance roller blind and projection 3000 mm

#### LB model:

- Front rail seats and articulated arm seats are always height offset on the non-drive end.
- LB model not possible with turning gear.

## Dimensions

Weight per running metre: 16 - 18 kg/lfm

Weight per running metre, notes: Without consoles, depending on fitted equipment

## Inclination

Inclination angle: 5 - 40 °

Inclination angle, optional: 41 - 85 °

Inclination angle, standard: 10 °

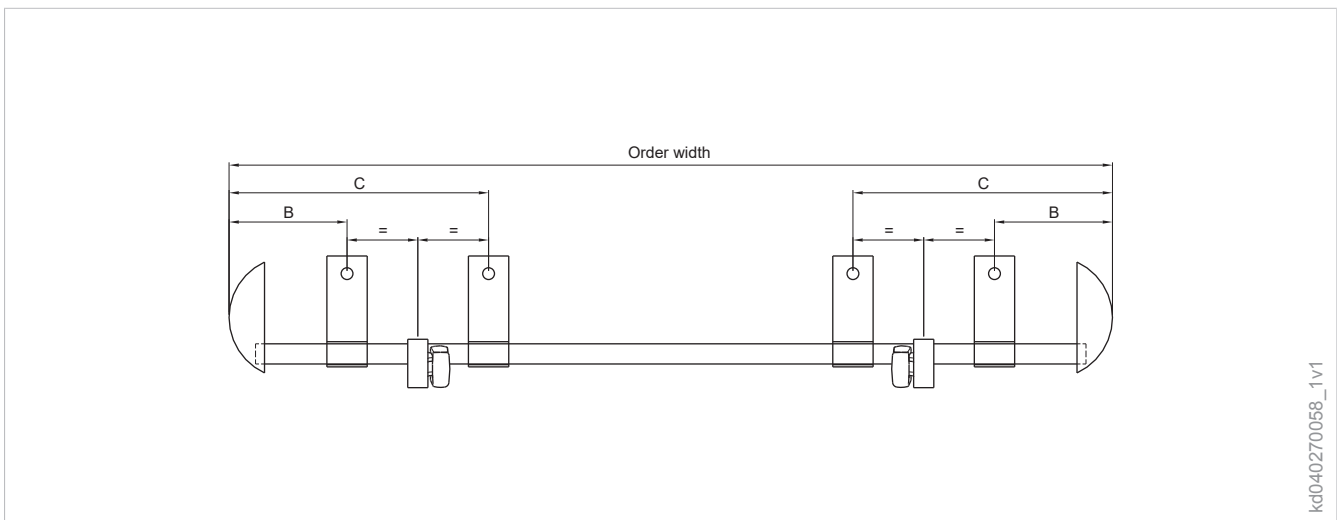
Inclination angle for rain class 2: 14 - 85 °

- Inclination angle with **LB model** 5° - 20°
- Fine adjustment of inclination angle during installation.
- Basic inclination depending on building size and model, tolerance ±5°.

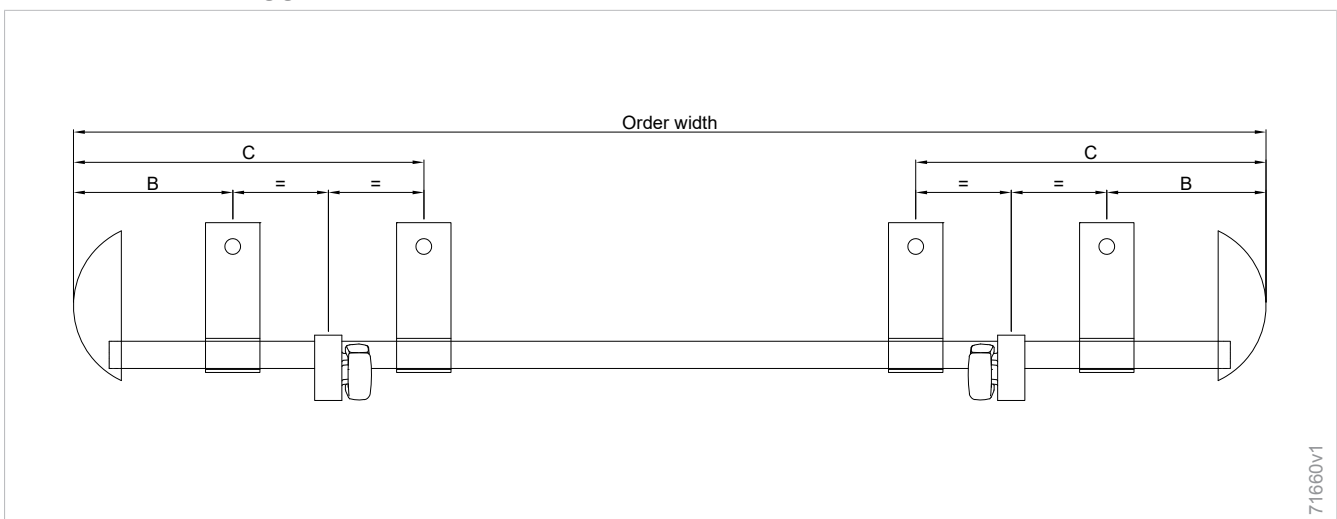
## Dimension determination

The **projection** is defined from the back edge of the console to the leading edge of the front rail, measured across the inclination angle of the fabric.

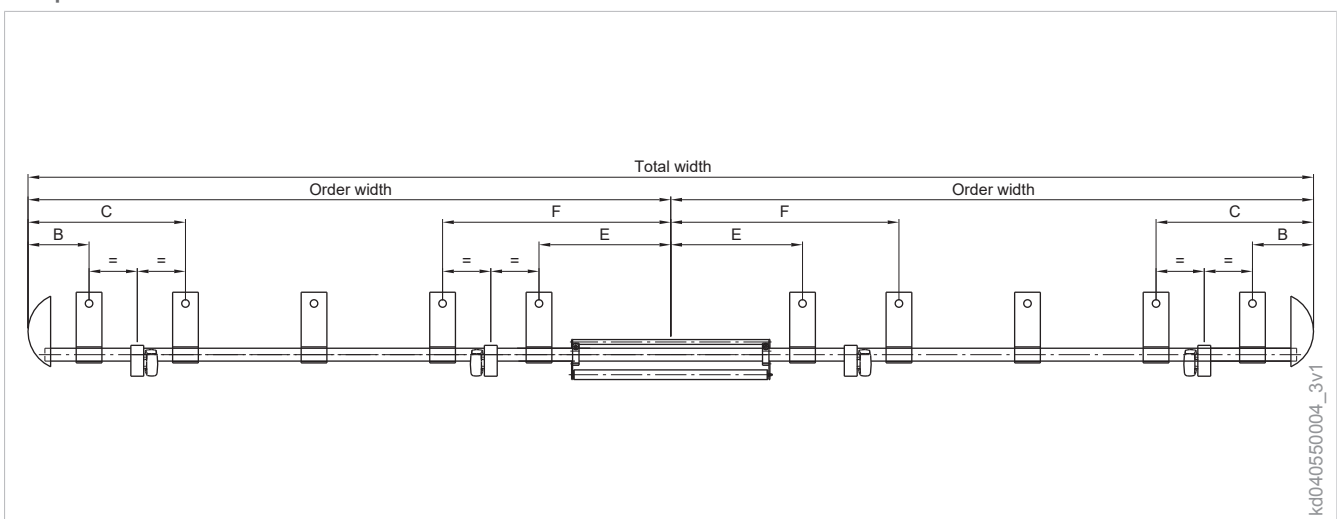
### Individual unit - G60



### Individual unit with turning gear - G60



### Group unit - G60/H60



## Quantity determination

### Number of consoles, individual unit

| Configuration variants                                           | Order width    | Projection |         |         |         |         |         |
|------------------------------------------------------------------|----------------|------------|---------|---------|---------|---------|---------|
|                                                                  |                | 1500 mm    | 2000 mm | 2500 mm | 3000 mm | 3500 mm | 4000 mm |
| Console/Bracket                                                  |                |            |         |         |         |         |         |
| Wall console / Ceiling console                                   | 0 - 5000 mm    | 2          | 2       | 2       | 2       | 4       | 4       |
| Wall console / Ceiling console                                   | 5001 - 5500 mm | 2          | 2       | 2       | 4       | 4       | 4       |
| Wall console / Ceiling console                                   | 5501 - 6500 mm | 3          | 3       | 3       | 5       | 5       | 5       |
| Wall console / Ceiling console                                   | 6501 - 7000 mm | 3          | 3       | 5       | 5       | 5       | 5       |
| Console for rafters                                              | 0 - 4000 mm    | 2          | 2       | 2       | 4       |         |         |
| Console for rafters                                              | 4001 - 5500 mm | 2          | 2       | 4       | 4       | 4       | 4       |
| Console for rafters                                              | 5501 - 6500 mm | 3          | 3       | 5       | 5       | 5       | 5       |
| Console for rafters                                              | 6501 - 7000 mm | 3          | 5       | 5       | 5       | 5       | 5       |
| Console/Bracket + Supplementary accessories                      |                |            |         |         |         |         |         |
| Wall console / Ceiling console + Valance roller blind            | 0 - 4500 mm    | 2          | 2       | 2       | 2       | 4       |         |
| Wall console / Ceiling console + Valance roller blind            | 4501 - 5500 mm | 2          | 2       | 2       | 4       | 4       |         |
| Wall console / Ceiling console + Valance roller blind            | 5501 - 6000 mm | 3          | 3       | 3       | 5       | 5       |         |
| Wall console / Ceiling console + Valance roller blind            | 6001 - 7000 mm | 3          | 3       | 5       | 5       | 5       |         |
| Wall console / Ceiling console + LB model                        | 0 - 4720 mm    | 2          | 2       | 2       | 2       | 4       | 4       |
| Wall console / Ceiling console + LB model / Valance roller blind | 0 - 4210 mm    | 2          | 2       | 2       | 2       | 4       |         |
| Console for rafters + Valance roller blind                       | 0 - 3500 mm    | 2          | 2       | 2       |         |         |         |
| Console for rafters + Valance roller blind                       | 3501 - 5000 mm | 2          | 2       | 4       | 4       | 4       |         |
| Console for rafters + Valance roller blind                       | 5001 - 5500 mm | 2          | 4       | 4       | 4       | 4       |         |
| Console for rafters + Valance roller blind                       | 5501 - 7000 mm | 3          | 5       | 5       | 5       | 5       |         |
| Console for rafters + LB model                                   | 0 - 2500 mm    | 2          | 2       | 2       | 2       |         |         |
| Console for rafters + LB model                                   | 2501 - 4720 mm |            |         | 2       | 4       | 4       | 4       |
| Console for rafters + LB model / Valance roller blind            | 0 - 4210 mm    | 2          | 2       | 2       | 4       | 4       |         |

### Number of consoles, group unit

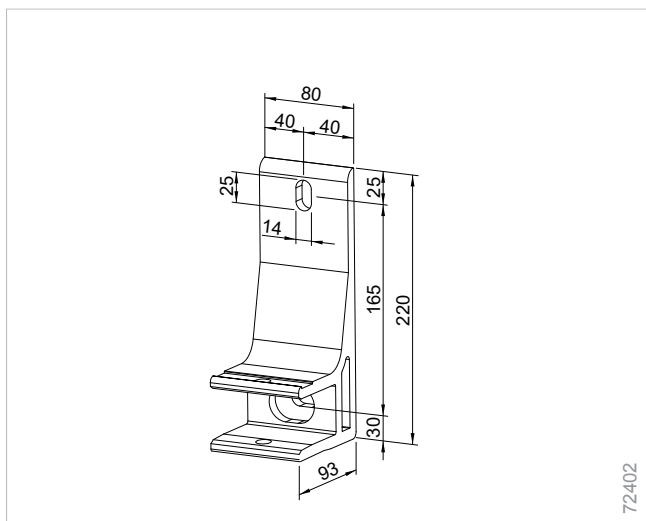
| Configuration variants                                   | Order width      | Projection |         |         |         |         |         |
|----------------------------------------------------------|------------------|------------|---------|---------|---------|---------|---------|
|                                                          |                  | 1500 mm    | 2000 mm | 2500 mm | 3000 mm | 3500 mm | 4000 mm |
| Console/Bracket                                          |                  |            |         |         |         |         |         |
| Wall console / Ceiling console                           | 0 - 10000 mm     | 4          | 4       | 4       | 4       | 8       | 8       |
| Wall console / Ceiling console                           | 10001 - 11000 mm | 4          | 4       | 4       | 8       | 8       | 8       |
| Wall console / Ceiling console                           | 11001 - 13000 mm | 6          | 6       | 6       | 10      | 10      | 10      |
| Wall console / Ceiling console                           | 13001 - 13500 mm | 6          | 6       | 10      | 10      | 10      | 10      |
| Console/Bracket + Supplementary accessories              |                  |            |         |         |         |         |         |
| Wall console / Ceiling console +<br>Valance roller blind | 0 - 9000 mm      | 4          | 4       | 4       | 4       | 8       |         |

| Configuration variants                                   | Order width      | Projection |         |         |         |         |         |
|----------------------------------------------------------|------------------|------------|---------|---------|---------|---------|---------|
|                                                          |                  | 1500 mm    | 2000 mm | 2500 mm | 3000 mm | 3500 mm | 4000 mm |
| Wall console / Ceiling console +<br>Valance roller blind | 9001 - 11000 mm  | 4          | 4       | 4       | 8       | 8       |         |
| Wall console / Ceiling console +<br>Valance roller blind | 11001 - 12000 mm | 6          | 6       | 6       | 10      | 10      |         |
| Wall console / Ceiling console +<br>Valance roller blind | 12001 - 13500 mm | 6          | 6       | 10      | 10      | 10      |         |

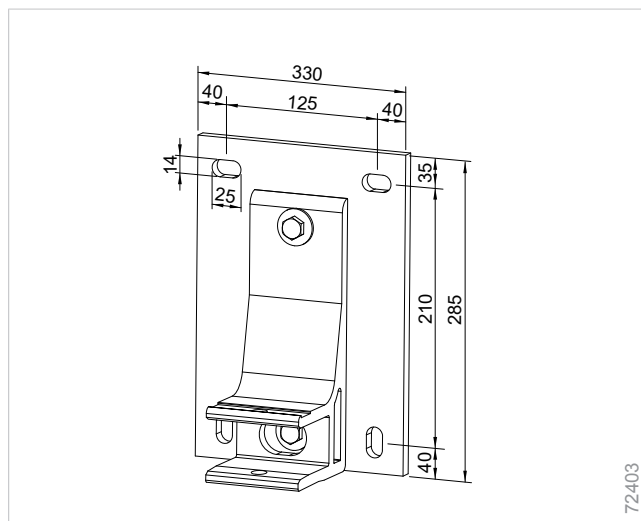
Number of consoles in relation to the concrete substructure C20/25 (B25)  
and installation on rafters.

## Details

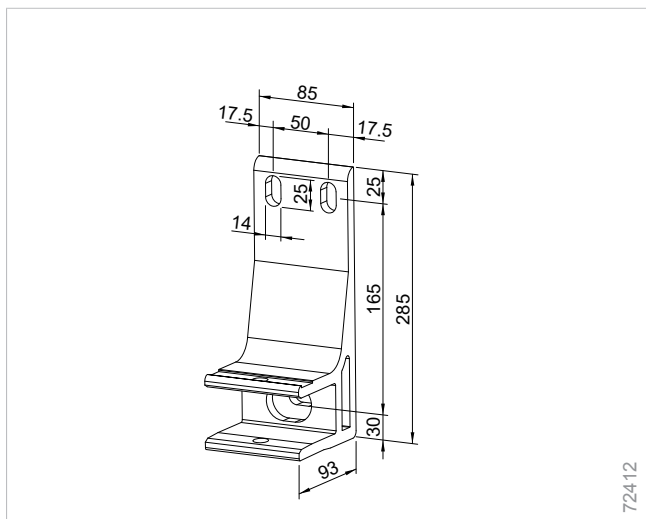
Wall console type A - G60/H60



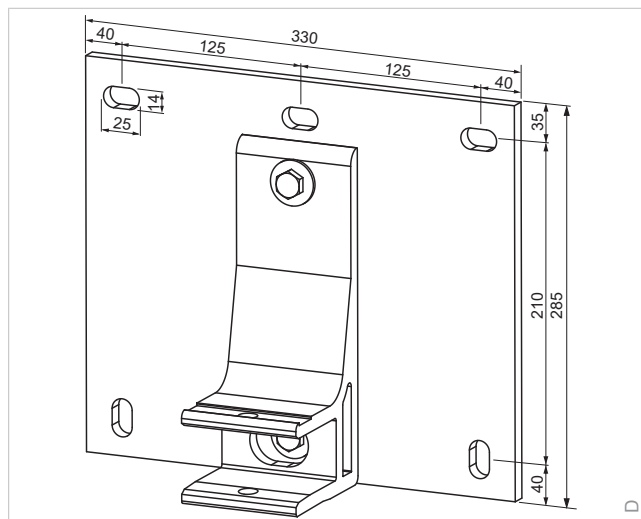
Wall console type C mounting plate - G60/H60



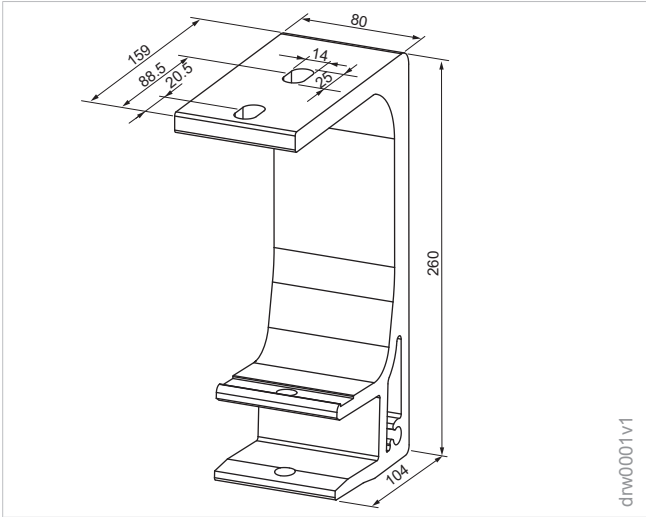
Wall console type B - 530/G60/H60



Wall console type D mounting plate - G60/H60

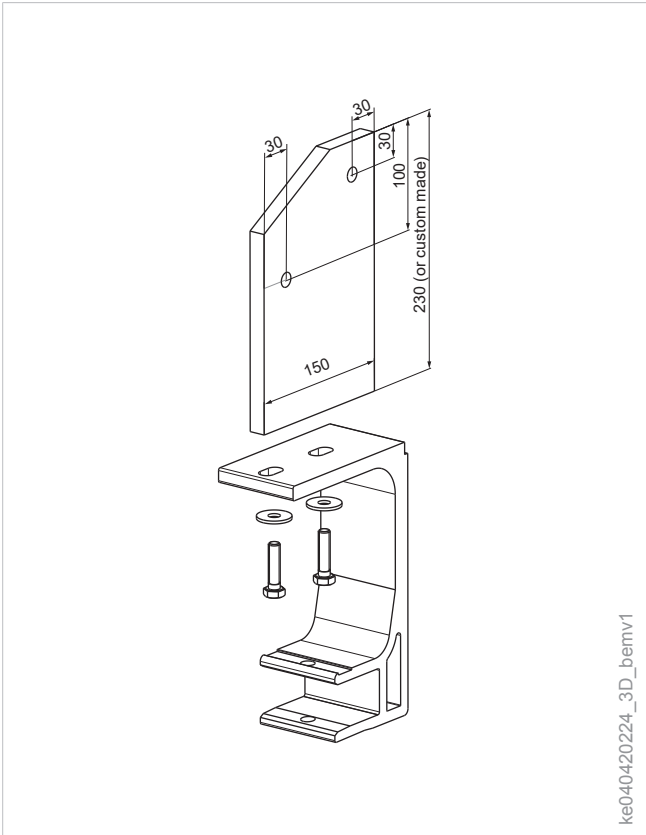


Ceiling console type E - G60/H60



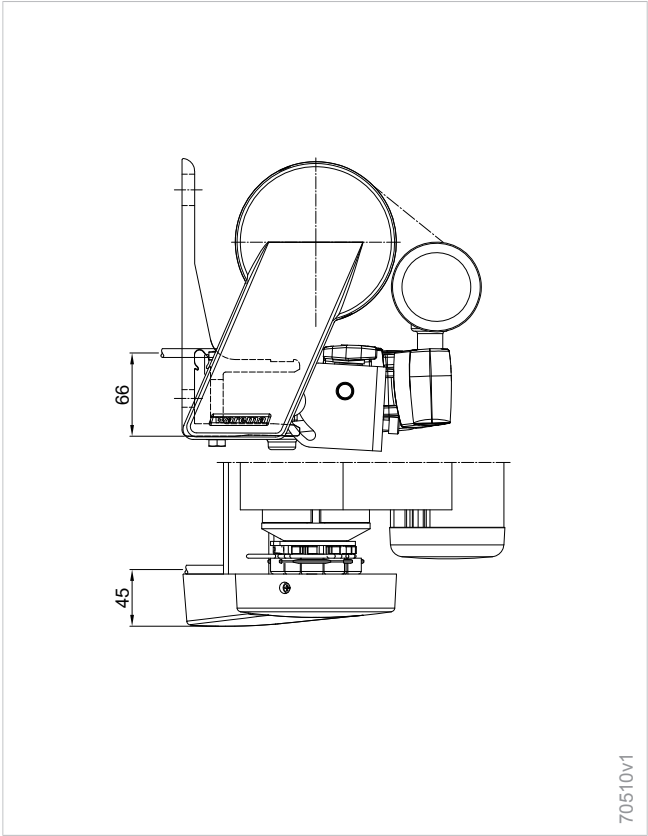
drw0001v1

Console for rafters type F - G60/H60



ke040420224\_3D\_bemv1

Cable exit - G60

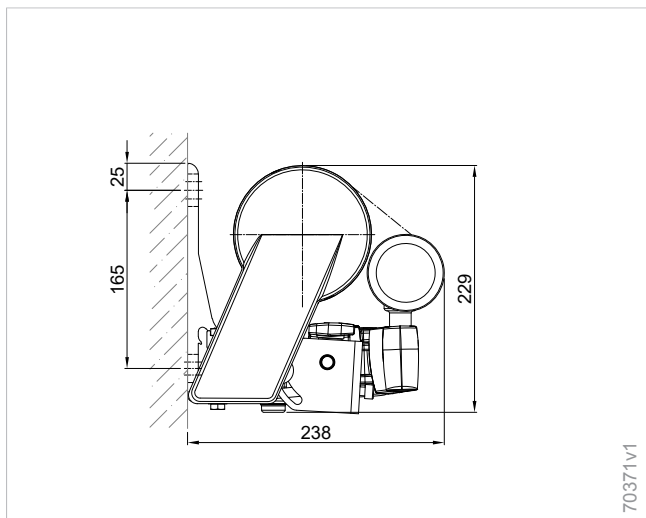


70510v1

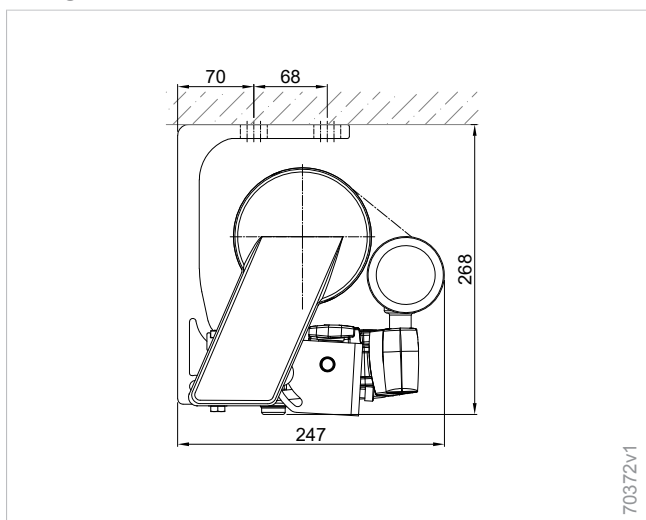


## Mounting examples

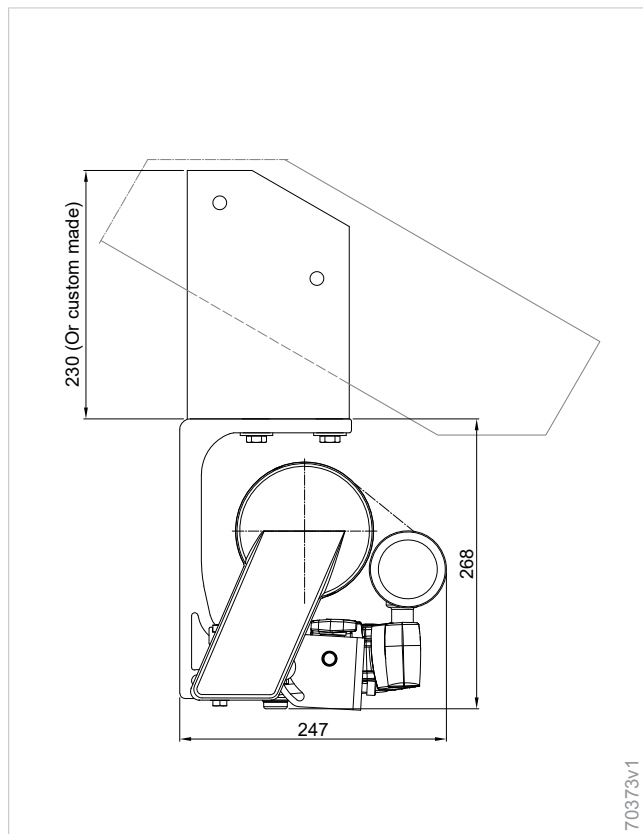
Wall installation - G60



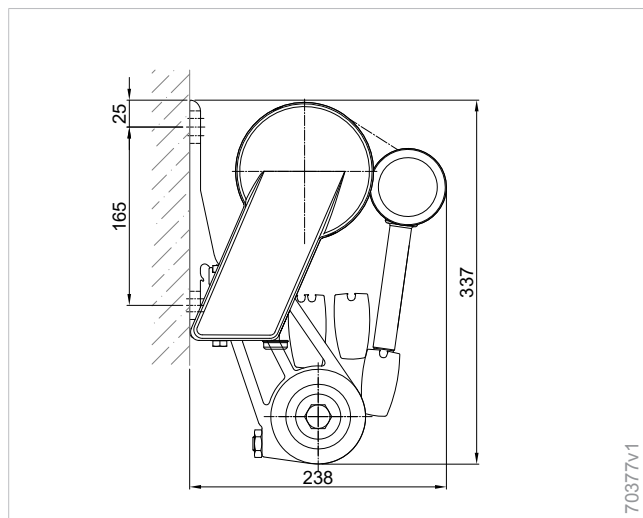
Ceiling installation - G60



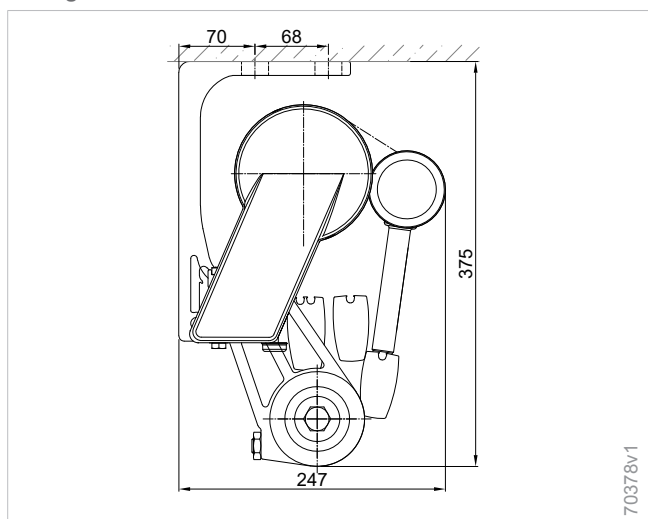
Rafter installation - G60



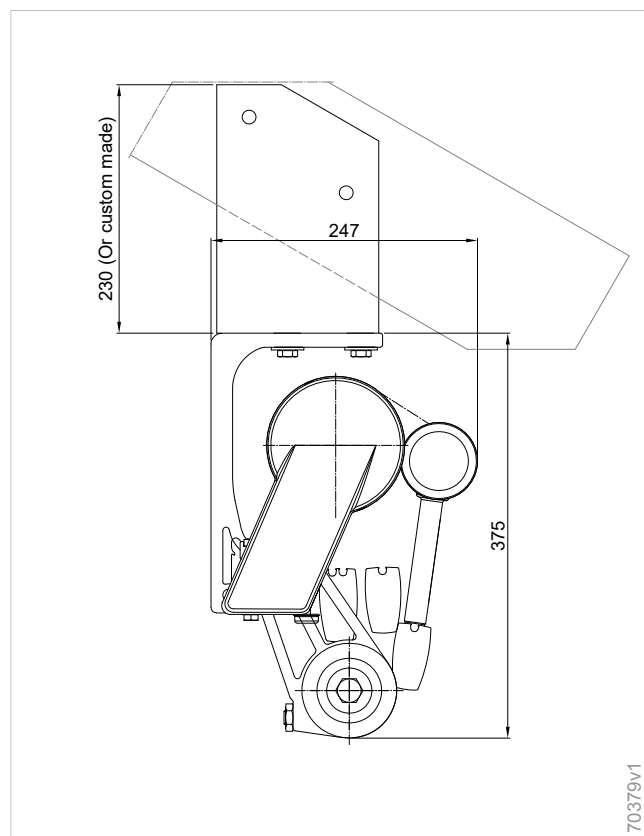
Wall installation - G60 LB



Ceiling installation - G60 LB



Rafter installation - G60 LB



Planning

Terrea

Perea

Patio  
side screens

Climara

Supplementary  
accessories

Components

Drive  
variants

Standards

## Further information

Calculate the exact position of the console, tensile force and wind resistance class  
<https://konsolenplaner.warema.de/v2/>



Visualise your product with the WAREMA Designer  
 You can download the app for free from your app store.



Use our free planning programme to plan your sun protection systems  
<https://sonnenschutzplaner.com/>



Configure and plan your product with myWAREMA  
<https://my.warema.com>



Experience the range of colours and fabrics of the WAREMA collections  
<https://www.warema.de/Tools/Kollektionsberater.php>



TechDataPLUS Articulated arm/cassette awnings  
<https://docs.warema.com/1.1444.4>





# Articulated arm awnings Terrea , half open

|                                        |     |
|----------------------------------------|-----|
| Articulated arm awning Terrea H60..... | 112 |
|----------------------------------------|-----|

Planning

Terrea

Perea

Patio  
side screens

Climara

Supplementary  
accessories

Components

Drive  
variants

Standards



# Articulated arm awnings Terrea , half open

## Articulated arm awning Terrea H60

### Attractive

The half-closed awning impresses with its function and design.

### Sophisticated

Thanks to the rain hood, the awning fabric is optimally protected against the weather.

### Modern

The WAREMA awnings collection offers an extensive range of design options.



### Construction limit values

|                                   |          |
|-----------------------------------|----------|
| Maximum order width               | 7000 mm  |
| Maximum projection                | 4000 mm  |
| Maximum order width of group unit | 13500 mm |

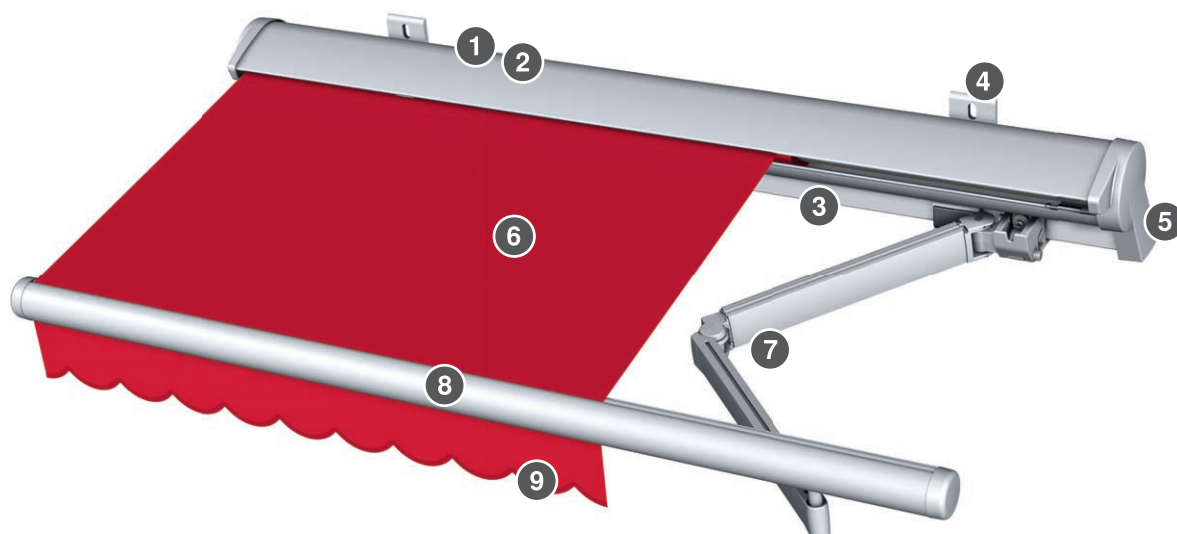


### Product characteristics

- Protection from above for fabric and articulated arms with the standard rain hood
- Additional fabric protection from below with optional fabric bearing shell
- LB model available for large projection with small awning widths
- Adjustable inclination thanks to the turning gear

## Components

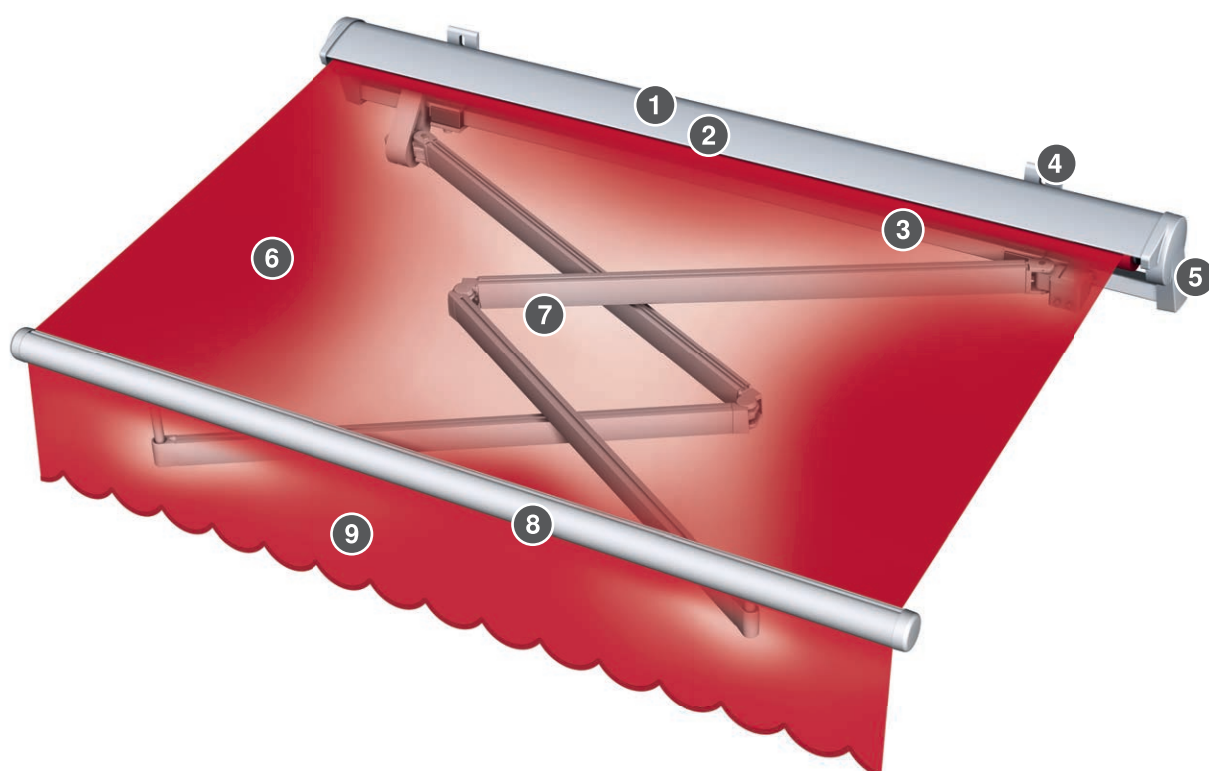
Articulated arm awning Terrea H60



- 1 Rain hood
- 2 Shaft
- 3 Bearing tube
- 4 Console
- 5 Fabric shaft console

- 6 Fabric
- 7 Articulated arm
- 8 Front rail
- 9 Valance

Articulated arm awning Terrea H60 LB



- 1 Rain hood
- 2 Shaft
- 3 Bearing tube
- 4 Console
- 5 Fabric shaft console

- 6 Fabric
- 7 Articulated arm
- 8 Front rail
- 9 Valance

## Shaft

### Fabric shaft Ø 85 mm

|          |                  |
|----------|------------------|
| Material | Galvanised steel |
| Surface  | Plain            |
| Profile  | Groove tube      |
| Diameter | 85 mm            |

## Fabric bearing shell, optional

### Fabric bearing shell - H60

|          |                     |
|----------|---------------------|
| Material | Aluminium, extruded |
| Surface  | Powder-coated       |

As additional fabric protection from below.

Included as standard with **group units**.

## Front rail

### Front rail - G60/H60 Ø 70 mm

|          |                     |
|----------|---------------------|
| Material | Aluminium, extruded |
| Surface  | Powder-coated       |
| Diameter | 70 mm               |

#### + Side cover

### Front rail side cover - G60/H60 Ø 70 mm

|          |               |
|----------|---------------|
| Material | Aluminium     |
| Surface  | Powder-coated |

## Front rail, optional

### Front rail - G60/H60 with aluminium valance

|          |                     |
|----------|---------------------|
| Material | Aluminium, extruded |
| Surface  | Powder-coated       |
| Width    | 90 mm               |
| Height   | 185 mm              |

#### + Side cover

### Front rail side cover - G60/H60 Ø 90 mm

|          |               |
|----------|---------------|
| Material | Aluminium     |
| Surface  | Powder-coated |

### Front rail - G60/H60 with valance roller blind Ø 90 mm

|          |                     |
|----------|---------------------|
| Material | Aluminium, extruded |
| Surface  | Powder-coated       |
| Diameter | 90 mm               |

#### + Side cover

### Front rail side cover - G60/H60 Ø 90 mm

|          |               |
|----------|---------------|
| Material | Aluminium     |
| Surface  | Powder-coated |

## Articulated arm

### Articulated arm - H60

#### + Articulated arm profile

### Articulated arm profile, front, 33x61 mm

|          |                     |
|----------|---------------------|
| Material | Aluminium, extruded |
| Surface  | Powder-coated       |
| Width    | 33 mm               |
| Height   | 61 mm               |

### Articulated arm profile, rear, 35x68 mm

|          |                     |
|----------|---------------------|
| Material | Aluminium, extruded |
| Surface  | Powder-coated       |
| Width    | 35 mm               |
| Height   | 68 mm               |

#### + Articulated arm seat

### Tilting joint - H60

|          |                     |
|----------|---------------------|
| Material | Aluminium, extruded |
| Surface  | Powder-coated       |

Tilting joint with windlock mechanism

#### + Power transmission

### Steel cable

### Link chain

#### + Power transmission, optional

### Segment

|          |                     |
|----------|---------------------|
| Material | Aluminium, extruded |
|----------|---------------------|

## Rain hood

### Rain hood - H60

|          |                     |
|----------|---------------------|
| Material | Aluminium, extruded |
| Surface  | Powder-coated       |

## Bearing tube

### Bearing tube

|          |               |
|----------|---------------|
| Material | Steel         |
| Surface  | Powder-coated |
| Profile  | Square tube   |
| Width    | 40 mm         |
| Height   | 40 mm         |

## Valance

### Valance - G60/H60/530

|        |        |
|--------|--------|
| Height | 180 mm |
|--------|--------|

The valance has a matching frame, is individually removable and is available in 3 shapes.

If no shape is stated, we will supply valance shape no. 11 (curved).

## Valance, optional

### LB model with valance - G60/H60/530

|        |        |
|--------|--------|
| Height | 270 mm |
|--------|--------|

The valance has a matching frame, is individually removable and is available in 3 shapes.

If no shape is stated, we will supply valance shape no. 11 (curved).

## Fabric shaft console

### Fabric shaft console - G60/H60

|          |                     |
|----------|---------------------|
| Material | Aluminium, extruded |
| Surface  | Powder-coated       |

#### + Side cover

### Fabric shaft console side cover - H60

|          |               |
|----------|---------------|
| Material | Aluminium     |
| Surface  | Powder-coated |

## Console

### Wall console type A - G60/H60

|          |                     |
|----------|---------------------|
| Material | Aluminium, extruded |
| Surface  | Powder-coated       |
| Width    | 80 mm               |
| Height   | 220 mm              |
| Depth    | 93 mm               |

### Wall console type B - 530/G60/H60

|          |                     |
|----------|---------------------|
| Material | Aluminium, extruded |
| Surface  | Powder-coated       |
| Width    | 85 mm               |
| Height   | 220 mm              |
| Depth    | 93 mm               |

Wall installation with 3 drilled holes

### Wall console type C - G60/H60

|          |               |
|----------|---------------|
| Material | Steel         |
| Surface  | Powder-coated |
| Width    | 210 mm        |
| Height   | 285 mm        |
| Depth    | 103 mm        |

Wall console type A with mounting plate, small (steel).

### Wall console type D - G60/H60

|          |               |
|----------|---------------|
| Material | Steel         |
| Surface  | Powder-coated |
| Width    | 330 mm        |
| Height   | 285 mm        |
| Depth    | 103 mm        |

Wall console type A with mounting plate, large (steel).

## Console for rafters type F - G60/H60

|          |               |
|----------|---------------|
| Material | Aluminium     |
| Surface  | Powder-coated |
| Width    | 80 mm         |
| Height   | 490 mm        |
| Depth    | 159 mm        |

## Drive variants

- Motor

Drive variant, optional:

- Crank

## Motor

- Orea WT

Motor optional:

- R35/8G (solar)
- LT50 NHK

## Radio motor, optional

- WMS-MM (WMS)
- W-MM (EWFS)

## Crank, optional

- Crank with ball hook

## Gear, optional

- Bevel gear with free wheel at the lower limit point

+ see "Drive variants", Page 367

## Colours

- WAREMA Colour World

+ see "WAREMA Colour World", Page 12

## Fabric qualities

- Standard acrylic fabric
  - Lumera acrylic fabric
- Fabric qualities, optional:
- Perfora acrylic
  - All Weather acrylic
  - Soltis 92
  - Twilight Pearl
  - Lacquered fabric Preconstraint 302

+ see "Awning collection", Page 356



## Supplementary accessories

- Motor with additional collapsible crank ZHK
- Solar drive
- WMS Wind sensor
- Turning gear
- LB model
- Valance roller blind with motor and integrated WMS comfort control
- Valance roller blind with motor and basic model
- Valance roller blind with crank
- Integrated lighting
- LED strip light rail
- Radiant heater
- Fabric lettering, painted
- Sunprint
- Patio frame

+ see "Supplementary accessories", Page 257

## Construction limit values

The construction limit values and number of consoles indicated in this document relate to the concrete substructure C20/25 (B25) and installation on rafters.

| Configuration variants                                                              | Projection                           | 1500 mm  | 2000 mm  | 2500 mm  | 3000 mm  | 3500 mm  | 4000 mm  |
|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|--------------------------------------|----------|----------|----------|----------|----------|----------|
| <b>Fabric qualities + Drive variants</b>                                            |                                      |          |          |          |          |          |          |
| Acrylic fabric / Twilight Pearl<br>+ Motor                                          | Minimum order width                  | 1870 mm  | 2390 mm  | 2890 mm  | 3400 mm  | 4180 mm  | 4690 mm  |
|                                                                                     | Maximum order width                  | 7000 mm  | 7000 mm  | 7000 mm  | 7000 mm  | 7000 mm  | 7000 mm  |
|                                                                                     | Minimum group unit<br>order width    | 4600 mm  | 5640 mm  | 6640 mm  | 7660 mm  | 8950 mm  | 9970 mm  |
|                                                                                     | Maximum order width<br>of group unit | 13500 mm | 13500 mm | 13500 mm | 13500 mm | 13500 mm | 13500 mm |
| Acrylic fabric / Twilight Pearl<br>+ Crank                                          | Minimum order width                  | 1910 mm  | 2430 mm  | 2930 mm  | 3440 mm  | 4220 mm  | 4730 mm  |
|                                                                                     | Maximum order width                  | 6500 mm  | 6500 mm  | 6500 mm  | 6500 mm  | 6500 mm  | 6500 mm  |
| Soltis 92 / Lacquered fabric<br>Preconstraint 302 + Motor                           | Minimum order width                  | 1870 mm  | 2390 mm  | 2890 mm  |          |          |          |
|                                                                                     | Maximum order width                  | 5500 mm  | 5500 mm  | 5500 mm  |          |          |          |
| Soltis 92 / Lacquered fabric<br>Preconstraint 302 + Crank                           | Minimum order width                  | 1910 mm  | 2430 mm  | 2930 mm  |          |          |          |
|                                                                                     | Maximum order width                  | 5500 mm  | 5500 mm  | 5500 mm  |          |          |          |
| <b>Fabric qualities + Drive variants + Supplementary accessories</b>                |                                      |          |          |          |          |          |          |
| Acrylic fabric / Twilight Pearl<br>+ Motor + Valance roller<br>blind                | Minimum order width                  | 1870 mm  | 2390 mm  | 2890 mm  | 3400 mm  | 4180 mm  |          |
|                                                                                     | Maximum order width                  | 7000 mm  | 7000 mm  | 7000 mm  | 7000 mm  | 7000 mm  |          |
|                                                                                     | Minimum group unit<br>order width    | 4600 mm  | 5640 mm  | 6640 mm  | 7660 mm  | 8950 mm  |          |
|                                                                                     | Maximum order width<br>of group unit | 13500 mm | 13500 mm | 13500 mm | 13500 mm | 13500 mm |          |
| Acrylic fabric / Twilight Pearl<br>+ Crank + Valance roller<br>blind                | Minimum order width                  | 1910 mm  | 2430 mm  | 2930 mm  | 3440 mm  | 4220 mm  |          |
|                                                                                     | Maximum order width                  | 6500 mm  | 6500 mm  | 6500 mm  | 6500 mm  | 6500 mm  |          |
| Acrylic fabric / Twilight Pearl<br>+ Motor + Turning gear                           | Minimum order width                  | 2110 mm  | 2630 mm  | 3130 mm  | 3640 mm  | 4420 mm  |          |
|                                                                                     | Maximum order width                  | 6500 mm  | 6500 mm  | 6500 mm  | 6500 mm  | 6000 mm  |          |
| Acrylic fabric / Twilight Pearl<br>+ Crank + Turning gear                           | Minimum order width                  | 2160 mm  | 2680 mm  | 3180 mm  | 3690 mm  | 4470 mm  |          |
|                                                                                     | Maximum order width                  | 6500 mm  | 6500 mm  | 6500 mm  | 6500 mm  | 6000 mm  |          |
| Acrylic fabric / Twilight Pearl<br>+ Motor + Turning gear /<br>Valance roller blind | Minimum order width                  | 2110 mm  | 2630 mm  | 3130 mm  | 3640 mm  | 4420 mm  |          |
|                                                                                     | Maximum order width                  | 6500 mm  | 6500 mm  | 6500 mm  | 5500 mm  | 4500 mm  |          |
| Acrylic fabric / Twilight Pearl<br>+ Crank + Turning gear /<br>Valance roller blind | Minimum order width                  | 2160 mm  | 2680 mm  | 3180 mm  | 3690 mm  | 4470 mm  |          |
|                                                                                     | Maximum order width                  | 6500 mm  | 6500 mm  | 6500 mm  | 5500 mm  | 4500 mm  |          |
| Acrylic fabric / Twilight Pearl<br>+ Motor + LB model                               | Minimum order width                  | 1180 mm  | 1440 mm  | 1690 mm  | 1940 mm  | 2470 mm  | 2720 mm  |
|                                                                                     | Maximum order width                  | 1900 mm  | 2420 mm  | 2920 mm  | 3430 mm  | 4210 mm  | 4720 mm  |
| Acrylic fabric / Twilight Pearl<br>+ Crank + LB model                               | Minimum order width                  | 1220 mm  | 1480 mm  | 1730 mm  | 1980 mm  | 2510 mm  | 2760 mm  |
|                                                                                     | Maximum order width                  | 1900 mm  | 2420 mm  | 2920 mm  | 3430 mm  | 4210 mm  | 4720 mm  |

| Configuration variants                                                    | Projection          | 1500 mm | 2000 mm | 2500 mm | 3000 mm | 3500 mm | 4000 mm |
|---------------------------------------------------------------------------|---------------------|---------|---------|---------|---------|---------|---------|
| Acrylic fabric / Twilight Pearl + Motor + LB model / Valance roller blind | Minimum order width | 1180 mm | 1440 mm | 1690 mm | 1940 mm | 2470 mm |         |
|                                                                           | Maximum order width | 1900 mm | 2420 mm | 2920 mm | 3430 mm | 4210 mm |         |
| Acrylic fabric / Twilight Pearl + Crank + LB model / Valance roller blind | Minimum order width | 1220 mm | 1480 mm | 1730 mm | 1980 mm | 2510 mm |         |
|                                                                           | Maximum order width | 1900 mm | 2420 mm | 2920 mm | 3430 mm | 4210 mm |         |
| Soltis 92 + Motor + Valance roller blind                                  | Minimum order width | 1870 mm | 2390 mm | 2890 mm |         |         |         |
|                                                                           | Maximum order width | 5500 mm | 5500 mm | 5500 mm |         |         |         |
| Soltis 92 + Crank + Valance roller blind                                  | Minimum order width | 1910 mm | 2430 mm | 2930 mm |         |         |         |
|                                                                           | Maximum order width | 5500 mm | 5500 mm | 5500 mm |         |         |         |
| Soltis 92 / Lacquered fabric Preconstraint 302 + Motor + Turning gear     | Minimum order width | 2110 mm | 2630 mm | 3130 mm |         |         |         |
|                                                                           | Maximum order width | 5500 mm | 5500 mm | 5500 mm |         |         |         |
| Soltis 92 / Lacquered fabric Preconstraint 302 + Crank + Turning gear     | Minimum order width | 2160 mm | 2680 mm | 3180 mm |         |         |         |
|                                                                           | Maximum order width | 5500 mm | 5500 mm | 5500 mm |         |         |         |
| Soltis 92 + Motor + Turning gear / Valance roller blind                   | Minimum order width | 2110 mm | 2630 mm | 3130 mm |         |         |         |
|                                                                           | Maximum order width | 5500 mm | 5500 mm | 5500 mm |         |         |         |
| Soltis 92 + Crank + Turning gear / Valance roller blind                   | Minimum order width | 2160 mm | 2680 mm | 3180 mm |         |         |         |
|                                                                           | Maximum order width | 5500 mm | 5500 mm | 5500 mm |         |         |         |
| Soltis 92 / Lacquered fabric Preconstraint 302 + Motor + LB model         | Minimum order width | 1180 mm | 1440 mm | 1690 mm |         |         |         |
|                                                                           | Maximum order width | 1900 mm | 2420 mm | 2920 mm |         |         |         |
| Soltis 92 / Lacquered fabric Preconstraint 302 + Crank + LB model         | Minimum order width | 1220 mm | 1480 mm | 1730 mm |         |         |         |
|                                                                           | Maximum order width | 1900 mm | 2420 mm | 2920 mm |         |         |         |
| Soltis 92 + Motor + LB model / Valance roller blind                       | Minimum order width | 1180 mm | 1440 mm | 1690 mm |         |         |         |
|                                                                           | Maximum order width | 1900 mm | 2420 mm | 2920 mm |         |         |         |
| Soltis 92 + Crank + LB model / Valance roller blind                       | Minimum order width | 1220 mm | 1480 mm | 1730 mm |         |         |         |
|                                                                           | Maximum order width | 1900 mm | 2420 mm | 2920 mm |         |         |         |

**Lacquered fabric** not possible in combination with a fabric bearing shell or valance roller blind.

**Group units** only possible with fabric bearing shell.

#### Minimum width:

- Increased by 270 mm for rafter installation and projection 3000 mm
- Increased by 270 mm for rafter installation with valance roller blind and projection 2500 mm and 3000 mm
- Usually different for console type D

#### LB model:

- Front rail seats and articulated arm seats are always height offset on the non-drive end.
- LB model not possible with turning gear.

## Dimensions

Weight per running metre: 16 - 18 kg/lfm

Weight per running metre, notes: Without consoles, depending on fitted equipment

## Inclination

Inclination angle: 5 - 45 °

Inclination angle, standard: 10 °

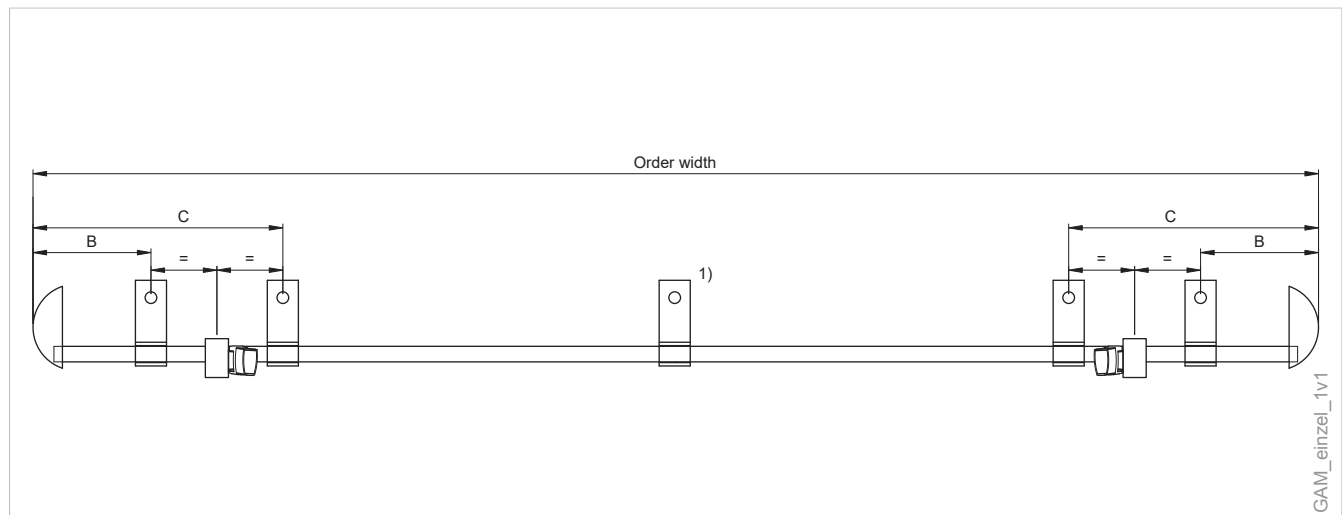
Inclination angle for rain class 2: 14 - 45 °

- Fine adjustment of inclination angle during installation.
- Basic inclination depending on building size and model, tolerance  $\pm 5^\circ$ .
- Inclination angle with **LB model**  $5^\circ - 25^\circ$

## Dimension determination

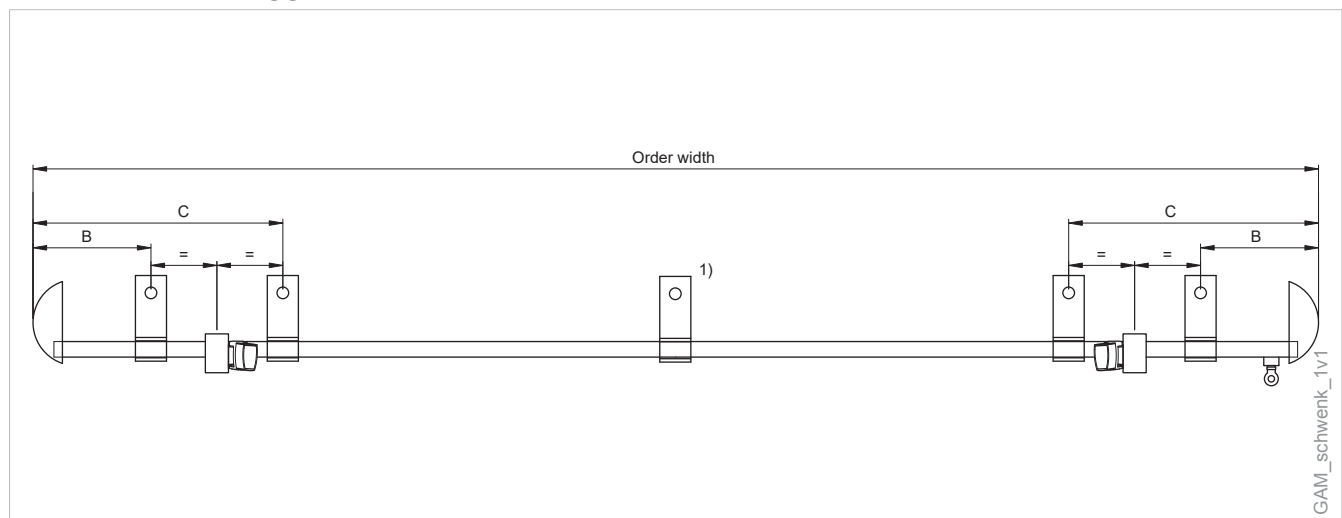
The **projection** is defined from the back edge of the console to the leading edge of the front rail, measured across the inclination angle of the fabric.

### Individual unit - H60



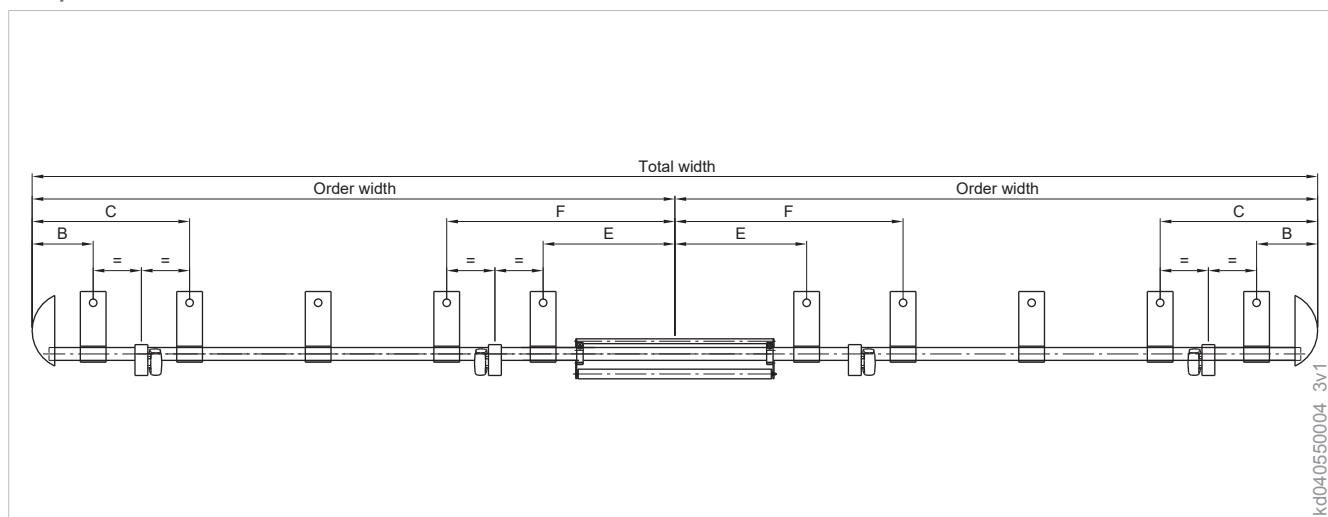
1) The third or fifth console is in the middle.

### Individual unit with turning gear - H60



1) The third or fifth console is in the middle.

## Group unit - G60/H60



## Quantity determination

### Number of consoles, individual unit

| Configuration variants                                           | Order width    | Projection |         |         |         |         |         |
|------------------------------------------------------------------|----------------|------------|---------|---------|---------|---------|---------|
|                                                                  |                | 1500 mm    | 2000 mm | 2500 mm | 3000 mm | 3500 mm | 4000 mm |
| Console/Bracket                                                  |                |            |         |         |         |         |         |
| Wall console / Ceiling console                                   | 0 - 4500 mm    | 2          | 2       | 2       | 2       | 4       | 4       |
| Wall console / Ceiling console                                   | 4501 - 5500 mm | 2          | 2       | 2       | 4       | 4       | 4       |
| Wall console / Ceiling console                                   | 5501 - 6000 mm | 3          | 3       | 3       | 5       | 5       | 5       |
| Wall console / Ceiling console                                   | 6001 - 7000 mm | 3          | 3       | 5       | 5       | 5       | 5       |
| Console for rafters                                              | 0 - 3500 mm    | 2          | 2       | 2       |         |         |         |
| Console for rafters                                              | 3501 - 5500 mm | 2          | 2       | 4       | 4       | 4       | 4       |
| Console for rafters                                              | 5501 - 7000 mm | 3          | 5       | 5       | 5       | 5       | 5       |
| Console/Bracket + Supplementary accessories                      |                |            |         |         |         |         |         |
| Wall console / Ceiling console + Valance roller blind            | 0 - 4000 mm    | 2          | 2       | 2       | 2       |         |         |
| Wall console / Ceiling console + Valance roller blind            | 4001 - 5500 mm | 2          | 2       | 2       | 4       | 4       |         |
| Wall console / Ceiling console + Valance roller blind            | 5501 - 7000 mm | 3          | 3       | 5       | 5       | 5       |         |
| Wall console / Ceiling console + LB model                        | 0 - 4720 mm    | 2          | 2       | 2       | 2       | 4       | 4       |
| Wall console / Ceiling console + LB model / Valance roller blind | 0 - 4210 mm    | 2          | 2       | 2       | 2       | 4       |         |
| Console for rafters + Valance roller blind                       | 0 - 3000 mm    | 2          | 2       |         |         |         |         |
| Console for rafters + Valance roller blind                       | 3001 - 4500 mm | 2          | 2       | 4       | 4       | 4       |         |
| Console for rafters + Valance roller blind                       | 4501 - 5500 mm | 2          | 4       | 4       | 4       | 4       |         |
| Console for rafters + Valance roller blind                       | 5501 - 7000 mm | 3          | 5       | 5       | 5       | 5       |         |
| Console for rafters + LB model                                   | 0 - 2500 mm    | 2          | 2       | 2       | 2       | 4       |         |
| Console for rafters + LB model                                   | 2501 - 4720 mm |            |         | 2       | 4       | 4       | 4       |
| Console for rafters + LB model / Valance roller blind            | 0 - 4210 mm    | 2          | 2       | 2       | 4       | 4       |         |

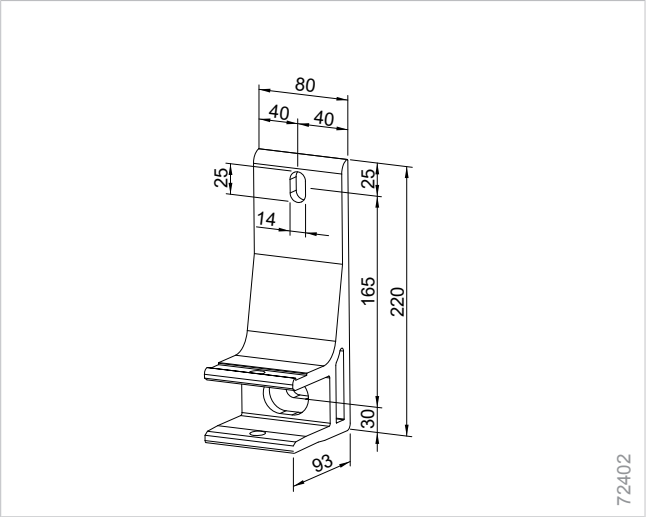
## Number of consoles, group unit

| Configuration variants                                   | Order width      | Projection |         |         |         |         |         |
|----------------------------------------------------------|------------------|------------|---------|---------|---------|---------|---------|
|                                                          |                  | 1500 mm    | 2000 mm | 2500 mm | 3000 mm | 3500 mm | 4000 mm |
| Console/Bracket                                          |                  |            |         |         |         |         |         |
| Wall console / Ceiling console                           | 0 - 9000 mm      | 4          | 4       | 4       | 4       | 8       |         |
| Wall console / Ceiling console                           | 9001 - 11000 mm  | 4          | 4       | 4       | 8       | 8       | 8       |
| Wall console / Ceiling console                           | 11001 - 12000 mm | 6          | 6       | 6       | 10      | 10      | 10      |
| Wall console / Ceiling console                           | 12001 - 13500 mm | 6          | 6       | 10      | 10      | 10      | 10      |
| Console/Bracket + Supplementary accessories              |                  |            |         |         |         |         |         |
| Wall console / Ceiling console +<br>Valance roller blind | 0 - 8000 mm      | 4          | 4       | 4       | 4       |         |         |
| Wall console / Ceiling console +<br>Valance roller blind | 8001 - 11000 mm  | 4          | 4       | 4       | 8       | 8       |         |
| Wall console / Ceiling console +<br>Valance roller blind | 11001 - 13500 mm | 6          | 6       | 10      | 10      | 10      |         |

Number of consoles in relation to the concrete substructure C20/25 (B25) and installation on rafters.

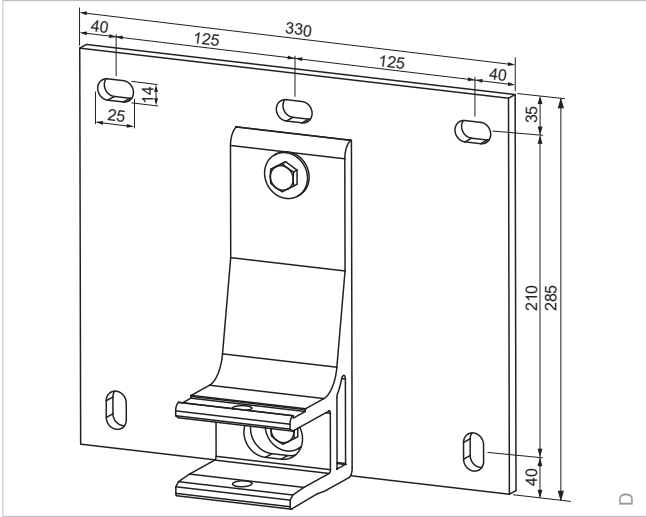
# Details

Wall console type A - G60/H60



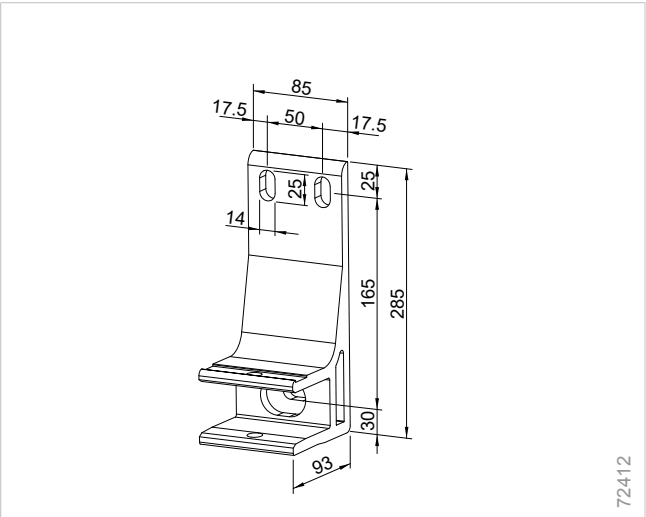
72402

Wall console type D mounting plate - G60/H60



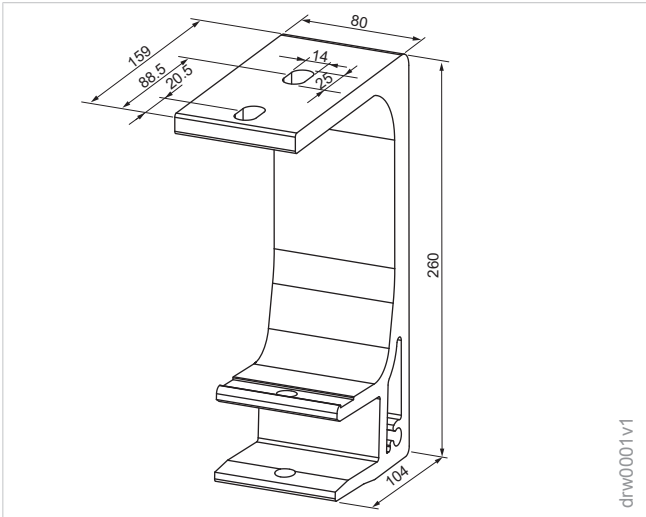
D

Wall console type B - 530/G60/H60



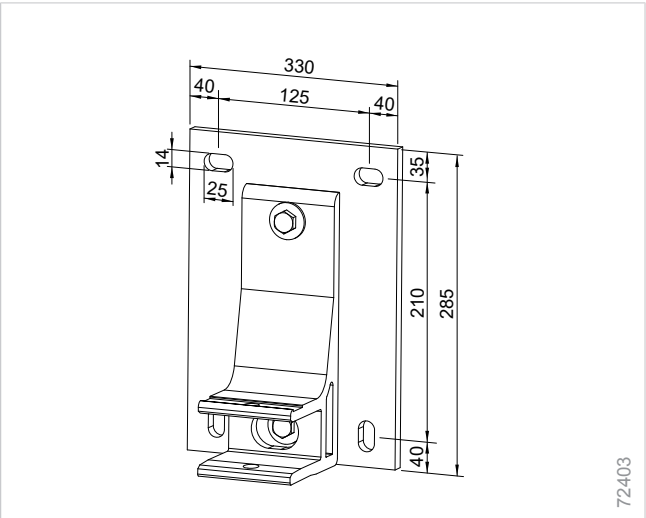
72412

Ceiling console type E - G60/H60



drw0001v1

Wall console type C mounting plate - G60/H60



72403

Planning

Terrea

Perea

Patio  
side screens

Climara

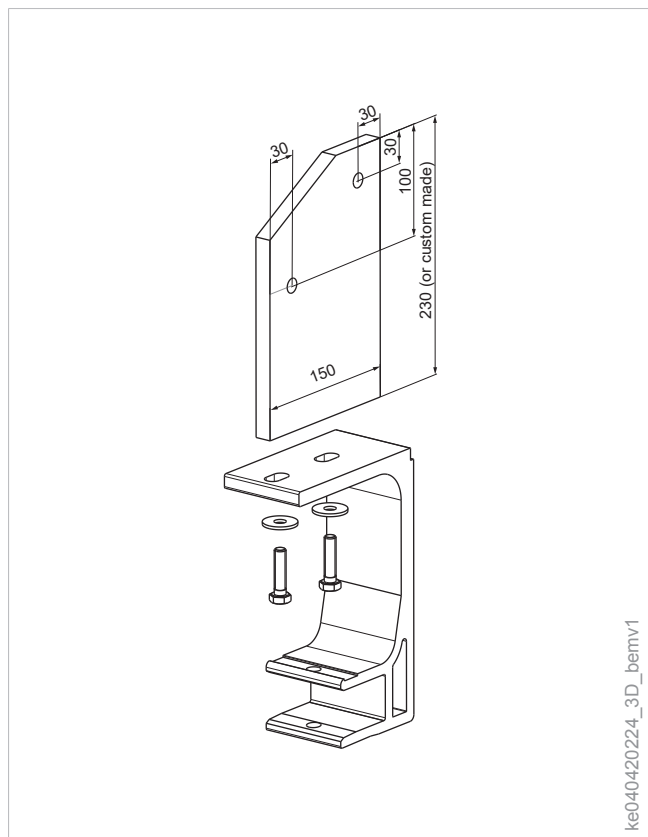
Supplementary  
accessories

Components

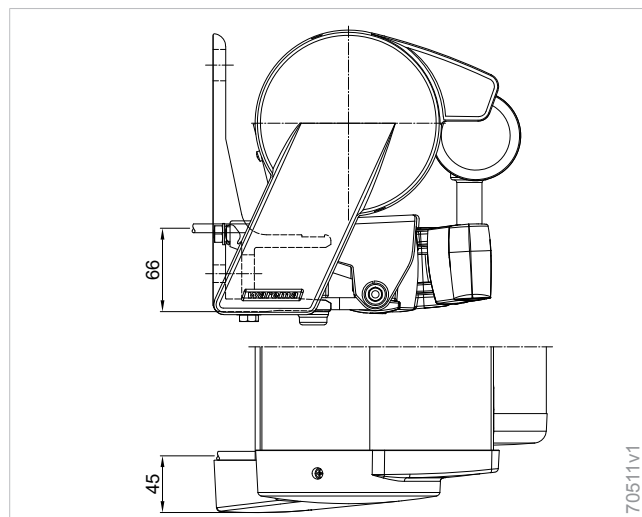
Drive  
variants

Standards

Console for rafters type F - G60/H60

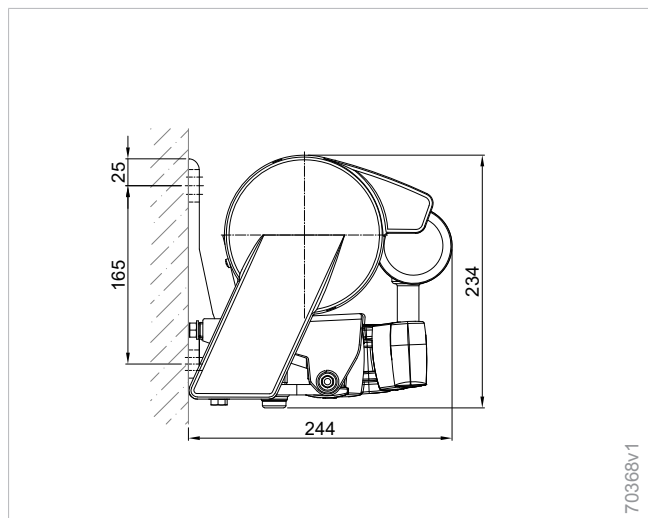


Cable exit - H60

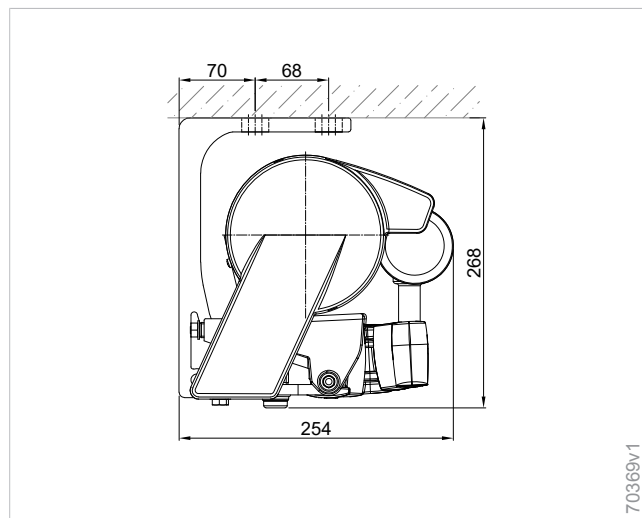


## Mounting examples

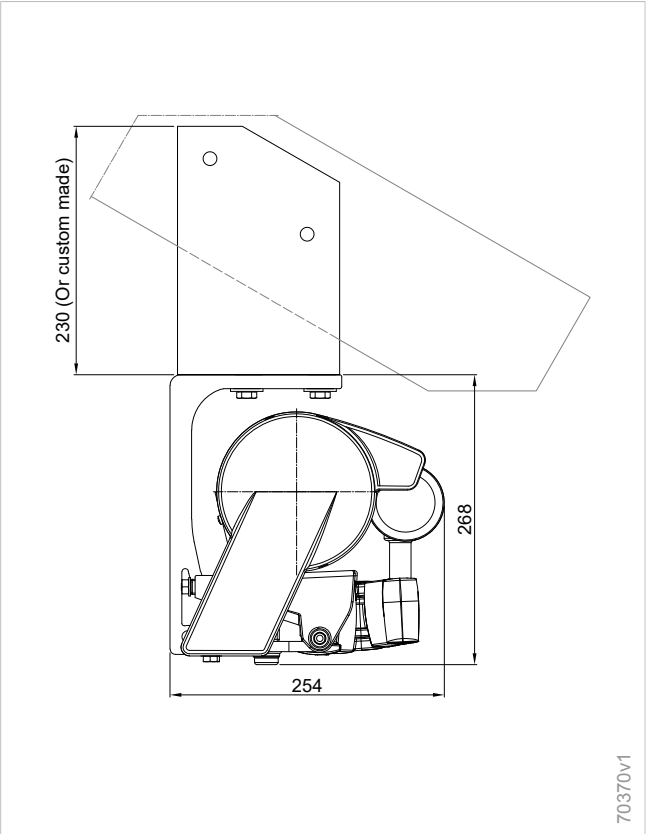
Wall installation - H60



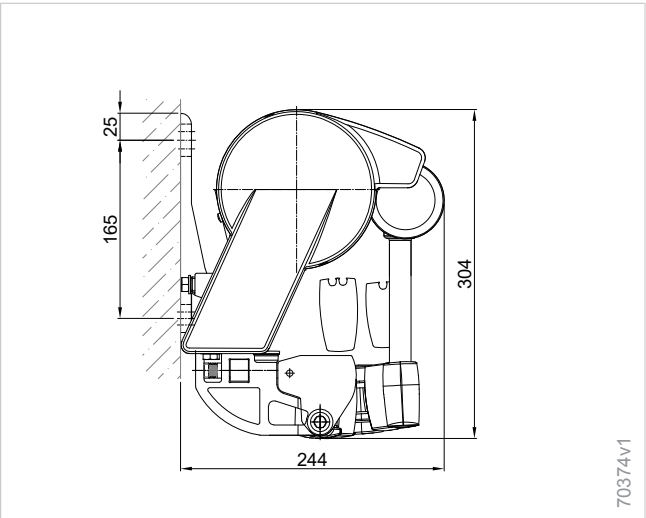
Ceiling installation - H60



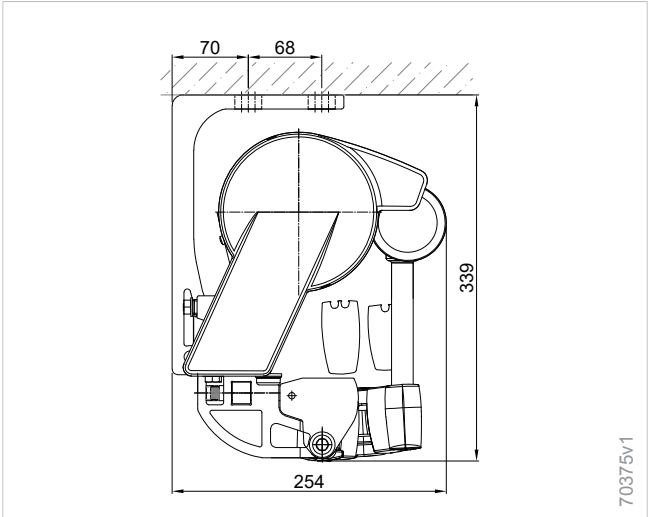
Rafter installation - H60



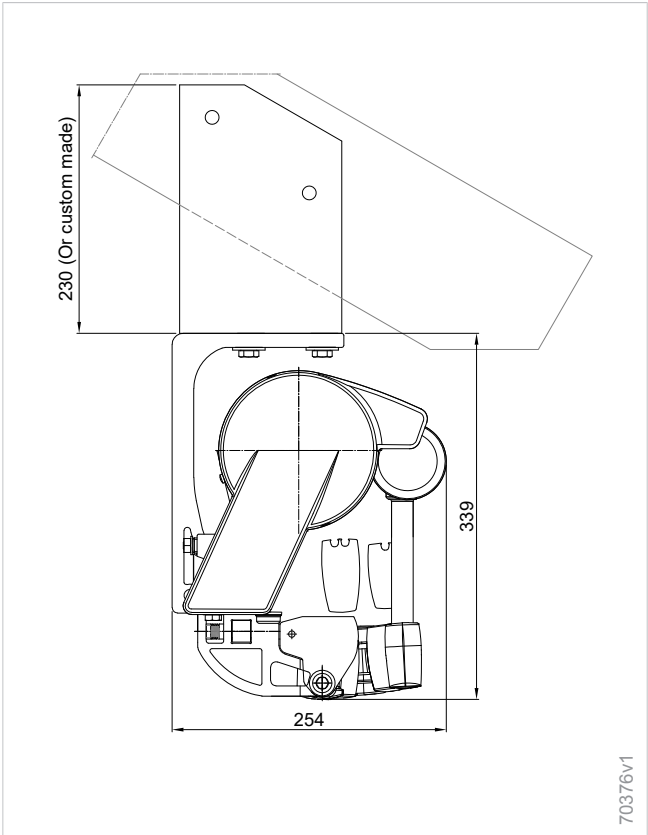
Wall installation - H60 LB



Ceiling installation - H60 LB

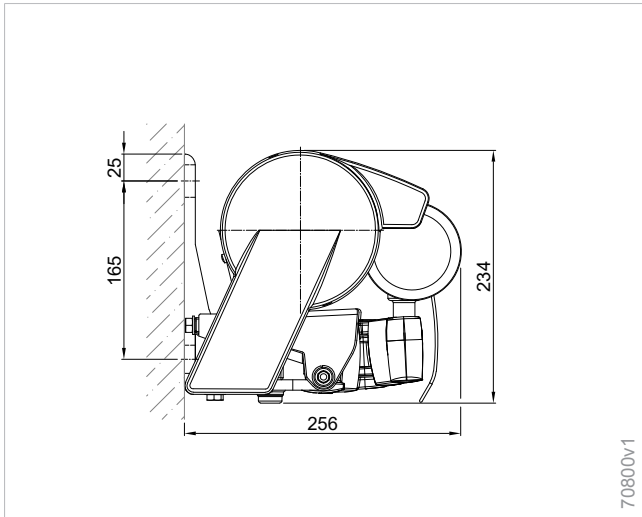


Rafter installation - H60 LB

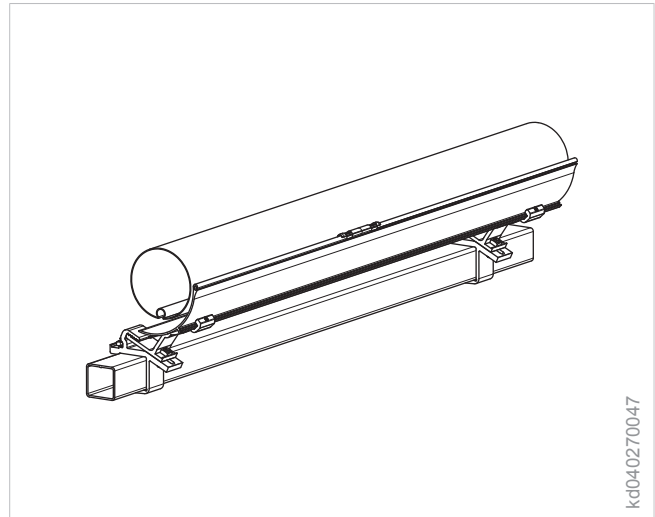




#### Wall installation with aluminium valance - H60



#### Fabric bearing shell - H60



## Further information

Calculate the exact position of the console, tensile force and wind resistance class  
<https://konsolenplaner.warema.de/v2/>



Visualise your product with the WAREMA Designer  
You can download the app for free from your app store.



Use our free planning programme to plan your sun protection systems  
<https://sonnenschutzplaner.com/>



Configure and plan your product with myWAREMA  
<https://my.warema.com>



Experience the range of colours and fabrics of the WAREMA collections  
<https://www.warema.de/Tools/Kollektionsberater.php>



TechDataPLUS Articulated arm/cassette awnings  
<https://docs.warema.com/1.1444.4>



# Details

## Warranty for articulated arm and cassette awnings Terrea

We grant a long-term warranty of 5 years on all our articulated arm and cassette awnings. Refer to our warranty conditions.



# Contents

## Pergola awnings Perea

|                               |     |
|-------------------------------|-----|
| Pergola awning Perea P40..... | 128 |
| Pergola awning Perea P60..... | 144 |
| Pergola awning Perea P70..... | 158 |

Planning

Terrea

**Perea**

Patio  
side screens

Climara

Supplementary  
accessories

Components

Drive  
variants

Standards



# Pergola awnings Perea

## Pergola awning Perea P40

### Attractive

Pergola awnings turn outdoor areas into a large, stylish, shaded areas. In the evening hours, the LED lighting provides for a cosy atmosphere.

### Sophisticated

The pergola awning is available with straight or curved guide rails.

### Safe

The travelling reinforcement profile provides complete safety without detracting from the awning's appearance.



### Construction limit values

|                     |         |
|---------------------|---------|
| Maximum order width | 6500 mm |
| Maximum order depth | 7000 mm |

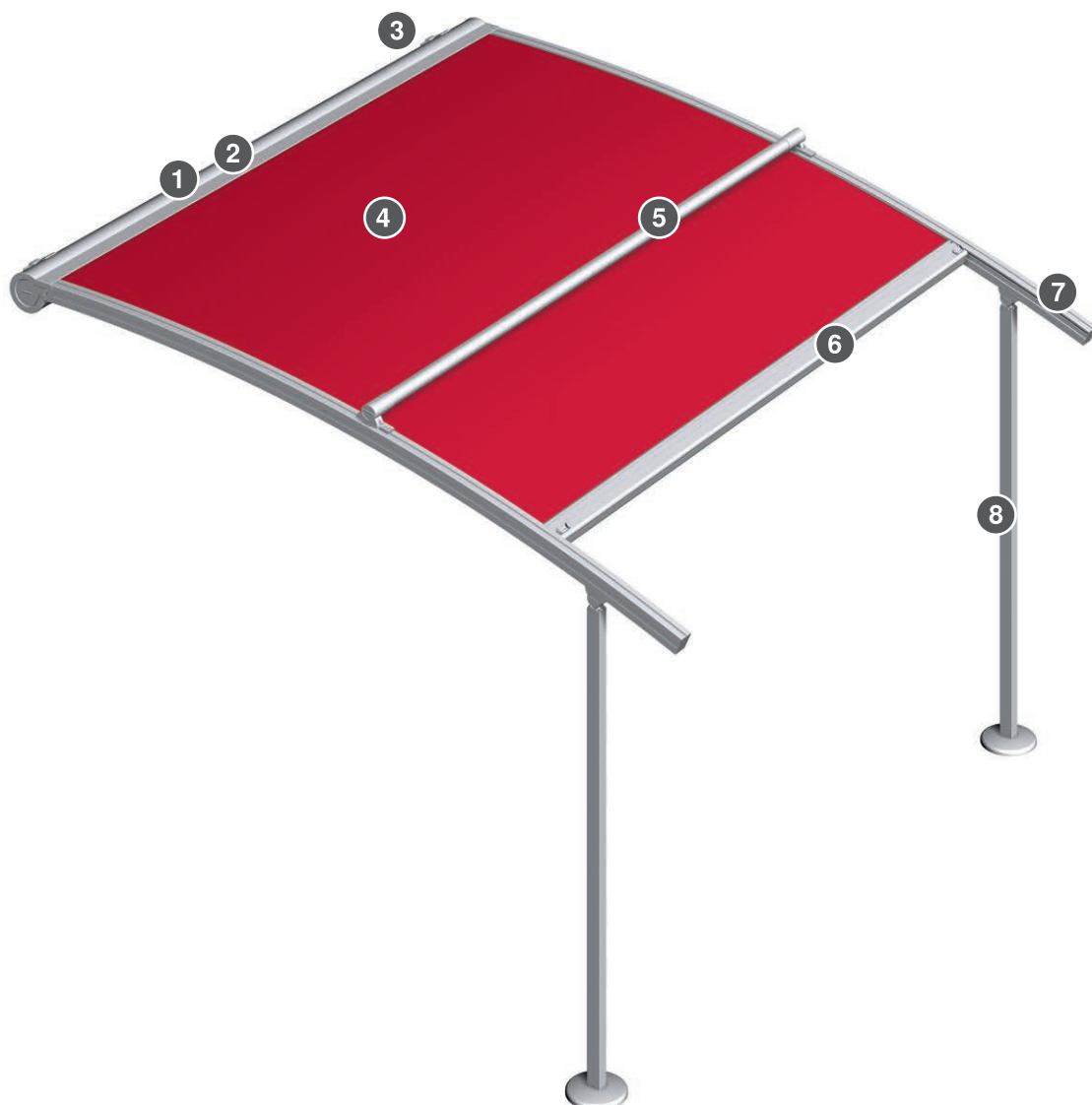


### Product characteristics

- Large-area, wind-stable sun shading systems
- An especially slender appearance with curved guide rails
- Also suitable for south-westerly orientation thanks to the valance roller blind

# Components

Pergola awning Perea P40



Planning

Terrea

Perea

Patio  
side screens

Climara

Supplementary  
accessories

Components

Drive  
variants

Standards

- 1 Cover panel
- 2 Shaft
- 3 Console
- 4 Fabric

- 5 Reinforcement profile
- 6 Front rail
- 7 Guide rail
- 8 Pole

## Cover panel

### Cover panel - P40/P60

|          |                     |
|----------|---------------------|
| Material | Aluminium, extruded |
| Surface  | Powder-coated       |
| Width    | 210 mm              |
| Height   | 180 mm              |

## Shaft

### Motor shaft Ø 70 mm

|          |               |
|----------|---------------|
| Material | Aluminium     |
| Surface  | Plain         |
| Profile  | Round profile |
| Diameter | 70 mm         |

### Fabric shaft Ø 86.2 mm

|          |               |
|----------|---------------|
| Material | Aluminium     |
| Surface  | Plain         |
| Profile  | Round profile |
| Diameter | 86.2 mm       |

## Front rail

### Front rail - P40/P60

|          |                     |
|----------|---------------------|
| Material | Aluminium, extruded |
| Surface  | Powder-coated       |
| Width    | 113 mm              |
| Height   | 74 mm               |

## Front rail, optional

### Front rail - P40 with valance roller blind

|          |                     |
|----------|---------------------|
| Material | Aluminium, extruded |
| Surface  | Powder-coated       |
| Width    | 113 mm              |
| Height   | 74 mm               |

## Reinforcement profile

### Reinforcement profile Ø 60 mm

|          |                     |
|----------|---------------------|
| Material | Aluminium, extruded |
| Surface  | Powder-coated       |
| Diameter | 60 mm               |

## Reinforcement profile, optional

### Travelling reinforcement profile Ø 60 mm - P40 travelling

|          |                     |
|----------|---------------------|
| Material | Aluminium, extruded |
| Surface  | Powder-coated       |
| Diameter | 60 mm               |

### Space required for travelling reinforcement profile:

The installation space for the travelling reinforcement profile is 134 mm from the top edge of the guide rail to the eaves, for example. For ceiling installation, this installation space must be manufactured with spacer consoles.

## Pole

### Pole - P40

|                      |                     |
|----------------------|---------------------|
| Maximum order height | 2500 mm             |
| Material             | Aluminium, extruded |
| Surface              | Powder-coated       |
| Width                | 45 mm               |
| Depth                | 60 mm               |

## Base plate

### Base plate - Ø 200 mm Perea

|          |                  |
|----------|------------------|
| Material | Galvanised steel |
| Surface  | Powder-coated    |
| Diameter | 200 mm           |

## Base cover, optional

### Base cover - P40

|          |                                 |
|----------|---------------------------------|
| Material | Aluminium, permanent mould cast |
| Surface  | Powder-coated                   |
| Height   | 34 mm                           |
| Diameter | 240 mm                          |

## Wall connection profile, optional

### Wall connection profile - P40/L60/L70

|          |                     |
|----------|---------------------|
| Material | Aluminium, extruded |
| Surface  | Powder-coated       |
| Width    | 179 mm              |
| Height   | 15 mm               |

## Console

### Wall console type A - 550/P40/P60

|          |                     |
|----------|---------------------|
| Material | Aluminium, extruded |
| Surface  | Powder-coated       |
| Width    | 140 mm              |
| Height   | 140 mm              |
| Depth    | 29 mm               |

### Wall console type B - 550/P40/P60

|          |                     |
|----------|---------------------|
| Material | Aluminium, extruded |
| Surface  | Powder-coated       |
| Width    | 185 mm              |
| Height   | 140 mm              |
| Depth    | 29 mm               |

Wall installation with 3 drilled holes

### Ceiling console type E - 550/P40/P60

|          |                     |
|----------|---------------------|
| Material | Aluminium, extruded |
| Surface  | Powder-coated       |
| Width    | 100 mm              |
| Height   | 183 mm              |
| Depth    | 182 mm              |

### Console for rafters type F - 550/P40/P60

|          |               |
|----------|---------------|
| Material | Aluminium     |
| Surface  | Powder-coated |
| Width    | 100 mm        |
| Height   | 413 mm        |
| Depth    | 182 mm        |

## Guide variants

- secudrive®

## Guide rail

### Guide rail - P40 curved

|          |                     |
|----------|---------------------|
| Material | Aluminium, extruded |
| Surface  | Powder-coated       |
| Width    | 80 mm               |
| Height   | 65 mm               |

### Guide rail - P40/P60 straight

|          |                     |
|----------|---------------------|
| Material | Aluminium, extruded |
| Surface  | Powder-coated       |
| Width    | 80 mm               |
| Height   | 65 mm               |

## Drive variants

- Motor

## Motor

- WM REA

## Radio motor, optional

- WMS-PM (WMS)

+ see "Drive variants", Page 367

## Colours

- WAREMA Colour World

+ see "WAREMA Colour World", Page 12

## Fabric qualities

- Standard acrylic fabric
- Lumera acrylic fabric

Fabric qualities, optional:

- Perfora acrylic
- All Weather acrylic
- Soltis 92
- Twilight Pearl

+ see "Awning collection", Page 356

## Supplementary accessories

- WMS sensor system
- Pole, lowered vertically
- Drainage cutouts
- Valance roller blind with motor and storage battery and WMS control
- Valance roller blind with crank
- Wind protection for valance roller blind
- Integrated lighting
- LED strip light rail
- Radiant heater
- Multicube set
- Patio frame

+ see "Supplementary accessories", Page 257

## Notes

### Planning permission

Pergola awnings require planning permission, depending on their overall size and the local regulations.

## Construction limit values

| Configuration variants                         | Minimum order width | Maximum order width | Minimum order depth | Maximum order depth | Maximum order area  | Minimum inclination angle | Maximum inclination angle |
|------------------------------------------------|---------------------|---------------------|---------------------|---------------------|---------------------|---------------------------|---------------------------|
| <b>Fabric qualities + Guide rail</b>           |                     |                     |                     |                     |                     |                           |                           |
| Acrylic fabric + Guide rail - P40 curved       | 950 mm              | 6500 mm             | 800 mm              | 5000 mm             | 32,5 m <sup>2</sup> | 0 °                       | 45 °                      |
| Acrylic fabric + Guide rail - P40/P60 straight | 950 mm              | 6500 mm             | 800 mm              | 5000 mm             | 32,5 m <sup>2</sup> | 0 °                       | 45 °                      |
| Acrylic fabric + Guide rail - P40/P60 straight | 950 mm              | 5000 mm             | 800 mm              | 7000 mm             | 35 m <sup>2</sup>   | 0 °                       | 45 °                      |
| Twilight Pearl + Guide rail - P40 curved       | 950 mm              | 6500 mm             | 800 mm              | 5000 mm             | 28 m <sup>2</sup>   | 0 °                       | 45 °                      |
| Twilight Pearl + Guide rail - P40/P60 straight | 950 mm              | 6500 mm             | 800 mm              | 5000 mm             | 28 m <sup>2</sup>   | 0 °                       | 45 °                      |
| Twilight Pearl + Guide rail - P40/P60 straight | 950 mm              | 5000 mm             | 800 mm              | 7000 mm             | 28 m <sup>2</sup>   | 0 °                       | 45 °                      |
| Soltis 92 + Guide rail - P40/P60 straight      | 950 mm              | 3500 mm             | 800 mm              | 4000 mm             | 14 m <sup>2</sup>   | 0 °                       | 45 °                      |

### Inclination:

- The **maximum order depth** refers to an inclination of 14°.

### Reinforcement profile:

- For order depths of 1401 mm or greater and curved guide rails, a reinforcement profile (fixed or travelling) is used.
- For order depths of 4001 mm or greater and straight guide rails, a reinforcement profile (fixed or travelling) is used.

### Series-mounted units:

- Generally, only individual units are possible, i.e. no unit coupling!
- The lining up of several pergola awnings is possible with a flush closure.
- Each awning section requires two single guide rails.
- The installation of two guide rails on one pole is possible with an adapter plate.
- In the case of a series-mounted unit, an expansion joint of 20 mm is required after 13000 mm!



## Dimensions

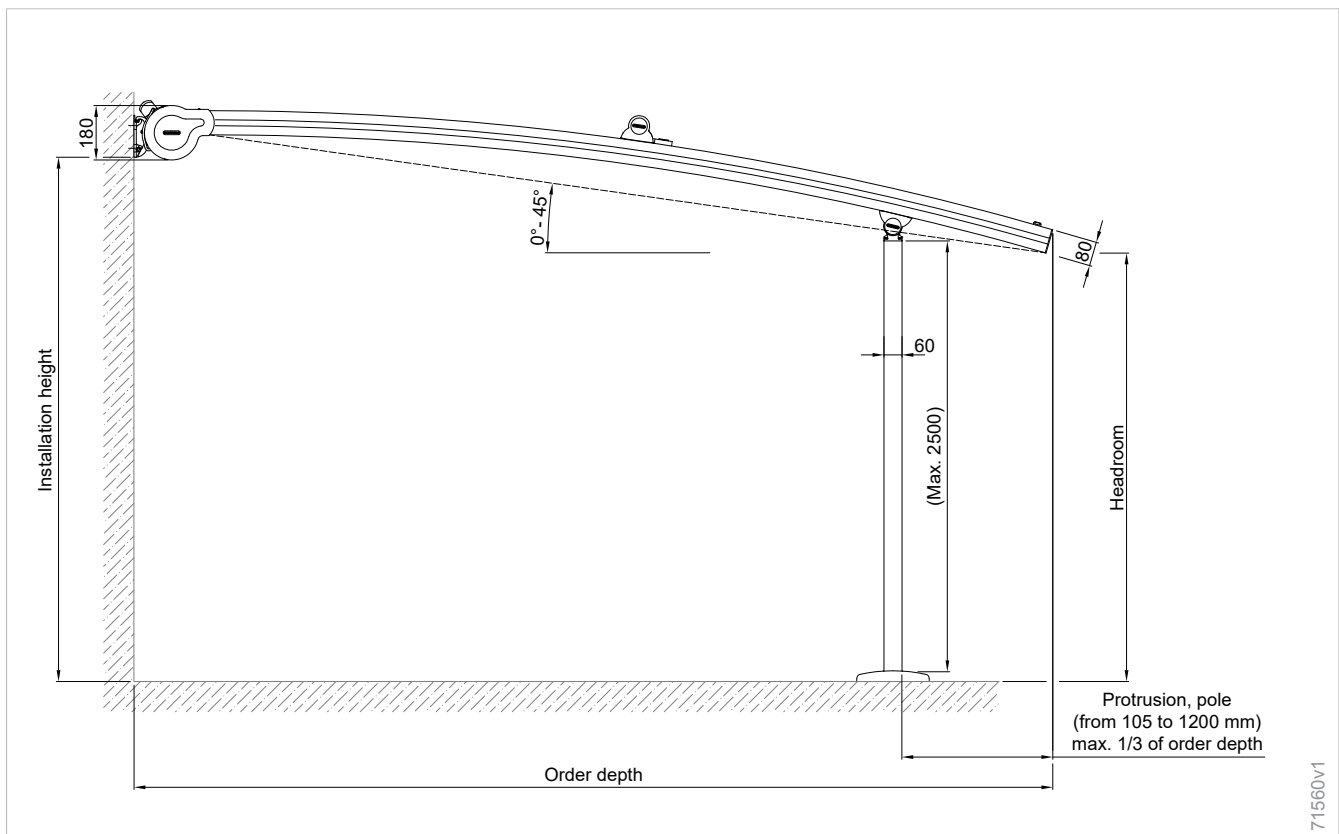
Weight per running metre: 20 - 24 kg/lfm

Weight per running metre, notes: Cover panel without consoles, without guide rails and poles.

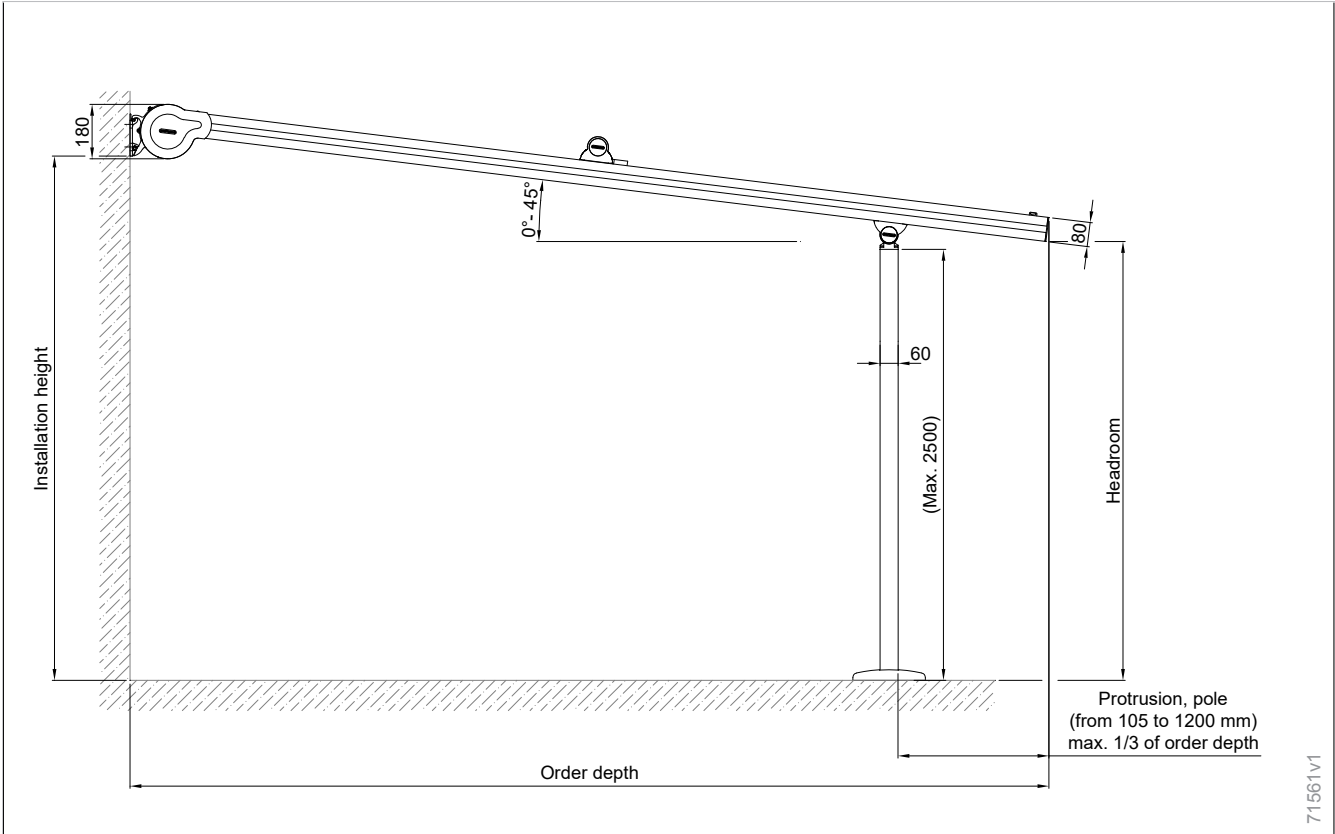
## Dimension determination

Determining the installation height differs for ceiling console!

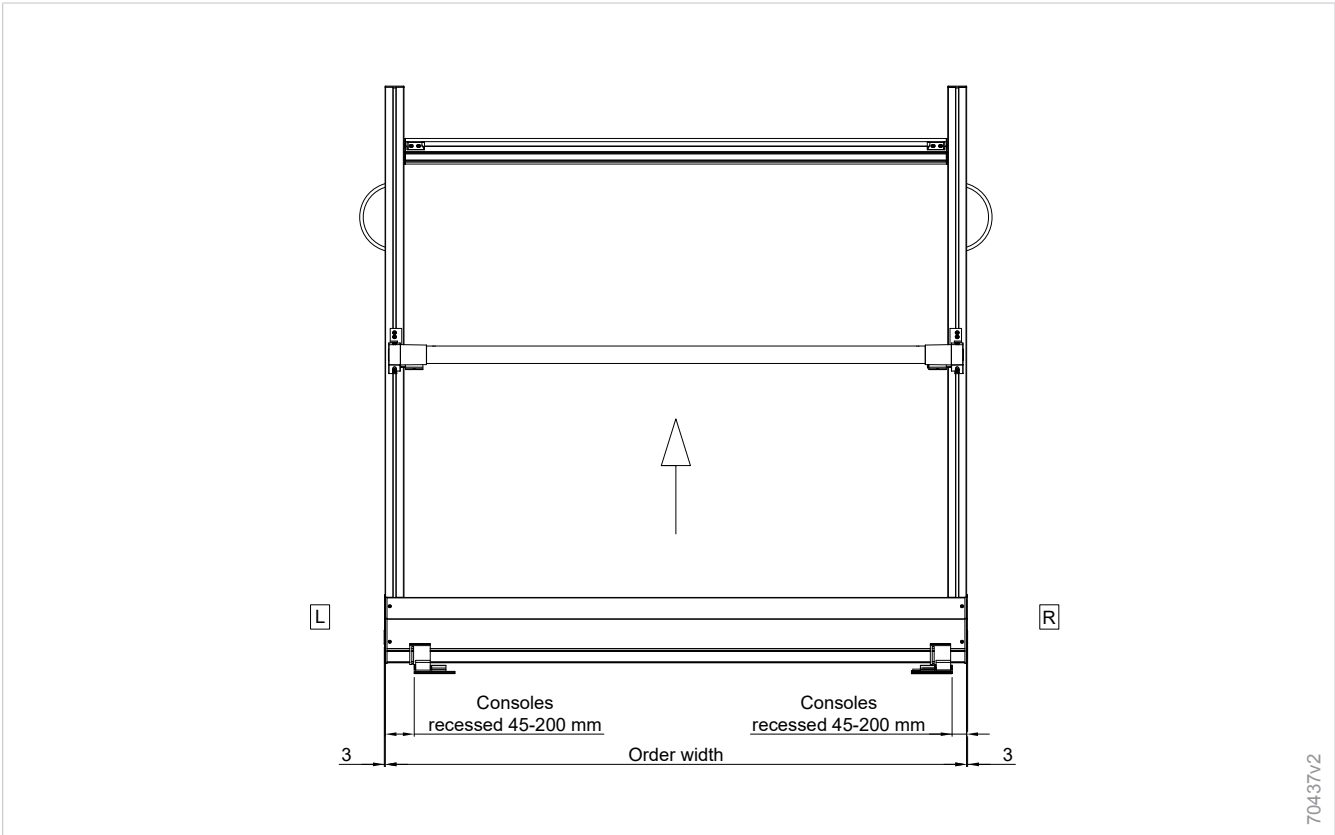
### Curved guide rail - P40

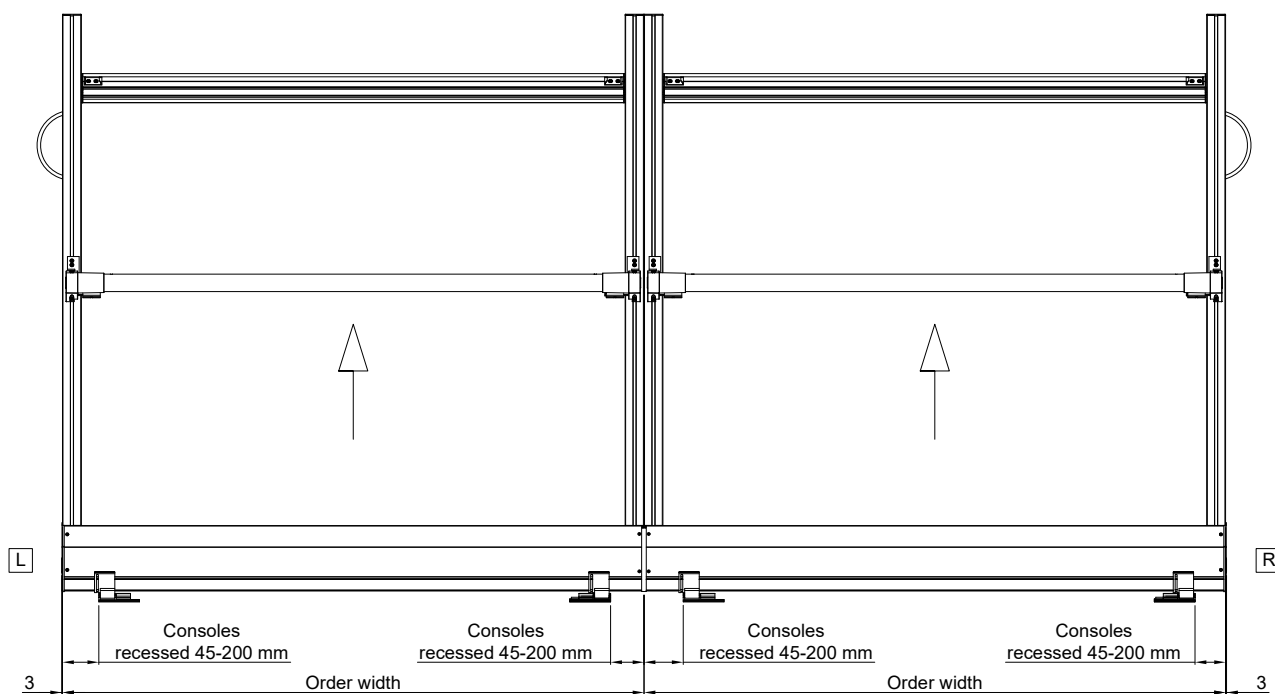
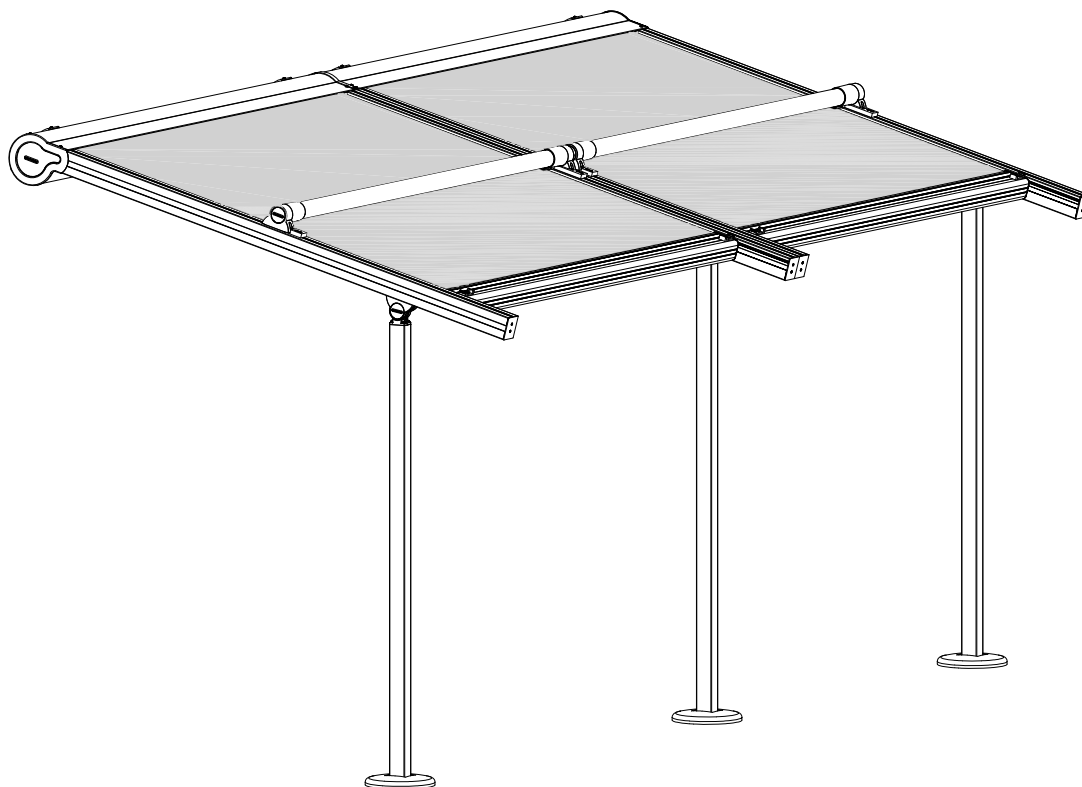


Straight guide rail - P40



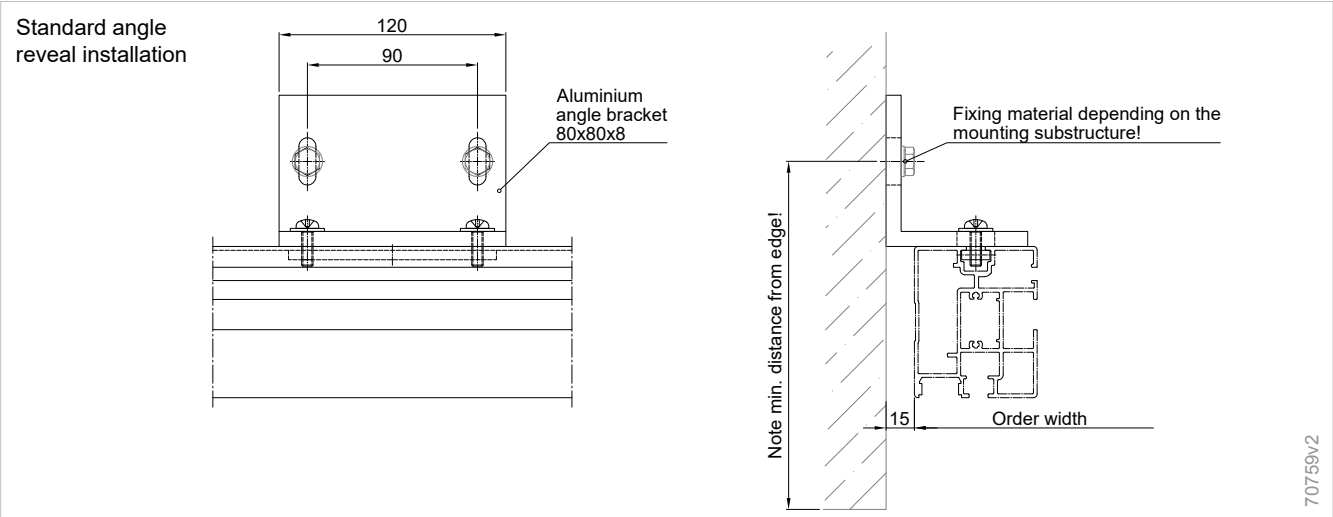
Top view for all guide rail models - P40



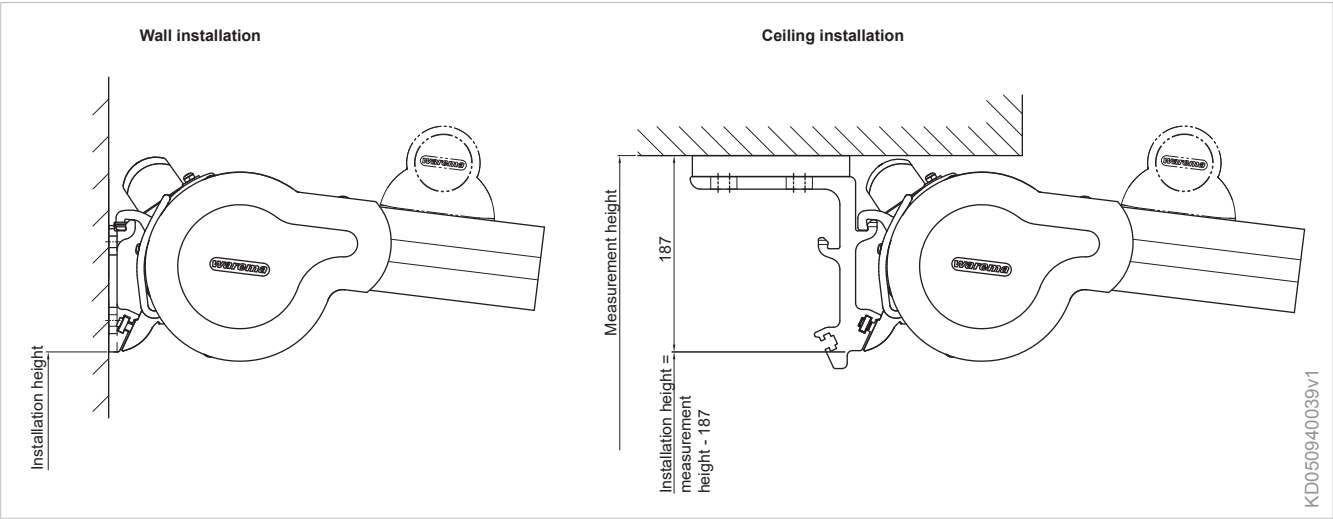


70438v1

Reveal installation - P40



Determining the installation height for wall/ceiling console - P40



Planning

Terrea

Perea

Patio side screens

Climara

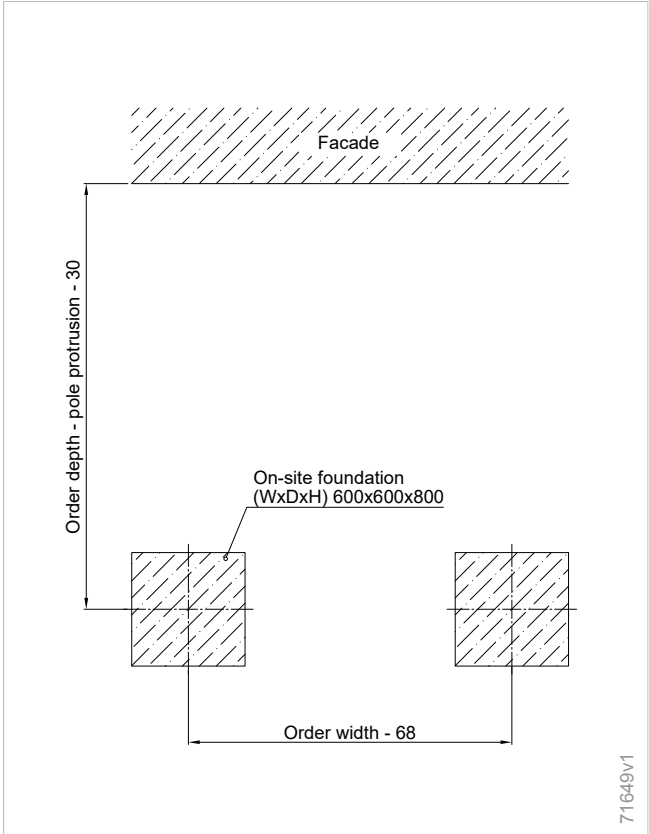
Supplementary accessories

Components

Drive variants

Standards

Foundation plan - P40



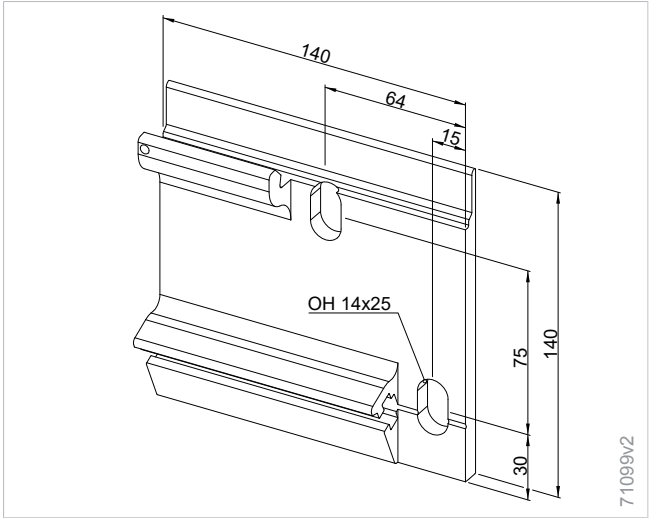
Quantity determination

Number of consoles, individual unit

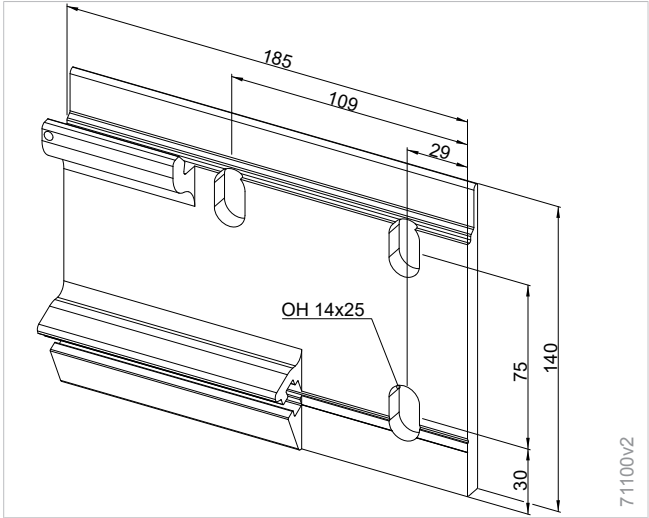
| Configuration variants                               | Order width    | Order depth   |                |
|------------------------------------------------------|----------------|---------------|----------------|
|                                                      |                | 800 - 5000 mm | 5001 - 7000 mm |
| Console/Bracket                                      |                |               |                |
| Wall console / Ceiling console / Console for rafters | 950 - 5000 mm  | 2             | 2              |
| Wall console / Ceiling console / Console for rafters | 5001 - 6500 mm | 2             |                |

Details

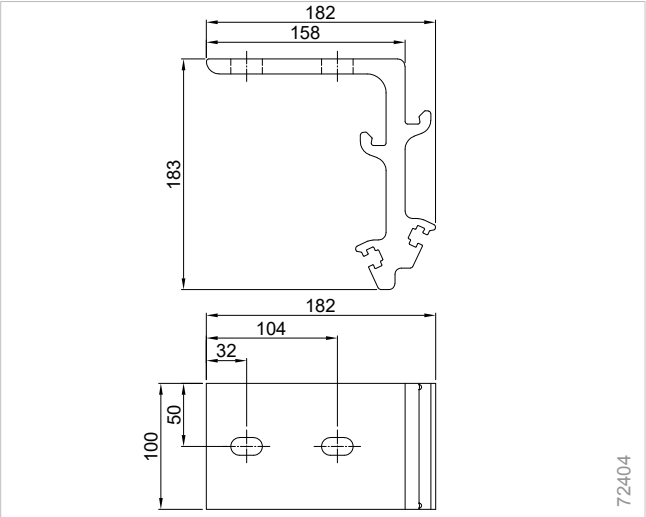
Wall console type A, left console; right console laterally reversed - 550/P40/P60



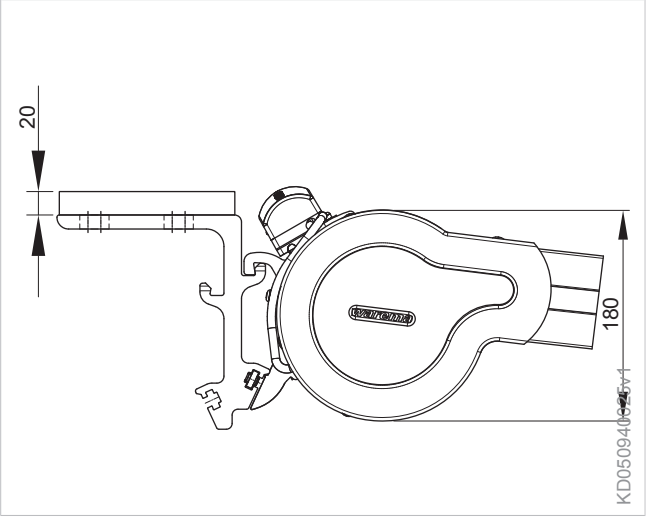
Wall console type B, left console; right console laterally reversed - 550/P40/P60



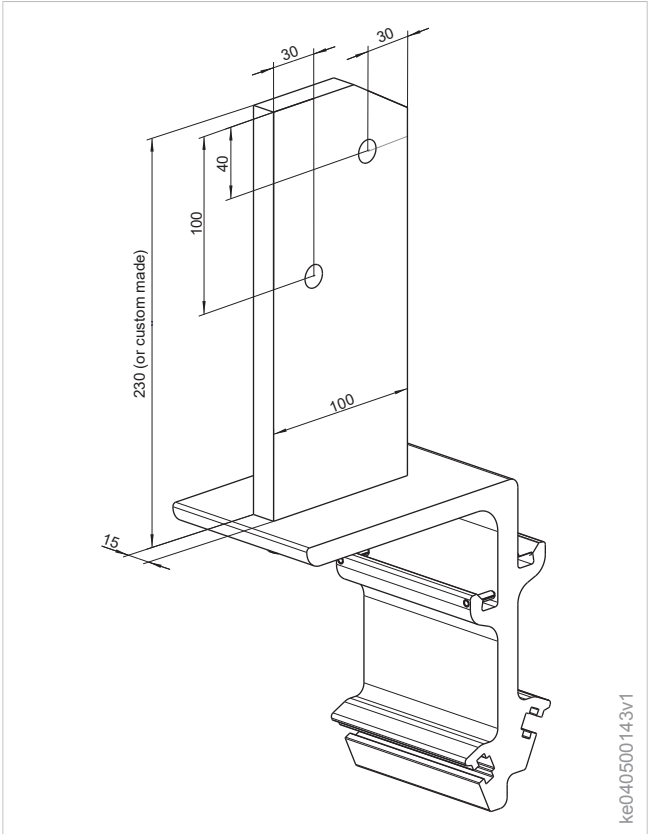
Ceiling console type E - 550/P40/P60



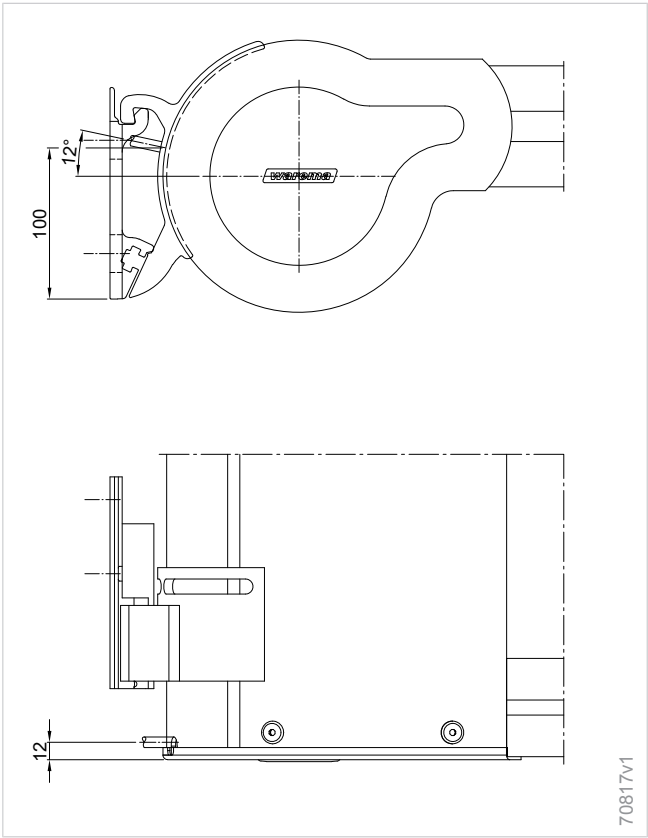
Ceiling installation (installation of the ceiling console only possible as shown) - P40



Console for rafters type F - 550/P40/P60



Cable exit - P40



Planning

Terrea

Perea

Patio side screens

Climara

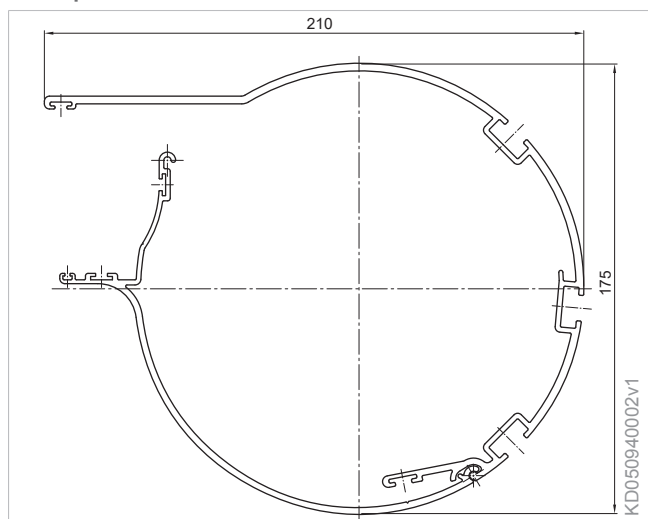
Supplementary accessories

Components

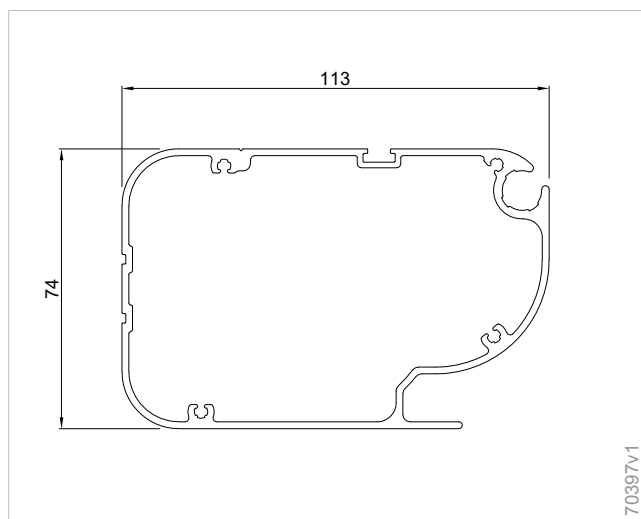
Drive variants

Standards

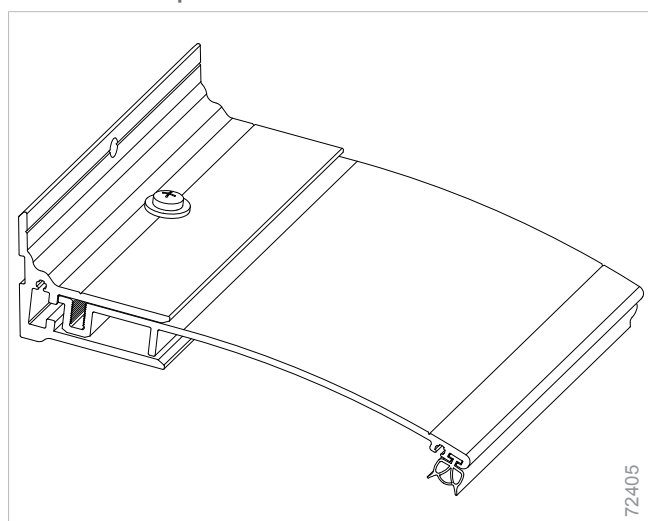
**Cover panel - P40/P60**



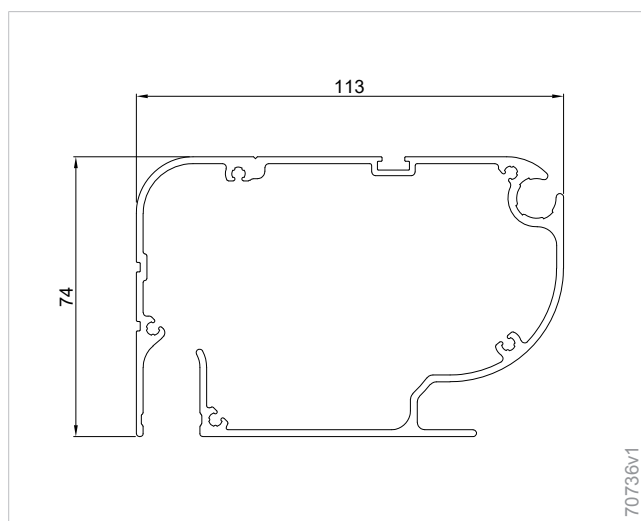
**Front rail - P40/P60**



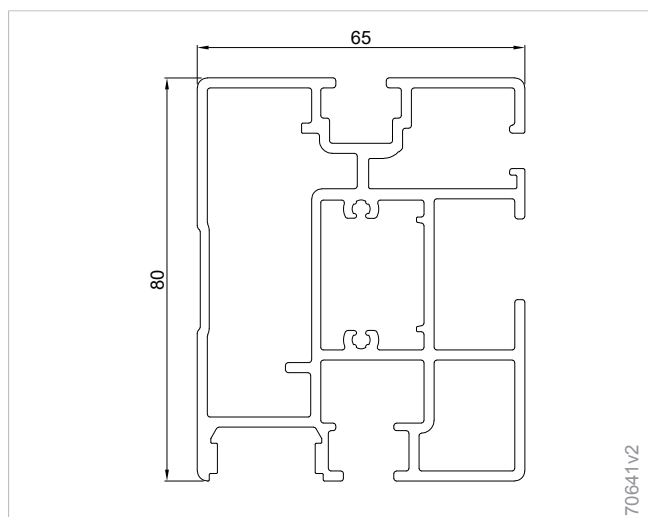
**Wall connection profile - P40**



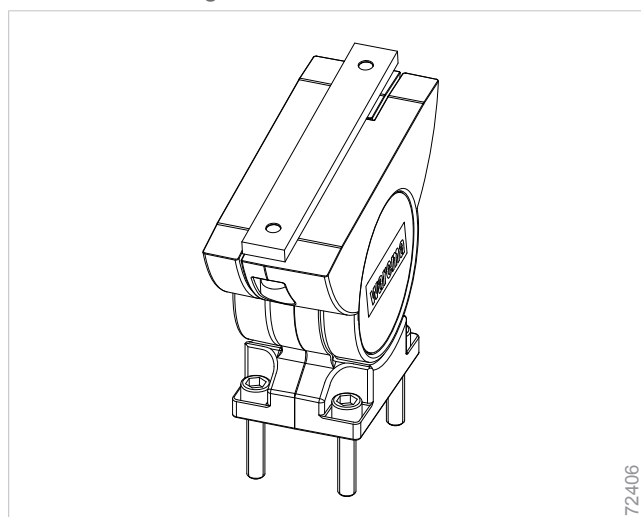
**Front rail for valance roller blind - P40**



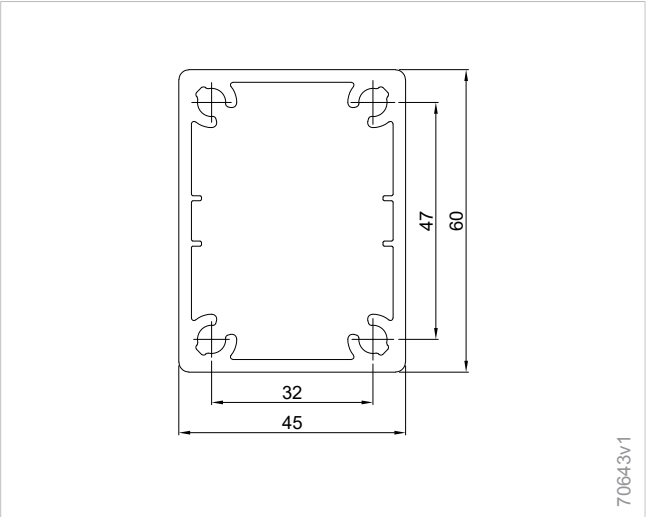
**Guide rail - P40/P60**



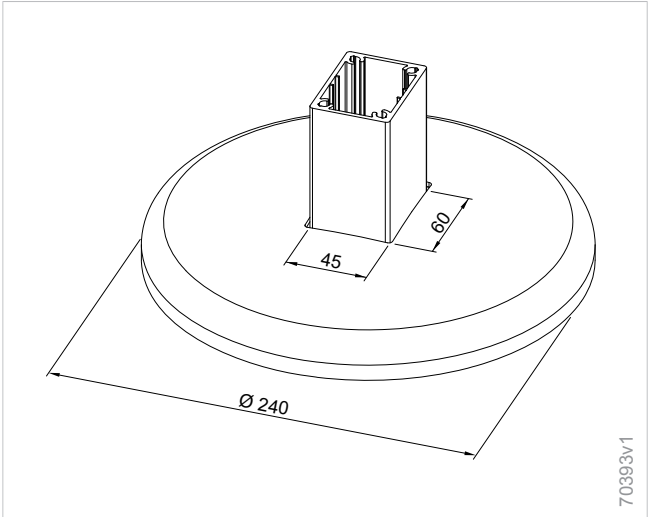
**Pole attachment to guide rail - P40**



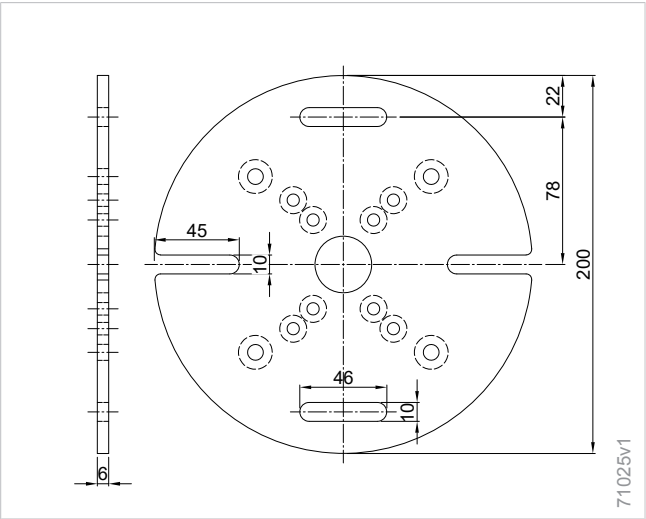
Pole - P40



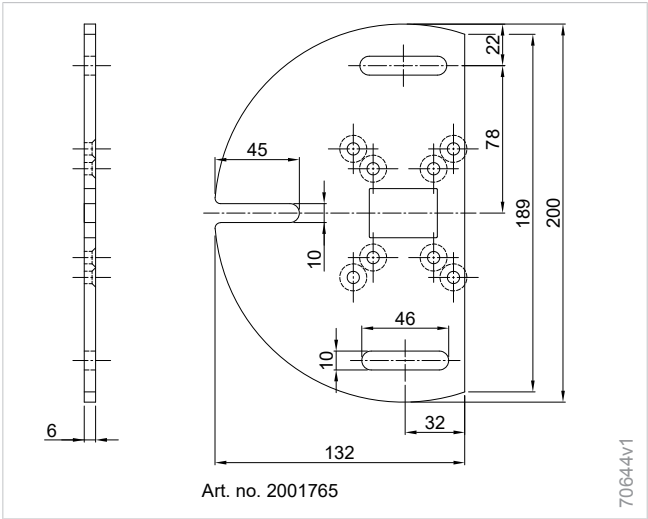
Base cover - P40



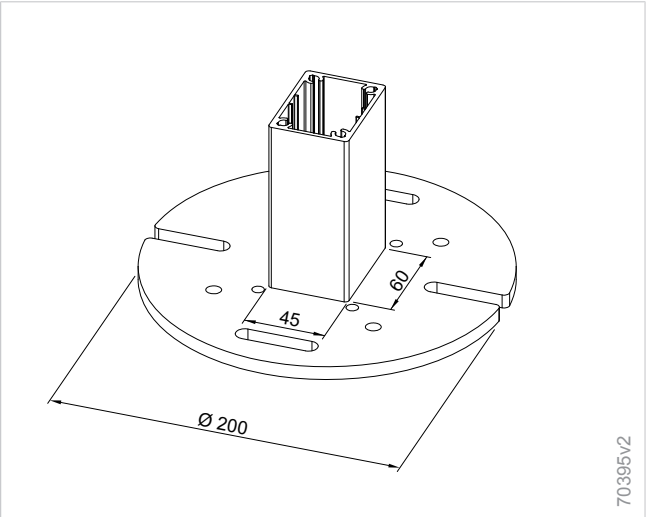
Pole fixing base plate - P40/P60/P70



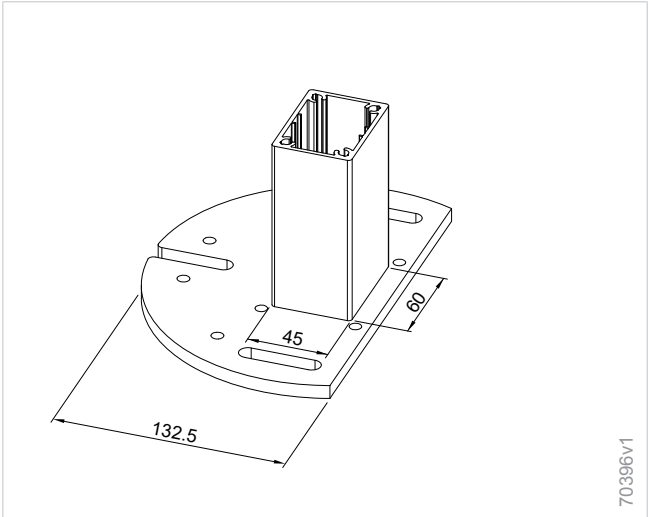
Pole fixing base plate for reveal installation, lateral - P40



Pole fixing - P40



Pole fixing for lateral reveal installation - P40



Planning

Terrea

Perea

Patio  
side screens

Climara

Supplementary  
accessories

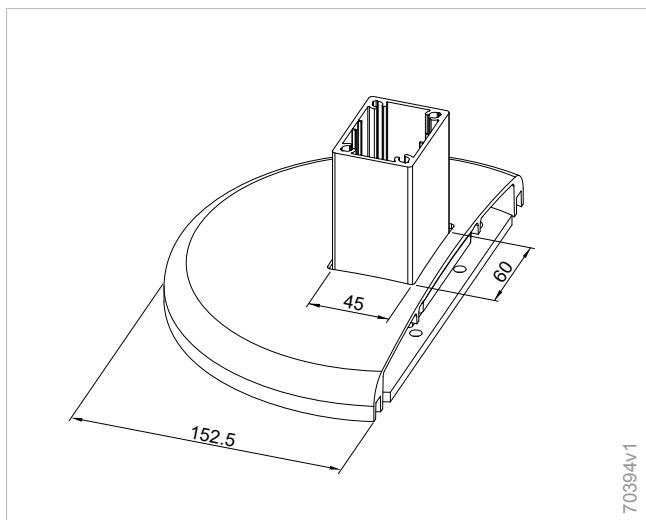
Components

Drive  
variants

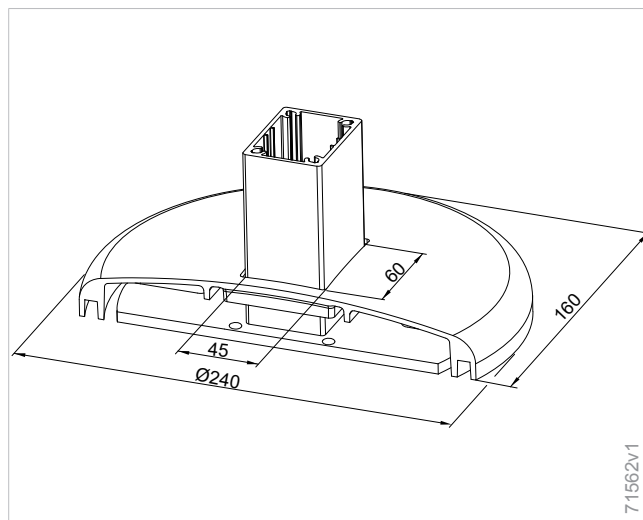
Standards



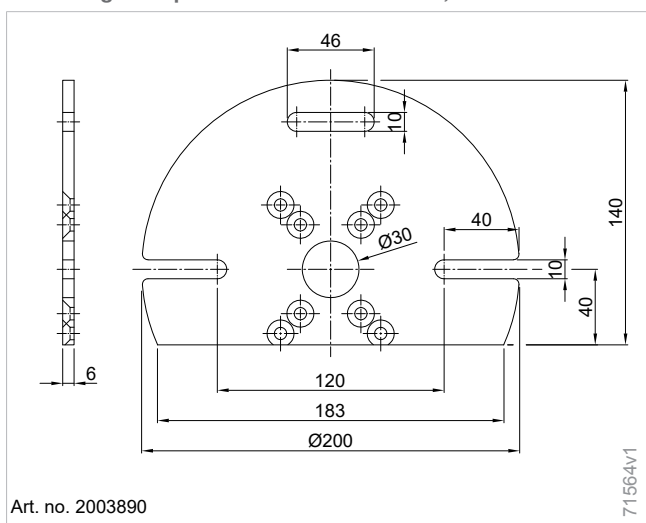
Base cover for lateral reveal installation - P40



Base cover for reveal installation, front - P40

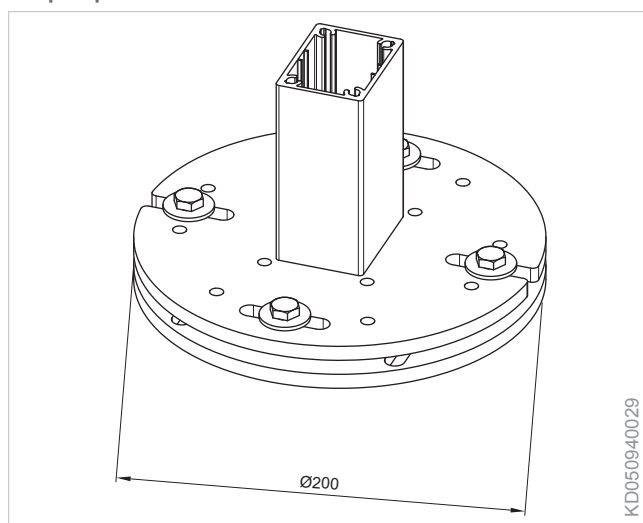


Pole fixing base plate for reveal installation, front - P40

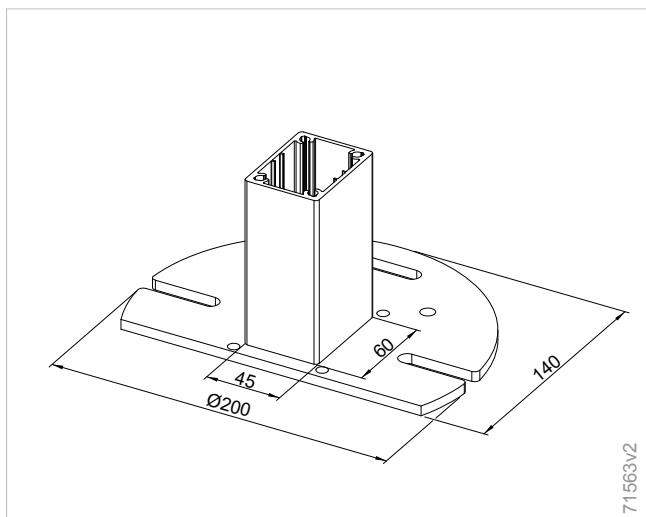


Art. no. 2003890

Adapter plate - P40



Pole fixing for reveal installation, front - P40



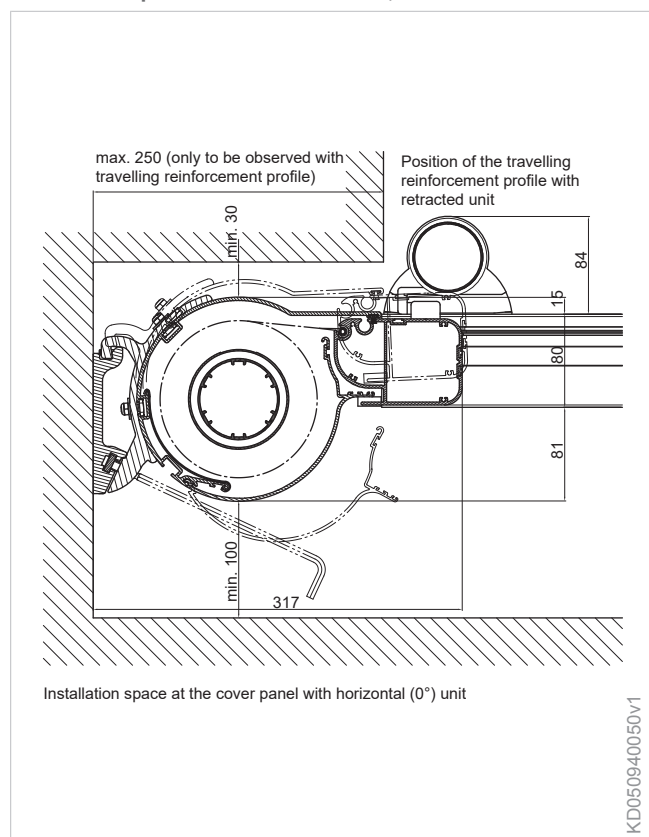
## Additional product information

### Pole installation options

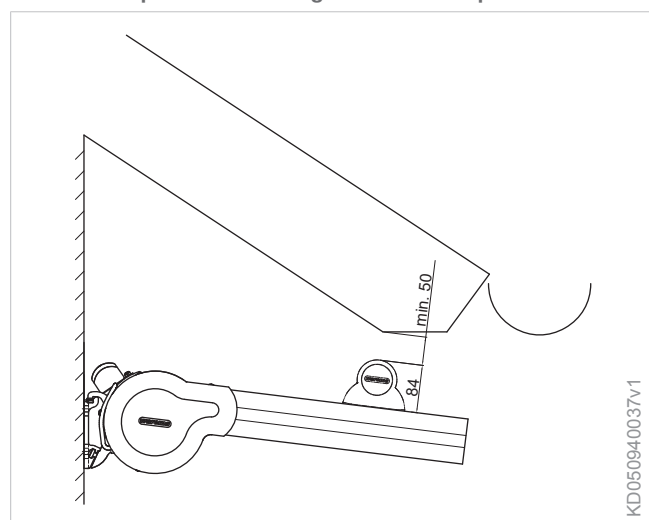
- Ground installation with frost-proof, on-site foundation, dimensions (WxDxH) 600×600×800 mm
- Optional ground installation with on-site Krinner ground screw
- The grout for filling the clearance is not included in the scope of delivery when **threaded rods** are used.

## Mounting examples

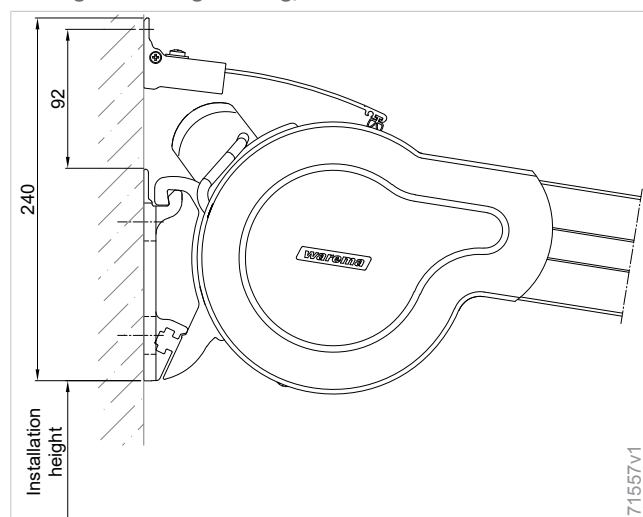
Installation space for wall installation, inclination 0° - P40



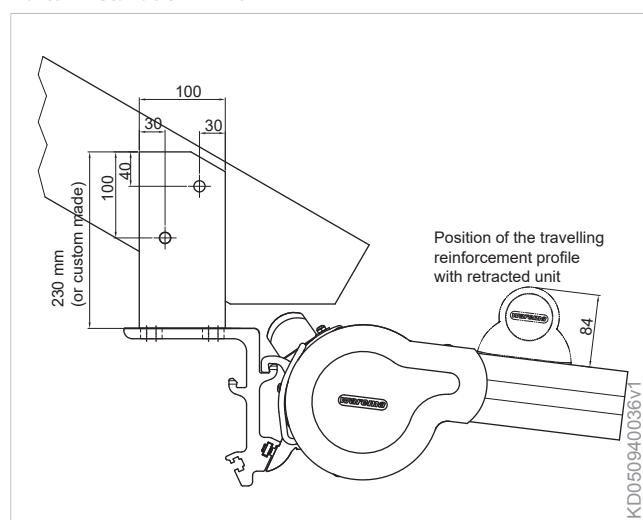
Installation space for travelling reinforcement profile - P40



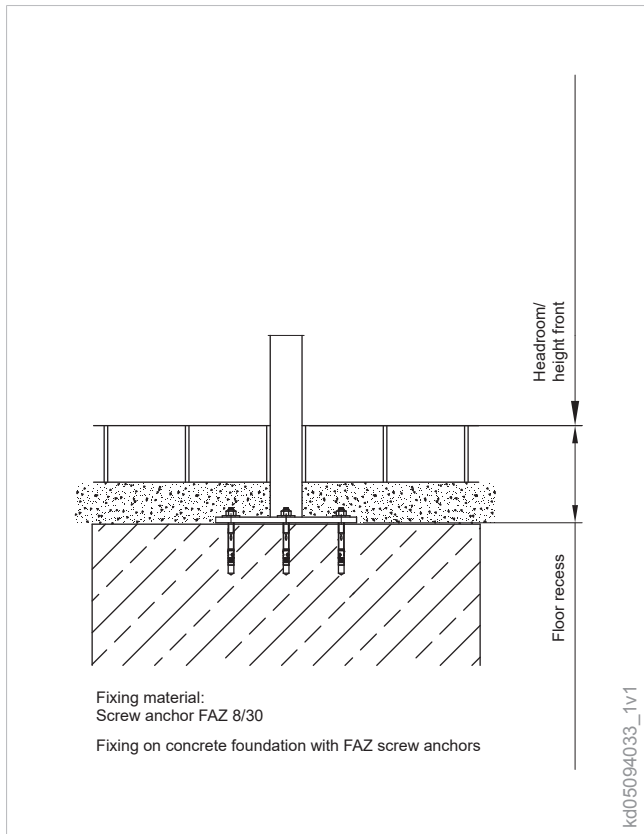
Sealing on existing building, wall connection - P40



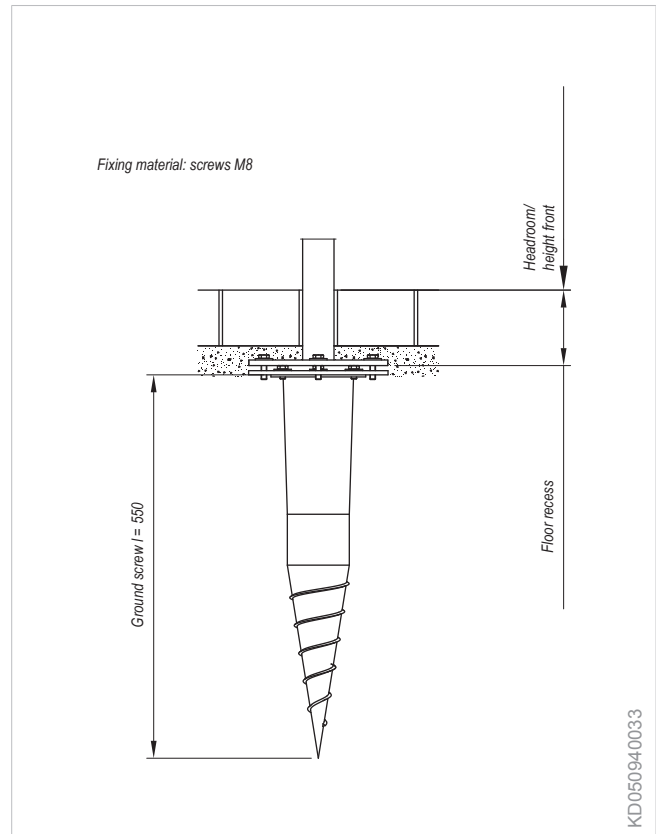
Rafter installation - P40



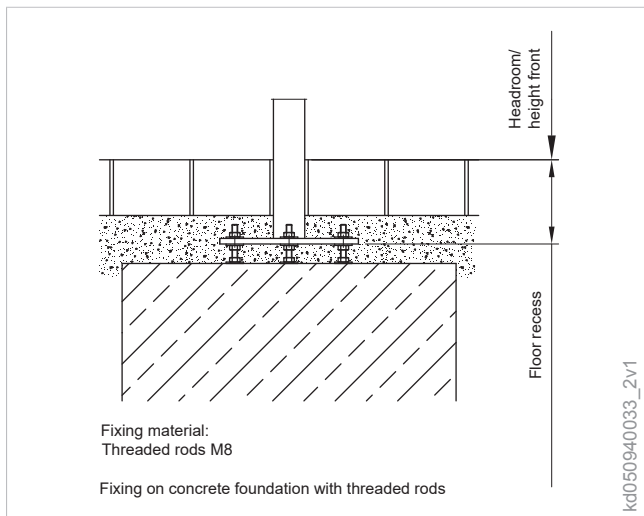
#### Fixing on concrete foundation without clearance - P40



#### Fixing with ground screw - P40



#### Fixing on concrete foundation with spacer - P40



Krinner ground screws made of zinc-coated steel can be used to install the poles. The adapter plate for Krinner ground screw KSF 89x550 is required.

The grout for filling the clearance is not included in the scope of delivery.

## Further information

Visualise your product with the WAREMA Designer  
You can download the app for free from your app store.



Use our free planning programme to plan your sun protection systems  
<https://sonnenschutzplaner.com/>



Configure and plan your product with myWAREMA  
<https://my.warema.com>



Experience the range of colours and fabrics of the WAREMA collections  
<https://www.warema.de/Tools/Kollektionsberater.php>



TechDataPLUS Pergola awnings  
<https://docs.warema.com/1.1445.5>





# Pergola awnings Perea

## Pergola awning Perea P60

### Weather-resistant

The weather and rain-proof fabric makes the pergola awning a real all-rounder.

### Sophisticated

The PVC grid integrated into the fabric and the integrated drainage gutter drain water in a controlled manner.

### Wind-stable

The patented secudrive® system and the fixed reinforcement profile ensure very good fabric tension and high wind stability.



### Construction limit values

|                     |         |
|---------------------|---------|
| Maximum order width | 6000 mm |
| Maximum order depth | 5000 mm |



### Product characteristics

- Slender pergola awning for use as sun shading system and rain protection
- Optional integrated lighting

# Components

Pergola awning Perea P60



Planning

Terrea

Perea

Patio  
side screens

Climara

Supplementary  
accessories

Components

Drive  
variants

Standards

- 1 Wall connection profile
- 2 Cover panel
- 3 Shaft
- 4 Console
- 5 Fabric
- 6 Reinforcement profile

- 7 Drainage grid
- 8 Drainage gutter
- 9 Front rail
- 10 Guide rail
- 11 Pole
- 12 Drainage in pole

## Cover panel

### Cover panel - P40/P60

|          |                     |
|----------|---------------------|
| Material | Aluminium, extruded |
| Surface  | Powder-coated       |
| Width    | 210 mm              |
| Height   | 180 mm              |

## Shaft

### Motor shaft Ø 70 mm

|          |               |
|----------|---------------|
| Material | Aluminium     |
| Surface  | Plain         |
| Profile  | Round profile |
| Diameter | 70 mm         |

### Fabric shaft Ø 86.2 mm

|          |               |
|----------|---------------|
| Material | Aluminium     |
| Surface  | Plain         |
| Profile  | Round profile |
| Diameter | 86.2 mm       |

## Front rail

### Front rail - P40/P60

|          |                     |
|----------|---------------------|
| Material | Aluminium, extruded |
| Surface  | Powder-coated       |
| Width    | 113 mm              |
| Height   | 74 mm               |

## Reinforcement profile

### Reinforcement profile Ø 60 mm

|          |                     |
|----------|---------------------|
| Material | Aluminium, extruded |
| Surface  | Powder-coated       |
| Diameter | 60 mm               |

## Pole

### Pole - P60/P70/patio frame Perea

|                      |                     |
|----------------------|---------------------|
| Maximum order height | 3000 mm             |
| Material             | Aluminium, extruded |
| Surface              | Powder-coated       |
| Width                | 111 mm              |
| Depth                | 111 mm              |

## Base plate

### Base plate - Internal P60

|          |                  |
|----------|------------------|
| Material | Galvanised steel |
| Surface  | Powder-coated    |
| Width    | 91.5 mm          |
| Height   | 50 mm            |
| Depth    | 91.5 mm          |

The maximum pole height with internal base plate is 2500 mm.

### Base plate - Ø 200 mm Perea

|          |                  |
|----------|------------------|
| Material | Galvanised steel |
| Surface  | Powder-coated    |
| Diameter | 200 mm           |

## Base cover, optional

### Base cover - P60/P70

|          |               |
|----------|---------------|
| Material | Aluminium     |
| Surface  | Powder-coated |
| Width    | 210 mm        |
| Height   | 210 mm        |

For base plate diameter 200 mm

## Drainage

### Drainage grid - P60

|                 |       |
|-----------------|-------|
| Material        | PVC   |
| Material colour | Black |
| Depth           | 30 mm |

The drainage grid runs across the entire order width.

### Small drainage gutter 110x110

|          |                     |
|----------|---------------------|
| Material | Aluminium, extruded |
| Surface  | Powder-coated       |
| Width    | 110 mm              |
| Height   | 110 mm              |

### Drainage in pole - P60/P70

Drainage via drainage profile in pole.

#### Position of drainage outlet:

- Can be on any side of the pole (front/rear/right/left).
- Height min.: 100 mm
- Max. height: 250 mm below the headroom

## Drainage, optional

### Large drainage gutter 150x150

|          |                     |
|----------|---------------------|
| Material | Aluminium, extruded |
| Surface  | Powder-coated       |
| Width    | 150 mm              |
| Height   | 150 mm              |

If front-mounted awnings with easyZIP guidance are to be installed, the large drainage gutter is required.

## Wall connection profile

### Wall connection profile - P60

|          |               |
|----------|---------------|
| Material | Aluminium     |
| Surface  | Powder-coated |
| Height   | 50 mm         |
| Depth    | 150 mm        |

## Console

### Wall console type A - 550/P40/P60

|          |                     |
|----------|---------------------|
| Material | Aluminium, extruded |
| Surface  | Powder-coated       |
| Width    | 140 mm              |
| Height   | 140 mm              |
| Depth    | 29 mm               |

### Wall console type B - 550/P40/P60

|          |                     |
|----------|---------------------|
| Material | Aluminium, extruded |
| Surface  | Powder-coated       |
| Width    | 185 mm              |
| Height   | 140 mm              |
| Depth    | 29 mm               |

Wall installation with 3 drilled holes

### Ceiling console type E - 550/P40/P60

|          |                     |
|----------|---------------------|
| Material | Aluminium, extruded |
| Surface  | Powder-coated       |
| Width    | 100 mm              |
| Height   | 183 mm              |
| Depth    | 182 mm              |



## Console for rafters type F - 550/P40/P60

|          |               |
|----------|---------------|
| Material | Aluminium     |
| Surface  | Powder-coated |
| Width    | 100 mm        |
| Height   | 413 mm        |
| Depth    | 182 mm        |

## Guide variants

- secudrive®

## Guide rail

### Guide rail - P40/P60 straight

|          |                     |
|----------|---------------------|
| Material | Aluminium, extruded |
| Surface  | Powder-coated       |
| Width    | 80 mm               |
| Height   | 65 mm               |

## Drive variants

- Motor

## Motor

- WM REA

## Radio motor, optional

- WMS-PM (WMS)

+ see "Drive variants", Page 367

## Construction limit values

| Configuration variants  | Minimum order width | Maximum order width | Minimum order depth | Maximum order depth | Maximum order area | Minimum inclination angle | Maximum inclination angle |
|-------------------------|---------------------|---------------------|---------------------|---------------------|--------------------|---------------------------|---------------------------|
| <b>Fabric qualities</b> |                     |                     |                     |                     |                    |                           |                           |
| Rainproof textile W36   | 950 mm              | 6000 mm             | 800 mm              | 5000 mm             | 30 m <sup>2</sup>  | 9 °                       | 15 °                      |

## Series-mounted units:

- Generally, only individual units are possible, i.e. no unit coupling!
- Lining up of two pergola awnings is possible with a flush closure.
- Each awning section requires two single guide rails.
- The installation of two guide rails on one pole is possible with a special bracket.
- The water must be drained via the two outer poles.

## Dimensions

Weight per running metre: 17 - 22 kg/lfm

Weight per running metre, notes: Cover panel without consoles, without guide rails, drainage gutters and poles.

## Colours

- WAREMA Colour World

+ see "WAREMA Colour World", Page 12

## Fabric qualities

- Rainproof textile W36

+ see "Awning collection", Page 356

## Supplementary accessories

- Integrated lighting
- LED strip light rail
- Radiant heater
- Front-mounted awnings with easyZIP guidance
- Stretcher frame
- Multicube set
- Patio frame

+ see "Supplementary accessories", Page 257

## Notes

### Planning permission

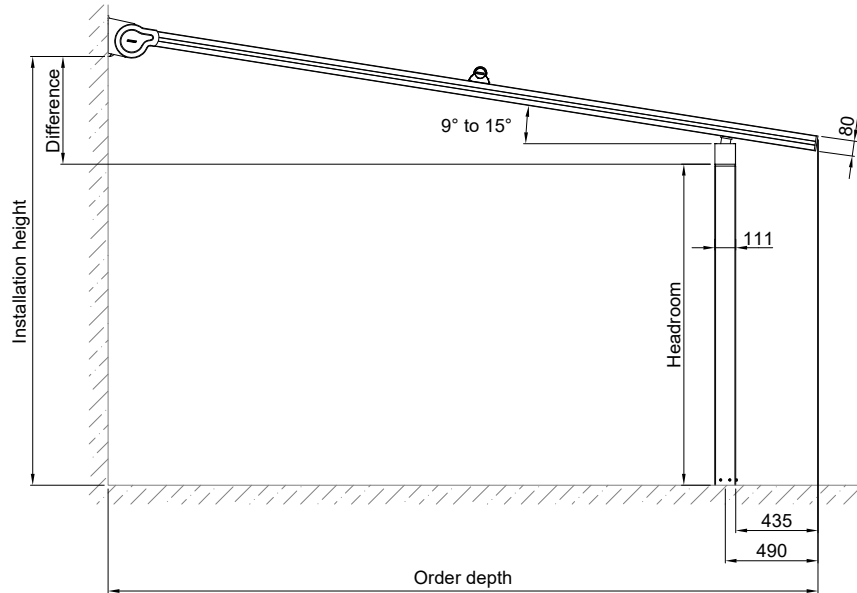
Pergola awnings require planning permission, depending on their overall size and the local regulations.



## Dimension determination

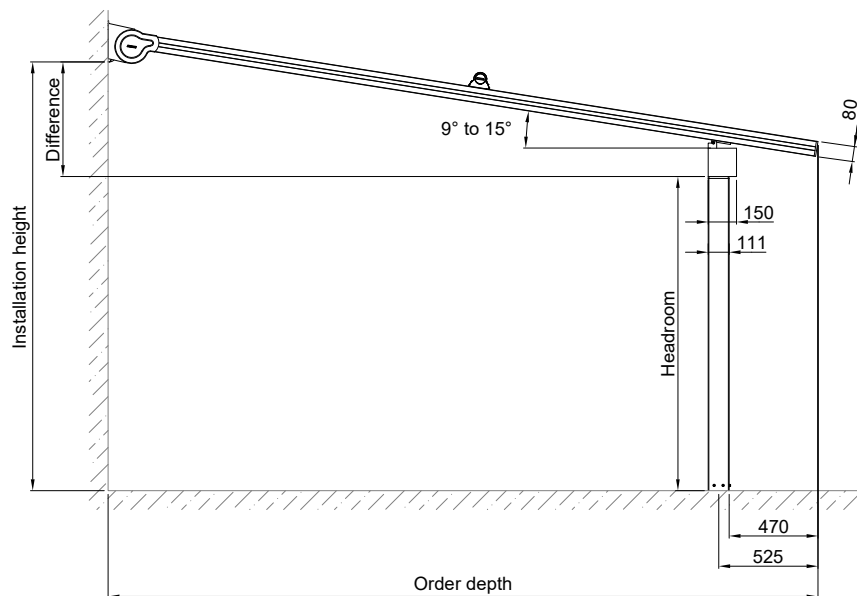
Determining the installation height differs for ceiling console!

### Small drainage gutter - P60



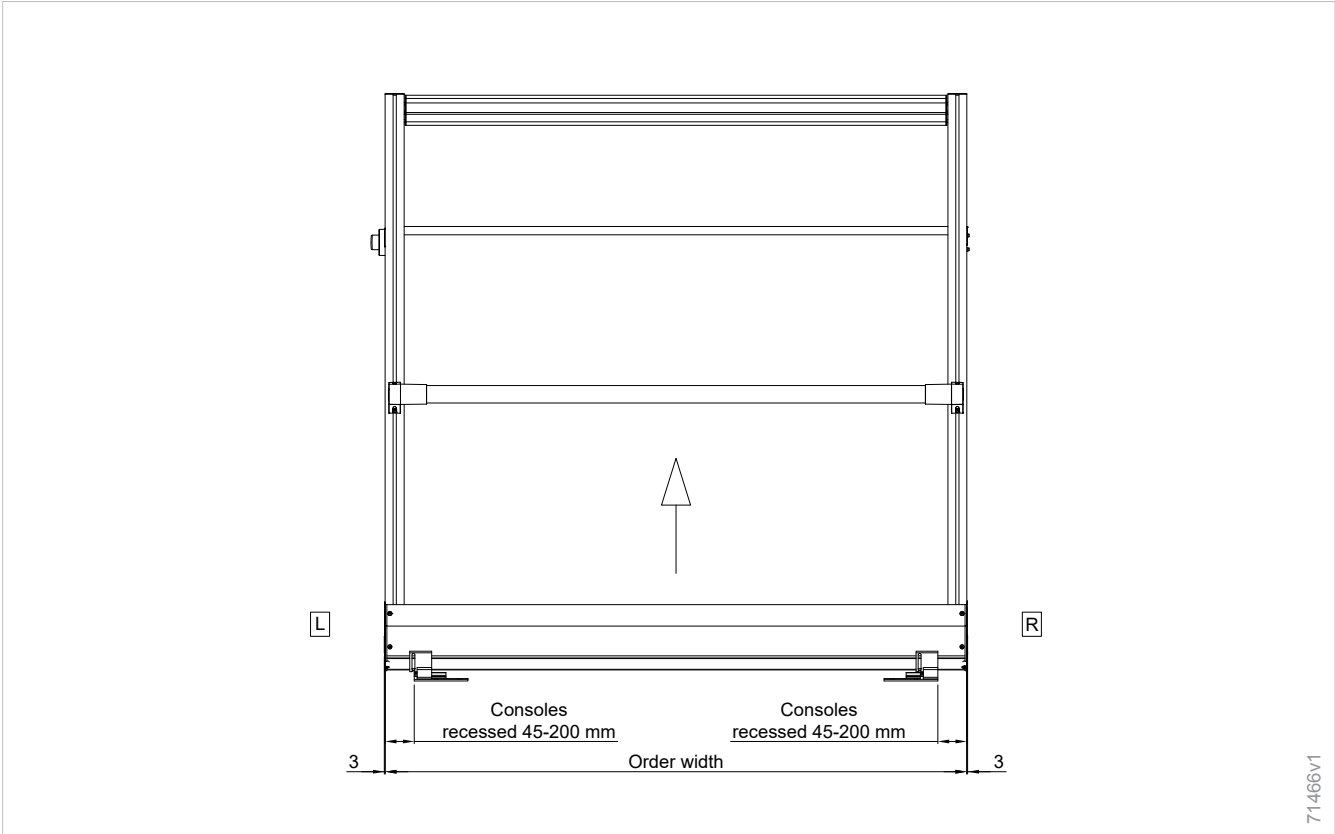
71017v5

### Large drainage gutter - P60



71576v1

Top view for individual units - P60



Planning

Terrea

Perea

Patio  
side screens

Climara

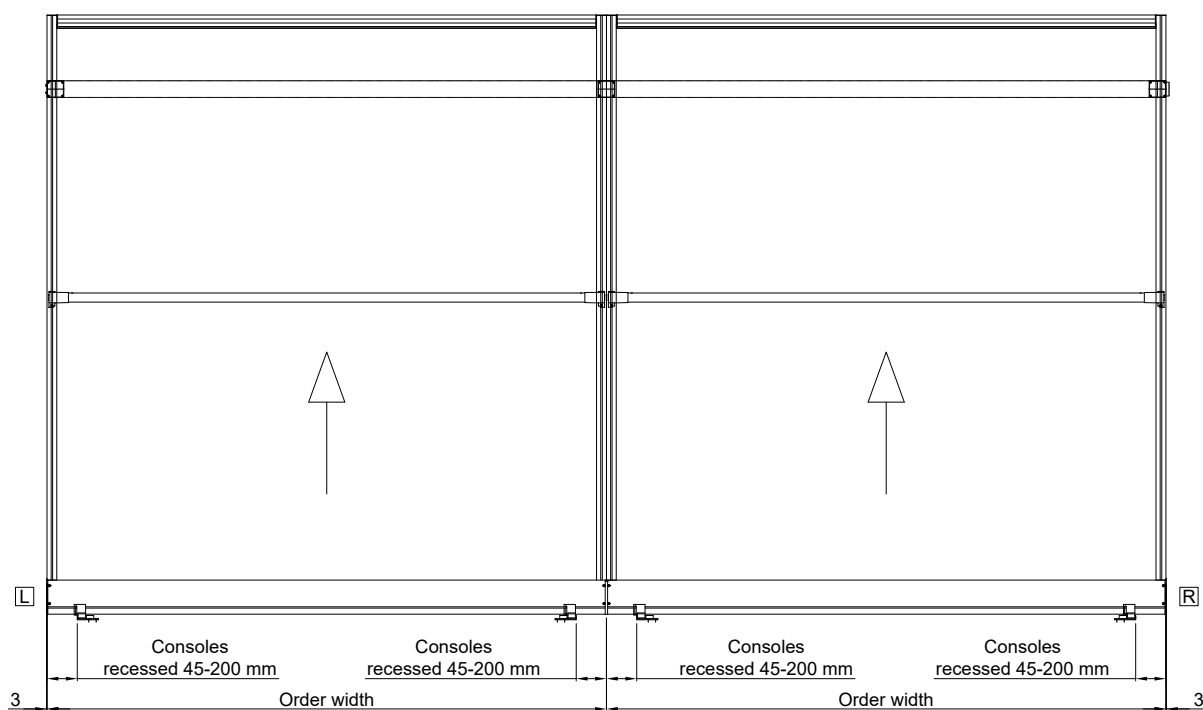
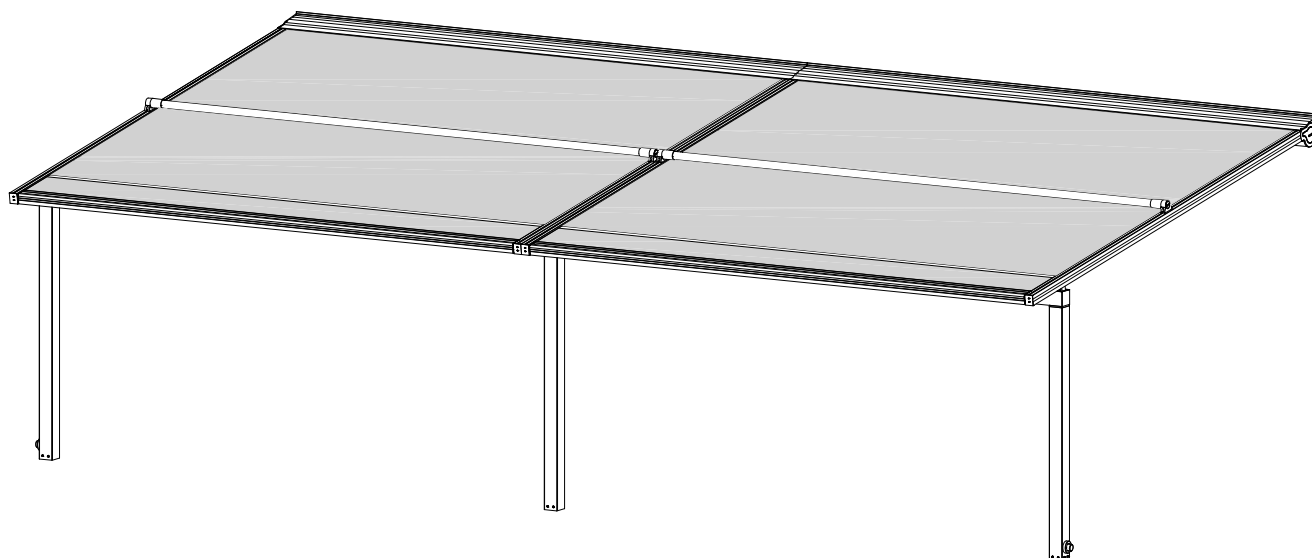
Supplementary  
accessories

Components

Drive  
variants

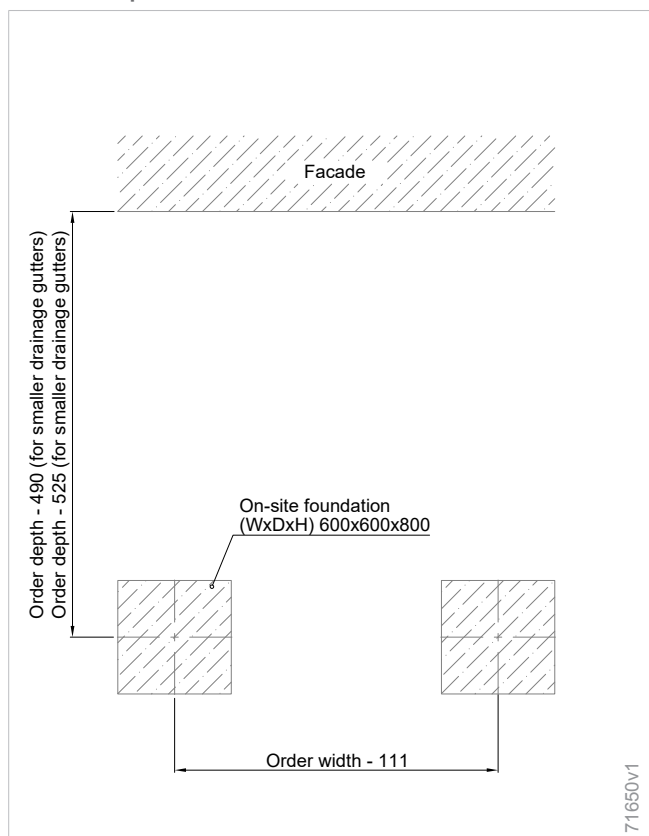
Standards

Series-mounted unit - P60



72394

## Foundation plan - P60



## Dimension determination

### Minimum difference between installation height and headroom

| Configuration variants  | Order depth        | 2000 mm | 2500 mm | 3000 mm | 3500 mm | 4000 mm | 4500 mm | 5000 mm |
|-------------------------|--------------------|---------|---------|---------|---------|---------|---------|---------|
| <b>Fabric qualities</b> |                    |         |         |         |         |         |         |         |
| Rainproof textile W36   | Minimum difference | 324 mm  | 403 mm  | 483 mm  | 562 mm  | 641 mm  | 720 mm  | 799 mm  |

This is the minimum difference between the installation height and the headroom for the **minimum inclination of 9°** required for rainwater drainage.

**Water drainage** in the drainage gutter is only ensured when the awning is **fully extended**.

Depending on the sizes, tolerances and temperature, **small amounts of water** may begin to accumulate on the fabric, between the grille and front rail. This accumulation of water does not pose any functional problems and cannot damage the unit.

Water may also run through the grid in the fabric and enter the drainage hole in the centre of the cover panel if the awning is moved while wet. This can cause the **rain-protected area to become wet** when the awning is extended.

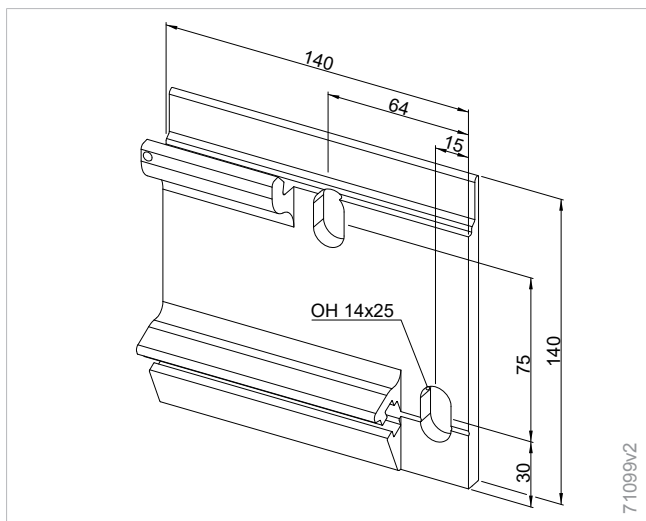
## Quantity determination

### Number of consoles, individual unit

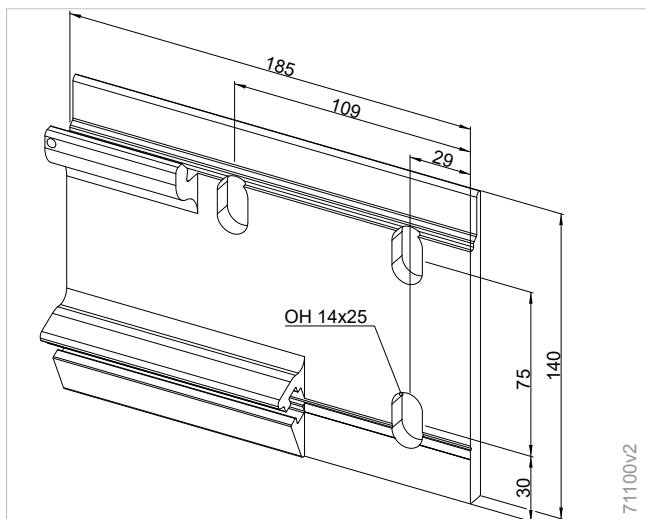
| Configuration variants                               | Order width   | Order depth   |
|------------------------------------------------------|---------------|---------------|
| <b>Console/Bracket</b>                               |               | 800 - 5000 mm |
| Wall console / Ceiling console / Console for rafters | 950 - 6000 mm | 2             |

## Details

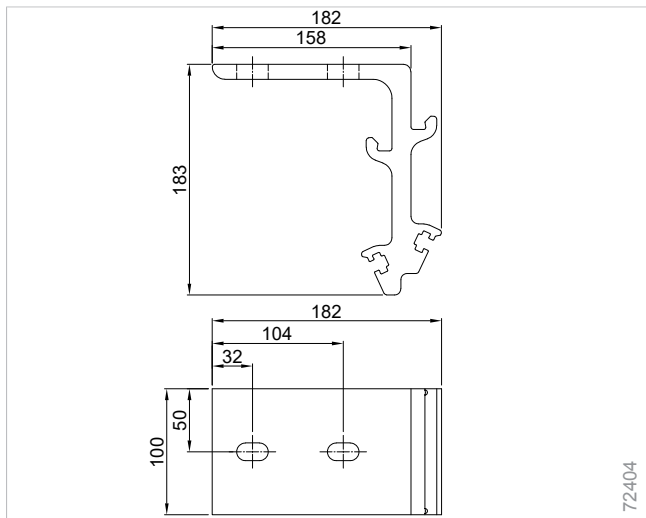
Wall console type A, left console; right console laterally reversed - 550/P40/P60



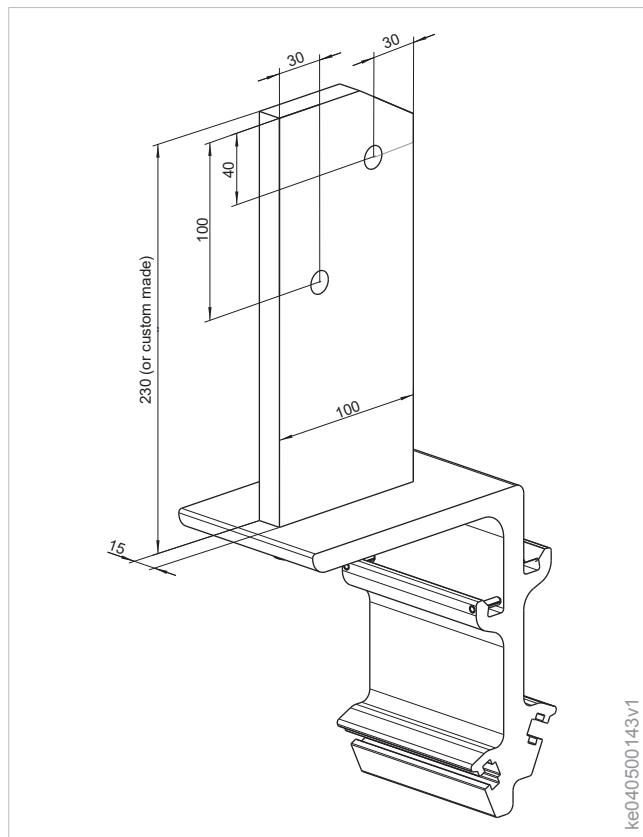
Wall console type B, left console; right console laterally reversed - 550/P40/P60



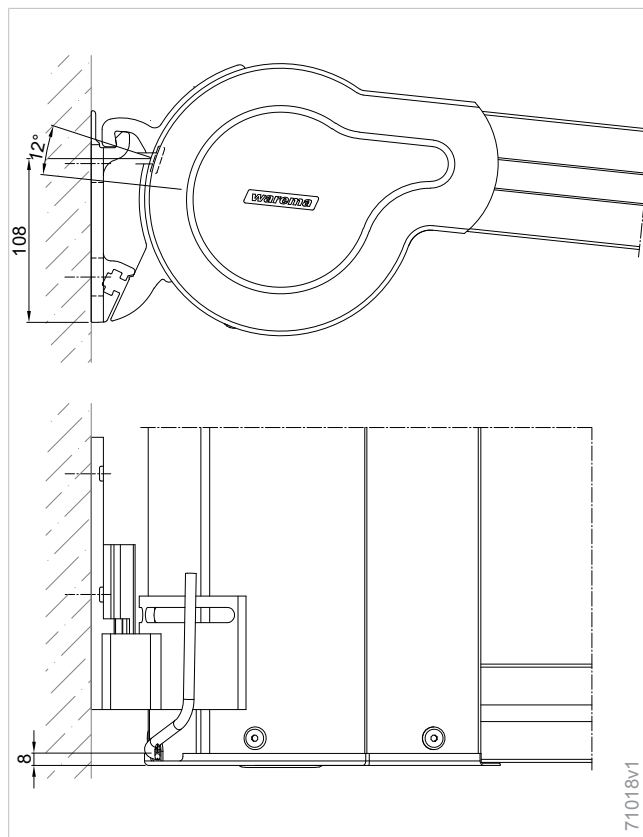
Ceiling console type E - 550/P40/P60



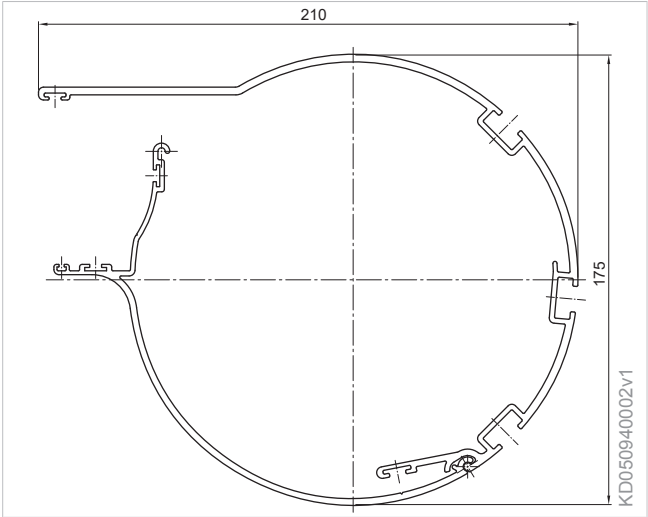
Console for rafters type F - 550/P40/P60



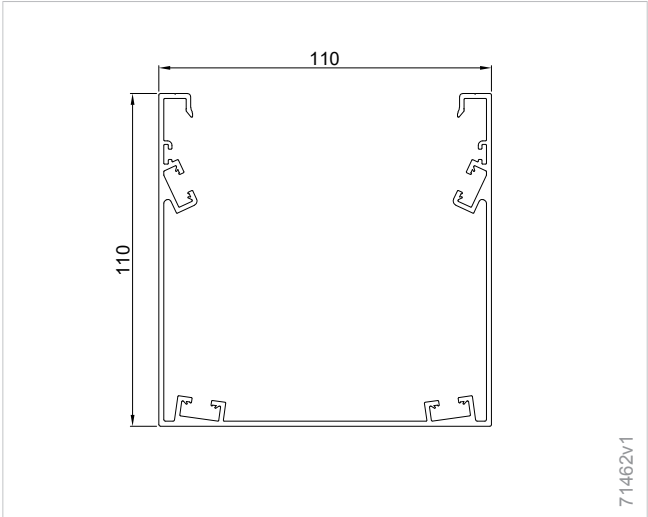
Cable exit - P60



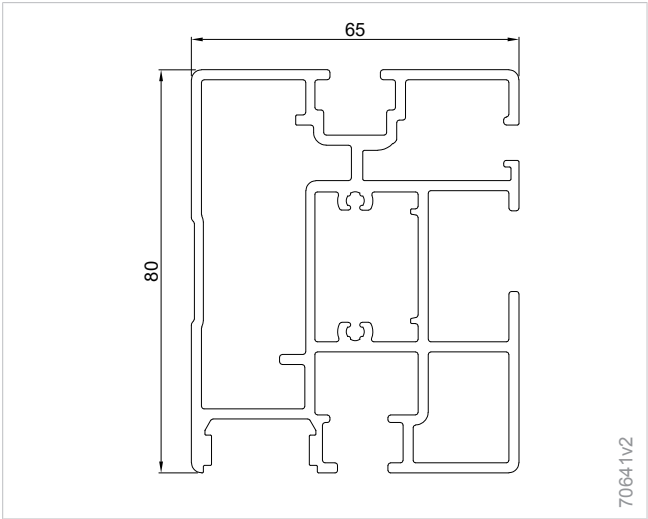
Cover panel - P40/P60



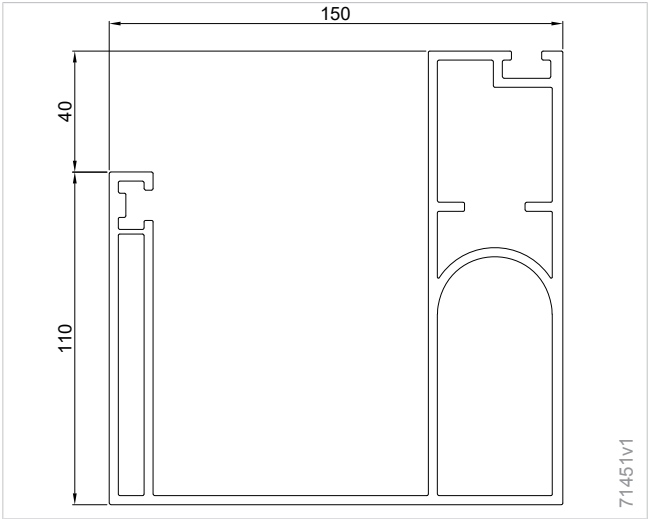
Small drainage gutter - P60



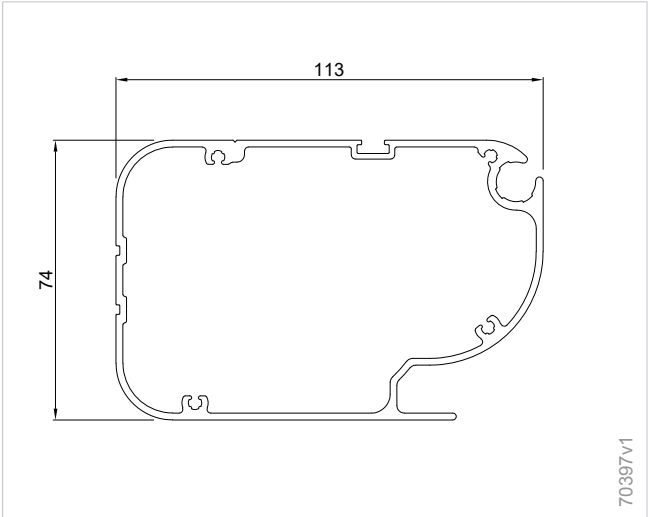
Guide rail - P40/P60



Large drainage gutter - P60/P70



Front rail - P40/P60



Planning

Terrea

Perea

Patio  
side screens

Climara

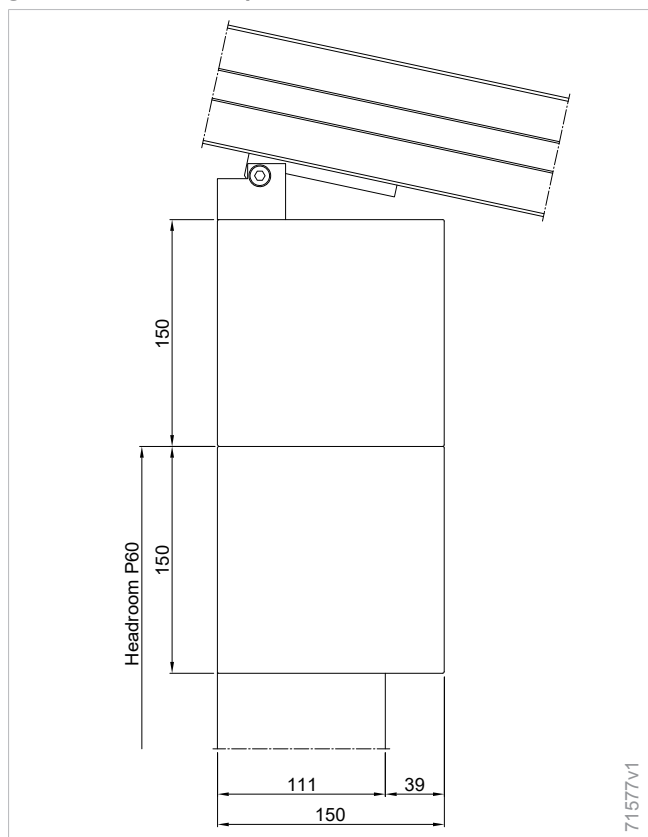
Supplementary  
accessories

Components

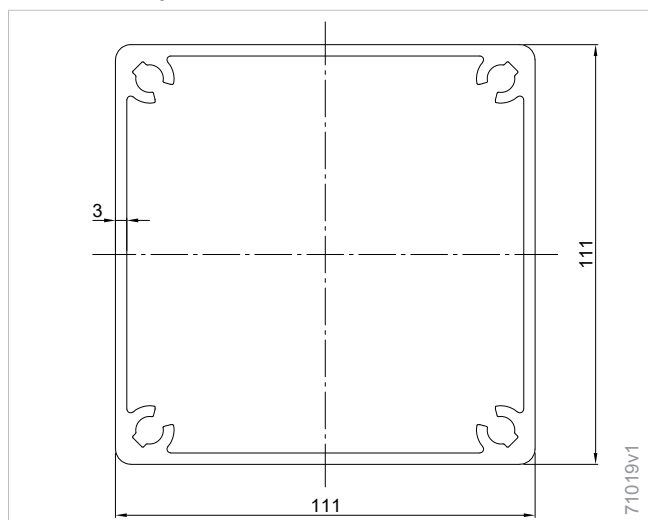
Drive  
variants

Standards

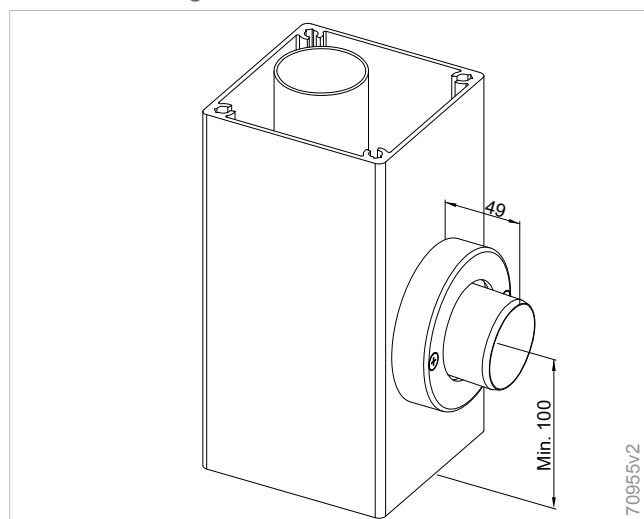
**Large drainage gutter with front-mounted awning with easyZIP guidance size 15 cover panel - P60**



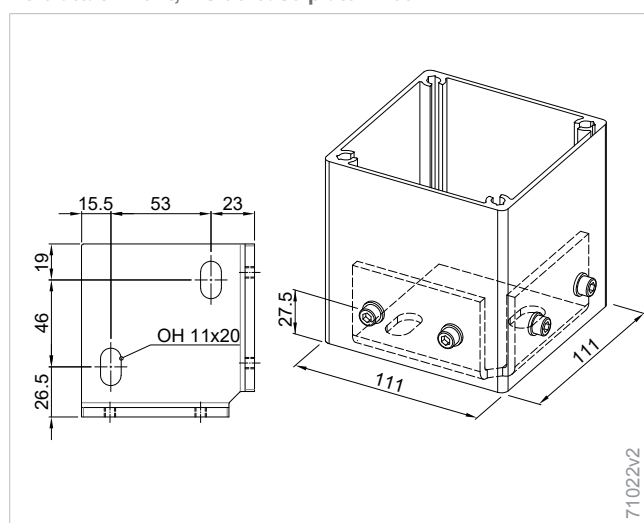
**Pole - P60/P70/patio frame Perea**



**Position of drainage - P60/P70**



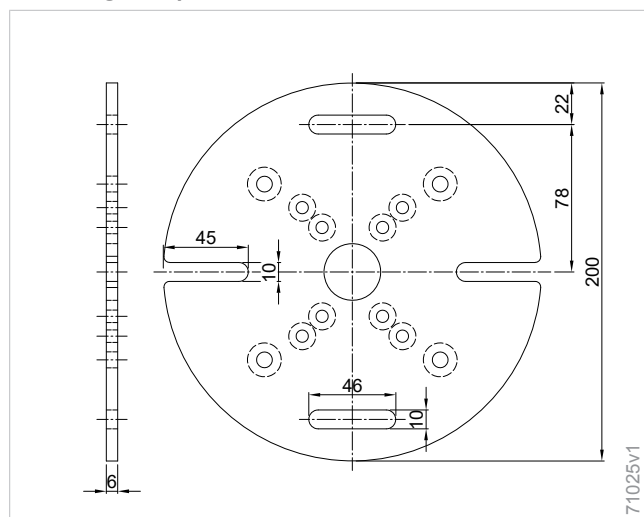
**Pole attachment, inside base plate - P60**



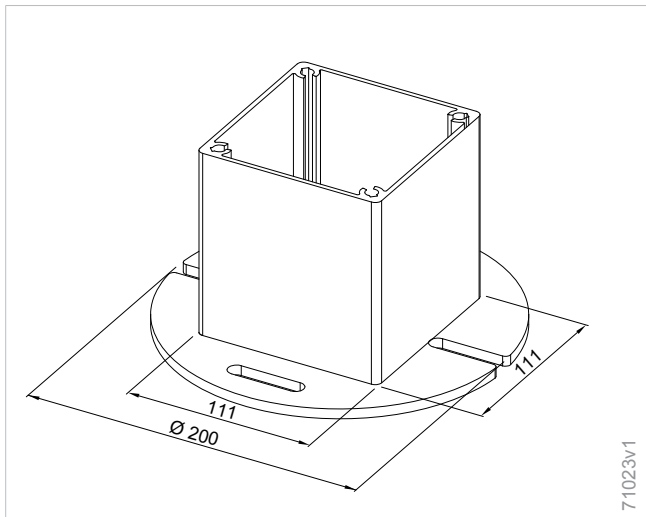
The screw connections are on the outside at the front when looking in the awning's direction of movement.

The internal base plate is suited to recess installation. For this, the screw connection may be on other side of the pole.

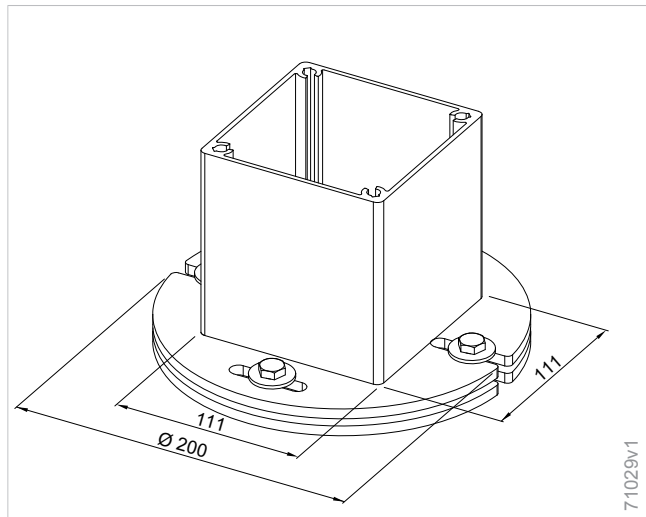
**Pole fixing base plate - P40/P60/P70**



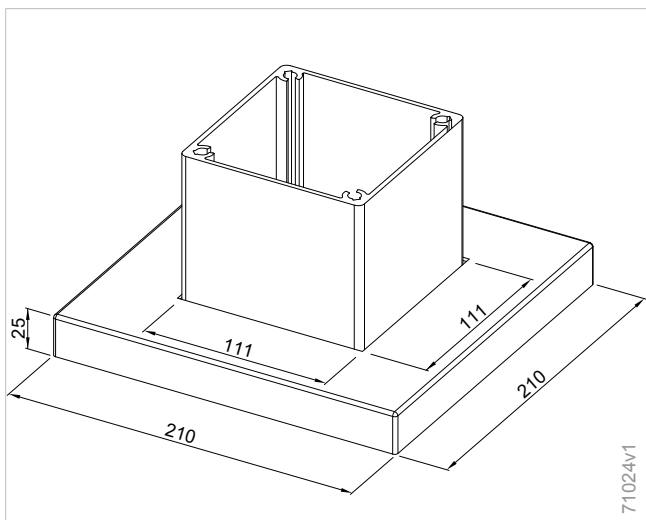
Pole fixing with base plate - P60/P70



Adapter plate - P60/P70



Base cover - P60/P70



## Additional product information

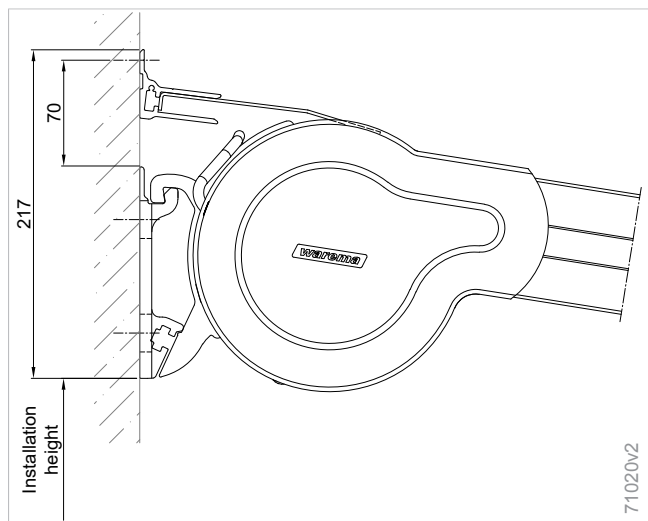
### Pole installation options

- Ground installation with frost-proof, on-site foundation, dimensions (WxDxH) 600×600×800 mm
- Optional ground installation with on-site Krinner ground screw
- The grout for filling the clearance is not included in the scope of delivery when **threaded rods** are used.

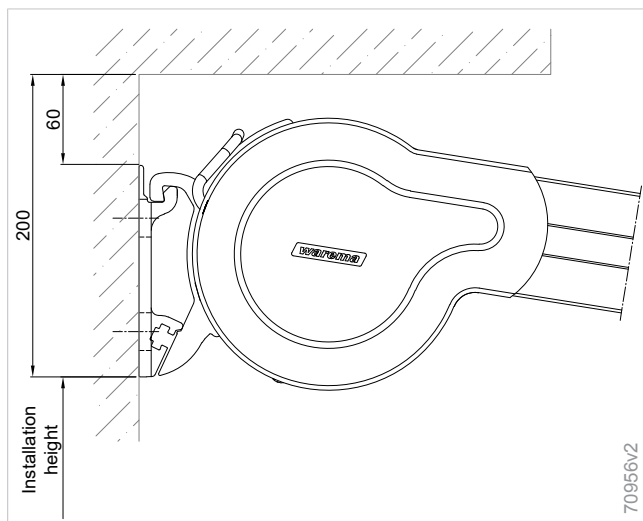


## Mounting examples

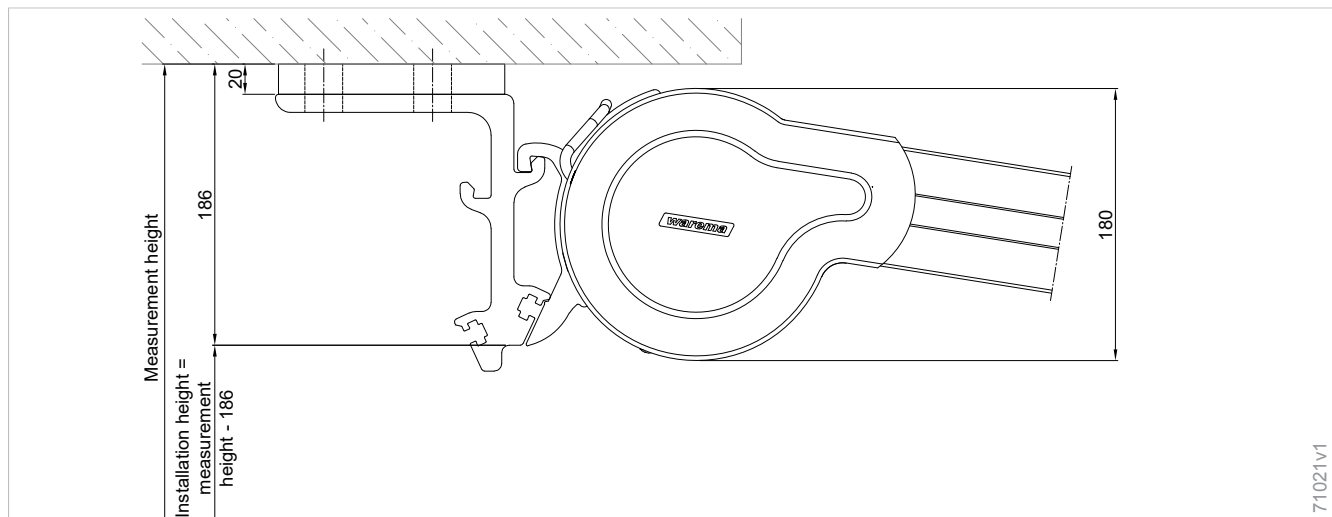
Determining the installation height for wall installation, detail of wall connection profile - P60



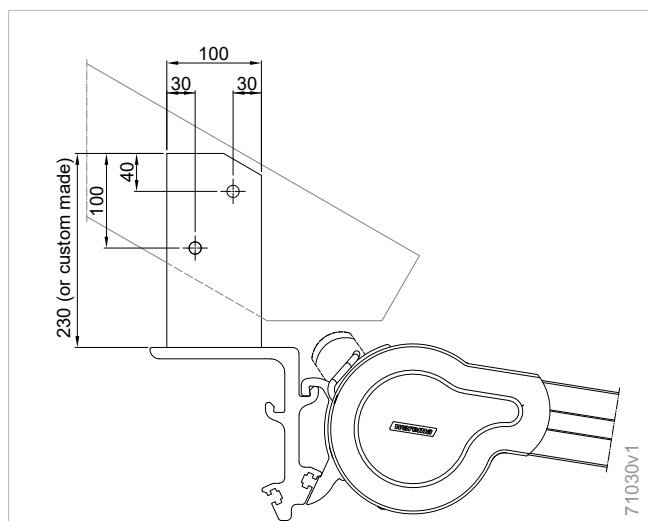
Determining the installation height for wall installation - P60



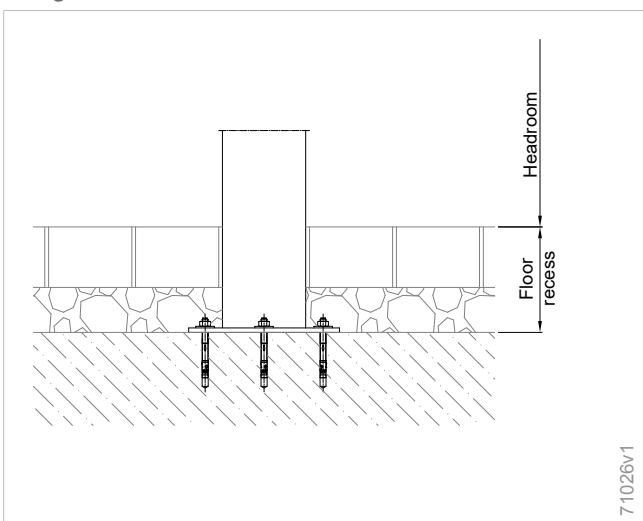
Determining the installation height for ceiling installation (installation of the ceiling console only possible as shown) - P60



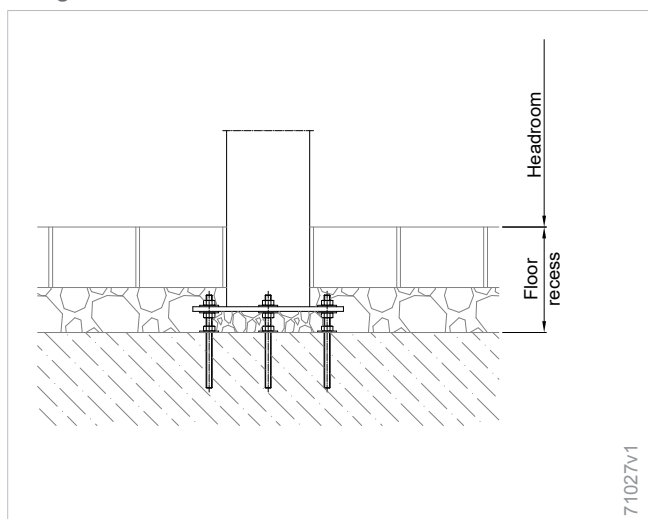
Rafter installation - P60



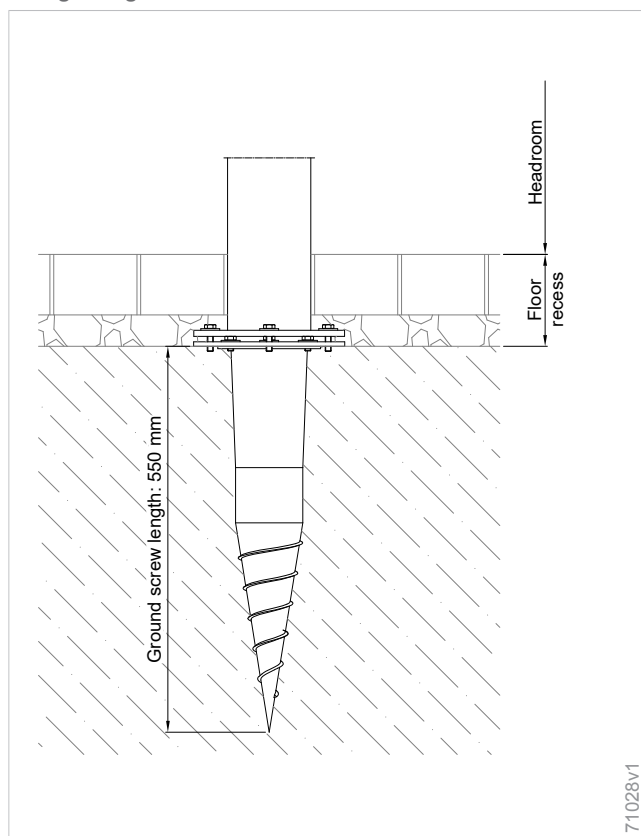
Fixing without clearance on concrete foundation - P60/P70



## Fixing with clearance on concrete foundation - P60/P70



## Fixing with ground screw - P60/P70



Krinner ground screws made of zinc-coated steel can be used to install the poles. The adapter plate for Krinner ground screw KSF 89x550 is required. The grout for filling the clearance is not included in the scope of delivery.

Planning

Terrea

Perea

Patio side screens

Climara

Supplementary accessories

Components

Drive variants

Standards

## Further information

Visualise your product with the WAREMA Designer  
You can download the app for free from your app store.



Use our free planning programme to plan your sun protection systems  
<https://sonnenschutzplaner.com/>



Configure and plan your product with myWAREMA  
<https://my.warema.com>



Experience the range of colours and fabrics of the WAREMA collections  
<https://www.warema.de/Tools/Kollektionsberater.php>



TechDataPLUS Pergola awnings  
<https://docs.warema.com/1.1445.5>





# Pergola awnings Perea

## Pergola awning Perea P70

### Weather-resistant

Rain-proof, translucent fabrics combined with a defined drainage function allow you to spend more time on the patio, even in poor weather

### Wind-stable

Extremely wind-stable, even on sites exposed to wind, thanks to travelling cross sections.

### Design-focused

An extravagant appearance with innovative pleating technology.



### Construction limit values

|                     |         |
|---------------------|---------|
| Maximum order width | 6000 mm |
| Maximum order depth | 6000 mm |

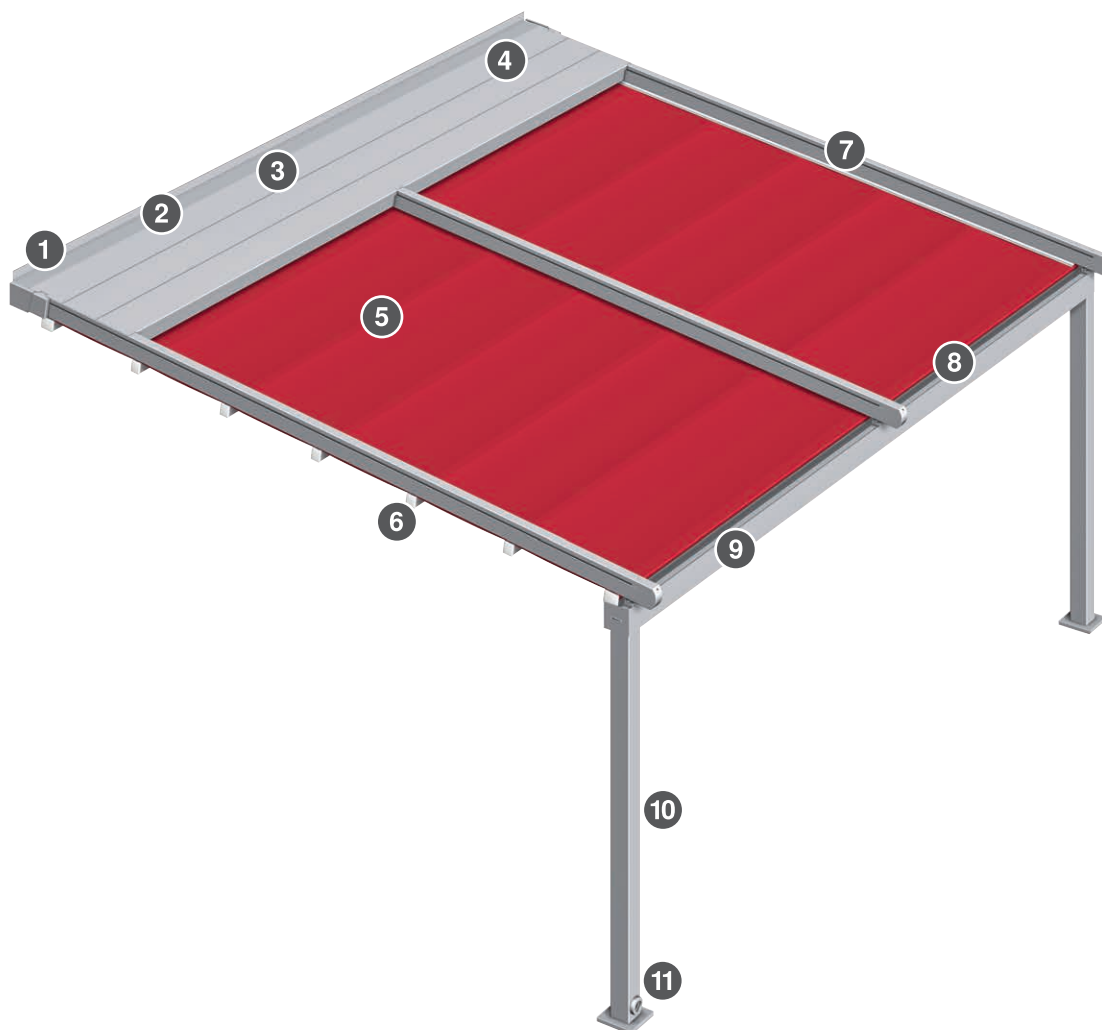


### Product characteristics

- Large-area sun shading systems and weather protection for both private and commercial areas
- Back-pull unit with pleating technology

# Components

## Pergola awning Perea P70



Planning

Terrea

Perea

Patio  
side screens

Climara

Supplementary  
accessories

Components

Drive  
variants

Standards

- 1 Wall connection profile
- 2 Cover panel
- 3 Shaft
- 4 Console
- 5 Fabric
- 6 Horizontal profile

- 7 Rafters
- 8 Front rail
- 9 Drainage gutter
- 10 Pole
- 11 Drainage in pole

## Cover panel

### Cover panel - P70

|          |                   |
|----------|-------------------|
| Material | Aluminium, folded |
| Surface  | Powder-coated     |

From a width of 4001 mm, the cover panel is split in the middle.

## Shaft

### Motor shaft Ø 70 mm

|          |             |
|----------|-------------|
| Material | Steel       |
| Surface  | Plain       |
| Profile  | Groove tube |
| Diameter | 70 mm       |

## Front rail

### Front rail - P70

|          |                     |
|----------|---------------------|
| Material | Aluminium, extruded |
| Surface  | Powder-coated       |
| Width    | 80 mm               |
| Height   | 66.5 mm             |

There are two front rails. The fixed front rail is located at the wall connection and the second is pulled forwards via the toothed belt.

## Reinforcement profile

### Reinforcement profile - P70

|          |                     |
|----------|---------------------|
| Material | Aluminium, extruded |
| Surface  | Powder-coated       |
| Width    | 55 mm               |
| Height   | 66.5 mm             |

The reinforcement profiles run across the entire awning width and are guided into the rafters using runners.

## Rafters

### Rafter/guide rail - P70

|          |                     |
|----------|---------------------|
| Material | Aluminium, extruded |
| Surface  | Powder-coated       |
| Width    | 60 mm               |
| Height   | 123 mm              |

### + End closure

#### End closure - P70

|          |               |
|----------|---------------|
| Material | Aluminium     |
| Surface  | Powder-coated |

With deflection bearing

## Pole

### Pole - P60/P70/patio frame Perea

|                      |                     |
|----------------------|---------------------|
| Maximum order height | 3000 mm             |
| Material             | Aluminium, extruded |
| Surface              | Powder-coated       |
| Width                | 111 mm              |
| Depth                | 111 mm              |

## Base plate

### Base plate - Ø 200 mm Perea

|          |                  |
|----------|------------------|
| Material | Galvanised steel |
| Surface  | Powder-coated    |
| Diameter | 200 mm           |

## Base plate, optional

### Base plate - on-site glazing P70

|          |                  |
|----------|------------------|
| Material | Galvanised steel |
| Surface  | Powder-coated    |
| Width    | 350 mm           |
| Height   | 200 mm           |

**Downward drainage** through the base plate is only possible in combination with this base plate.

## Base cover, optional

### Base cover - P60/P70

|          |               |
|----------|---------------|
| Material | Aluminium     |
| Surface  | Powder-coated |
| Width    | 210 mm        |
| Height   | 210 mm        |

For base plate diameter 200 mm

## Drainage

### Large drainage gutter 150x150

|          |                     |
|----------|---------------------|
| Material | Aluminium, extruded |
| Surface  | Powder-coated       |
| Width    | 150 mm              |
| Height   | 150 mm              |

If front-mounted awnings with easyZIP guidance are to be installed, the large drainage gutter is required.

### Drainage in pole - P60/P70

Drainage via drainage profile in pole.

#### Position of drainage outlet:

- Can be on any side of the pole (front/rear/right/left).
- Height min.: 100 mm
- Max. height: 250 mm below the headroom

## Wall connection profile

### Wall connection profile - P70

|          |                   |
|----------|-------------------|
| Material | Aluminium, folded |
| Surface  | Powder-coated     |

From a width of 4001 mm, the wall connection profile is split in the middle.

## Console

### Wall console type A - P70

|          |                     |
|----------|---------------------|
| Material | Aluminium, extruded |
| Surface  | Powder-coated       |
| Width    | 160 mm              |
| Height   | 71 mm               |
| Depth    | 86 mm               |

## Guide variants

- Back-pull

## Pulling element

### Toothed belt

|                 |                   |
|-----------------|-------------------|
| Material, notes | With steel insert |
|-----------------|-------------------|

## Drive variants

- Motor

### Motor

- ZM REA

+ see "Drive variants", Page 367

## Colours

- WAREMA Colour World, Highlight category, fine texture surface quality
- WAREMA Colour World, Variation category, fine texture surface quality

Colours, optional:

- WAREMA Colour World

+ see "WAREMA Colour World", Page 12

## Fabric qualities

- Rainproof textile Soltis W96

+ see "Awning collection", Page 356

## Supplementary accessories

- LED strip light rail
- Radiant heater
- Front-mounted awnings with easyZIP guidance
- Stretcher frame
- Multicube set
- Patio frame

+ see "Supplementary accessories", Page 257

## Notes

### Planning permission

Pergola awnings require planning permission, depending on their overall size and the local regulations.

## Construction limit values

| Configuration variants       | Minimum order width | Maximum order width | Minimum order depth | Maximum order depth | Maximum order area | Minimum inclination angle | Maximum inclination angle |
|------------------------------|---------------------|---------------------|---------------------|---------------------|--------------------|---------------------------|---------------------------|
| <b>Fabric qualities</b>      |                     |                     |                     |                     |                    |                           |                           |
| Rainproof textile Soltis W96 | 1500 mm             | 6000 mm             | 2000 mm             | 6000 mm             | 36 m <sup>2</sup>  | 7 °                       | 20 °                      |

**Console offset:** The offset of the consoles is limited to between 90 mm and 100 mm up to an order width of 1600 mm.

**Number of rafters:** For order widths of 4001 mm and greater, an additional rafter is required. This is located in the middle of the unit.

### Series-mounted units:

- Generally, only individual units are possible, i.e. no unit coupling!
- The lining up of several pergola awnings is possible with a flush closure.
- Each awning requires two or three single rafters.
- This results in a gap of 62 mm between the units, which is covered by an additional folded cover sheet.
- The installation of two rafters on one pole is possible with an adapter plate.
- The water must be drained via the two outer poles.

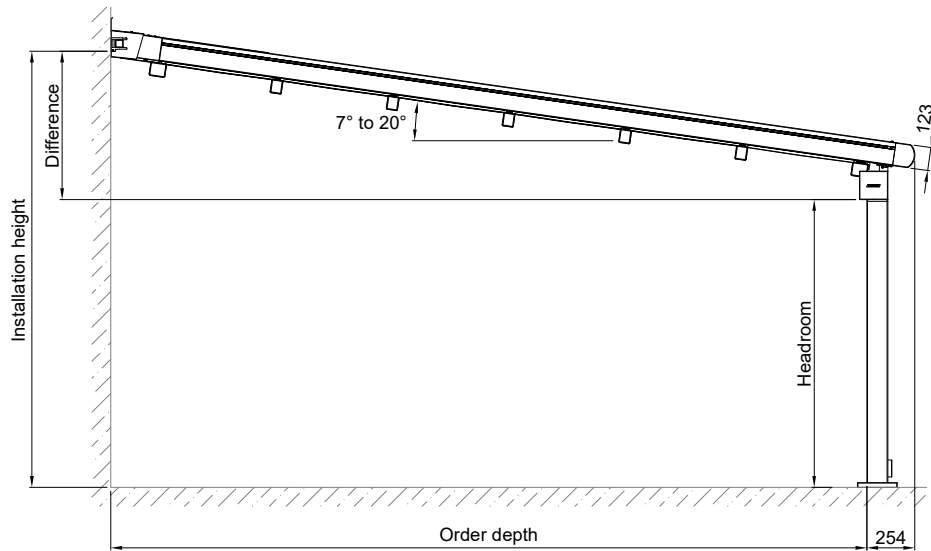
## Dimensions

Weight per running metre: 36 kg/lfm

Weight per running metre, notes: Cover panel without consoles, without rafters, drainage gutter and pole.

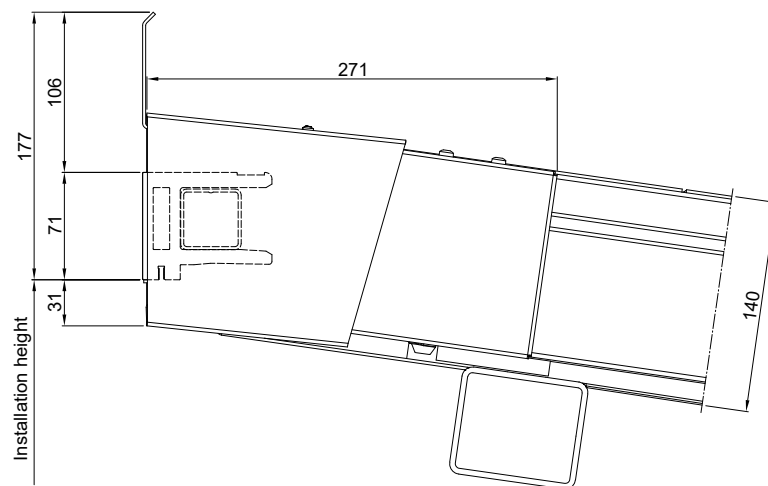
## Dimension determination

### Individual unit - P70



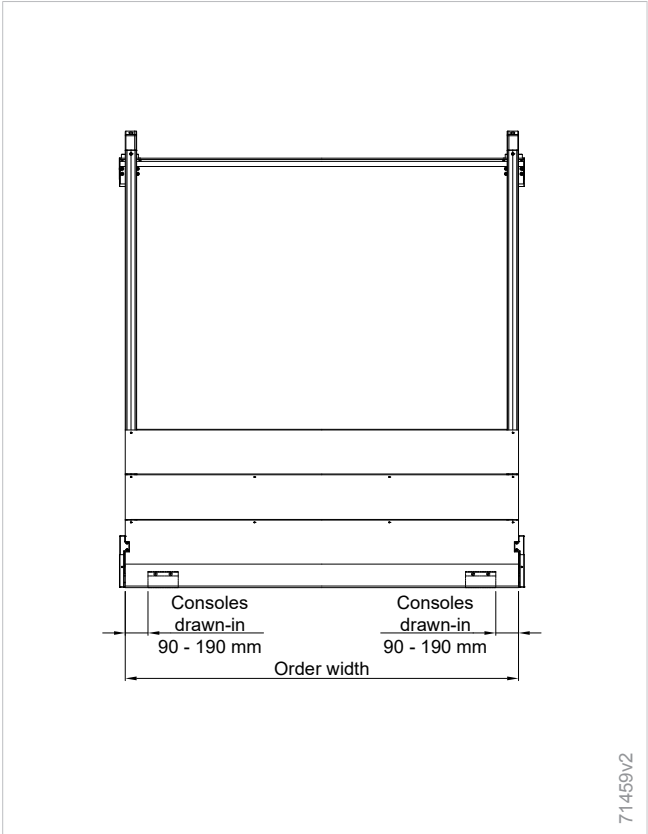
71447v2

### Determining the installation height for wall installation - P70

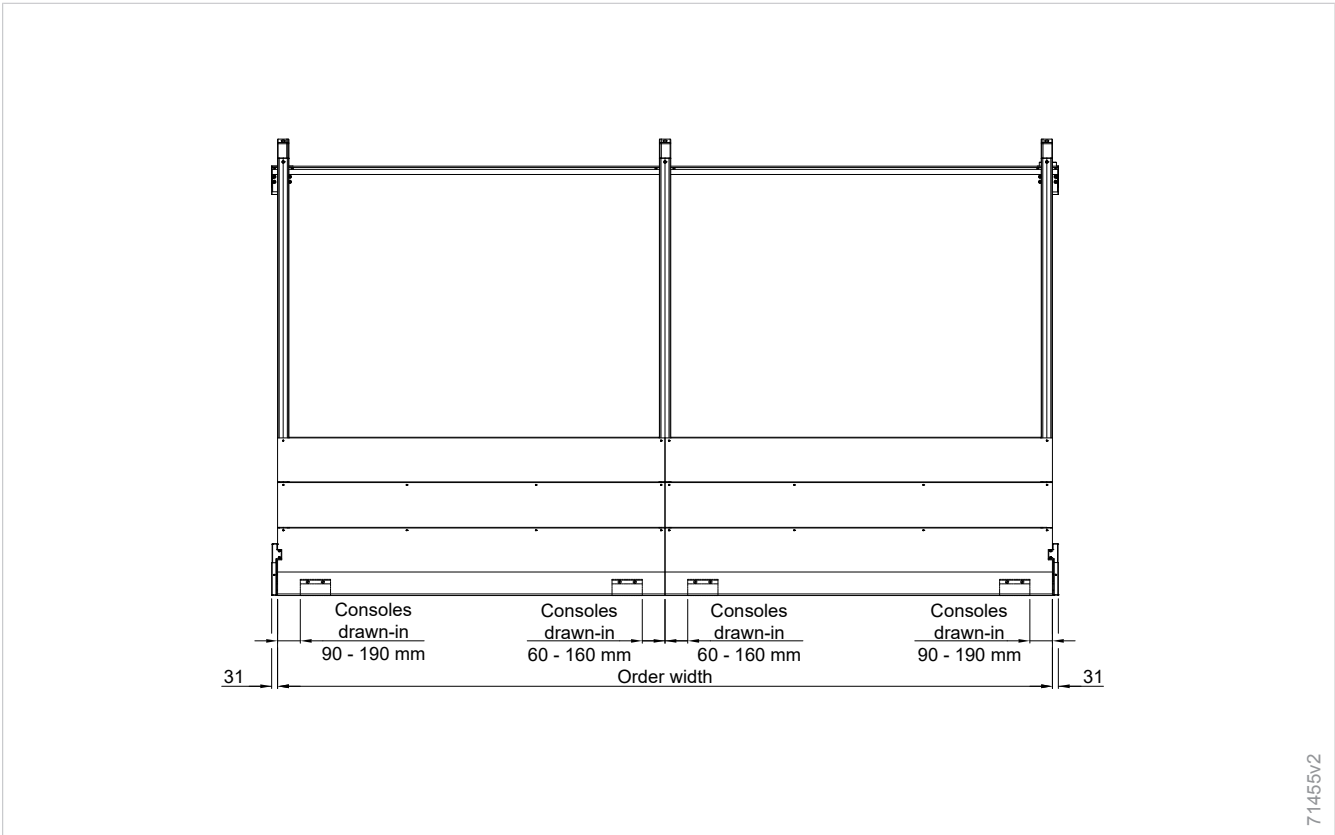


71453v1

Individual units up to 4000 mm in width (two rafters) - P70



Individual units 4001 mm in width and greater (three rafters) – P70



Planning

Terrea

Perea

Patio  
side screens

Climara

Supplementary  
accessories

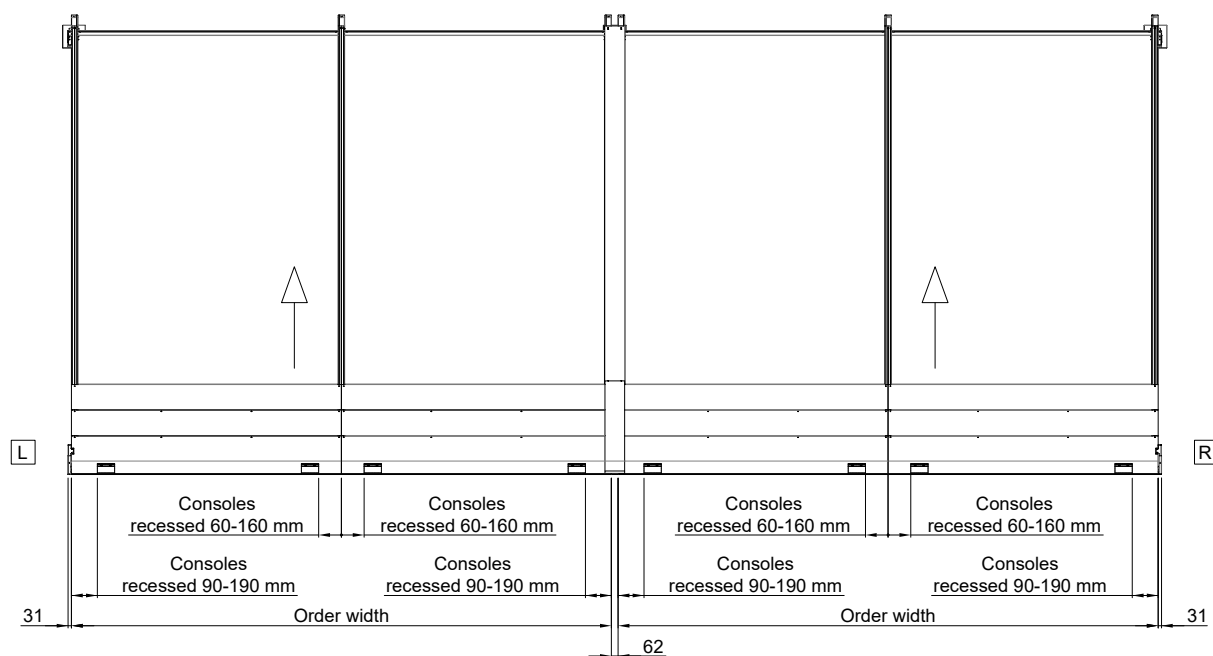
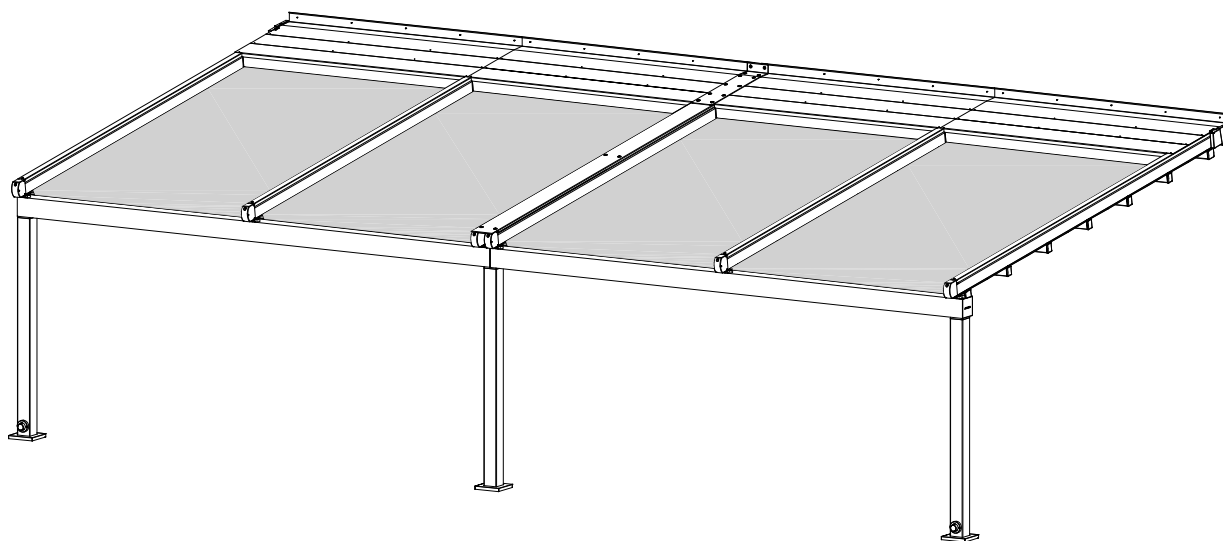
Components

Drive  
variants

Standards

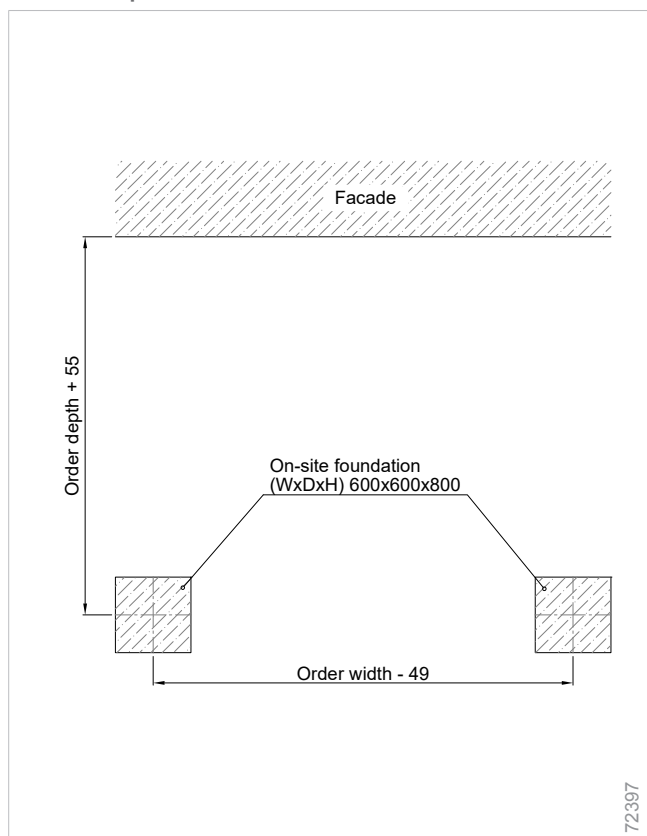


# Series-mounted unit - P70



72395

## Foundation plan - P70



## Dimension determination

### Minimum difference between installation height and headroom

| Configuration variants       | Order depth        | 2000 mm | 2500 mm | 3000 mm | 3500 mm | 4000 mm | 4500 mm | 5000 mm | 5500 mm | 6000 mm |
|------------------------------|--------------------|---------|---------|---------|---------|---------|---------|---------|---------|---------|
| <b>Fabric qualities</b>      |                    |         |         |         |         |         |         |         |         |         |
| Rainproof textile Soltis W96 | Minimum difference | 461 mm  | 522 mm  | 583 mm  | 645 mm  | 706 mm  | 768 mm  | 829 mm  | 890 mm  | 952 mm  |

This is the minimum difference between the installation height and the headroom for the **minimum inclination of 7°** required for rainwater drainage.

**Water drainage** in the drainage gutter is only ensured when the awning is **fully extended**.

Water can also run into the loops of the fabric and can drip from the side underneath the guide rail if the awning is retracted while wet. **The area below the extended fabric thus remains dry.**

## Quantity determination

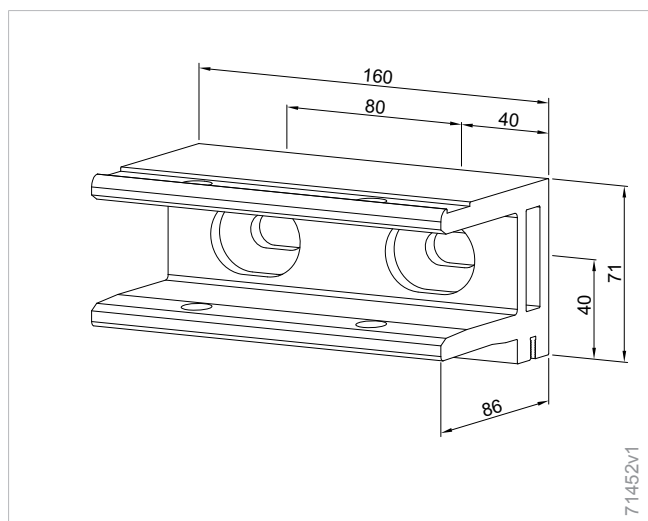
### Number of consoles, individual unit

| Configuration variants | Order width    | Order depth<br>2000 - 6000 mm |
|------------------------|----------------|-------------------------------|
| <b>Console/Bracket</b> |                |                               |
| Wall console           | 1500 - 4000 mm | 2                             |
| Wall console           | 4001 - 6000 mm | 4                             |

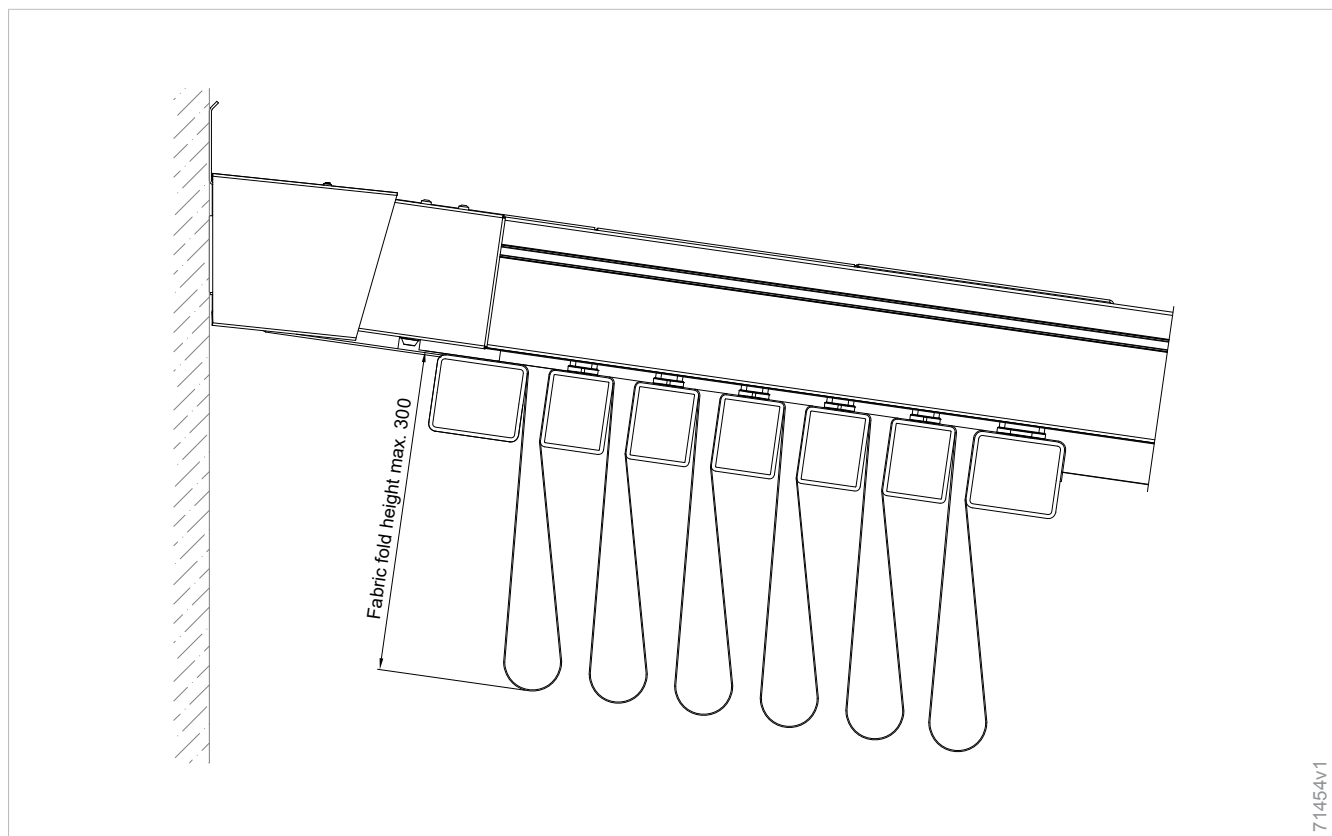
## Details

Wall installation (right console – left console laterally reversed)

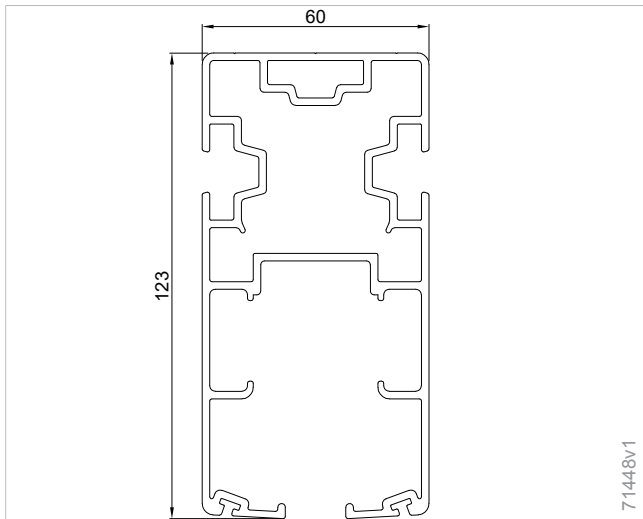
- P70



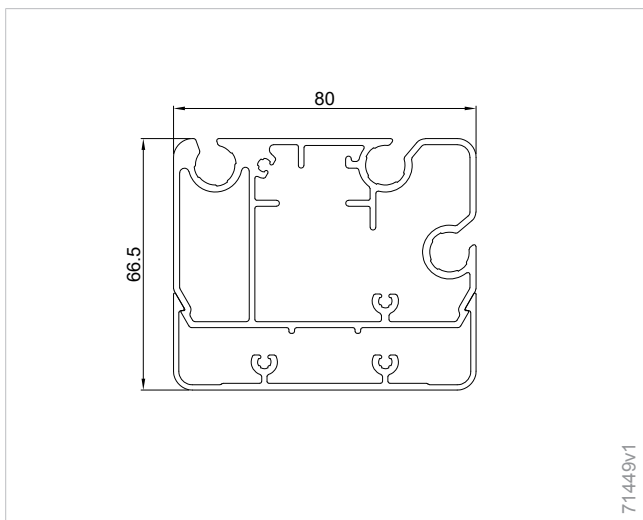
Fabric fold height - P70



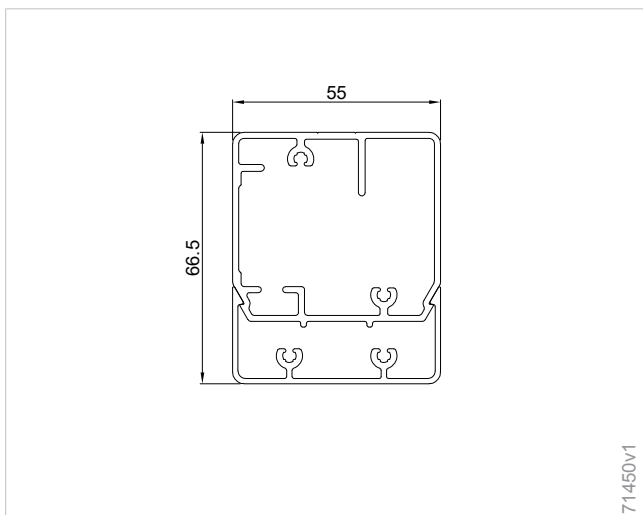
Rafters - P70



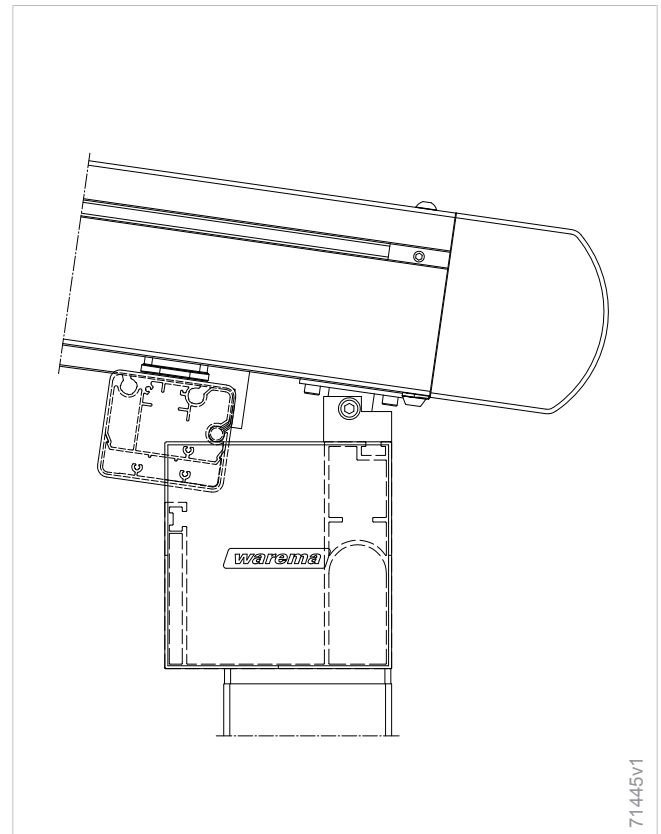
Projection profile with cover profile - P70



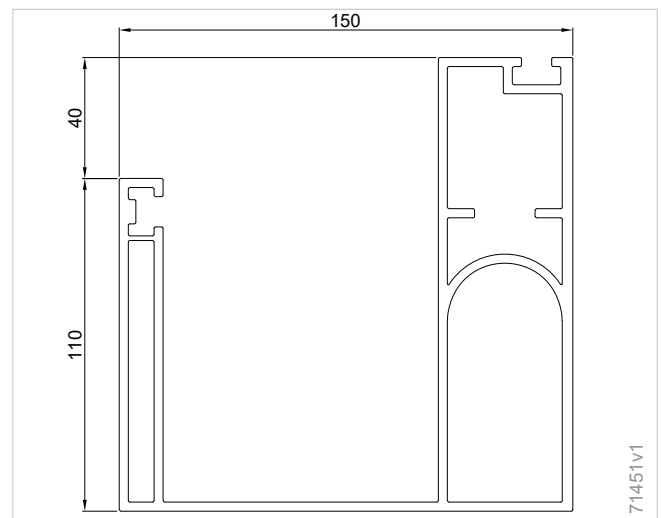
Travelling reinforcement profile with cover profile - P70



Front rail - P70



Large drainage gutter - P60/P70



Planning

Terrea

Perea

Patio  
side screens

Climara

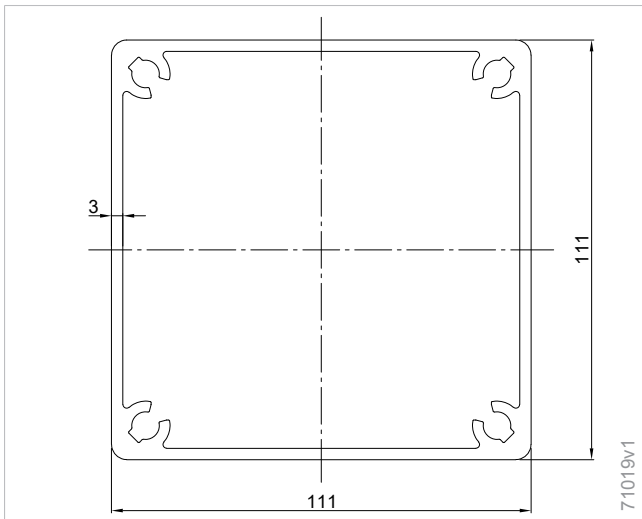
Supplementary  
accessories

Components

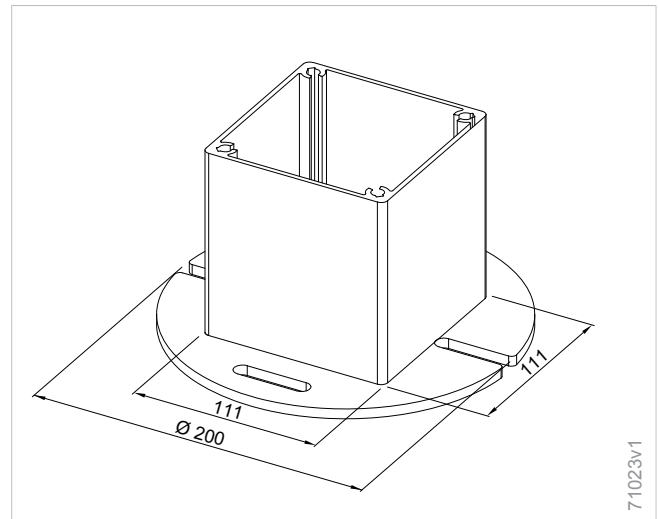
Drive  
variants

Standards

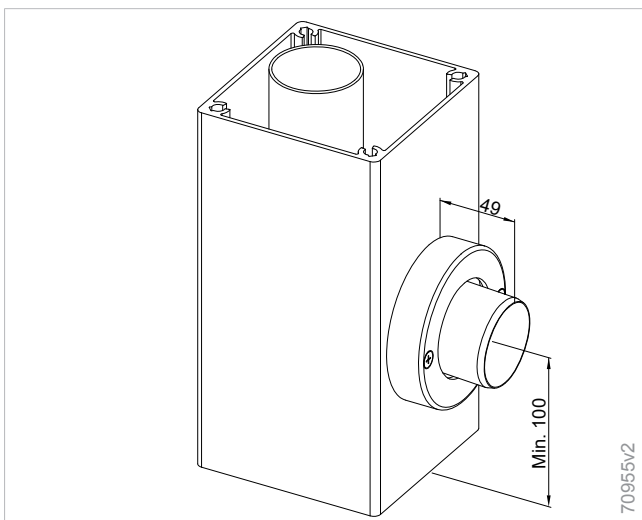
Pole - P60/P70/patio frame Perea



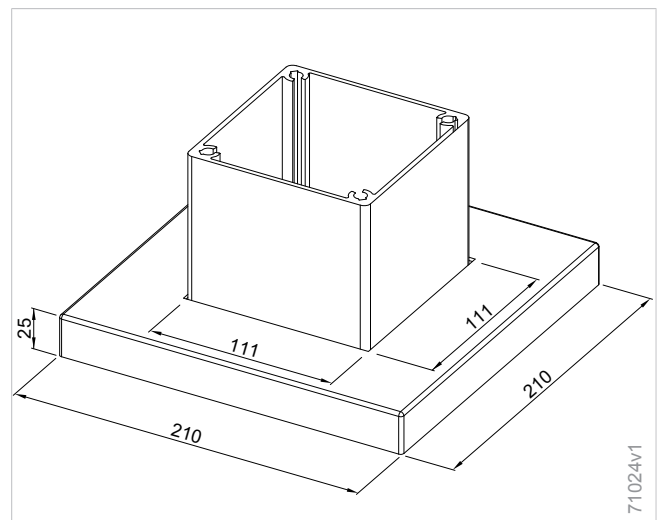
Pole fixing with base plate - P60/P70



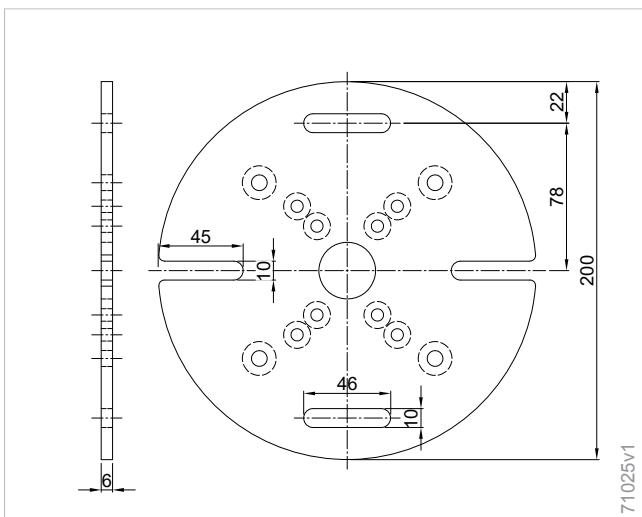
Position of drainage - P60/P70



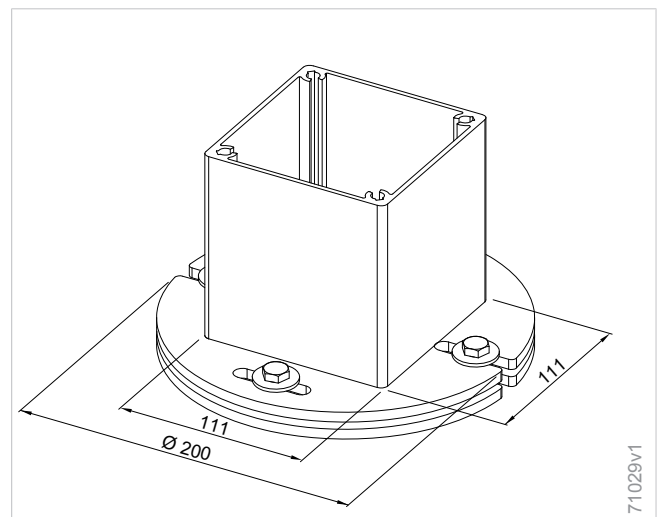
Base cover - P60/P70



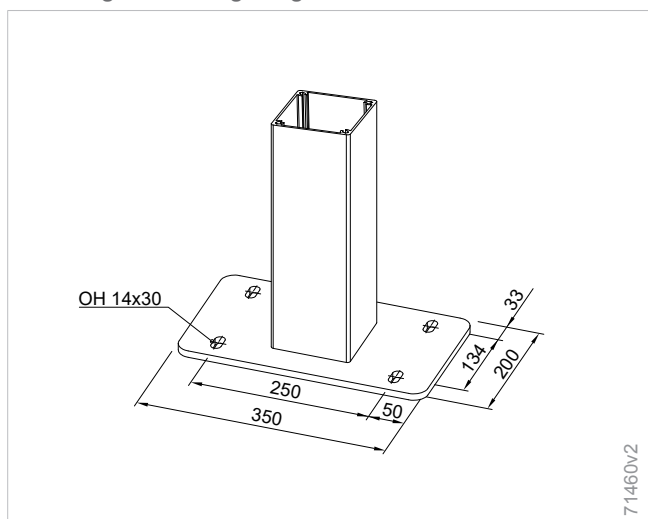
Pole fixing base plate - P40/P60/P70



Adapter plate - P60/P70



## Pole fixing for on-site glazing - P70



## Additional product information

### Pole installation options

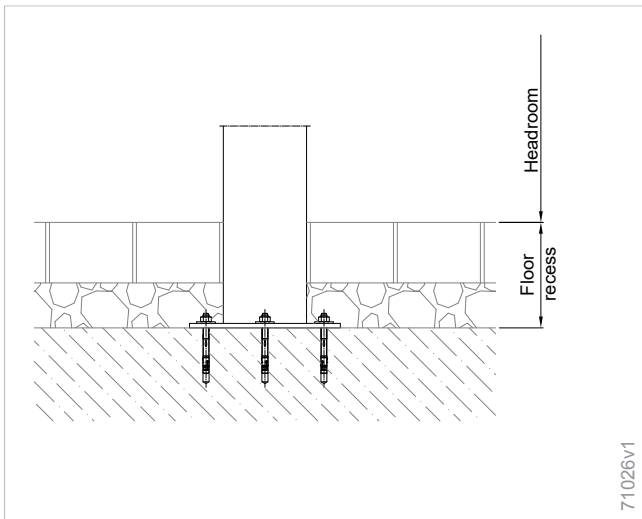
- Ground installation with frost-proof, on-site foundation, dimensions (WxDxH) 600×600×800 mm
- Optional ground installation with on-site Krinner ground screw
- The grout for filling the clearance is not included in the scope of delivery when **threaded rods** are used.

### Note on colour selection

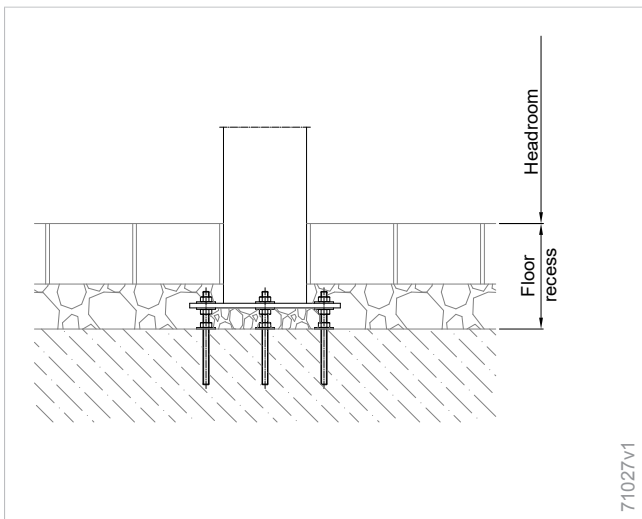
We recommend the fine texture surface quality as it is resistant to external influences (dirt, scratches, etc.).

## Mounting examples

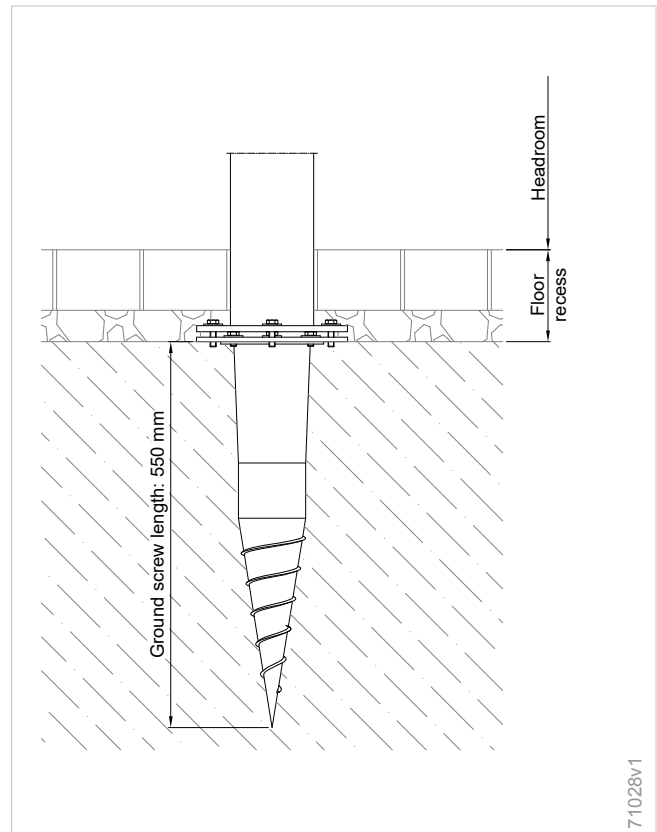
Fixing without clearance on concrete foundation - P60/P70



Fixing with clearance on concrete foundation - P60/P70



Fixing with ground screw - P60/P70



Krinner ground screws made of zinc-coated steel can be used to install the poles. The adapter plate for Krinner ground screw KSF 89x550 is required. The grout for filling the clearance is not included in the scope of delivery.

### Further information

Visualise your product with the WAREMA Designer  
You can download the app for free from your app store.



Use our free planning programme to plan your sun protection systems  
<https://sonnenschutzplaner.com/>



Configure and plan your product with myWAREMA  
<https://my.warema.com>



Experience the range of colours and fabrics of the WAREMA collections  
<https://www.warema.de/Tools/Kollektionsberater.php>



TechDataPLUS Pergola awnings  
<https://docs.warema.com/1.1445.5>



# Contents

## Patio side screens

Patio side screen 390..... 172

Planning

Terrea

Perea

Patio  
side screens

Climara

Supplementary  
accessories

Components

Drive  
variants

Standards





## Patio side screens

### Patio side screen 390

#### Attractive

Thanks to an optimal slope in the fabric, the patio side screens adapt ideally to the inclination of the patio roof or conservatory, for example.

#### Protection

When retracted in the cassette box, the fabric is optimally protected against dust and soiling.

#### Comfort

The patio side screen provides visual protection, as well as protection from sun and wind, and means the patio can be enjoyed for many pleasant hours.



#### Construction limit values

|                      |                   |
|----------------------|-------------------|
| Maximum order height | 2500 mm           |
| Maximum order area   | 10 m <sup>2</sup> |
| Minimum projection   | 1000 mm           |
| Maximum projection   | 5000 mm           |



#### Product characteristics

- Manual patio side screens provide lateral visual protection, as well as protection from sun and wind
- optional sloped fabric shape

# Components

## Patio side screen 390



- |   |          |   |              |
|---|----------|---|--------------|
| 1 | Cassette | 4 | Front rail   |
| 2 | Shaft    | 5 | Wall support |
| 3 | Fabric   |   |              |

### Cassette

#### Cassette - 390

|          |                     |
|----------|---------------------|
| Material | Aluminium, extruded |
| Surface  | Powder-coated       |
| Width    | 100 mm              |
| Height   | 134 mm              |

Cassette with funnel-shaped fabric intake and seat for projection profile, closed on all sides.

With a **diagonal cut**, an open gap is created by the shortened front rail in the upper region of the cassette.

### Shaft

#### Fabric shaft Ø 63 mm, black

|                 |                  |
|-----------------|------------------|
| Material        | Galvanised steel |
| Surface         | Powder-coated    |
| Material colour | Black            |
| Profile         | Groove tube      |

### Front rail

#### Front rail - 390

|          |                     |
|----------|---------------------|
| Material | Aluminium, extruded |
| Surface  | Powder-coated       |
| Width    | 43 mm               |
| Depth    | 28 mm               |

With screw-on handle and adapter for stabilising on the ground.

### Pole

#### Support post - 390

|          |                     |
|----------|---------------------|
| Material | Aluminium, extruded |
| Surface  | Powder-coated       |
| Width    | 50 mm               |
| Height   | 950 mm              |
| Depth    | 40 mm               |

### Base plate

#### Base plate for support post - 390

|          |               |
|----------|---------------|
| Material | Aluminium     |
| Surface  | Powder-coated |
| Diameter | 140 mm        |

### Bracket

#### Wall support - 390

|          |                     |
|----------|---------------------|
| Material | Aluminium, extruded |
| Surface  | Powder-coated       |
| Width    | 50 mm               |
| Height   | 200 mm              |
| Depth    | 40 mm               |

#### Wall support adapter - 390

|          |               |
|----------|---------------|
| Material | Aluminium     |
| Surface  | Powder-coated |
| Width    | 40 mm         |
| Height   | 180 mm        |
| Depth    | 30 mm         |

### Handle

#### Handle - 390

|          |                   |
|----------|-------------------|
| Material | Diecast aluminium |
| Surface  | Powder-coated     |
| Width    | 25 mm             |
| Height   | 180 mm            |
| Depth    | 87 mm             |

Every fixing variant is fitted with a patented additional handle locking mechanism a black plastic insert in the handle bracket for secure locking.

### Console

#### Upper wall console - 390

|          |               |
|----------|---------------|
| Material | Aluminium     |
| Surface  | Powder-coated |
| Width    | 100 mm        |
| Height   | 71 mm         |

#### Lower wall console - 390

|          |               |
|----------|---------------|
| Material | Aluminium     |
| Surface  | Powder-coated |
| Width    | 100 mm        |
| Height   | 132 mm        |

## Console, optional

### Fixed wall console - 390

|          |               |
|----------|---------------|
| Material | Aluminium     |
| Surface  | Powder-coated |
| Width    | 93 mm         |
| Height   | 40 mm         |

## Drive variants

### Manual operation

- Manual operation for patio side screen 390

⊕ see "Drive variants", Page 367

## Colours

- WAREMA Colour World

⊕ see "WAREMA Colour World", Page 12

## Fabric qualities

- Standard acrylic fabric
- Lumera acrylic fabric

Fabric qualities, optional:

- Screen fabric
- Perfora acrylic
- All Weather acrylic
- Soltis 92
- Twilight Pearl

⊕ see "Awning collection", Page 356

## Construction limit values

For fabric with a sloped shape, a slope of at least 5° is required.

The height of the front rail must be at least 2/3 of the total height but must not be less than 1250 mm.

| Configuration variants         | Minimum order height | Maximum order height | Minimum excerpt | Maximum excerpt | Maximum order area |
|--------------------------------|----------------------|----------------------|-----------------|-----------------|--------------------|
| <b>Fabric qualities</b>        |                      |                      |                 |                 |                    |
| Acrylic fabric / Soltis 92     | 1250 mm              | 2500 mm              | 1000 mm         | 5000 mm         | 10 m <sup>2</sup>  |
| Screen fabric / Twilight Pearl | 1250 mm              | 2000 mm              | 1000 mm         | 4500 mm         | 9 m <sup>2</sup>   |

Fabric with additional stiffening for improved fabric standing strength. With larger excerpts, an increased formation of waves can not be avoided. This occurs especially with acrylic fabrics.

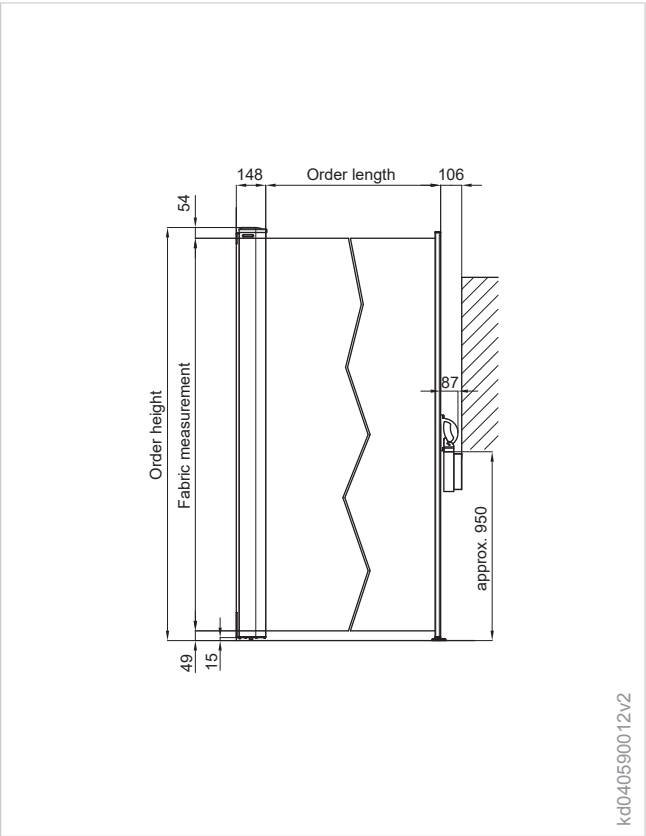
## Dimensions

Weight per running metre: 6 kg/lfm

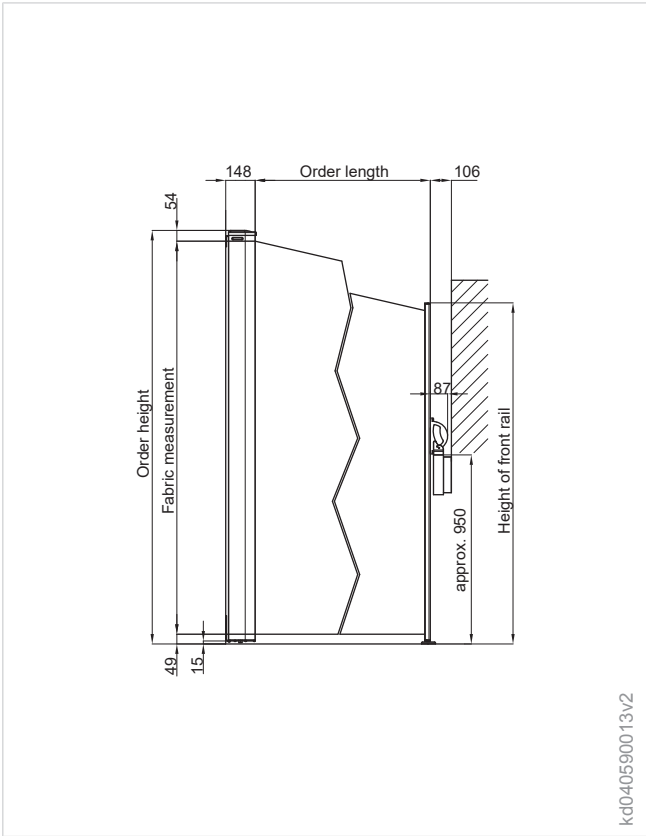
Weight per running metre, notes: Without fabric

# Dimension determination

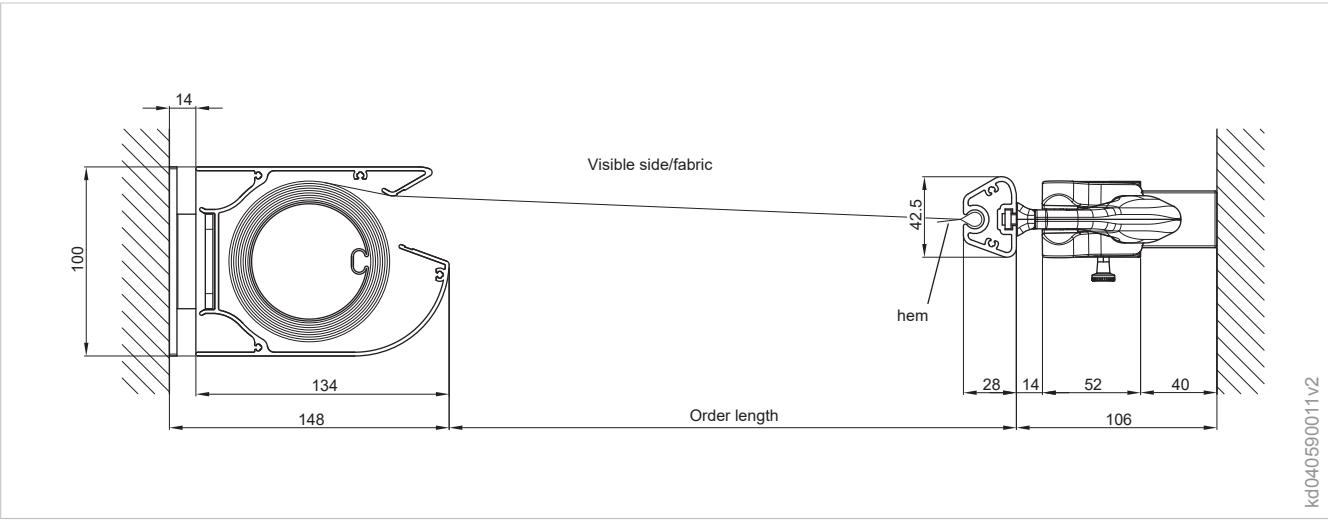
Side view - 390



Side view of sloped awning fabric - 390



Top view (operation side left) - 390



Planning

Terrea

Perea

Patio  
side screens

Climara

Supplementary  
accessories

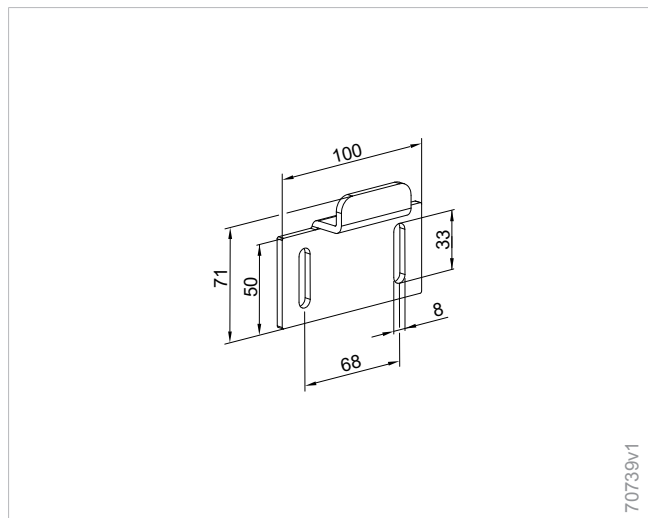
Components

Drive  
variants

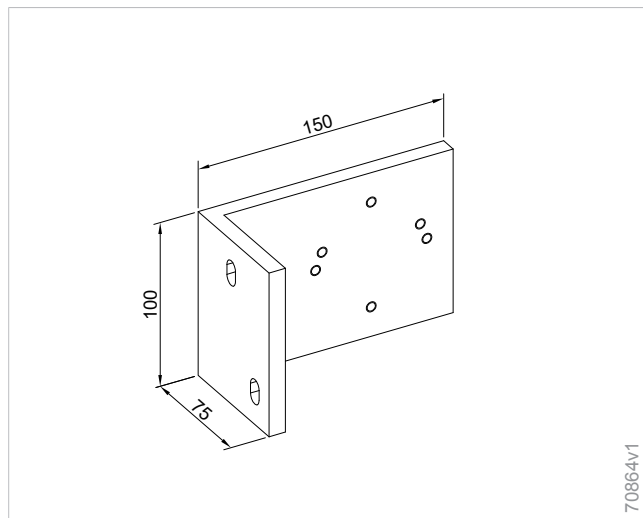
Standards

## Details

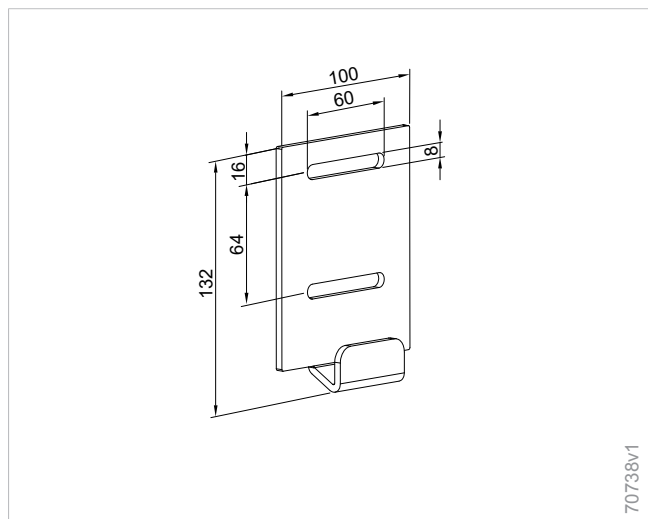
Upper wall console - 390



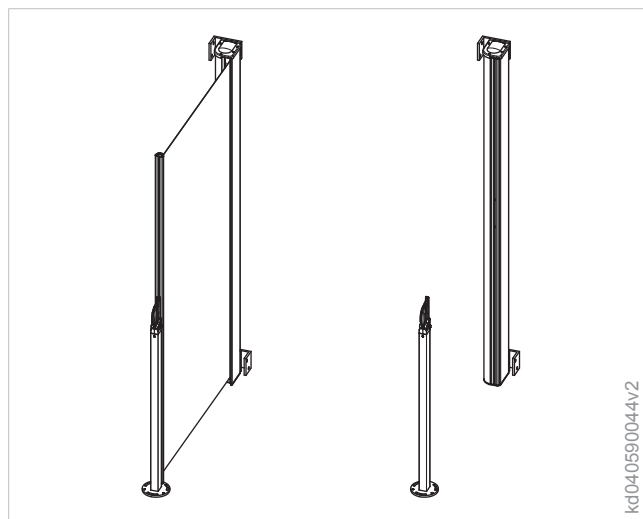
Reveal angle bracket - 390



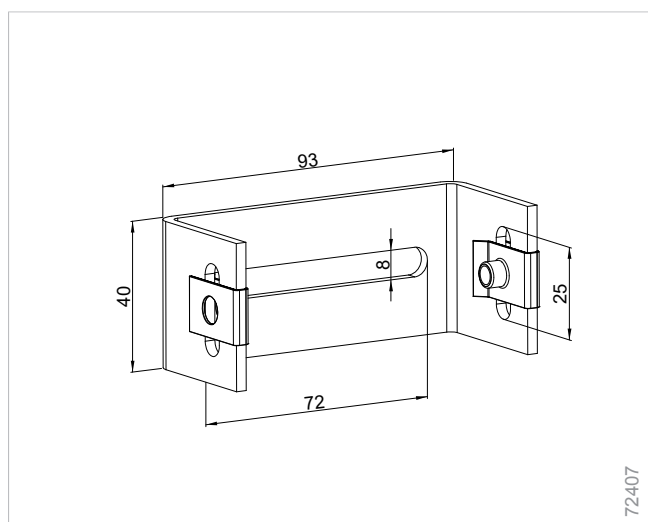
Lower wall console - 390



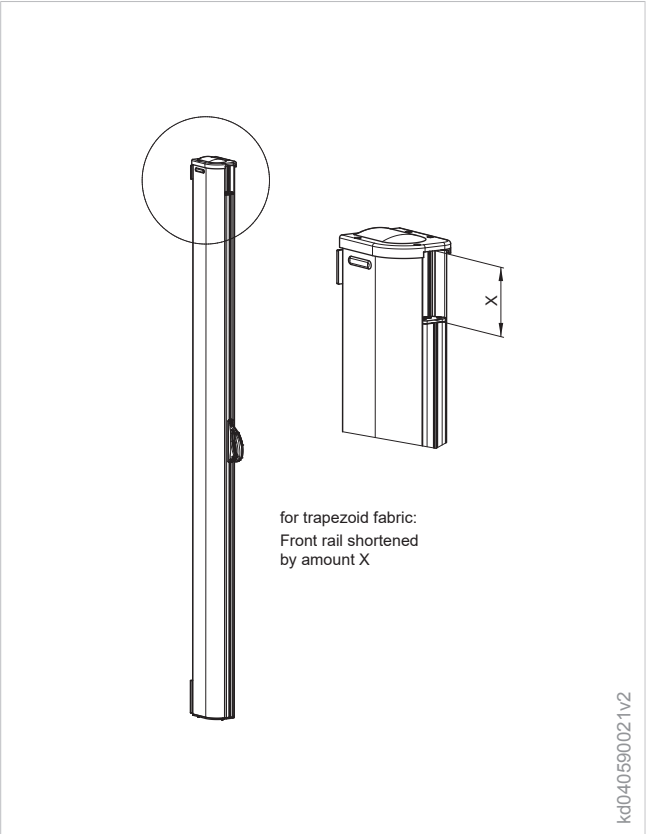
Reveal angle bracket - 390



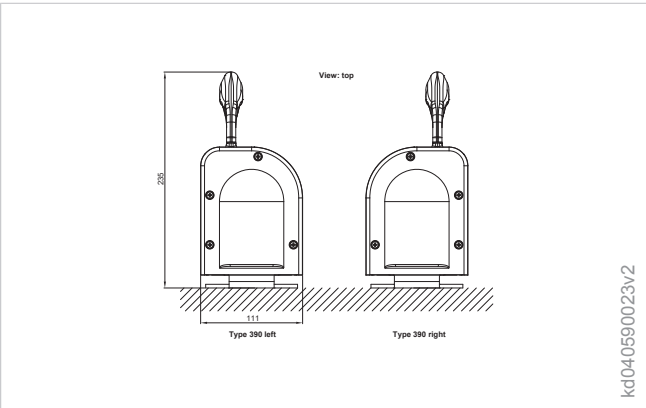
Fixed wall console - 390



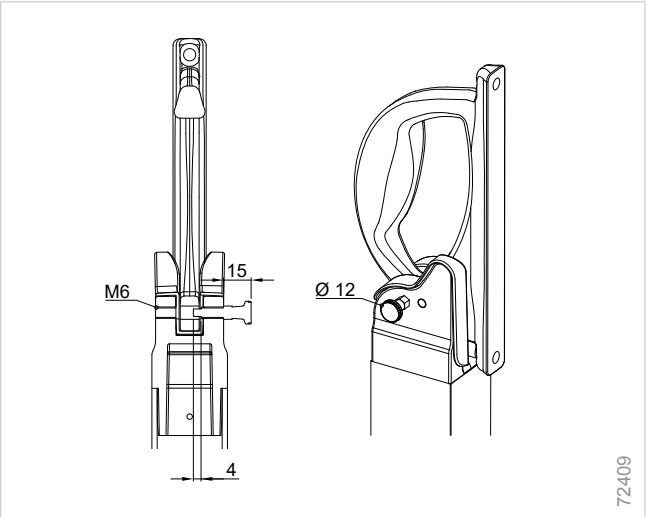
Side view, sloped awning fabric, retracted - 390



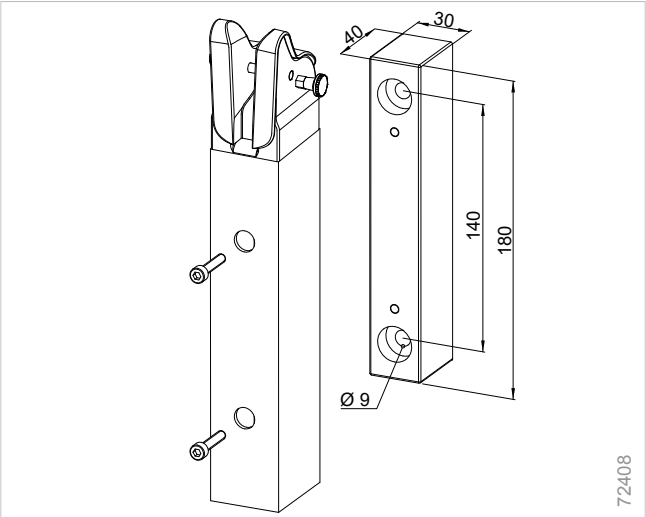
Operation sides - 390



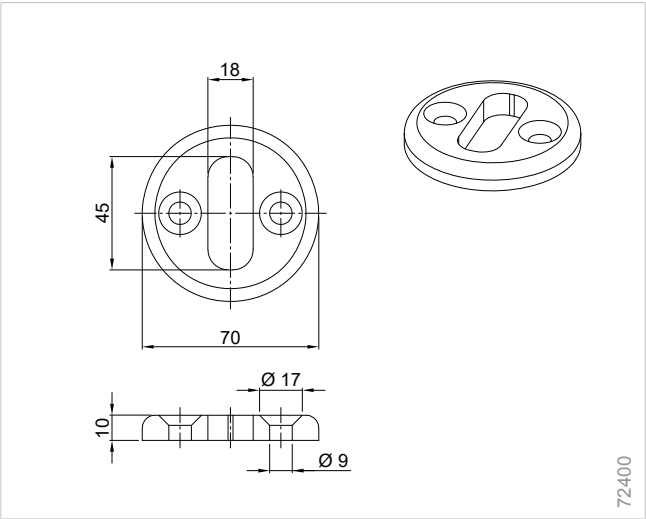
Handle locking mechanism - 390



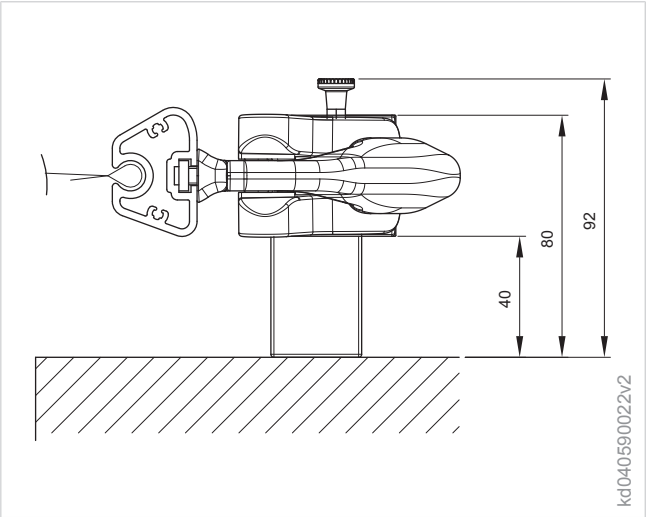
Bracket for wall installation - 390



Front rail base support - 390



Bracket for reveal installation - 390



Planning

Terrea

Perea

Patio  
side screens

Climara

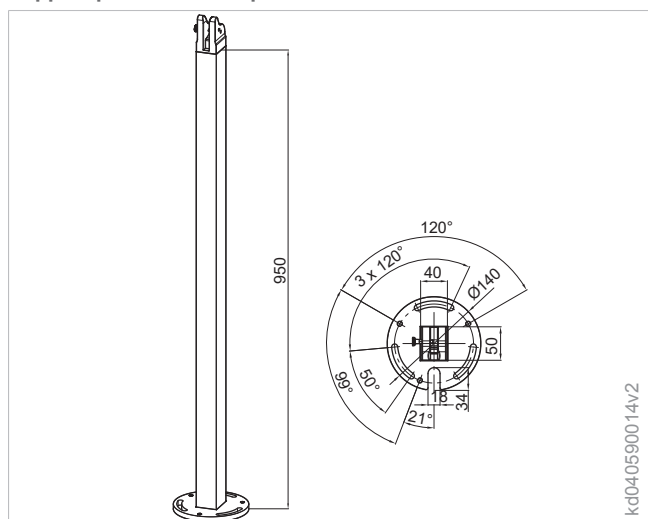
Supplementary  
accessories

Components

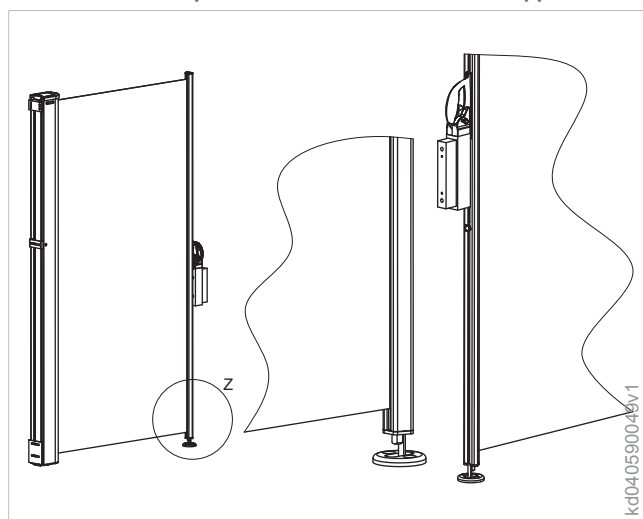
Drive  
variants

Standards

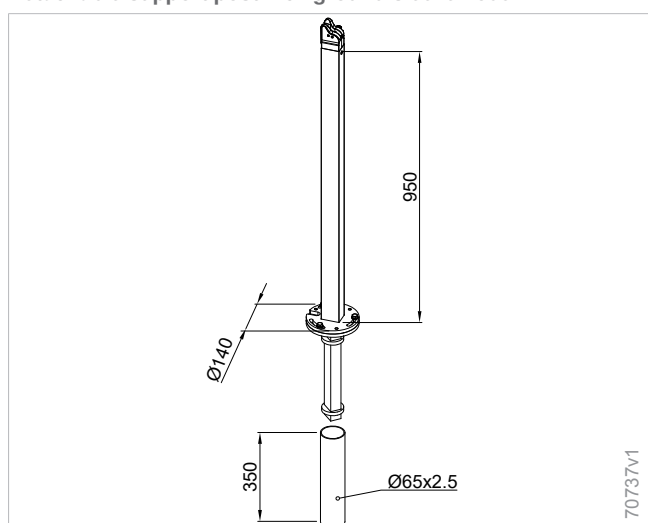
Support post with base plate - 390



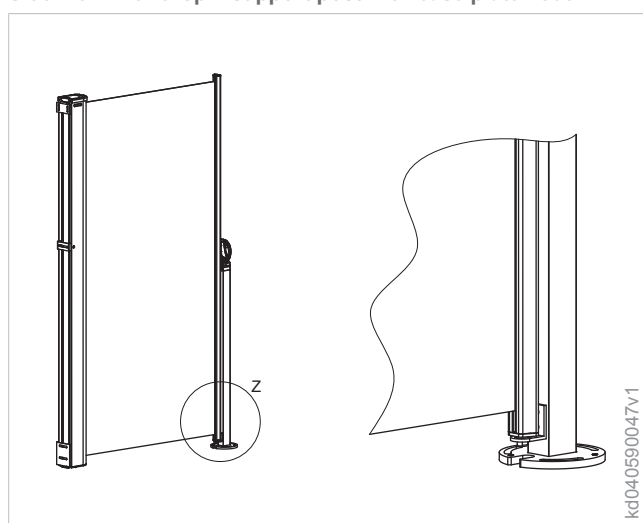
Side view with drop – wall installation with base support - 390



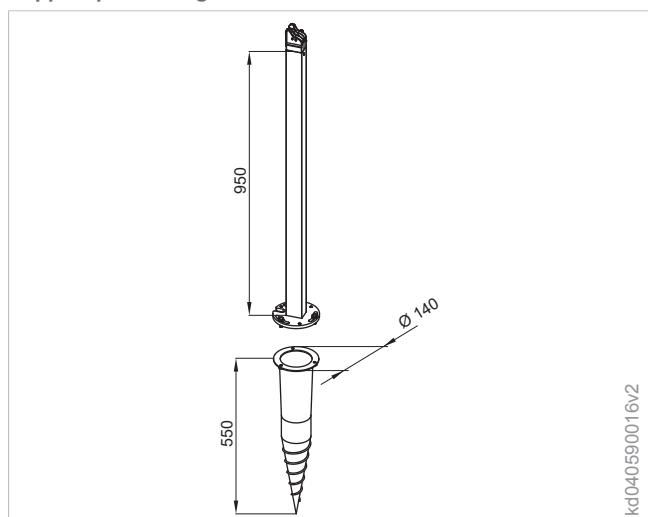
Detachable support post incl. ground sleeve - 390



Side view with drop – support post with base plate - 390



Support post with ground screw - 390



## Additional product information

### Colour combinations (optional)

Colour combinations (cassette cover, front rail, handles) are optionally available within the WAREMA Colour World. If no colour combination is specified, we will supply matching shades.

### Pole installation options

- Ground installation with frost-proof, on-site foundation, dimensions (WxDxH) 600×600×800 mm
- Optional ground installation with on-site Krinner ground screw
- The grout for filling the clearance is not included in the scope of delivery when **threaded rods** are used.

Planning

Terrea

Perea

Patio  
side screens

Climara

Supplementary  
accessories

Components

Drive  
variants

Standards

## Further information

Experience the range of colours and fabrics of the WAREMA collections  
<https://www.warema.de/Tools/Kollektionsberater.php>



Use our free planning programme to plan your sun protection systems  
<https://sonnenschutzplaner.com/>



Configure and plan your product with myWAREMA  
<https://my.warema.com>



TechDataPLUS Patio side screens  
<https://docs.warema.com/1.1446.6>







# Contents

## Conservatory awnings Climara

|                                                |     |
|------------------------------------------------|-----|
| Conservatory awnings Climara, under glass..... | 183 |
| Conservatory awning Climara W9.....            | 184 |
| Conservatory awning Climara W10.....           | 196 |
| Conservatory awnings Climara, on glass.....    | 211 |
| Conservatory awning Climara D3.....            | 212 |
| Conservatory awning Climara W7.....            | 226 |
| Conservatory awning Climara W19.....           | 232 |
| Conservatory awning Climara W20.....           | 244 |

Planning

Terrea

Perea

Patio  
side screens

**Climara**

Supplementary  
accessories

Components

Drive  
variants

Standards



# Conservatory awnings Climara, under glass

|                                      |     |
|--------------------------------------|-----|
| Conservatory awning Climara W9.....  | 184 |
| Conservatory awning Climara W10..... | 196 |

Planning

Terrea

Perea

Patio  
side screens

**Climara**

Supplementary  
accessories

Components

Drive  
variants

Standards



# Conservatory awnings Climara, under glass

## Conservatory awning Climara W9

### Attractive

The internal installation protects the fabric of the conservatory awning excellently against soiling and the effects of weather

### Sophisticated

Tried and tested back-pull principle in a new design.

### Efficient

Perfect shading for large and small glass surfaces.



### Construction limit values

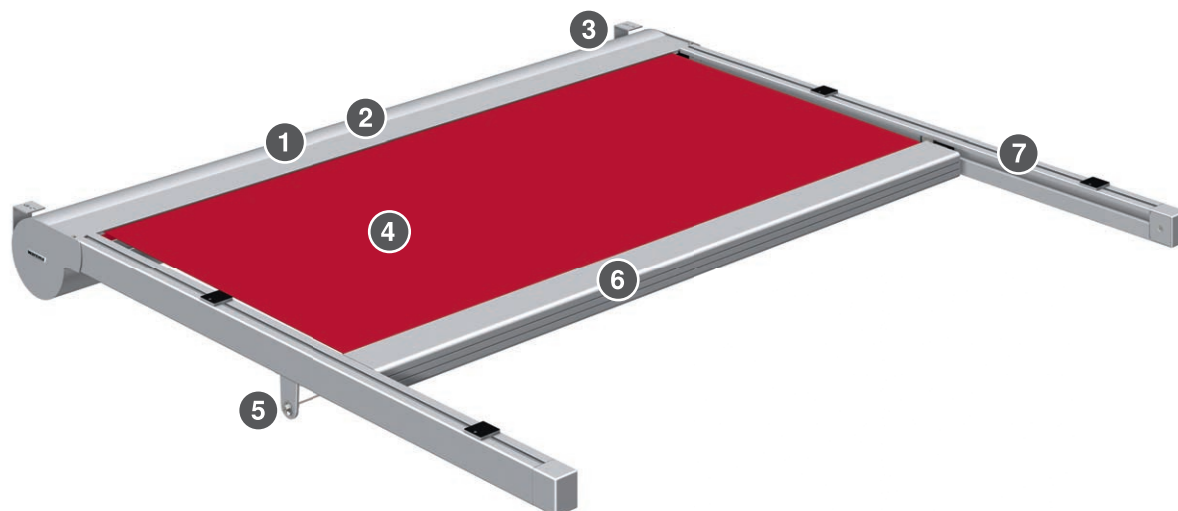
|                      |                   |
|----------------------|-------------------|
| Maximum order width  | 6000 mm           |
| Maximum order length | 6000 mm           |
| Maximum order area   | 30 m <sup>2</sup> |

### Product characteristics

- Internal conservatory awning with back-pull principle
- The optional valance roller blind with crank operation offers additional vertical visual privacy and sun shading

# Components

## Conservatory awning Climara W9



- 1 Cover panel
- 2 Shaft
- 3 Bracket
- 4 Fabric

- 5 Tension cable
- 6 Front rail
- 7 Guide rail

### Cover panel

#### Cover panel - D3/W9/W10/W10<sup>2</sup>/W19/W20

|          |                     |
|----------|---------------------|
| Material | Aluminium, extruded |
| Surface  | Powder-coated       |
| Width    | 199 mm              |
| Height   | 158 mm              |

#### + Side cover

#### Cover panel side cover - D3/W9/W10/W10<sup>2</sup>/W19/W20

|          |               |
|----------|---------------|
| Material | Aluminium     |
| Surface  | Powder-coated |
| Width    | 227 mm        |
| Height   | 159 mm        |

### Shaft

#### Fabric shaft Ø 85 mm

|          |                  |
|----------|------------------|
| Material | Galvanised steel |
| Surface  | Plain            |
| Profile  | Groove tube      |
| Diameter | 85 mm            |

#### Motor shaft Ø 56 mm

|          |               |
|----------|---------------|
| Material | Aluminium     |
| Surface  | Plain         |
| Profile  | Round profile |
| Diameter | 56 mm         |

### Front rail

#### Front rail - W9/W10/W10<sup>2</sup>/W19/W20/H1

|          |                     |
|----------|---------------------|
| Material | Aluminium, extruded |
| Surface  | Powder-coated       |
| Width    | 94 mm               |
| Height   | 54 mm               |

### Front rail, optional

#### Front rail - W9/W10 with valance roller blind

|          |                     |
|----------|---------------------|
| Material | Aluminium, extruded |
| Surface  | Powder-coated       |
| Width    | 94 mm               |
| Height   | 62 mm               |

### Guy rope

#### Guy rope crosswise - W9

|                 |           |
|-----------------|-----------|
| Material        | Steel     |
| Material colour | Black     |
| Coating         | Polyamide |

### Bracket

- Ceiling bracket 40x76 mm
- Ceiling bracket 40x85 mm
- Ceiling bracket 40x130 mm
- Wall bracket 40x130 mm

+ see "Bracket", Page 350

## Bracket

- Bracket H31
- Bracket H48
- Bracket H49
- Bracket H52
- Bracket H53
- Bracket H61
- Bracket H101
- Bracket H102
- Bracket SL01
- Bracket SL02
- Bracket SL03
- Bracket SL04
- Bracket SL05
- Bracket SL06
- Bracket SL07
- Bracket SL08
- Bracket SL09
- Bracket SL10
- Bracket SL11

+ see "Guide rail bracket - Conservatory awnings Climara", Page 320

## Guide variants

- Back-pull

## Guide rail

### Guide rail - D3/W9/W19

|          |                     |
|----------|---------------------|
| Material | Aluminium, extruded |
| Surface  | Powder-coated       |
| Width    | 45 mm               |
| Height   | 64 mm               |

## Pulling element

### Toothed belt

|                 |                   |
|-----------------|-------------------|
| Material, notes | With steel insert |
|-----------------|-------------------|

## Drive variants

- Motor

## Motor

- WM REA

## Radio motor, optional

- WMS-WM (WMS)
- W-WM (EWFS)

+ see "Drive variants", Page 367

## Colours

- WAREMA Colour World

+ see "WAREMA Colour World", Page 12

## Fabric qualities

- Standard acrylic fabric
- Lumera acrylic fabric

Fabric qualities, optional:

- Perfora acrylic
- All Weather acrylic
- Soltis 92
- Twilight Pearl

+ see "Awning collection", Page 356

## Supplementary accessories

- Valance roller blind with crank
- Wind protection for valance roller blind
- Fabric lettering, painted
- Sunprint

+ see "Supplementary accessories", Page 257

## Construction limit values

| Configuration variants                                 | Minimum order width | Maximum order width | Minimum order length | Maximum order length | Maximum order area | Minimum inclination angle | Maximum inclination angle |
|--------------------------------------------------------|---------------------|---------------------|----------------------|----------------------|--------------------|---------------------------|---------------------------|
| <b>Fabric qualities</b>                                |                     |                     |                      |                      |                    |                           |                           |
| Acrylic fabric / Twilight Pearl                        | 770 mm              | 6000 mm             | 750 mm               | 6000 mm              | 30 m <sup>2</sup>  | 0 °                       | 45 °                      |
| Soltis 92                                              | 770 mm              | 3500 mm             | 750 mm               | 4500 mm              | 16 m <sup>2</sup>  | 0 °                       | 45 °                      |
| <b>Fabric qualities + Supplementary accessories</b>    |                     |                     |                      |                      |                    |                           |                           |
| Acrylic fabric / Twilight Pearl + Valance roller blind | 770 mm              | 5000 mm             | 750 mm               | 6000 mm              | 30 m <sup>2</sup>  | 0 °                       | 45 °                      |
| Acrylic fabric / Twilight Pearl + VUNO model           | 770 mm              | 6000 mm             | 750 mm               | 6000 mm              | 30 m <sup>2</sup>  | 1 °                       | 40 °                      |
| Acrylic fabric / Twilight Pearl + VUNO model           | 770 mm              | 5000 mm             | 750 mm               | 6000 mm              | 30 m <sup>2</sup>  | 41 °                      | 90 °                      |
| Soltis 92 + Valance roller blind                       | 770 mm              | 3500 mm             | 750 mm               | 4500 mm              | 16 m <sup>2</sup>  | 0 °                       | 45 °                      |
| Soltis 92 + VUNO model                                 | 770 mm              | 3500 mm             | 750 mm               | 4500 mm              | 16 m <sup>2</sup>  | 1 °                       | 90 °                      |

### Series-mounted units:

- Generally, only individual units are possible, i.e. no unit coupling or motor bearing situation possible!
- Each awning section requires two single guide rails.
- Two guide rails can be mounted on one bracket.
- In the case of a series-mounted unit, an expansion joint of 20 mm is required after 12000 mm!

**Guy rope:** For order lengths of 3001 mm and greater, a guy rope is used.

## Dimensions

Weight per running metre: 15 - 17 kg/lfm

Weight per running metre, notes: Cover panel without guide rail and bracket

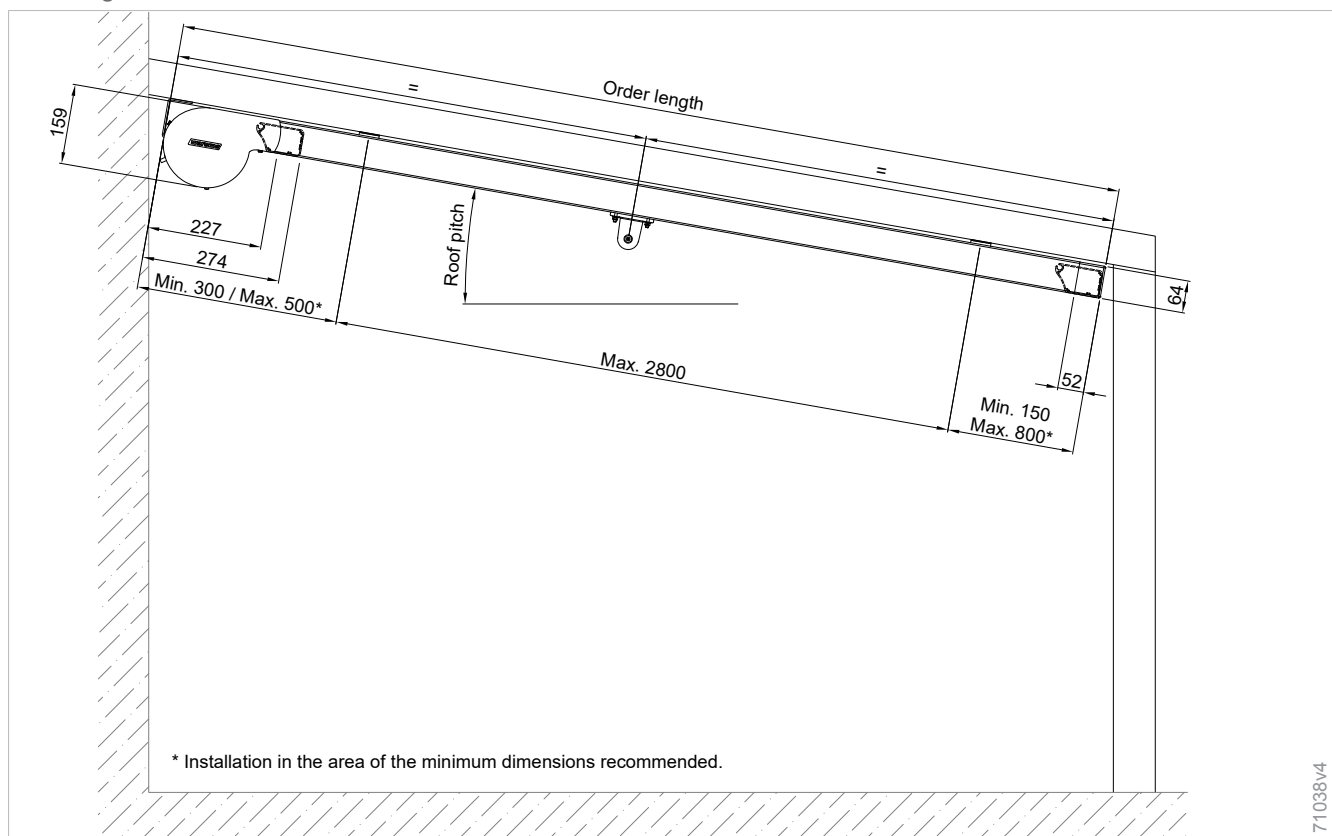
## Dimension determination

The **drive end or operation side** is always seen from the cover panel in extension direction.

**Order width** = guide rail axis to guide rail axis.

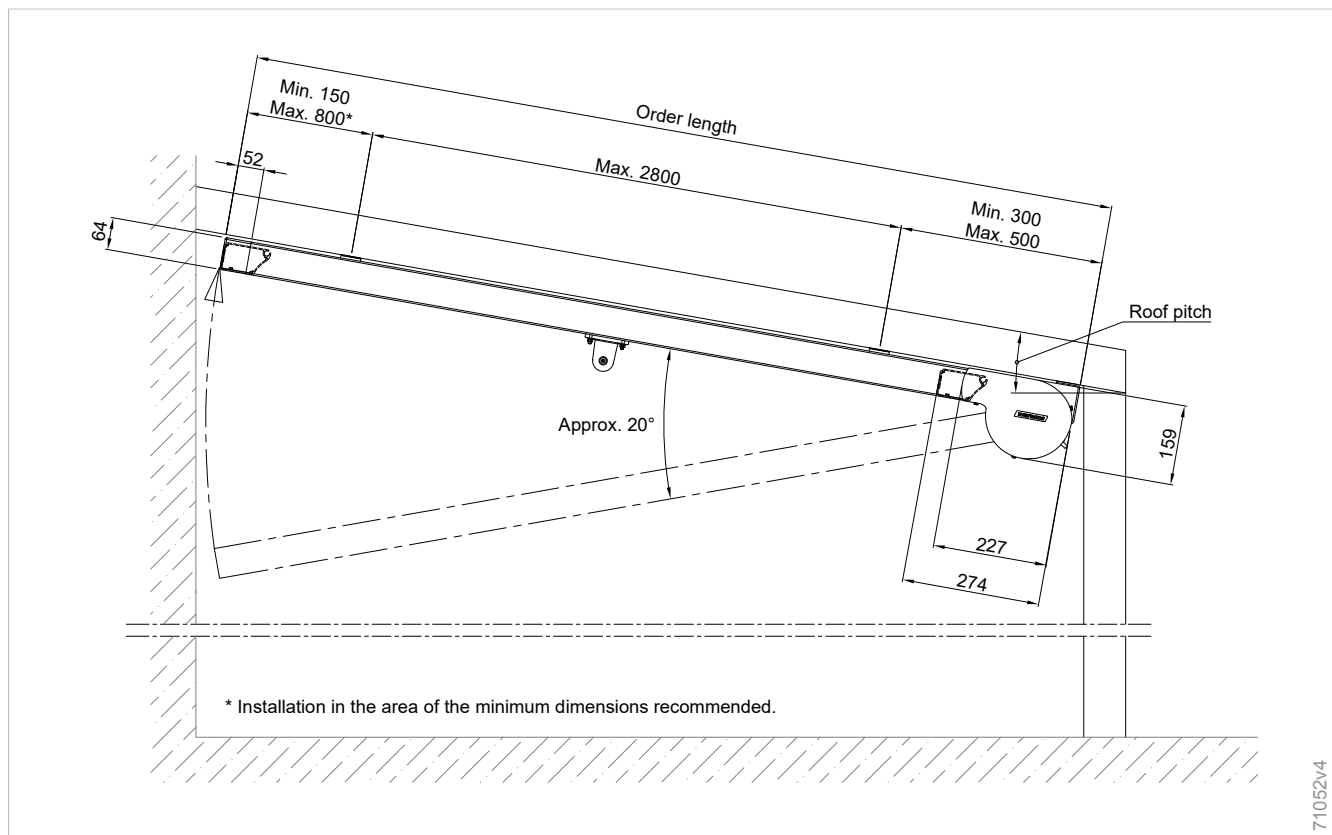


## Measuring instructions - W9



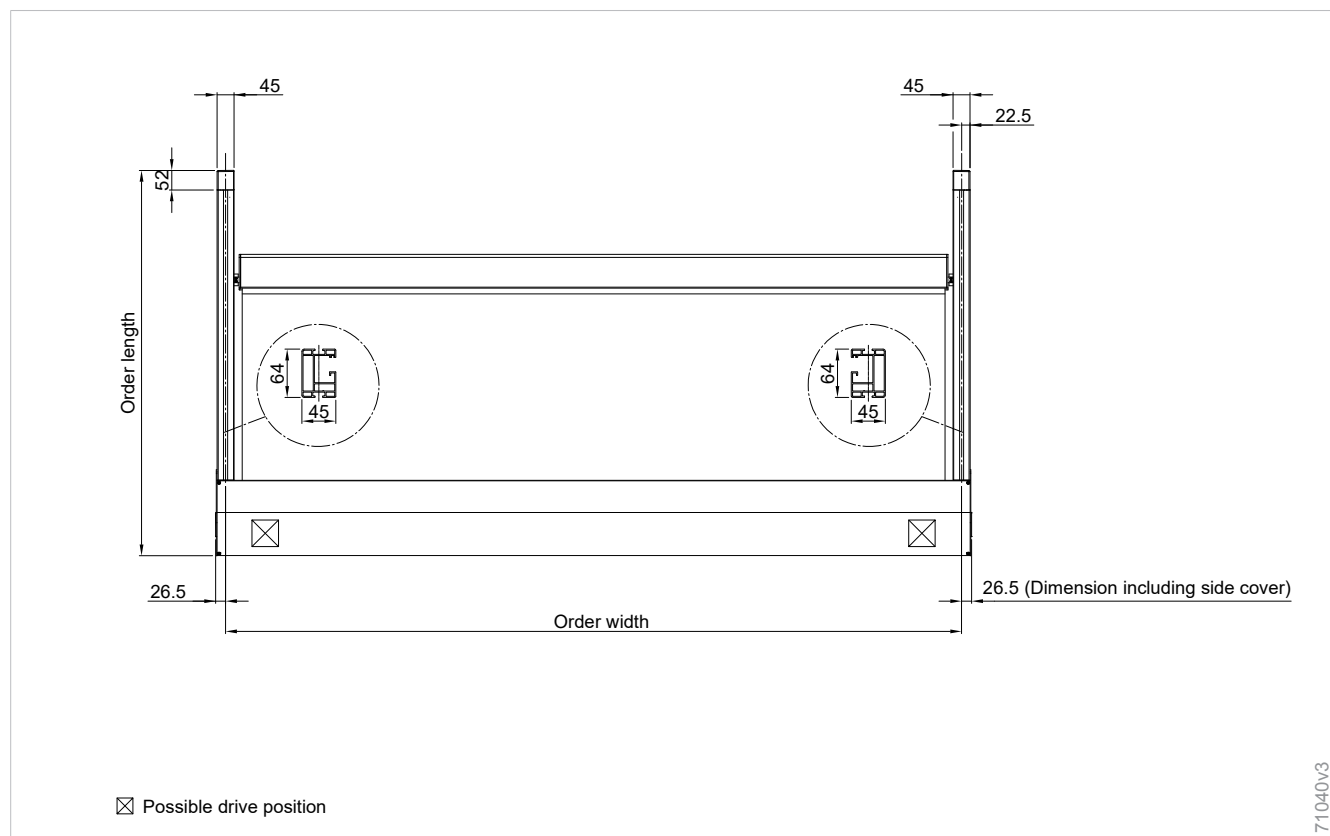
71038v4

## Direction of movement "from bottom to top" - W9

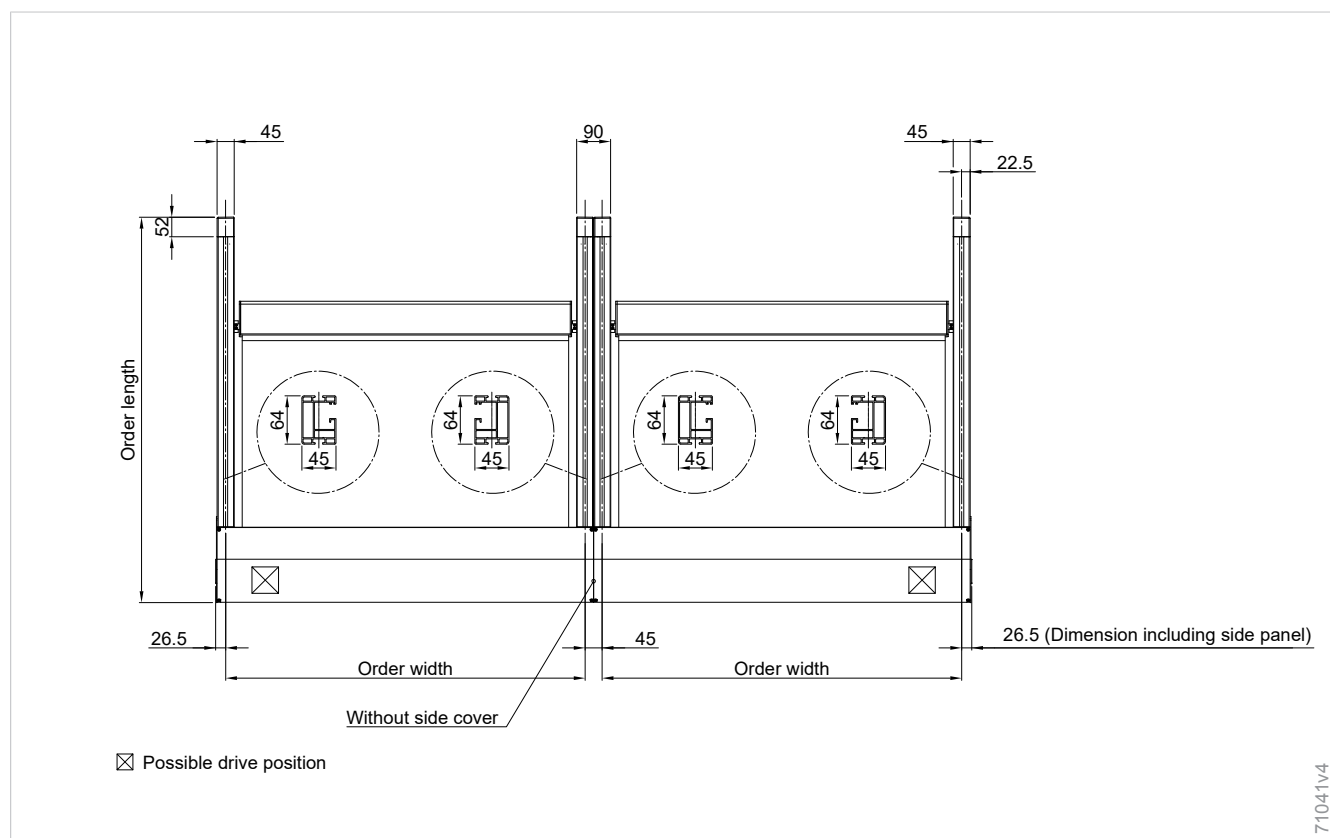


71052v4

## Individual unit - W9/W19



## Series-mounted unit - W9



## Quantity determination

### Number of brackets

| Configuration variants         | Order width    | Number |
|--------------------------------|----------------|--------|
| Components                     |                |        |
| Wall bracket / Ceiling bracket | 0 - 4000 mm    | 2      |
| Wall bracket / Ceiling bracket | 4001 - 6000 mm | 3      |

### Number of guide rail brackets

| Configuration variants                                                                 | Order length   | Number |
|----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|----------------|--------|
| Components                                                                             |                |        |
| Guide rail bracket - stand-off installation / Guide rail bracket - direct installation | 0 - 3000 mm    | 2      |
| Guide rail bracket - stand-off installation / Guide rail bracket - direct installation | 3001 - 6000 mm | 3      |

### Guide rail bracket - stand-off installation:

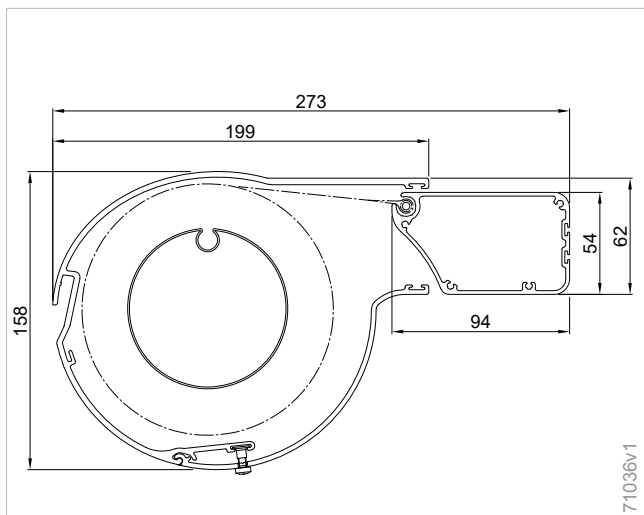
- H31
- H49
- H61
- H101
- H102
- SL06
- SL09
- SL10

### Guide rail bracket - direct installation

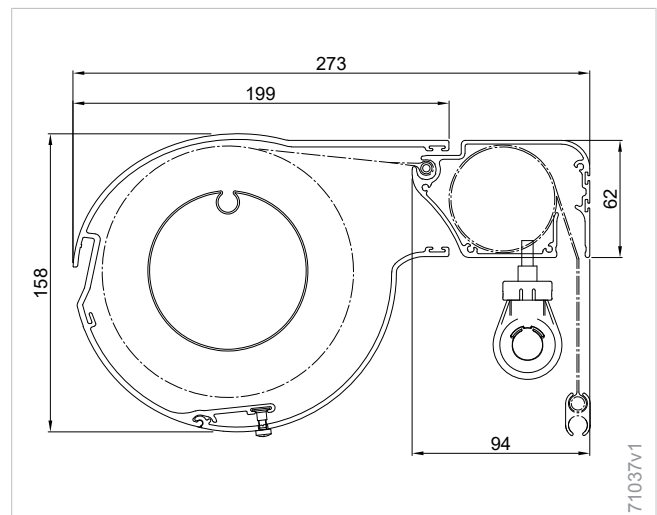
- H48
- H52
- H53
- SL01-05
- SL07
- SL08
- SL11

## Details

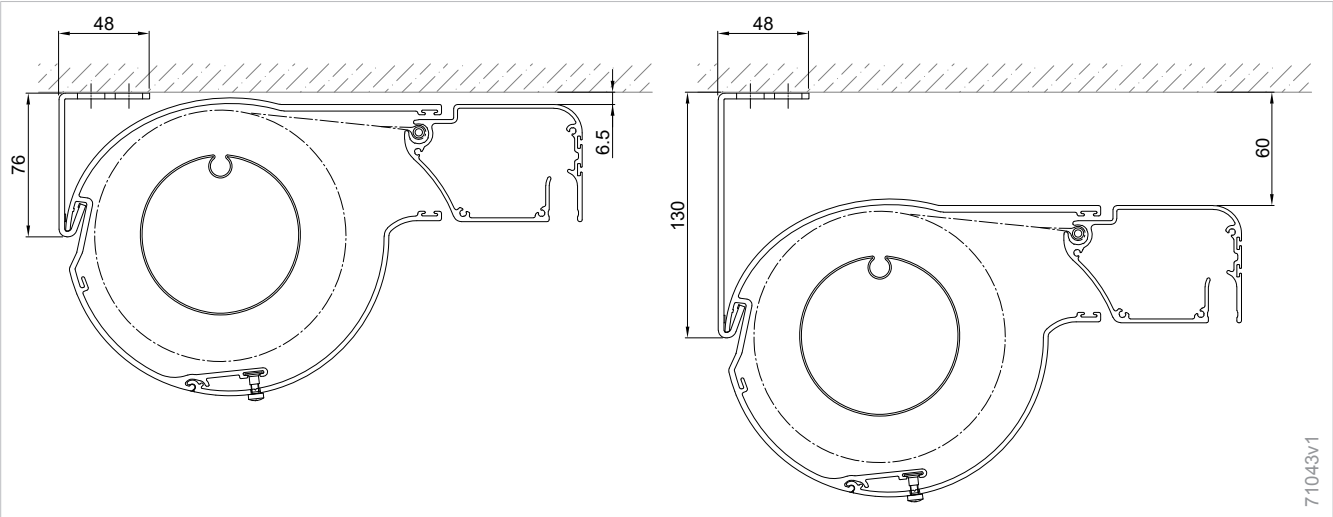
Cover panel with front rail - W9



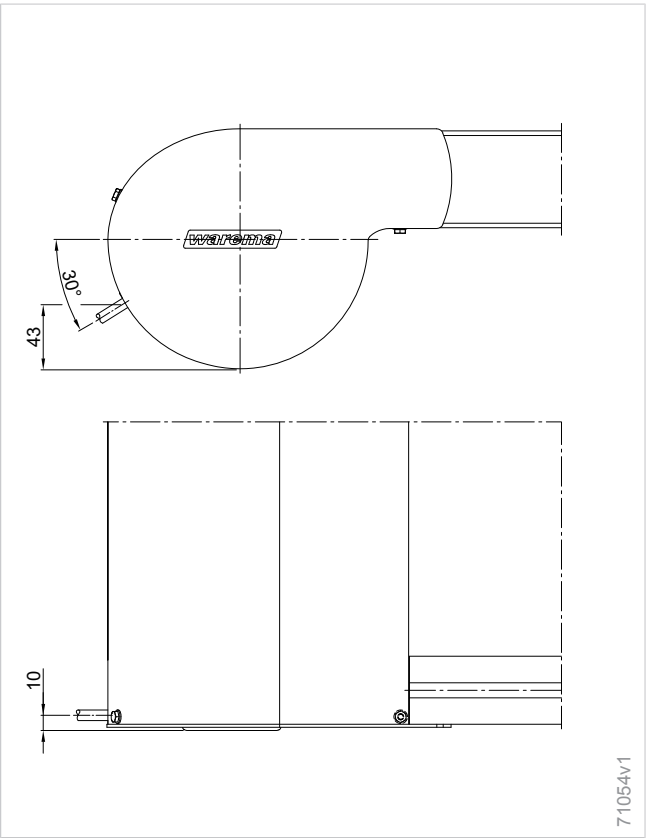
Cover panel with front rail for valance roller blind - W9



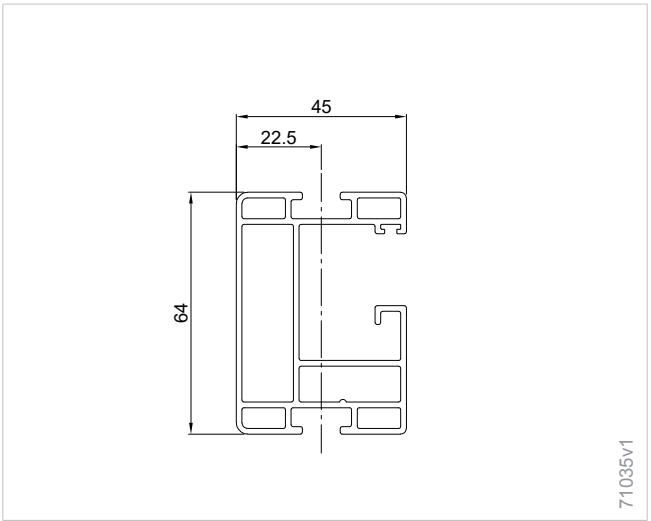
Overview of cover panel fixing - W9



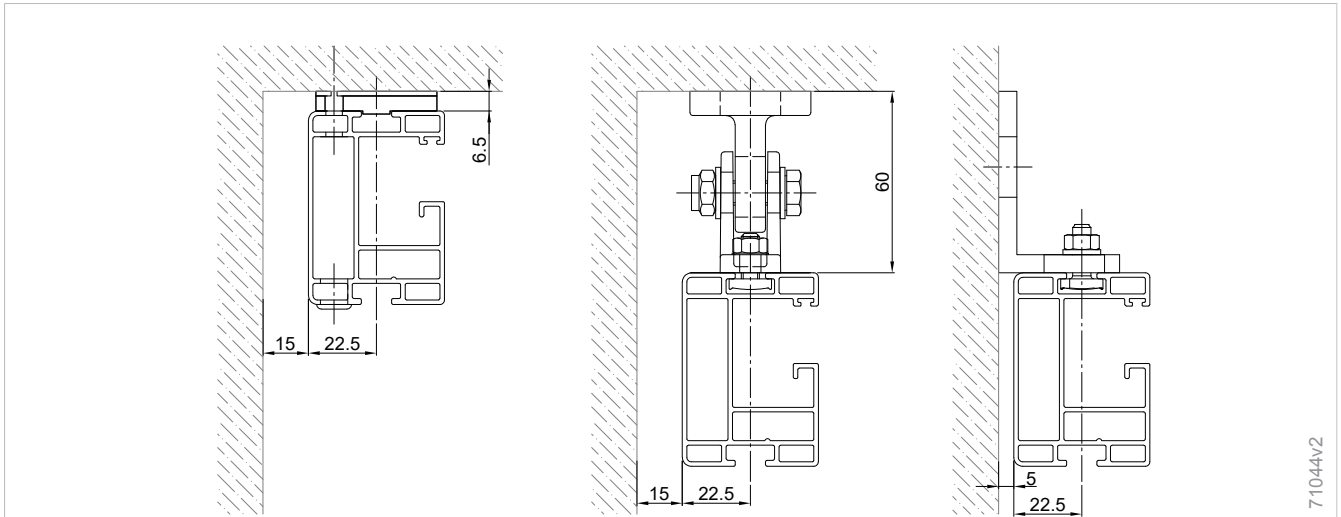
Cable exit - W9/W19



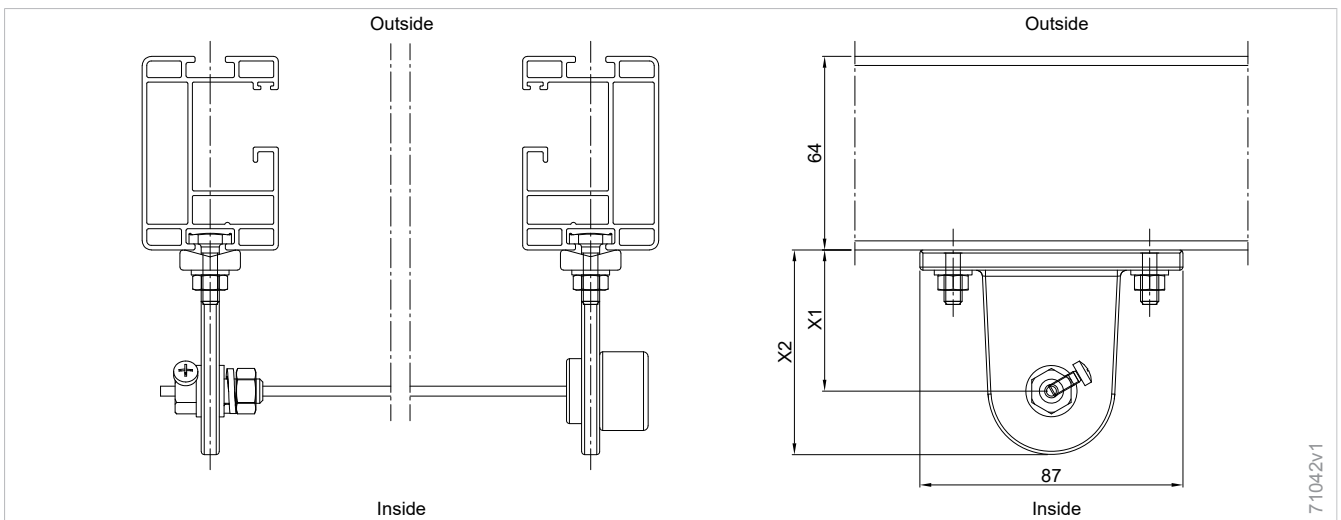
Guide rail - D3/W9/W19



## Overview of guide rail fixation - W9



## Guy rope crosswise - W9



Dimensions without valance roller blind:

- X1: 47 mm
- X2: 68 mm

Dimensions with valance roller blind:

- X1: 66 mm
- X2: 87 mm

## Additional product information

### VUNO model

Conservatory awnings Climara can be used with a "from bottom to top" direction of movement.

#### Notes:

- Each awning section requires two guide rails.
- Because the cover panel opens in the extension direction, there is an increased risk of the fabric becoming soiled.
- State clearly on the order form: Direction of movement "from bottom to top".
- State the roof pitch angle when ordering.

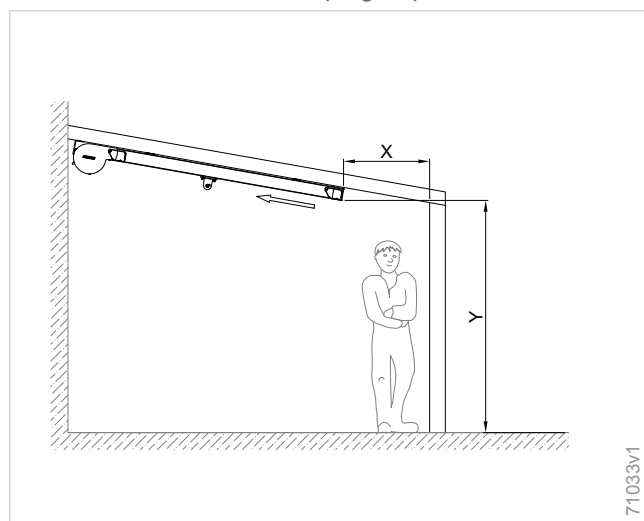
### Safety distances for automatic operation - under-glass conservatory awnings Climara

#### Warning!

If the **minimum distance Y** of **2.5 m** from the front rail to the pedestrian area is not maintained, for **automatic, unsupervised operation** of the conservatory awning, special protective measures (mechanical shielding, etc.) must be implemented to prevent risk of crushing and injury. When retracting and extending the awning, do not reach into any movable parts (e.g. between front rail and guide rail or between front rail and housing) or pull on the awning!

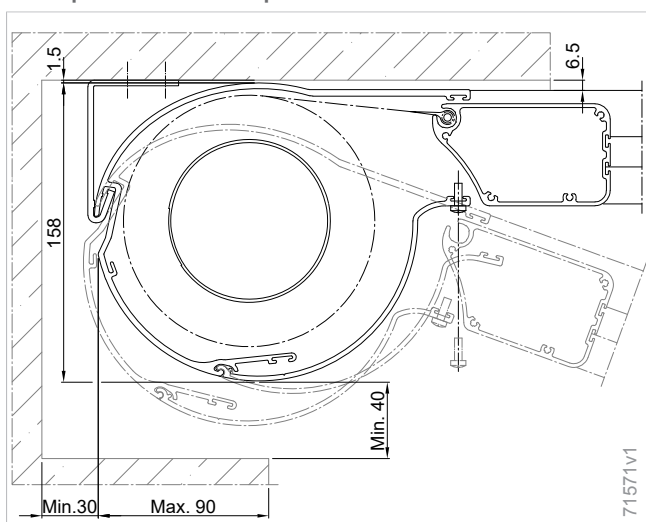
The **minimum distance X** between the extending front rail and any fixed or movable object must be at least **400 mm** if there is an accessible area in between.

Clearance/minimum distances (diagram) for internal units



## Mounting examples

### Cover panel installation space - W9



### Further information

Calculate the individual suitable and permissible fixing materials  
<http://warema2.atbit5.de/app/Plugcalculator.asp?lang=EN>



Use our free planning programme to plan your sun protection systems  
<https://sonnenschutzplaner.com/>



Configure and plan your product with myWAREMA  
<https://my.warema.com>



Experience the range of colours and fabrics of the WAREMA collections  
<https://www.warema.de/Tools/Kollektionsberater.php>



TechDataPLUS Conservatory awnings  
<https://docs.warema.com/1.1447.7>









# Conservatory awnings Climara, under glass

## Conservatory awning Climara W10

### Attractive

By installing it below glass, the internal conservatory awning Climara is perfectly protected against the effects of weather.

### Sophisticated

The secudrive® guide prevents light gaps between the rail and the fabric and also ensures the optimum fabric tension across the entire length.

### Comfortable

Also protected against low-lying solar radiation thanks to the optional valance roller blind.



### Construction limit values

|                      |                   |
|----------------------|-------------------|
| Maximum order width  | 6500 mm           |
| Maximum order length | 6000 mm           |
| Maximum order area   | 30 m <sup>2</sup> |

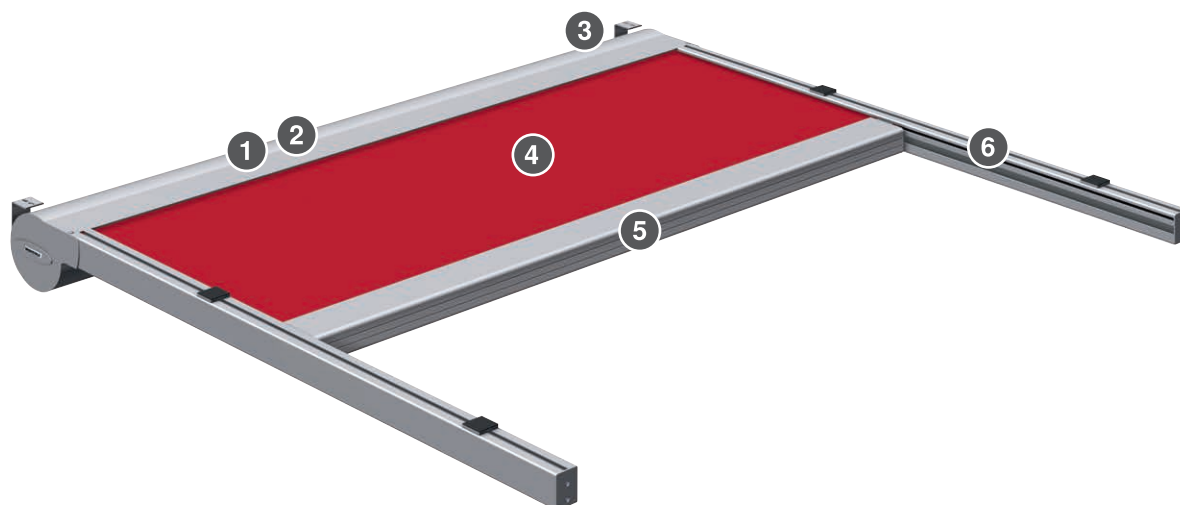


### Product characteristics

- Under-glass conservatory awning with secudrive® guidance
- Optional valance roller blind and integrated lighting

# Components

## Conservatory awning Climara W10



- 1 Cover panel
- 2 Shaft
- 3 Bracket

- 4 Fabric
- 5 Front rail
- 6 Guide rail

### Cover panel

#### Cover panel - D3/W9/W10/W10<sup>2</sup>/W19/W20

|          |                     |
|----------|---------------------|
| Material | Aluminium, extruded |
| Surface  | Powder-coated       |
| Width    | 199 mm              |
| Height   | 158 mm              |

#### + Side cover

#### Cover panel side cover - D3/W9/W10/W10<sup>2</sup>/W19/W20

|          |               |
|----------|---------------|
| Material | Aluminium     |
| Surface  | Powder-coated |
| Width    | 227 mm        |
| Height   | 159 mm        |

### Shaft

#### Motor shaft Ø 70 mm

|          |               |
|----------|---------------|
| Material | Aluminium     |
| Surface  | Plain         |
| Profile  | Round profile |
| Diameter | 70 mm         |

#### Fabric shaft Ø 86.2 mm

|          |               |
|----------|---------------|
| Material | Aluminium     |
| Surface  | Plain         |
| Profile  | Round profile |
| Diameter | 86.2 mm       |

### Front rail

#### Front rail - W9/W10/W10<sup>2</sup>/W19/W20/H1

|          |                     |
|----------|---------------------|
| Material | Aluminium, extruded |
| Surface  | Powder-coated       |
| Width    | 94 mm               |
| Height   | 54 mm               |

### Front rail, optional

#### Front rail - W9/W10 with valance roller blind

|          |                     |
|----------|---------------------|
| Material | Aluminium, extruded |
| Surface  | Powder-coated       |
| Width    | 94 mm               |
| Height   | 62 mm               |

### Bracket

- Ceiling bracket 40x76 mm
- Ceiling bracket 40x85 mm
- Ceiling bracket 40x130 mm
- Wall bracket 40x130 mm

+ see "Bracket", Page 350

## Bracket

- Bracket H31
- Bracket H48
- Bracket H49
- Bracket H52
- Bracket H53
- Bracket H61
- Bracket H101
- Bracket H102
- Bracket SL01
- Bracket SL02
- Bracket SL03
- Bracket SL04
- Bracket SL05
- Bracket SL06
- Bracket SL07
- Bracket SL08
- Bracket SL09
- Bracket SL10
- Bracket SL11

+ see "Guide rail bracket - Conservatory awnings Climara", Page 320

## Guide variants

- secudrive®

## Guide rail

### Guide rail - W10/W10<sup>2</sup>

|          |                     |
|----------|---------------------|
| Material | Aluminium, extruded |
| Surface  | Powder-coated       |
| Width    | 45 mm               |
| Height   | 60 mm               |

## Guide rail, optional

### Guide rail - W10 with integrated LED strips

|          |                     |
|----------|---------------------|
| Material | Aluminium, extruded |
| Surface  | Powder-coated       |
| Width    | 45 mm               |
| Height   | 61 mm               |

## Drive variants

- Motor

## Motor

- WM REA

## Radio motor, optional

- WMS-WM (WMS)
- WMS-PM (WMS)
- W-WM (EWFS)

+ see "Drive variants", Page 367

## Colours

- WAREMA Colour World

+ see "WAREMA Colour World", Page 12

## Fabric qualities

- Standard acrylic fabric
- Lumera acrylic fabric

Fabric qualities, optional:

- Screen fabric
- Perfora acrylic
- All Weather acrylic
- Soltis 92
- Twilight Pearl

+ see "Awning collection", Page 356

## Supplementary accessories

- Integrated lighting
- LED strip light rail
- Valance roller blind with motor and storage battery and WMS control
- Valance roller blind with crank
- Wind protection for valance roller blind
- Fabric lettering, painted
- Sunprint

+ see "Supplementary accessories", Page 257

## Construction limit values

| Configuration variants                                                                   | Minimum order width | Maximum order width | Minimum order length | Maximum order length | Maximum order area | Minimum inclination angle | Maximum inclination angle |
|------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|---------------------|---------------------|----------------------|----------------------|--------------------|---------------------------|---------------------------|
| <b>Fabric qualities</b>                                                                  |                     |                     |                      |                      |                    |                           |                           |
| Standard acrylic fabric / Lumera acrylic fabric / Perfora acrylic                        | 650 mm              | 6500 mm             | 950 mm               | 6000 mm              | 30 m <sup>2</sup>  | 0 °                       | 45 °                      |
| All Weather acrylic / Twilight Pearl                                                     | 650 mm              | 6500 mm             | 950 mm               | 6000 mm              | 28 m <sup>2</sup>  | 0 °                       | 45 °                      |
| Soltis 92 / Screen fabric                                                                | 650 mm              | 3500 mm             | 950 mm               | 4000 mm              | 14 m <sup>2</sup>  | 0 °                       | 45 °                      |
| <b>Fabric qualities + Supplementary accessories</b>                                      |                     |                     |                      |                      |                    |                           |                           |
| Standard acrylic fabric / Lumera acrylic fabric / Perfora acrylic + Valance roller blind | 650 mm              | 5000 mm             | 950 mm               | 6000 mm              | 30 m <sup>2</sup>  | 0 °                       | 45 °                      |
| Standard acrylic fabric / Lumera acrylic fabric / Perfora acrylic + VUNO model           | 650 mm              | 6500 mm             | 950 mm               | 6000 mm              | 30 m <sup>2</sup>  | 0 °                       | 45 °                      |
| All Weather acrylic / Twilight Pearl + Valance roller blind                              | 650 mm              | 5000 mm             | 950 mm               | 6000 mm              | 28 m <sup>2</sup>  | 0 °                       | 45 °                      |
| All Weather acrylic / Twilight Pearl + VUNO model                                        | 650 mm              | 6500 mm             | 950 mm               | 6000 mm              | 28 m <sup>2</sup>  | 0 °                       | 45 °                      |
| Soltis 92 / Screen fabric + Valance roller blind                                         | 650 mm              | 3500 mm             | 950 mm               | 4000 mm              | 14 m <sup>2</sup>  | 0 °                       | 45 °                      |
| Soltis 92 / Screen fabric + VUNO model                                                   | 650 mm              | 3500 mm             | 950 mm               | 4000 mm              | 14 m <sup>2</sup>  | 0 °                       | 45 °                      |

### Series-mounted units:

- Generally, only individual units are possible, i.e. no unit coupling!
- Each awning section requires two single guide rails.
- Two guide rails can be mounted on one bracket.
- In the case of a series-mounted unit, an expansion joint of 20 mm is required after 13000 mm!

**VUNO:** Valance roller blinds are not possible for a "from bottom to top" direction of movement.

## Dimensions

Weight per running metre: 13,5 - 15 kg/lfm

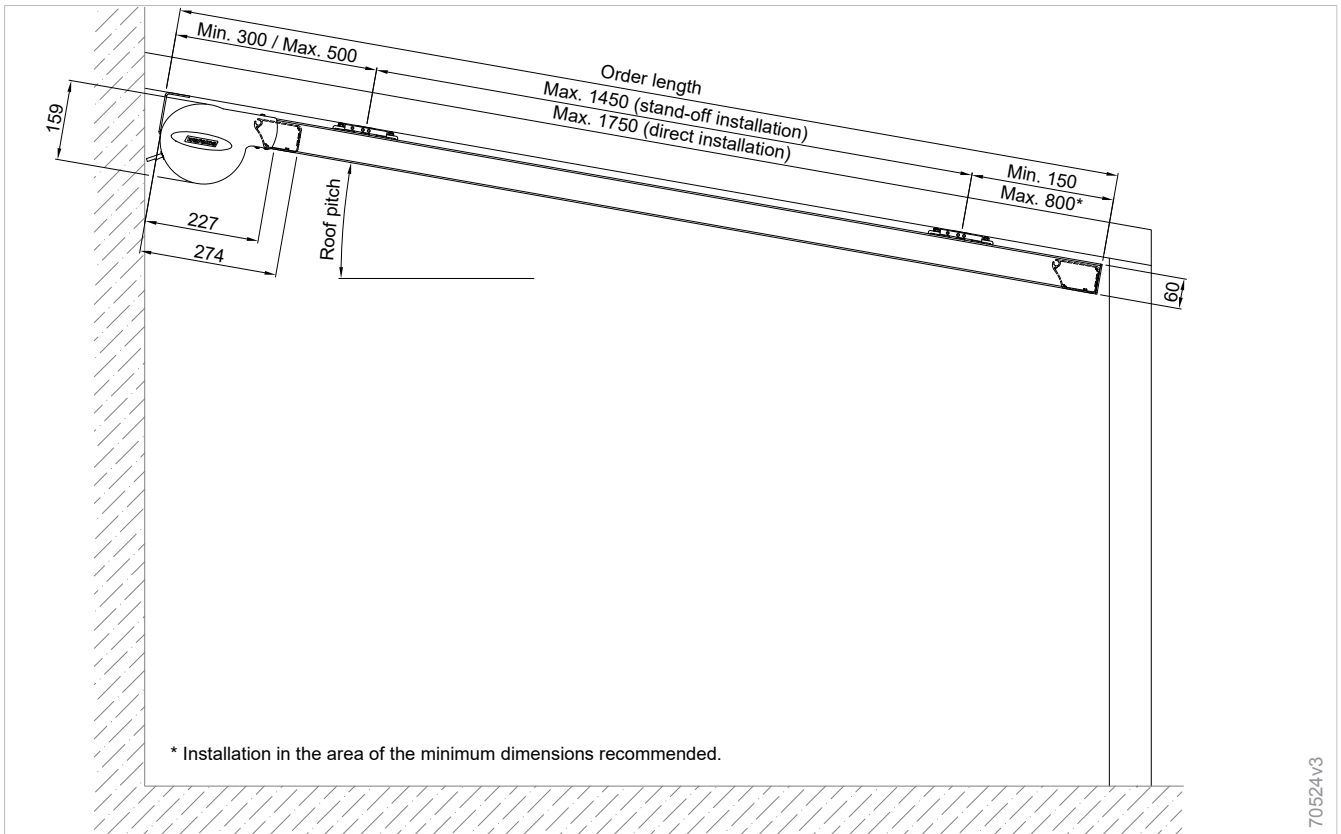
Weight per running metre, notes: Cover panel without guide rail and bracket

## Dimension determination

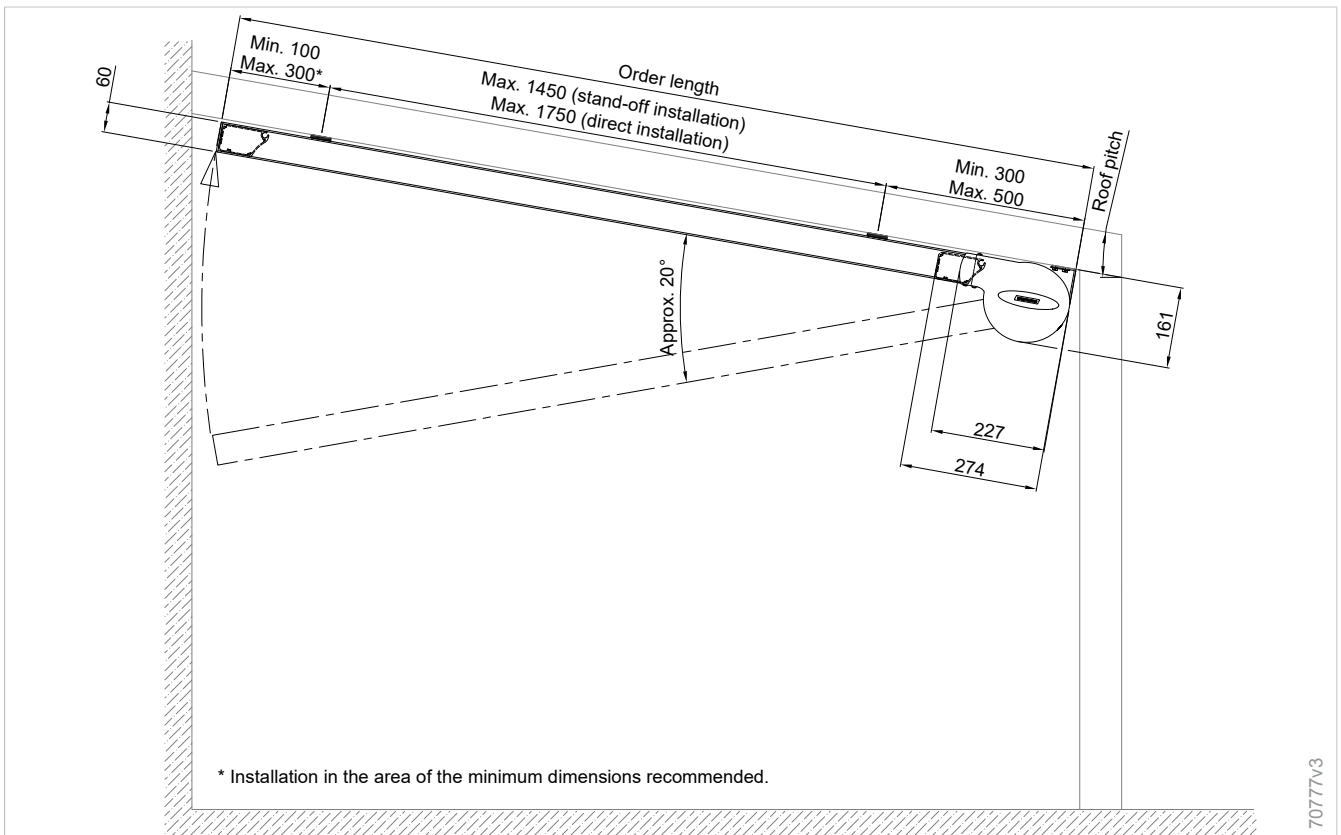
The **drive end or operation side** is always seen from the cover panel in extension direction.

**Order width** = guide rail axis to guide rail axis.

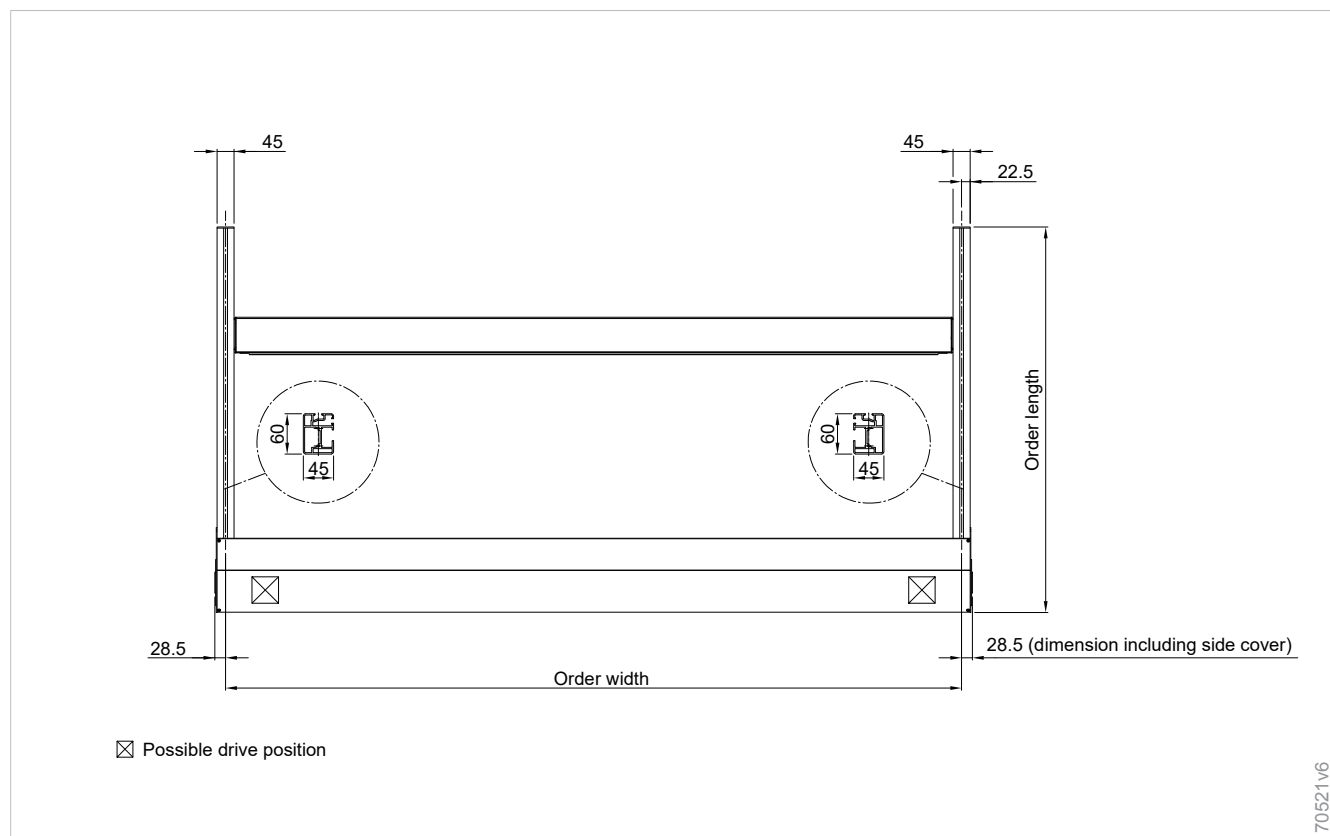
## Measuring instructions - W10



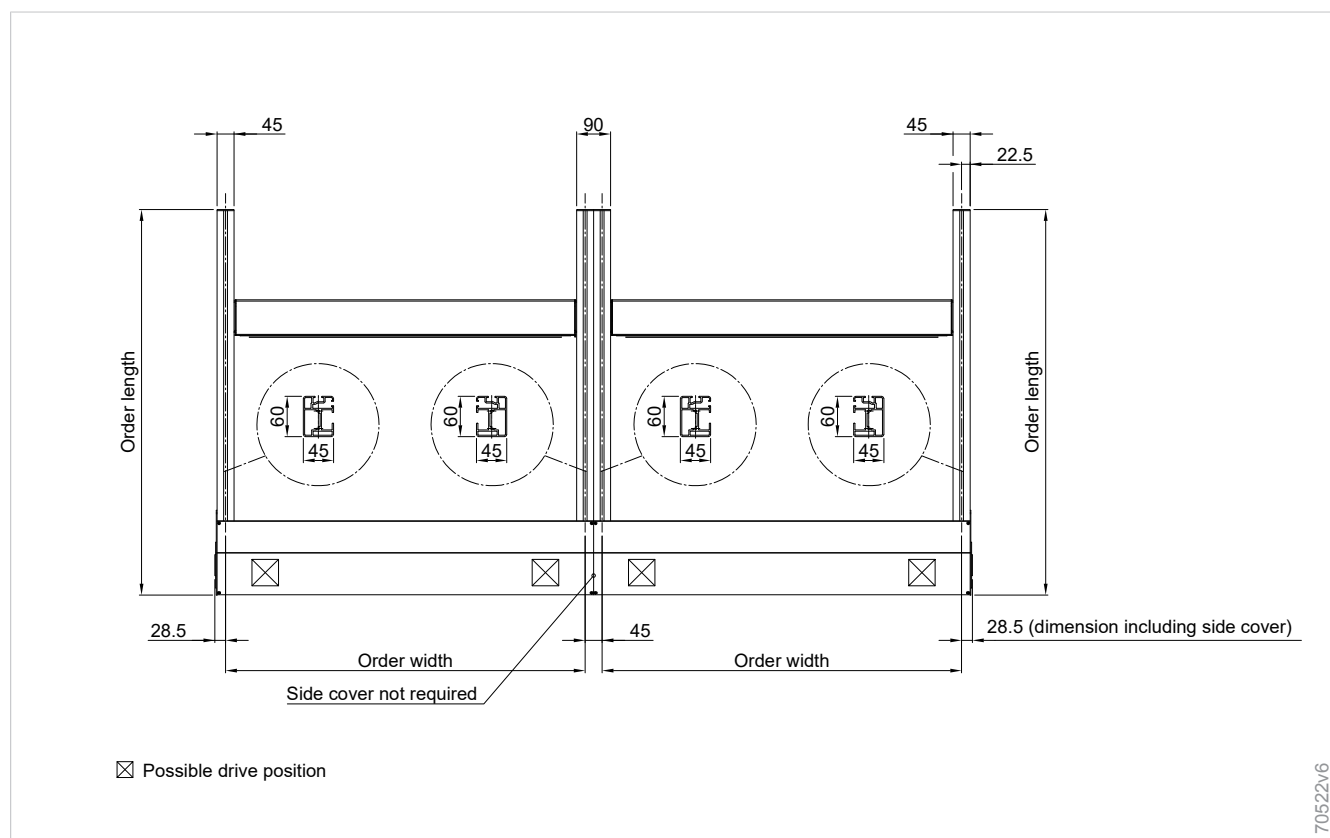
## Direction of movement "from bottom to top" - W10



## Individual unit - W10



## Series-mounted unit - W10



## Quantity determination

### Number of brackets

| Configuration variants         | Order width    | Number |
|--------------------------------|----------------|--------|
| Components                     |                |        |
| Wall bracket / Ceiling bracket | 0 - 4000 mm    | 2      |
| Wall bracket / Ceiling bracket | 4001 - 6500 mm | 3      |

### Number of guide rail brackets

| Configuration variants                      | Order length   | Number |
|---------------------------------------------|----------------|--------|
| Components                                  |                |        |
| Guide rail bracket - stand-off installation | 0 - 2000 mm    | 2      |
| Guide rail bracket - stand-off installation | 2001 - 3500 mm | 3      |
| Guide rail bracket - stand-off installation | 3501 - 5000 mm | 4      |
| Guide rail bracket - stand-off installation | 5001 - 6000 mm | 5      |
| Guide rail bracket - direct installation    | 0 - 2400 mm    | 2      |
| Guide rail bracket - direct installation    | 2401 - 4000 mm | 3      |
| Guide rail bracket - direct installation    | 4001 - 6000 mm | 4      |

#### Guide rail bracket - stand-off installation:

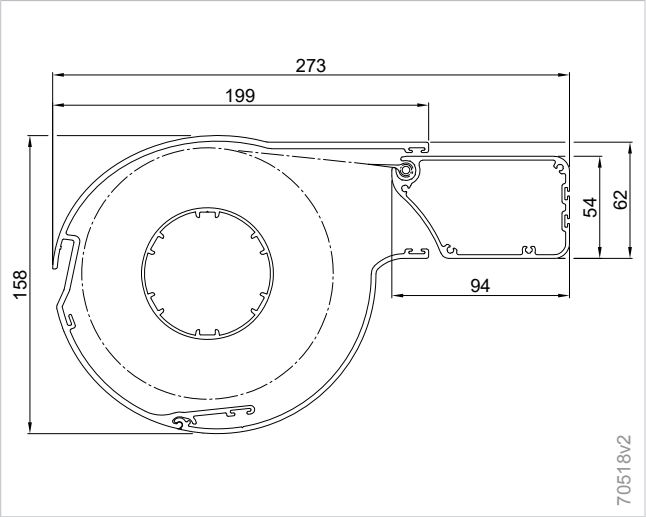
- H31
- H49
- H61
- H101
- H102
- SL06
- SL09
- SL10

#### Guide rail bracket - direct installation

- H48
- H52
- H53
- SL01-05
- SL07
- SL08
- SL11

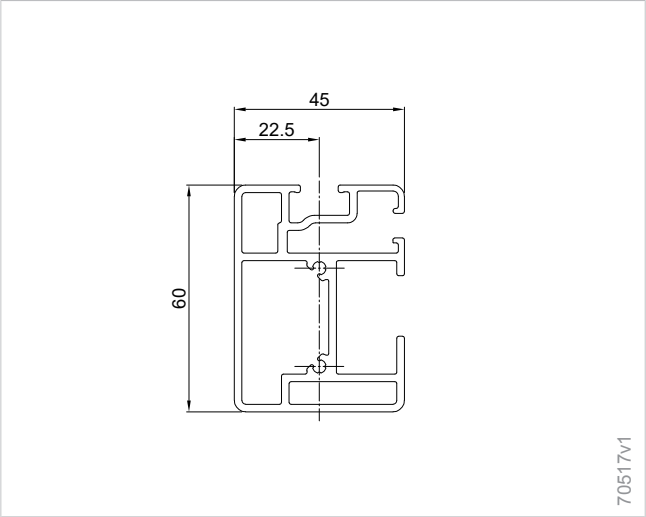
# Details

Cover panel with front rail - W10/W10<sup>2</sup>



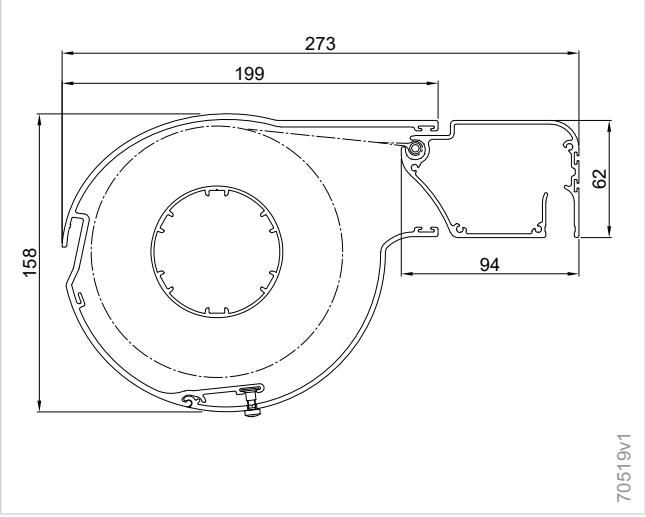
70518v2

Guide rail - W10/W10<sup>2</sup>



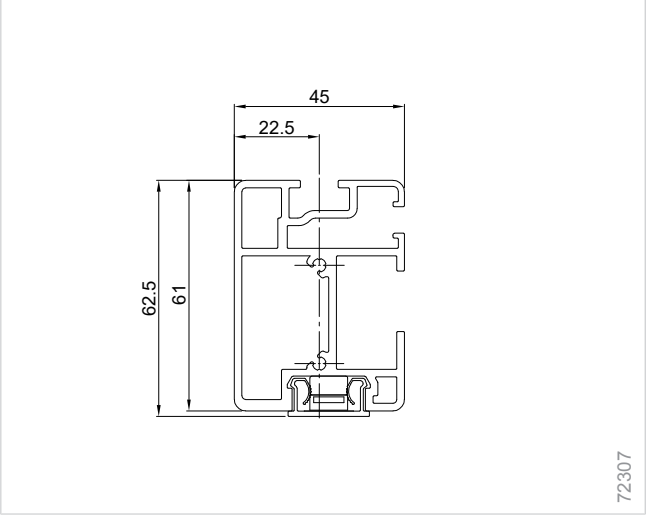
70517v1

Cover panel with front rail for valance roller blind - W10



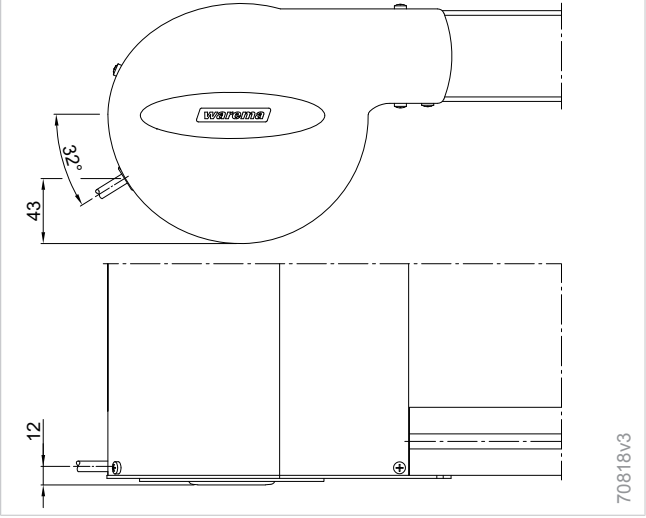
70519v1

Guide rail with integrated LED lighting - W10



72307

Cable exit - W10/W10<sup>2</sup>/W20



70818v3

Planning

Terrea

Perea

Patio  
side screens

Climara

Supplementary  
accessories

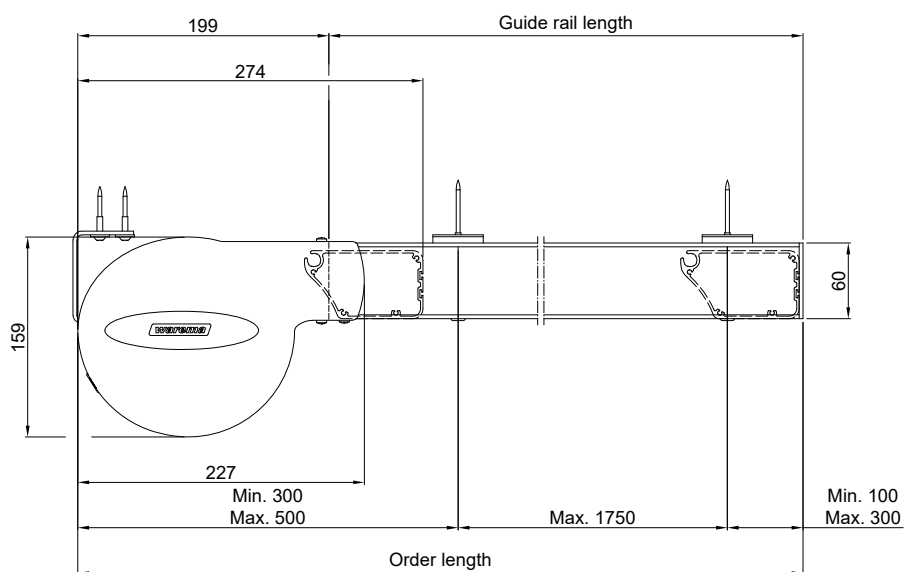
Components

Drive  
variants

Standards

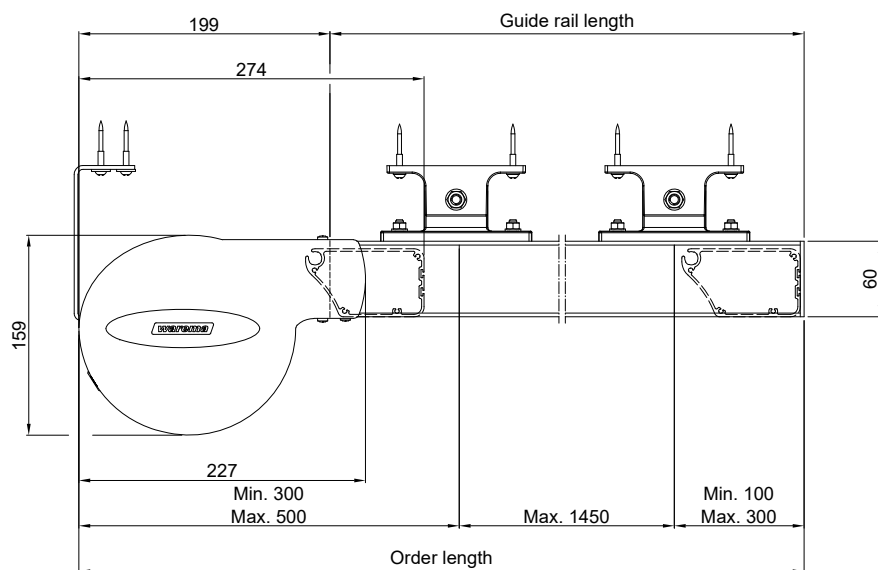


# Installation, distance 6.5 mm - W10



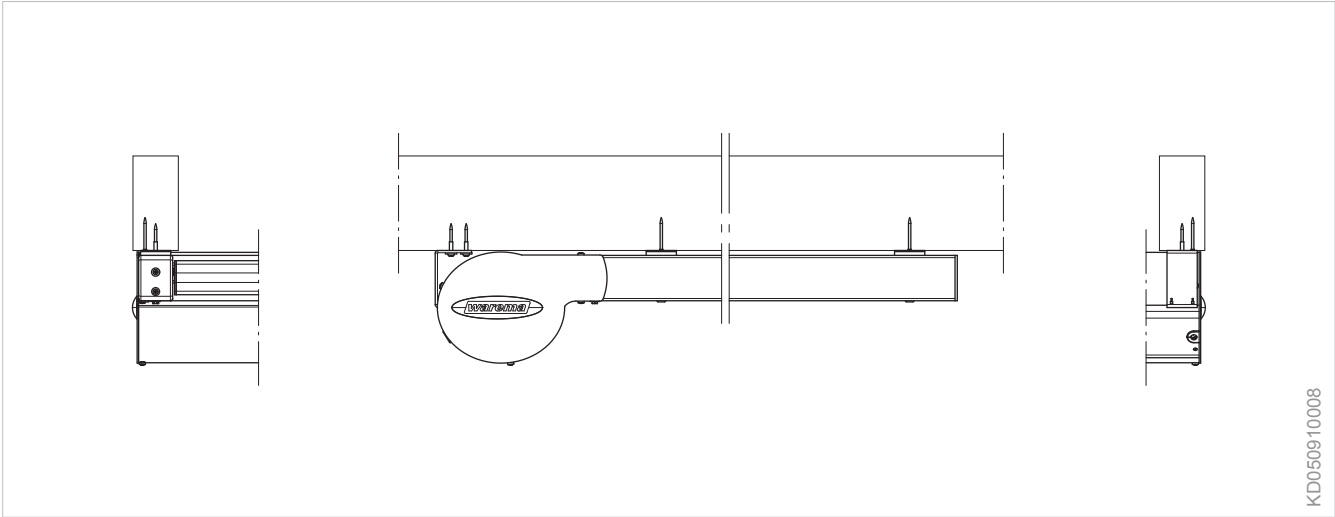
70774v3

# Installation, distance 60 mm - W10



70775v3

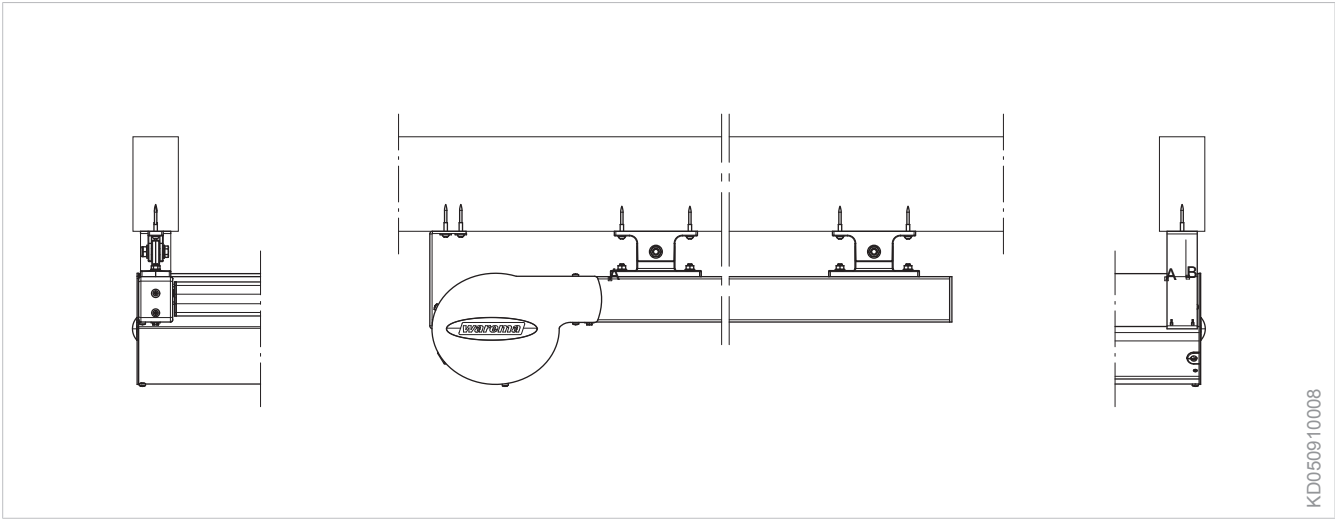
Installation, distance 6.5 mm, bracket no. 48 with ceiling bracket - W10



Planning

Terrea

Installation, distance 60 mm, bracket no. 101 with ceiling bracket - W10



Perea

Patio  
side screens

**Climara**

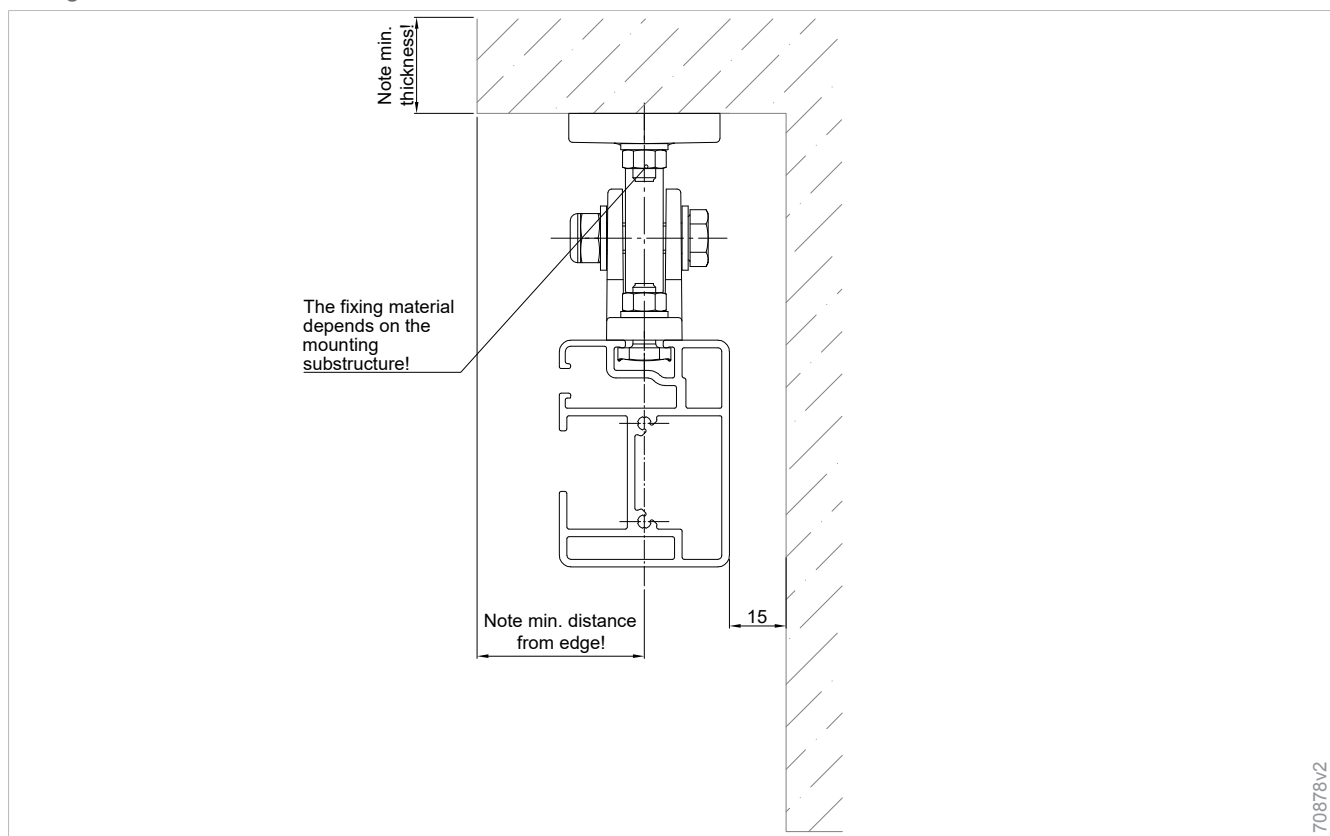
Supplementary  
accessories

Components

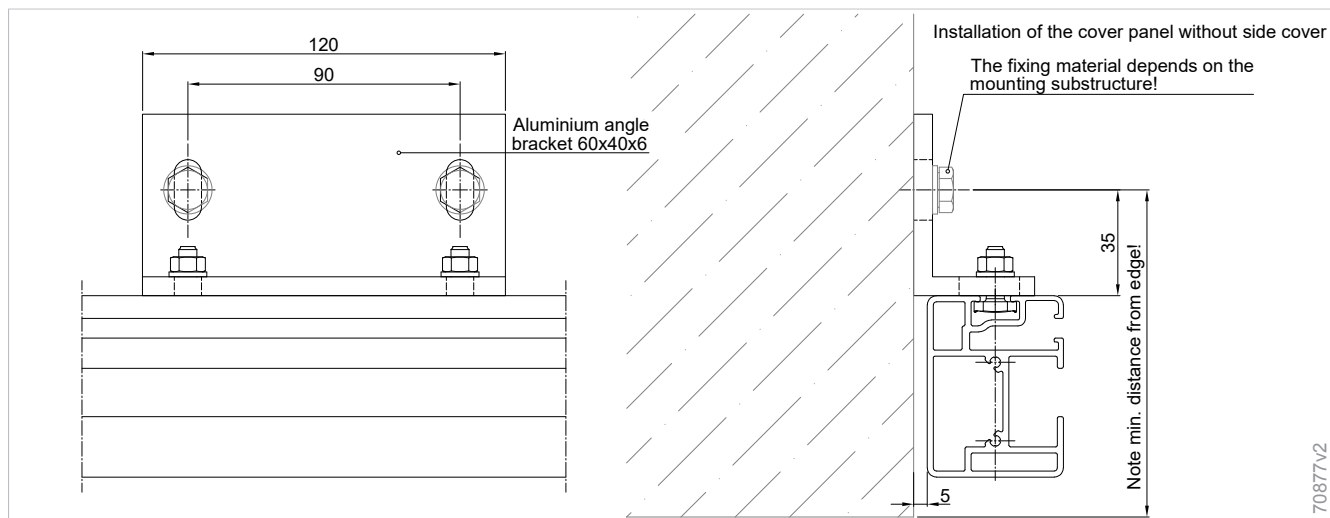
Drive  
variants

Standards

## Ceiling installation - W10



## Wall installation - W10/W10<sup>2</sup>



## Additional product information

### VUNO model

Conservatory awnings Climara can be used with a "from bottom to top" direction of movement.

#### Notes:

- Each awning section requires two guide rails.
- Because the cover panel opens in the extension direction, there is an increased risk of the fabric becoming soiled.
- State clearly on the order form: Direction of movement "from bottom to top".
- State the roof pitch angle when ordering.

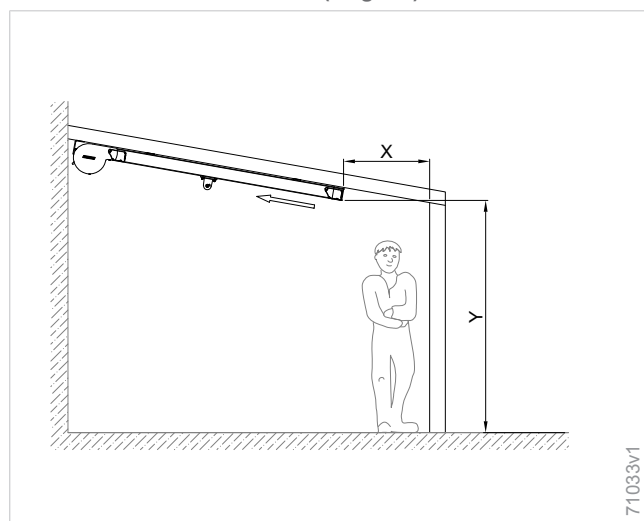
### Safety distances for automatic operation - under-glass conservatory awnings Climara

#### Warning!

If the **minimum distance Y** of **2.5 m** from the front rail to the pedestrian area is not maintained, for **automatic, unsupervised operation** of the conservatory awning, special protective measures (mechanical shielding, etc.) must be implemented to prevent risk of crushing and injury. When retracting and extending the awning, do not reach into any movable parts (e.g. between front rail and guide rail or between front rail and housing) or pull on the awning!

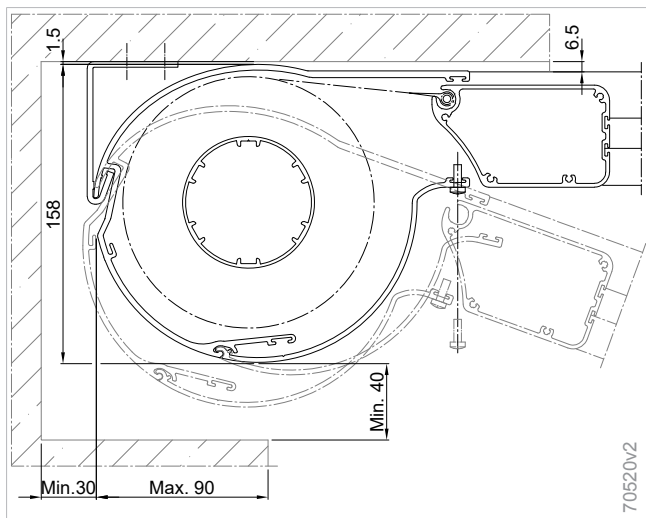
The **minimum distance X** between the extending front rail and any fixed or movable object must be at least **400 mm** if there is an accessible area in between.

Clearance/minimum distances (diagram) for internal units

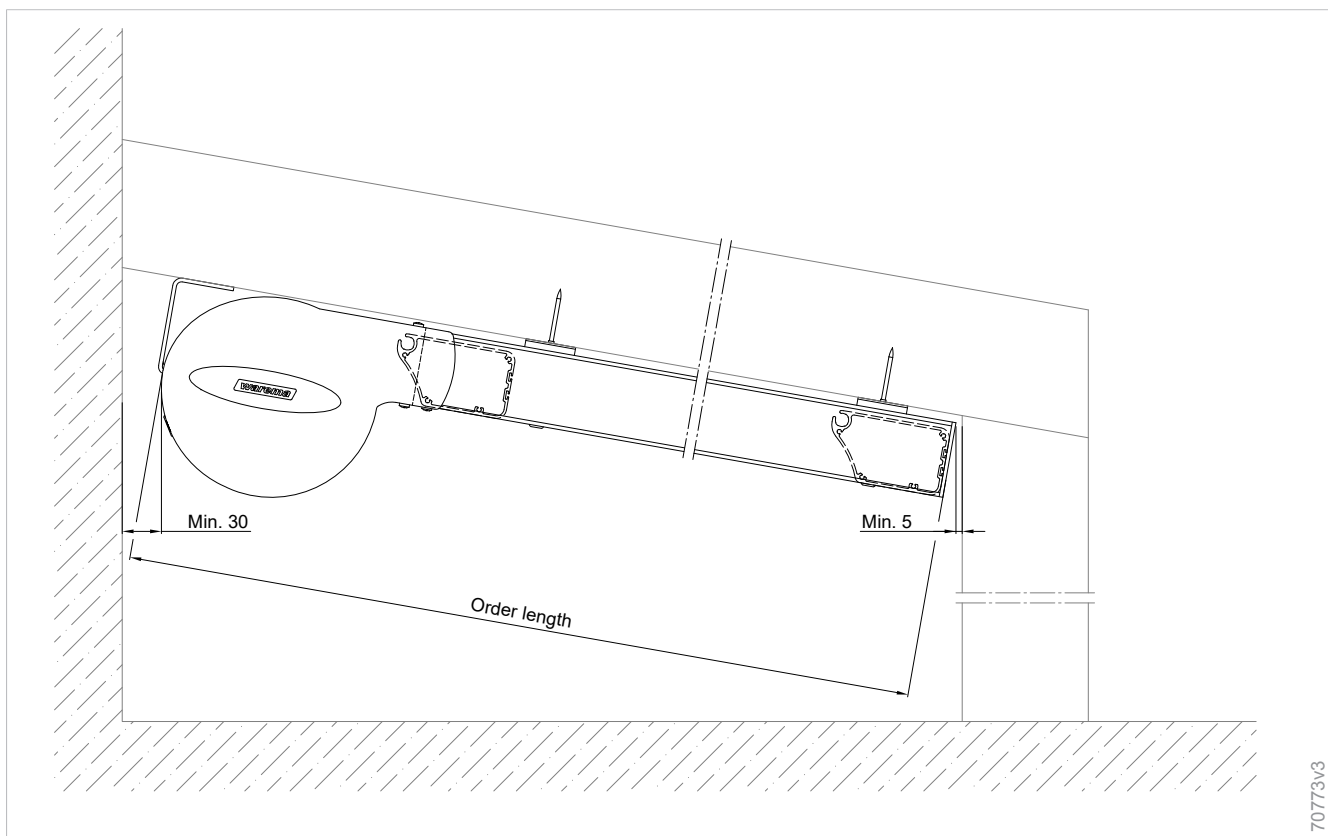


## Mounting examples

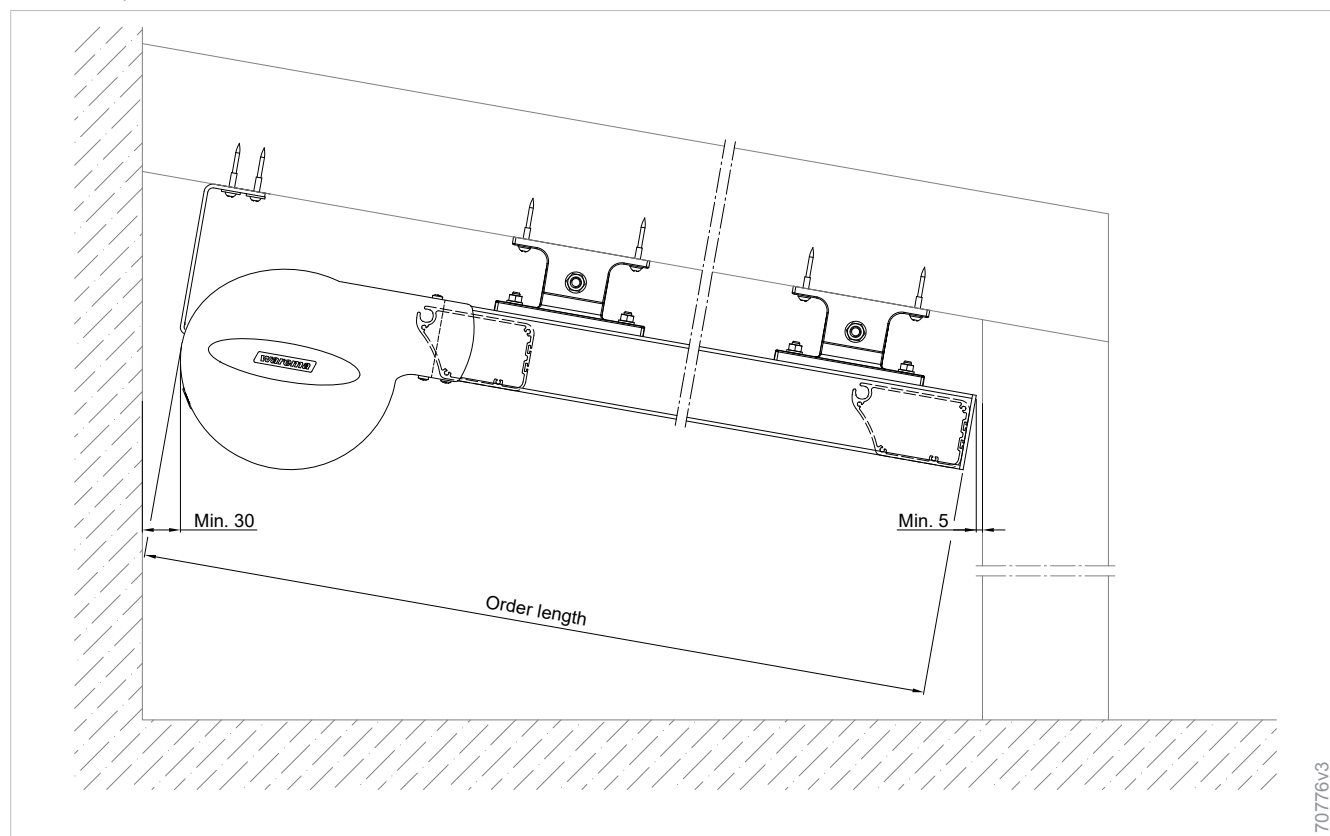
### Space for installing cover panels on consoles - W10



### Installation, distance 6.5 mm - W10



## Installation, distance 60 mm - W10



Planning

Terrea

Perea

Patio  
side screens

Climara

Supplementary  
accessories

Components

Drive  
variants

Standards

## Further information

Calculate the individual suitable and permissible fixing materials  
<http://warema2.atbit5.de/app/Plugcalculator.asp?lang=EN>



Use our free planning programme to plan your sun protection systems  
<https://sonnenschutzplaner.com/>



Configure and plan your product with myWAREMA  
<https://my.warema.com>



Experience the range of colours and fabrics of the WAREMA collections  
<https://www.warema.de/Tools/Kollektionsberater.php>



TechDataPLUS Conservatory awnings  
<https://docs.warema.com/1.1447.7>





# Conservatory awnings Climara, on glass

|                                      |     |
|--------------------------------------|-----|
| Conservatory awning Climara D3.....  | 212 |
| Conservatory awning Climara W7.....  | 226 |
| Conservatory awning Climara W19..... | 232 |
| Conservatory awning Climara W20..... | 244 |

Planning

Terrea

Perea

Patio  
side screens

**Climara**

Supplementary  
accessories

Components

Drive  
variants

Standards





## Conservatory awnings Climara, on glass

### Conservatory awning Climara D3

#### Sophisticated

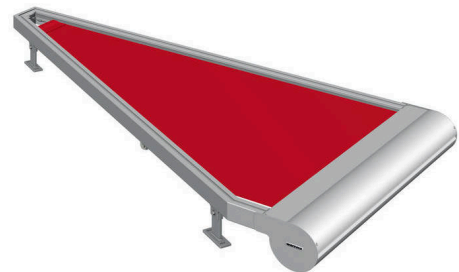
Shading of triangular and trapezoid glass surfaces in order to keep temperatures in the conservatory at a pleasant level.

#### Combined

The D3 conservatory awning is designed to be combined with the W19 or W20 conservatory awning. If awnings are positioned adjacent to one another, a uniform appearance is created.

#### Effective

Good fabric tension thanks to the pre-tensioned spring mechanism.



#### Construction limit values

|                      |                   |
|----------------------|-------------------|
| Maximum order width  | 4000 mm           |
| Maximum order length | 5000 mm           |
| Maximum order area   | 10 m <sup>2</sup> |

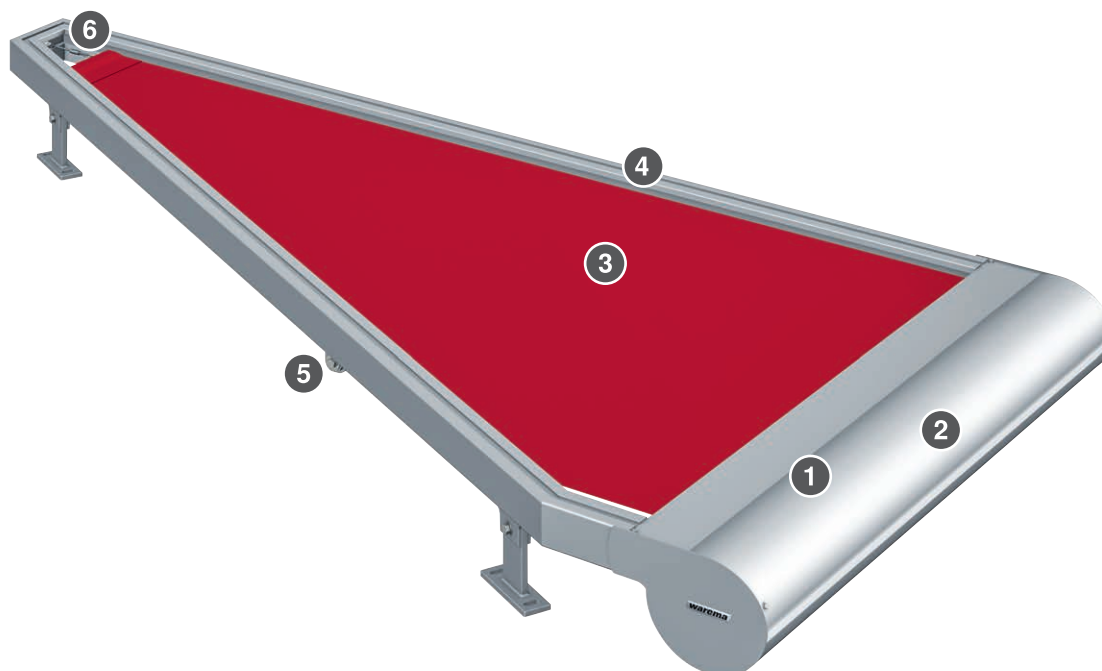


#### Product characteristics

- External conservatory awning for special shapes
- Back-pull with traction cable
- Combinable with W19 VUNO or W20 VUNO
- Also can be used as an internal internal sun shading system upon request

# Components

## Conservatory awning Climara D3



- 1 Cover panel
- 2 Shaft
- 3 Fabric

- 4 Guide rail
- 5 Reinforcement profile
- 6 Traction cable

### Cover panel

#### Cover panel - D3/W9/W10/W10<sup>2</sup>/W19/W20

|          |                     |
|----------|---------------------|
| Material | Aluminium, extruded |
| Surface  | Powder-coated       |
| Width    | 199 mm              |
| Height   | 158 mm              |

#### + Side cover

#### Cover panel side cover - D3/W9/W10/W10<sup>2</sup>/W19/W20

|          |               |
|----------|---------------|
| Material | Aluminium     |
| Surface  | Powder-coated |
| Width    | 227 mm        |
| Height   | 159 mm        |

### Shaft

#### Fabric shaft Ø 85 mm

|          |                  |
|----------|------------------|
| Material | Galvanised steel |
| Surface  | Plain            |
| Profile  | Groove tube      |
| Diameter | 85 mm            |

### Reinforcement profile

#### Reinforcement profile Ø 40 mm

|          |                     |
|----------|---------------------|
| Material | Aluminium, extruded |
| Surface  | Powder-coated       |
| Diameter | 40 mm               |

### Bracket

- Bracket H11
- Bracket H46
- Bracket H31
- Bracket H34
- Bracket H36
- Bracket H41
- Bracket H60
- Bracket H61
- Bracket H62
- Bracket H101
- Bracket H102

+ see "Guide rail bracket - Conservatory awnings Climara", Page 320

## Guide variants

- Back-pull

## Guide rail

### Guide rail - D3/W9/W19

|          |                     |
|----------|---------------------|
| Material | Aluminium, extruded |
| Surface  | Powder-coated       |
| Width    | 45 mm               |
| Height   | 64 mm               |

## Pulling element

### Traction cable

|                 |                         |
|-----------------|-------------------------|
| Material        | Polyester               |
| Material colour | White                   |
| Material, notes | Made from DYNEEMA fibre |

## Drive variants

- Motor

## Motor

- ZM REA

## Radio motor, optional

- WMS-MP (WMS)
- W-MP (EWFS)

+ see "Drive variants", Page 367

## Construction limit values

| Configuration variants                                                                                         | Minimum order width | Maximum order width | Maximum order length | Maximum order area |
|----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|---------------------|---------------------|----------------------|--------------------|
| <b>Fabric qualities</b>                                                                                        |                     |                     |                      |                    |
| Standard acrylic fabric - unicoloured / Lumera acrylic fabric - unicoloured / Perfora acrylic / Twilight Pearl | 820 mm              | 4000 mm             | 5000 mm              | 10 m <sup>2</sup>  |
| Soltis 92                                                                                                      | 820 mm              | 3000 mm             | 4000 mm              | 6 m <sup>2</sup>   |

### Reinforcement profile:

- For order lengths of 2501 mm and greater, a reinforcement profile is used.
- It is located at 1/3 of the order length away from the cover panel.

### Angle A:

- Angle A must be between 19° and 45° in the **trapezoid** model.
- For the **triangle** model, angle A can be max. 45°.
- For **other angles**, please contact our Awnings Applied Engineering department.
- There may be increased wave formation in the limit range of the sizes. This, however, does not impair the functioning of the unit.
- There is always a piece of straight guide rail between the cover panel and angle bracket A. The dimension from the cover panel back edge to the end of the straight guide rail is 300 mm and cannot be changed.

### Calculation of the order area:

- Triangle = (order width x order length)/2
- Trapezoid = (width of the front end + order width)/2 x order length

**Use as an internal sun shading system:** Conservatory awnings D3 can also be used as **internal sun shading systems** on request.

## Colours

- WAREMA Colour World

+ see "WAREMA Colour World", Page 12

## Fabric qualities

- Standard acrylic fabric - unicoloured
- Lumera acrylic fabric - unicoloured

Fabric qualities, optional:

- Perfora acrylic
- Soltis 92
- Twilight Pearl

+ see "Awning collection", Page 356

## Dimensions

Weight per running metre: 15 - 17 kg/lfm

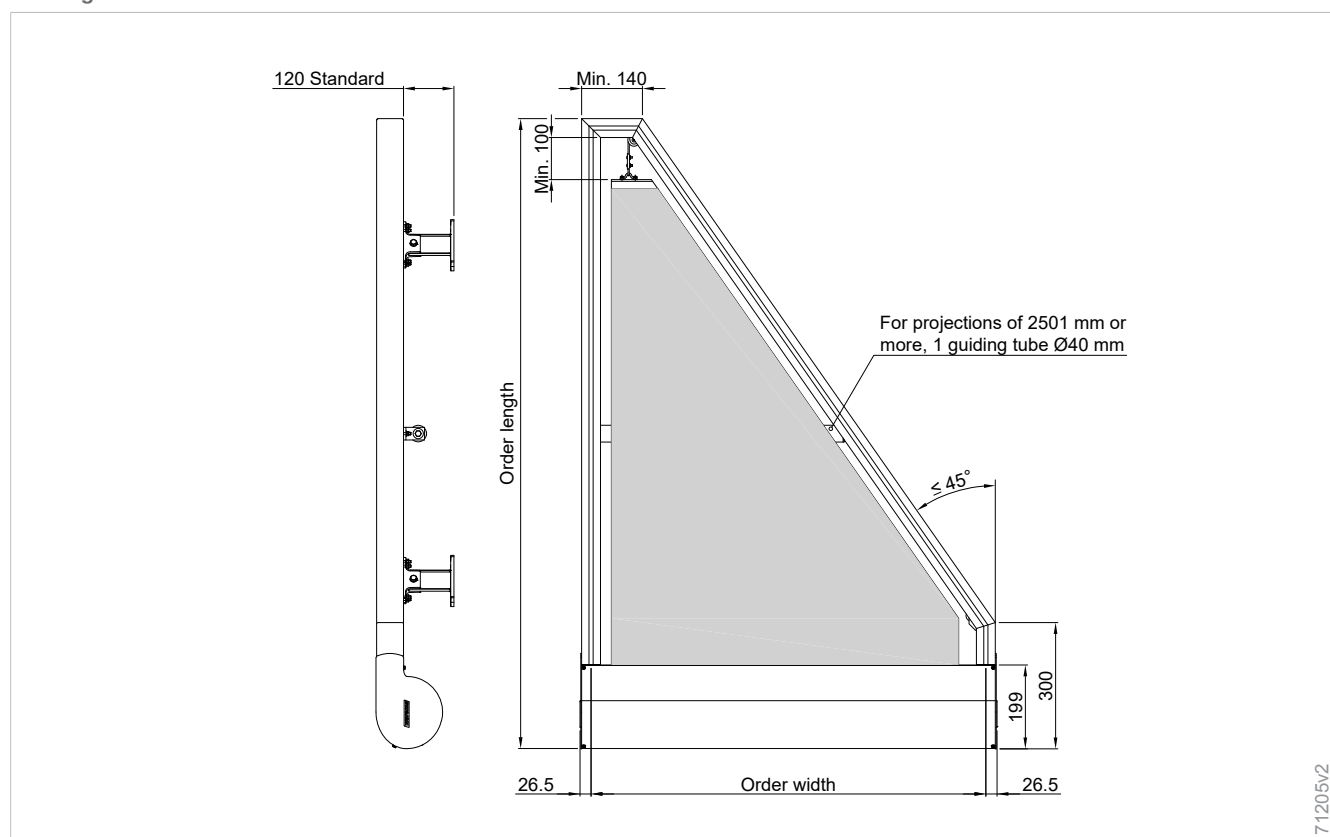
Weight per running metre, notes: Cover panel without guide rail and bracket

## Dimension determination

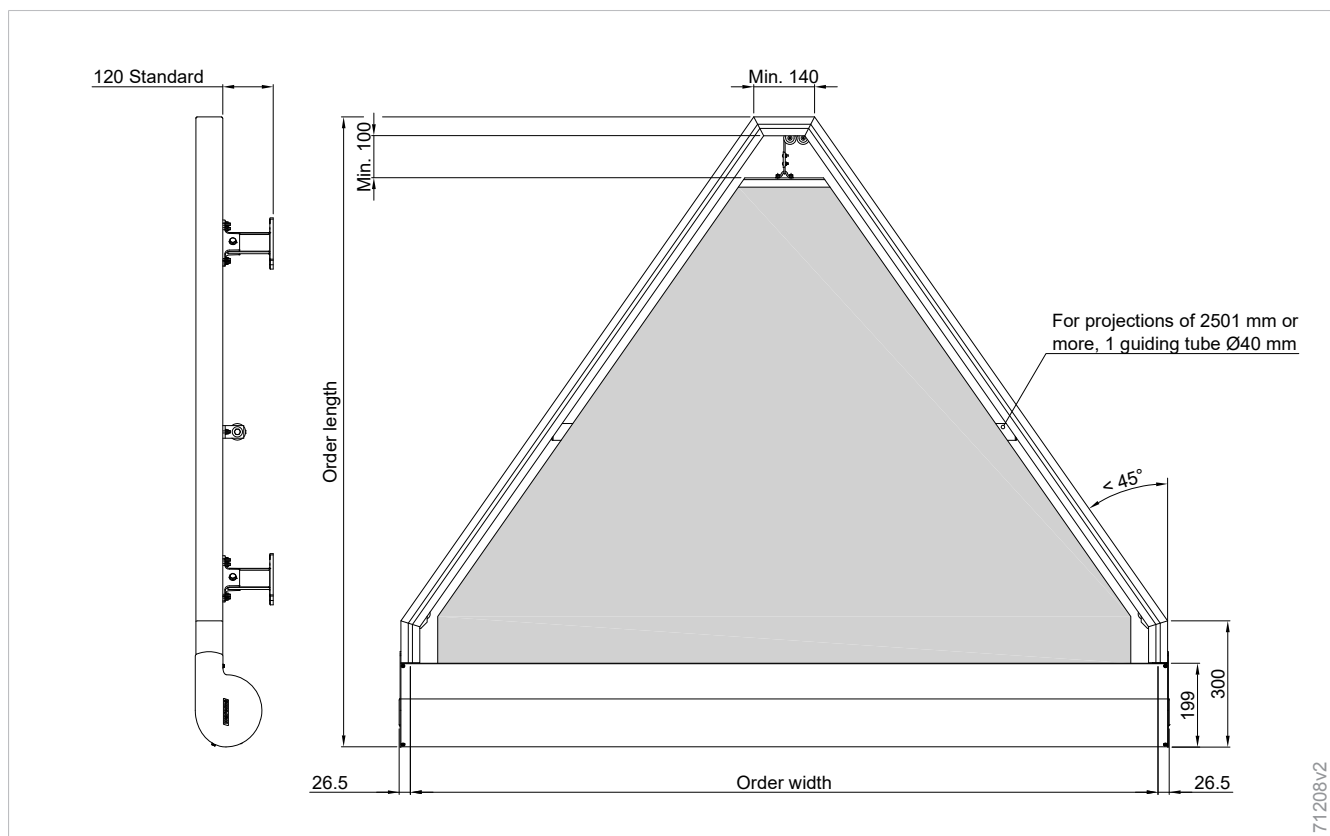
The **drive end or operation side** is always seen from the cover panel in extension direction.

**Order width** = guide rail axis to guide rail axis.

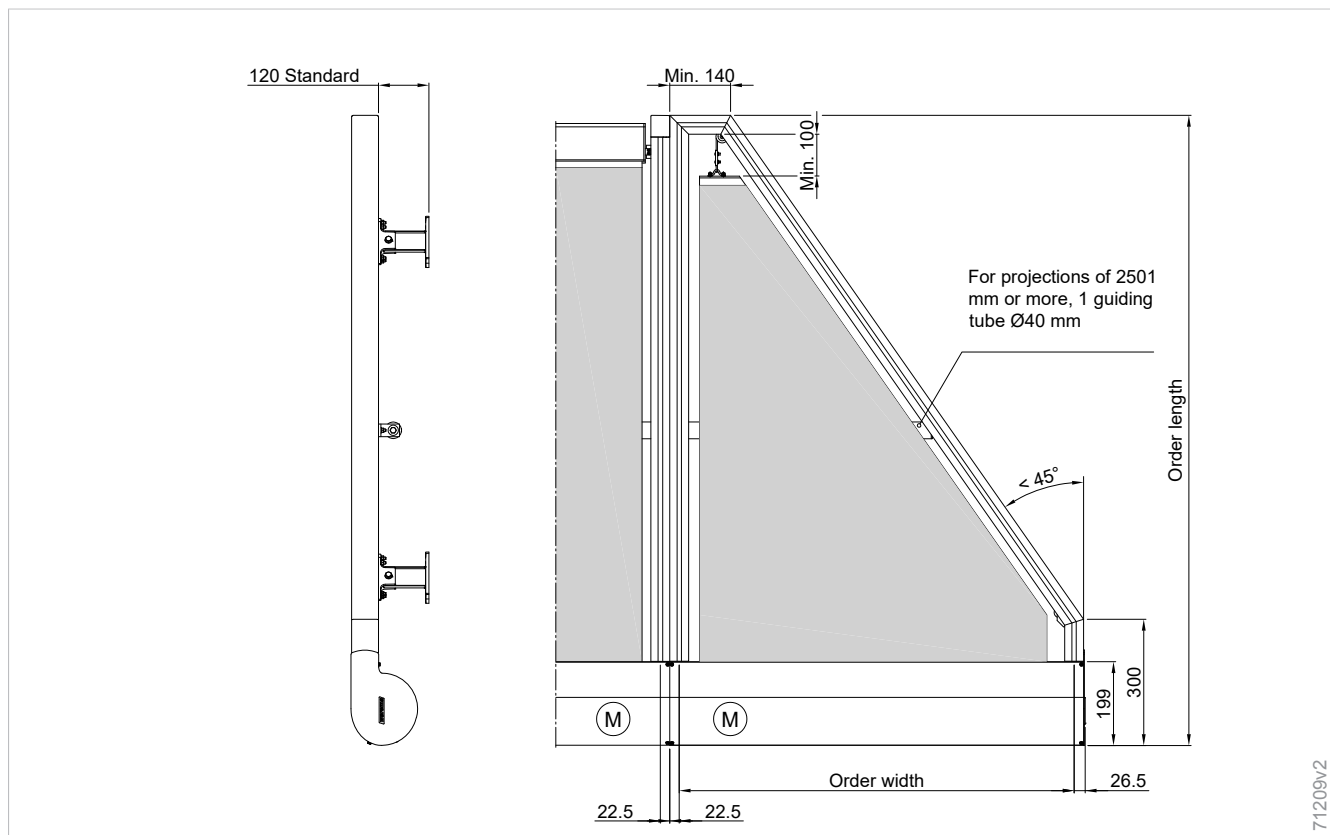
### Rectangular unit - D3



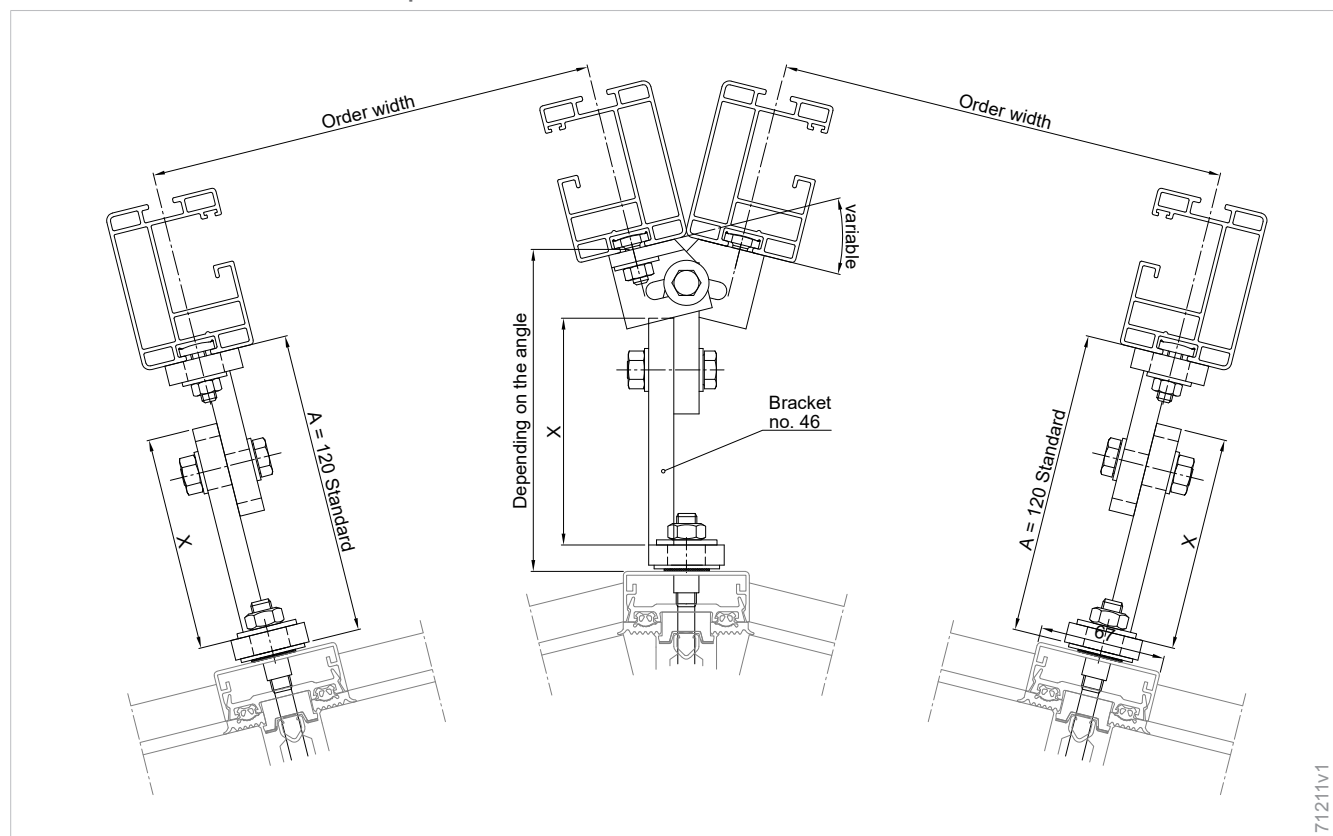
## Isosceles unit - D3



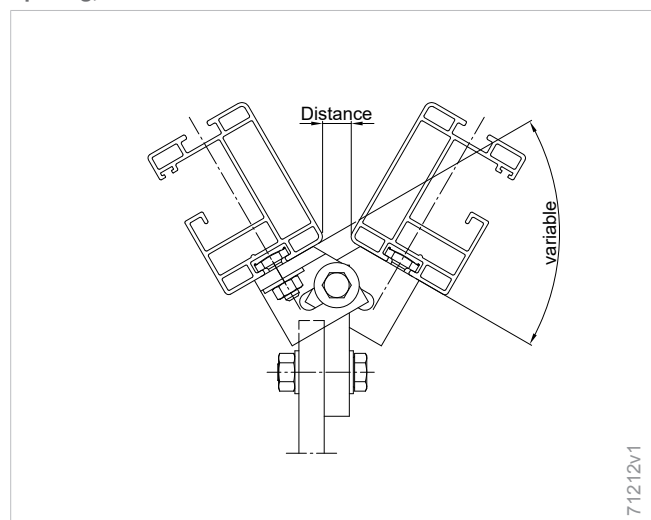
## Connection to a conservatory awning W19 - D3



## Guide rails with bracket no. 46 on arris profile - D3



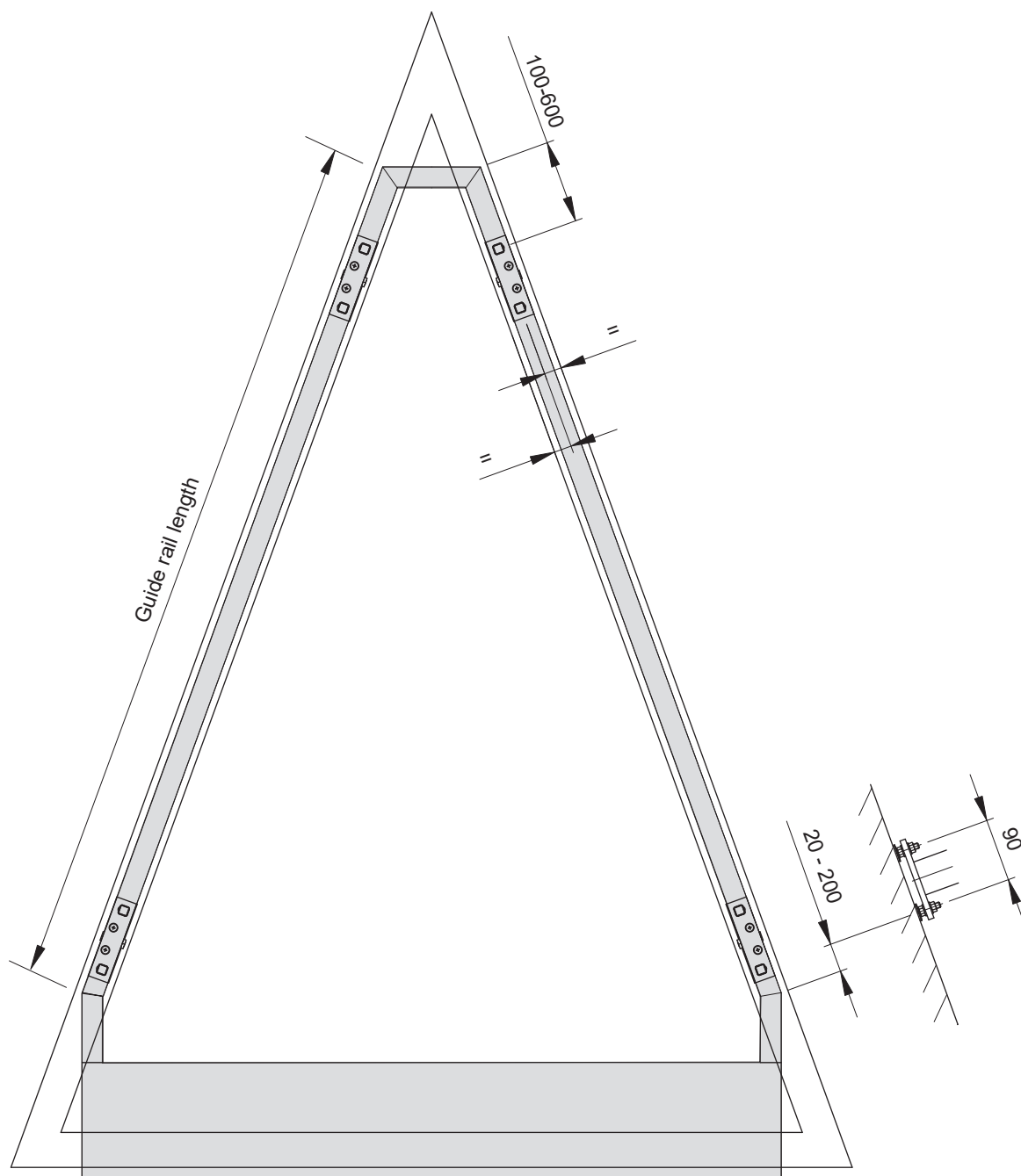
## Spacing, bracket no. 46 - D3



The bracket no. 46 is designed for a distance between the guide rails of 5 mm.

### Guide rail brackets

| Guide rail length<br>in mm | Guide rail brackets<br>per rail |
|----------------------------|---------------------------------|
| up to 2500                 | 2                               |
| 2501 to 4500               | 3                               |
| 4501 to 6000               | 4                               |



kd050420014v1

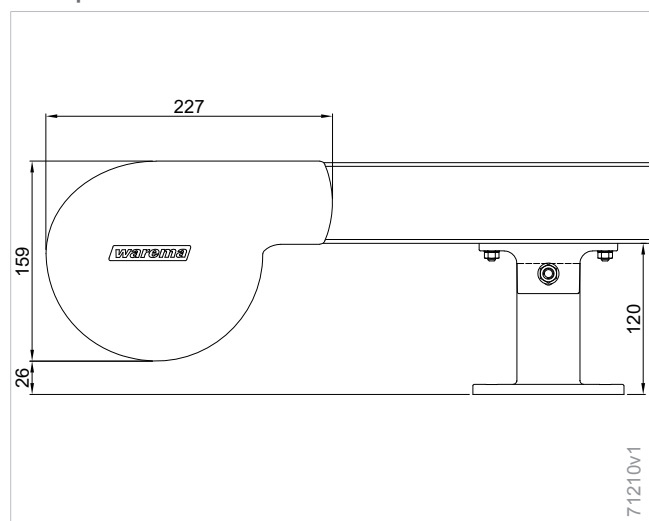
## Quantity determination

### Number of guide rail brackets

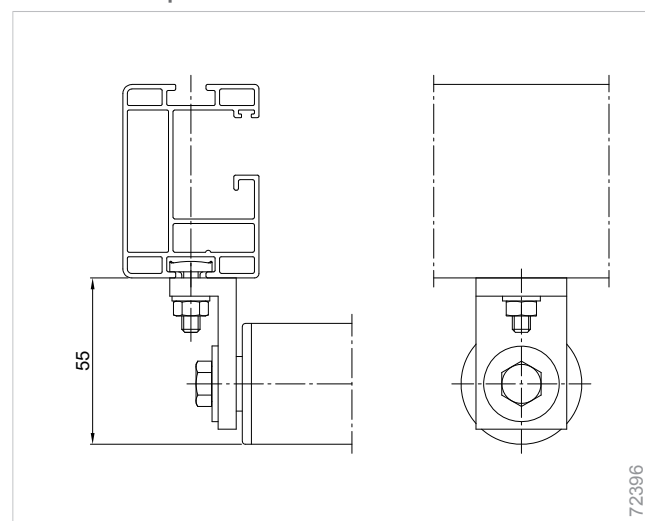
| Configuration variants                            | Order length   | Number |
|---------------------------------------------------|----------------|--------|
| <b>Components</b>                                 |                |        |
| Guide rail bracket - Conservatory awnings Climara | 0 - 2500 mm    | 2      |
| Guide rail bracket - Conservatory awnings Climara | 2501 - 4500 mm | 3      |
| Guide rail bracket - Conservatory awnings Climara | 4501 - 6000 mm | 4      |

## Details

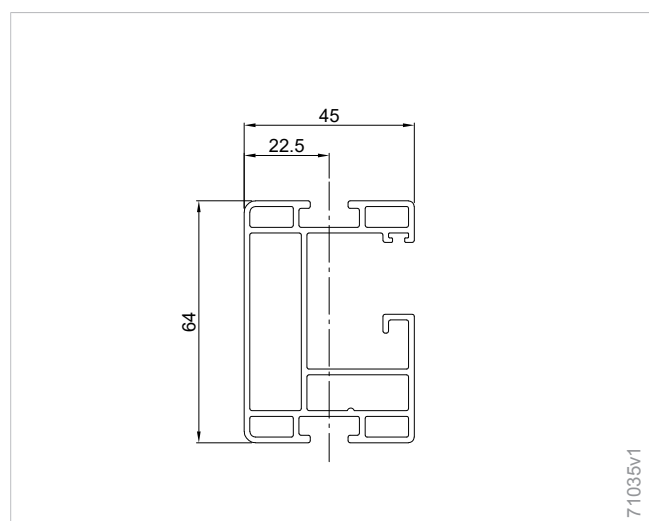
Cover panel - D3



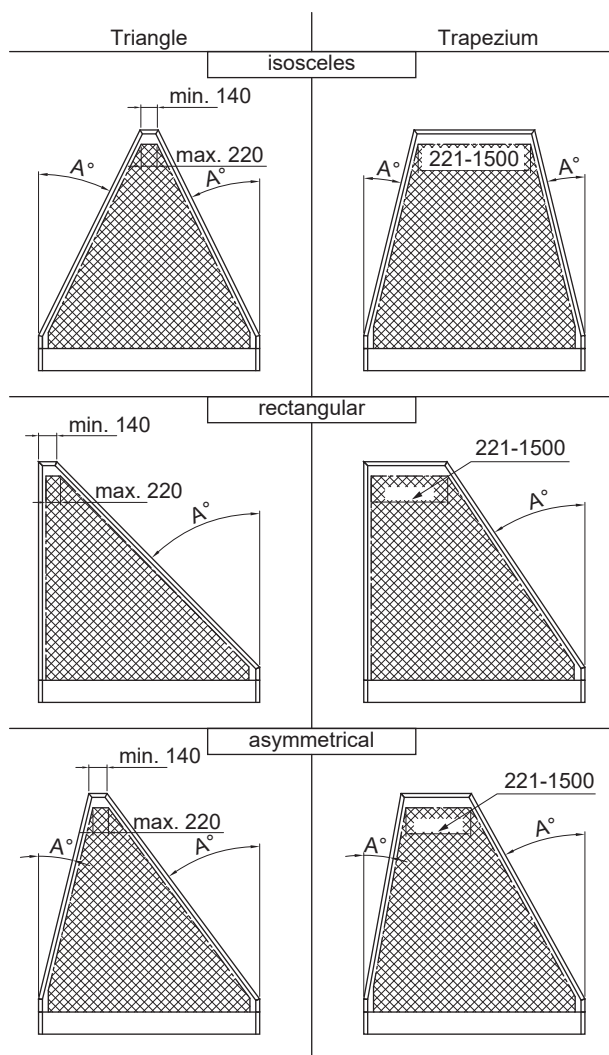
Reinforcement profile Ø 40 mm



Guide rail - D3/W9/W19







kd050420037v1

## Additional product information

### Measurement - Climara D3

#### When measuring, check:

- How is the sun shading system positioned on the building (exposure to wind, courtyard, corner of building, floor level)? Take photos if possible.
- What are the local conditions, such as adjacent components or obstacles (house wall, glass edge, roof overhang, etc.)?
- Are any skylights fitted (lift, type)?
- How is the arris profile structured (cover strip, mounting substructure, dimensions)? Design of the other profiles? (Make sketches)
- Is accessibility for installation purposes ensured?
- Where does the motor have to be positioned?
- What is the roof pitch (angle measured from the horizontals)?
- What are the dimensions of the glass (make sketches)?

#### All measurements are actual lengths!

#### The following information must be included in the order:

- Glass angles, widths and heights, mullion lengths, distance to obstacles, protrusions, adjacent obstacles
- Detailed drawing of the profile joints, last fastening point on the pole
- Detail of roof gutter
- Enlarged illustration of the corner details

#### Specifically for pyramids:

Point **with dome** (make sketches)

- If cone-shaped, measure lateral height and diameter.
- If pyramid-shaped, specify the number of sides, measure the edge length and side length.
- Is it movable (lifting of dome for ventilation)?

Point **without dome** (make sketches)

- Make a sketch of the profile joint (important for fixing)

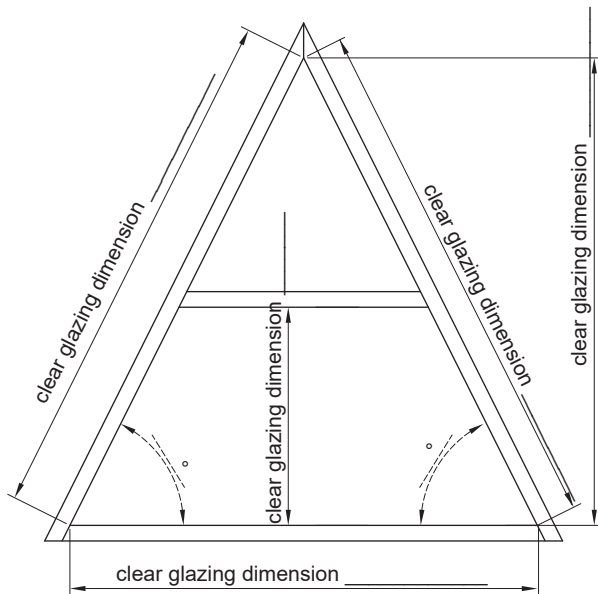
For connecting type W19 or W20, standard guide rail brackets for group units of type W19 and W20 can be used.

Bracket no. 46 allows installation on an arris profile.

## Triangles

**isosceles/asymmetrical**

Pos. \_\_\_\_\_



Covering shell width: \_\_\_\_\_

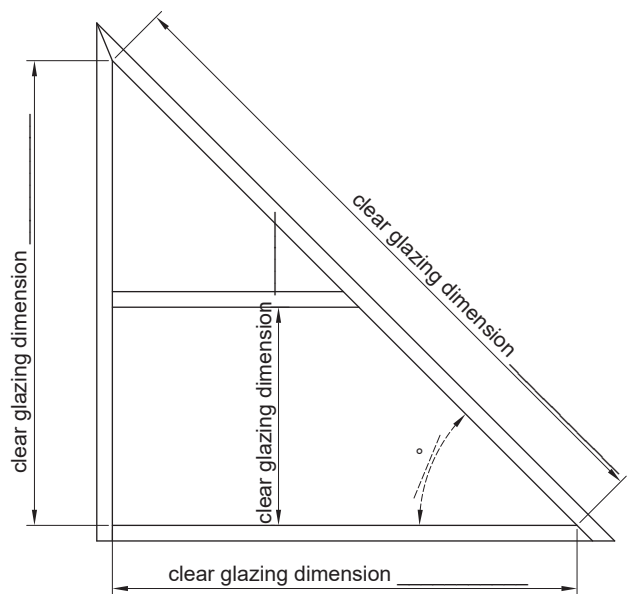
**L**

State drive end

**R**

**rectangular**

Pos. \_\_\_\_\_



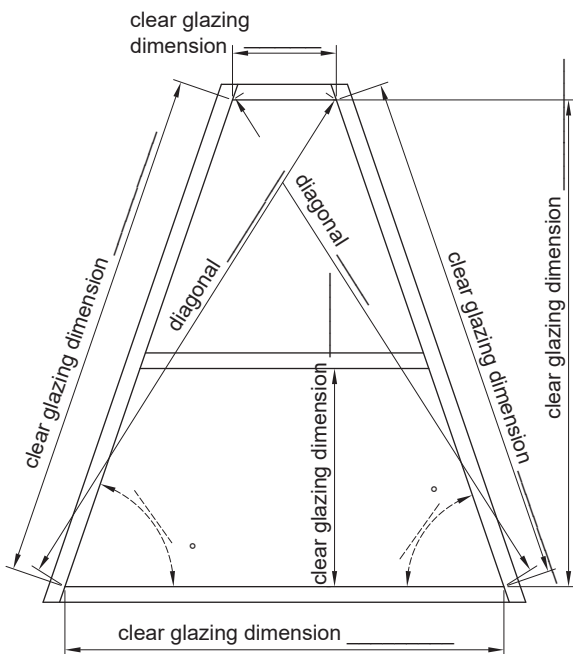
Covering shell width: \_\_\_\_\_

**L**

## Trapezia

**isosceles/asymmetrical**

Pos. \_\_\_\_\_



Covering shell width: \_\_\_\_\_

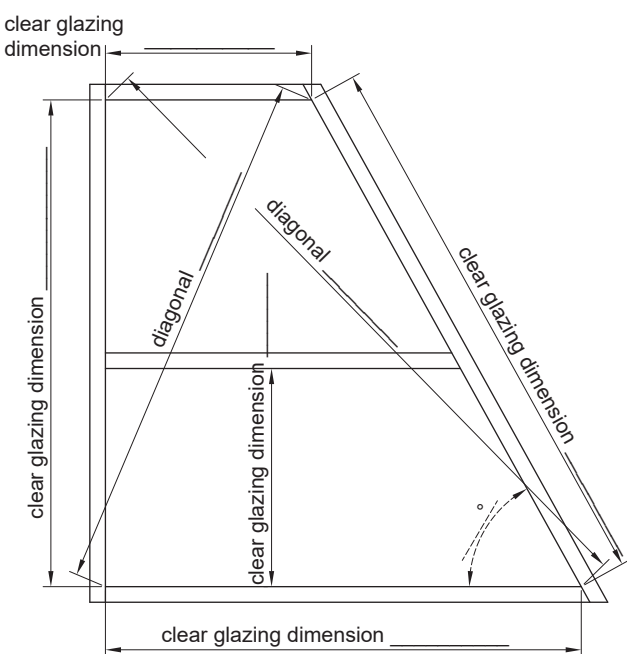
**L**

State drive end

**R**

**rectangular**

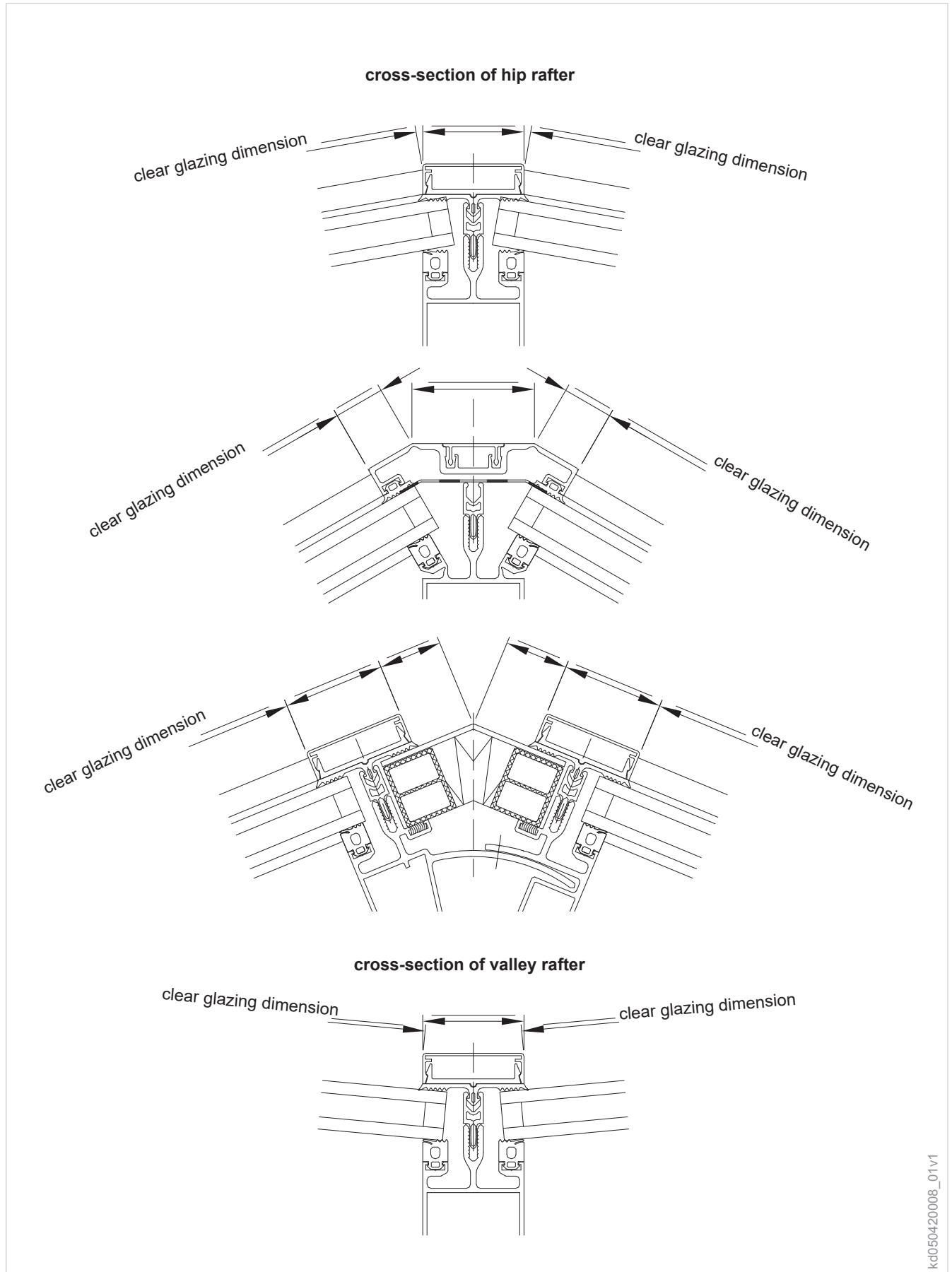
Pos. \_\_\_\_\_



Covering shell width: \_\_\_\_\_

**L**

F333102de\_RSv1



Planning

Terrea

Perea

Patio  
side screens

**Climara**

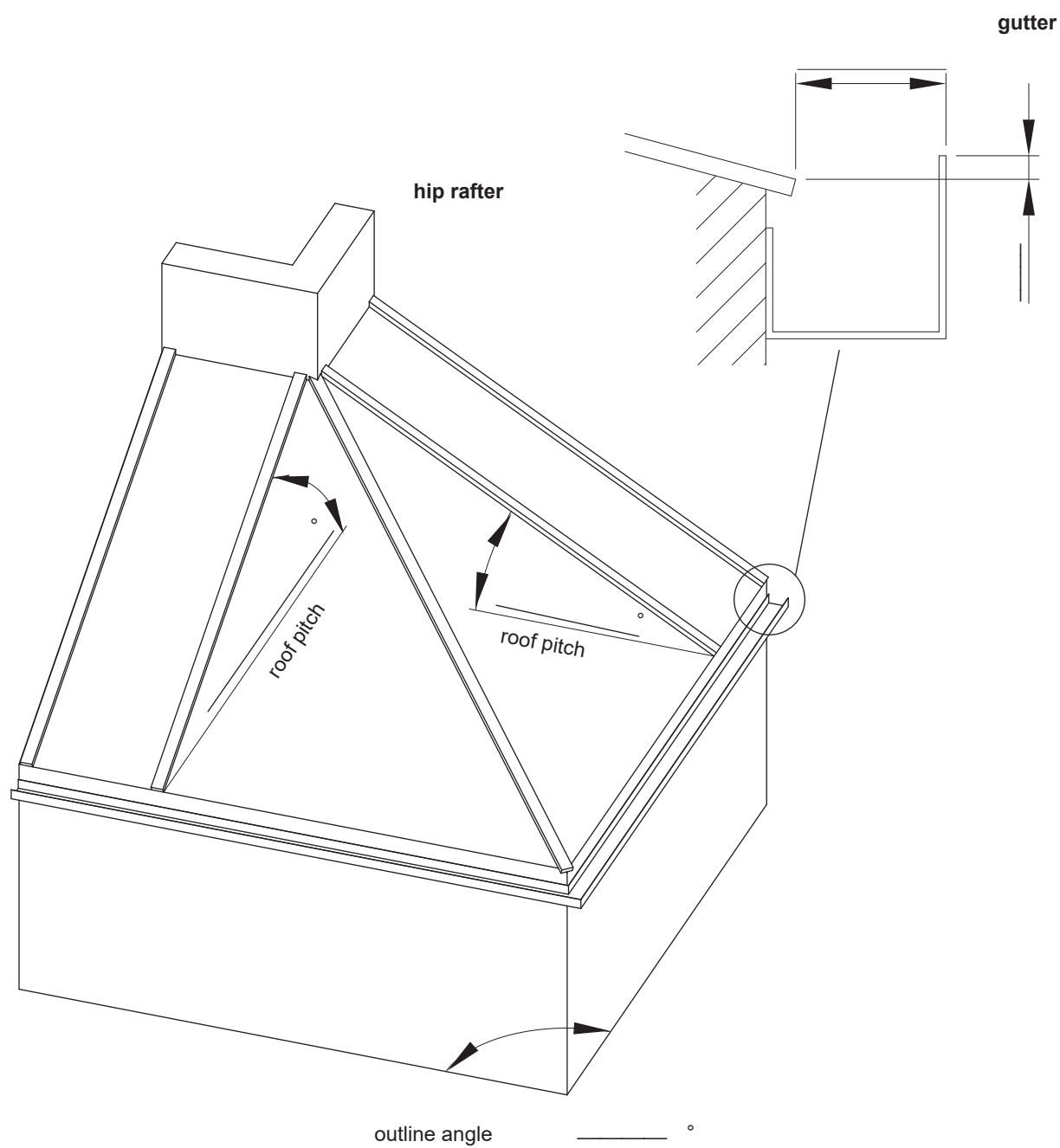
Supplementary  
accessories

Components

Drive  
variants

Standards

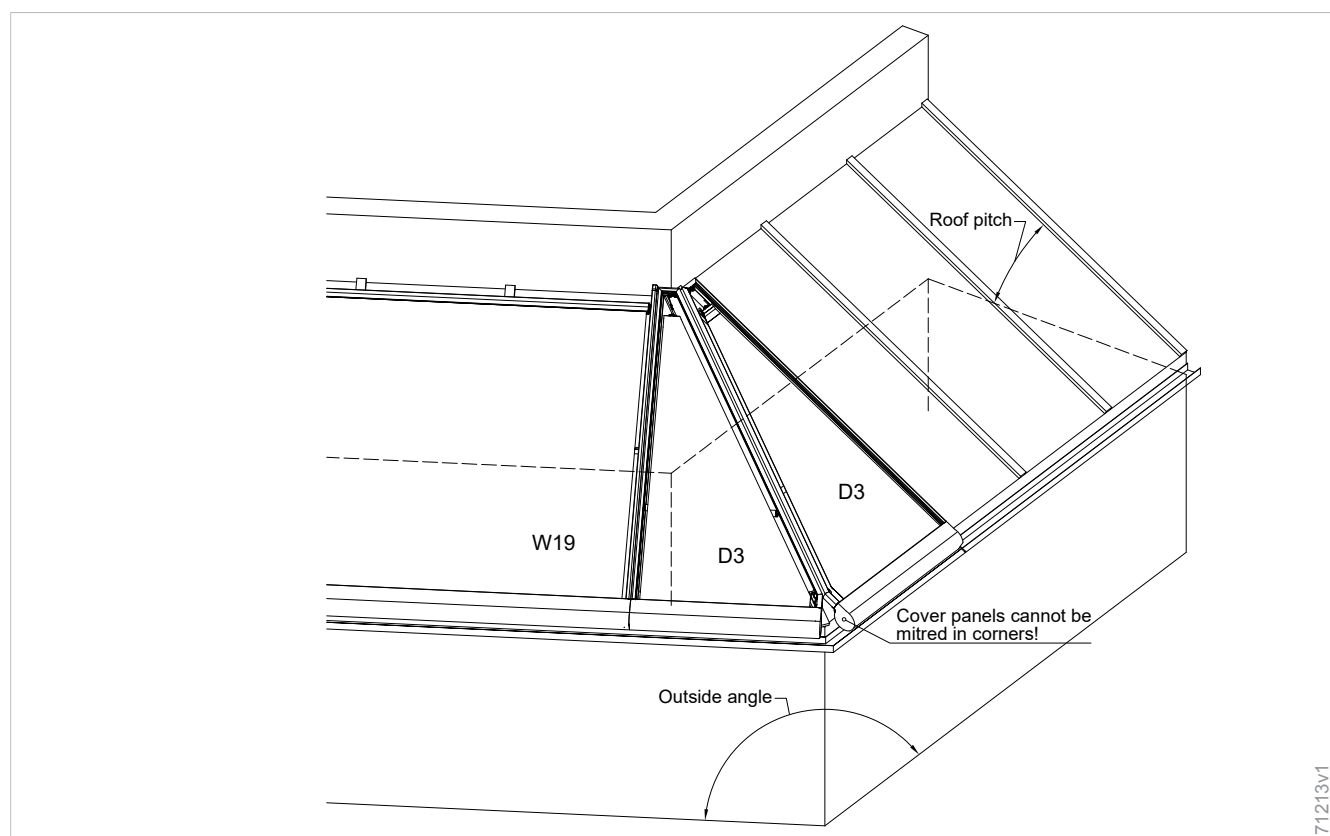
kd050420008\_01v1



kd050420008\_03v1

## Mounting examples

### Corner area - D3



Planning

Terrea

Perea

Patio  
side screens

Climara

Supplementary  
accessories

Components

Drive  
variants

Standards

### Further information

Use our free planning programme to plan your sun protection systems  
<https://sonnenschutzplaner.com/>



Experience the range of colours and fabrics of the WAREMA collections  
<https://www.warema.de/Tools/Kollektionsberater.php>



Calculate the individual suitable and permissible fixing materials  
<http://warema2.atbit5.de/app/Plugcalculator.asp?lang=EN>



TechDataPLUS Conservatory awnings  
<https://docs.warema.com/1.1447.7>





# Conservatory awnings Climara, on glass

## Conservatory awning Climara W7

### Flexible

External sun shading systems for conservatories with hipped or sloped roofs.

### Sophisticated

The optimum fabric tension is achieved by gas pressure springs in the guide rails.

### Attractive

Desired configurations are a possibility thanks to diverse colour and design options.



### Construction limit values

|                      |                   |
|----------------------|-------------------|
| Maximum order width  | 6000 mm           |
| Maximum order length | 4500 mm           |
| Maximum order area   | 24 m <sup>2</sup> |

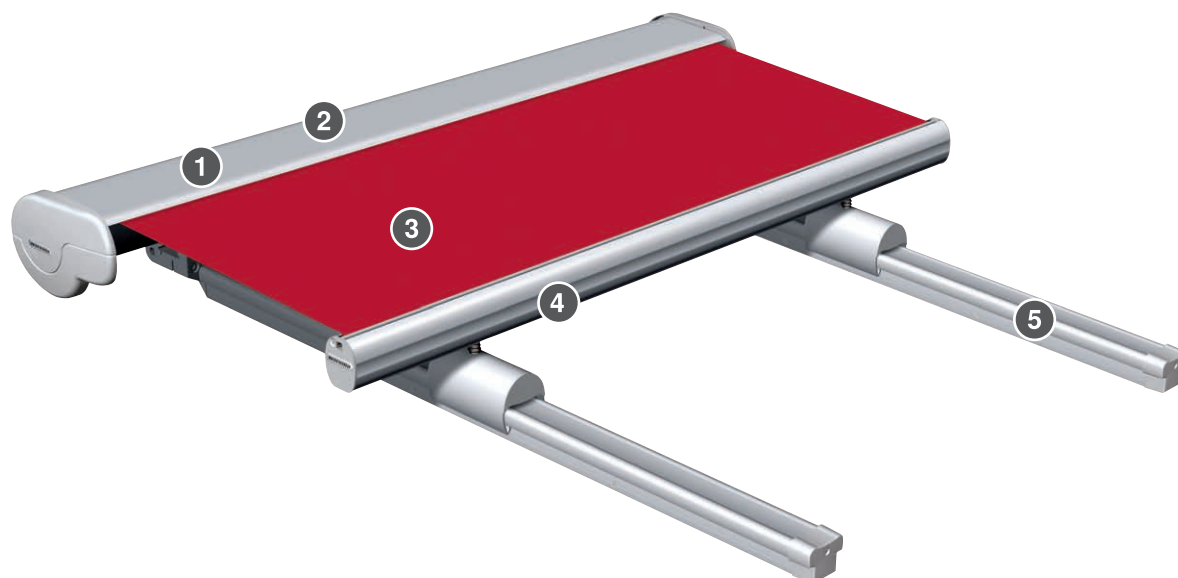


### Product characteristics

- External conservatory awning with offset guide rail
- For hipped or sloped conservatories or pergolas

# Components

## Conservatory awning Climara W7



Planning

Terrea

Perea

Patio  
side screens

Climara

Supplementary  
accessories

Components

Drive  
variants

Standards

- 1 Cover panel
- 2 Shaft
- 3 Fabric

- 4 Front rail
- 5 Guide rail

### Cover panel

#### Cover panel - W7

|          |                     |
|----------|---------------------|
| Material | Aluminium, extruded |
| Surface  | Powder-coated       |
| Width    | 214 mm              |
| Height   | 157 mm              |

#### + Side cover

#### Cover panel side cover - W7

|          |               |
|----------|---------------|
| Material | Aluminium     |
| Surface  | Powder-coated |

### Shaft

#### Fabric shaft Ø 85 mm

|          |                  |
|----------|------------------|
| Material | Galvanised steel |
| Surface  | Plain            |
| Profile  | Groove tube      |
| Diameter | 85 mm            |

### Front rail

#### Front rail - W7

|          |                     |
|----------|---------------------|
| Material | Aluminium, extruded |
| Surface  | Powder-coated       |
| Width    | 84 mm               |
| Height   | 64 mm               |

### Bracket

- Bracket H70
- Bracket H72

+ see "Guide rail bracket - Conservatory awnings Climara", Page 320

### Guide variants

#### Guide rail

#### Guide rail - W7

|          |                     |
|----------|---------------------|
| Material | Aluminium, extruded |
| Surface  | Powder-coated       |
| Width    | 75 mm               |
| Height   | 63 mm               |

### Drive variants

- Motor

#### Motor

- WM IMP

+ see "Drive variants", Page 367

### Colours

- WAREMA Colour World

+ see "WAREMA Colour World", Page 12

### Fabric qualities

- Standard acrylic fabric
- Lumera acrylic fabric

Fabric qualities, optional:

- Perfora acrylic
- Soltis 92

+ see "Awning collection", Page 356



## Construction limit values

| Configuration variants                                            | Minimum order width | Maximum order width | Minimum order length | Maximum order length | Maximum order area |
|-------------------------------------------------------------------|---------------------|---------------------|----------------------|----------------------|--------------------|
| <b>Fabric qualities</b>                                           |                     |                     |                      |                      |                    |
| Standard acrylic fabric / Lumera acrylic fabric / Perfora acrylic | 800 mm              | 6000 mm             | 1000 mm              | 4000 mm              | 24 m <sup>2</sup>  |
| Standard acrylic fabric / Lumera acrylic fabric / Perfora acrylic | 800 mm              | 5000 mm             | 1000 mm              | 4500 mm              | 24 m <sup>2</sup>  |
| Soltis 92                                                         | 800 mm              | 4000 mm             | 1000 mm              | 4000 mm              | 16 m <sup>2</sup>  |

### Cover panel overhang:

- The cover panel overhang right and left should be symmetrical, also for conservatories sloped on one side.
- The maximum permissible deviation from the symmetry for acrylic fabric is 200 mm.
- For Soltis 92, the guide rails must be offset in parallel in order to achieve an even tensioning of the fabric.

### Fabric tension:

- Optimum fabric tension is achieved from a roof pitch of 15°.
- With smaller roof pitches, the awning fabric may rest on top of the guide rail.
- Always extend the awning out to its maximum projection, as when it reaches its end position a motor return pulse is automatically generated to re-stretch the awning fabric.
- **For order lengths of 4000 mm and greater, a roof pitch of at least 15° is required.**

## Dimensions

Weight per running metre: 14 - 18 kg/lfm

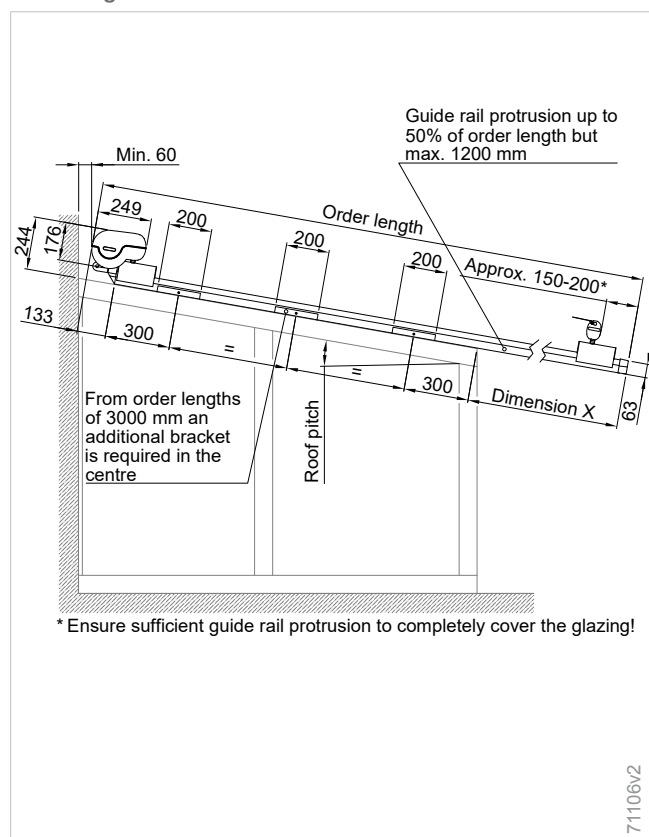
Weight per running metre, notes: Cover panel without guide rail and bracket

## Dimension determination

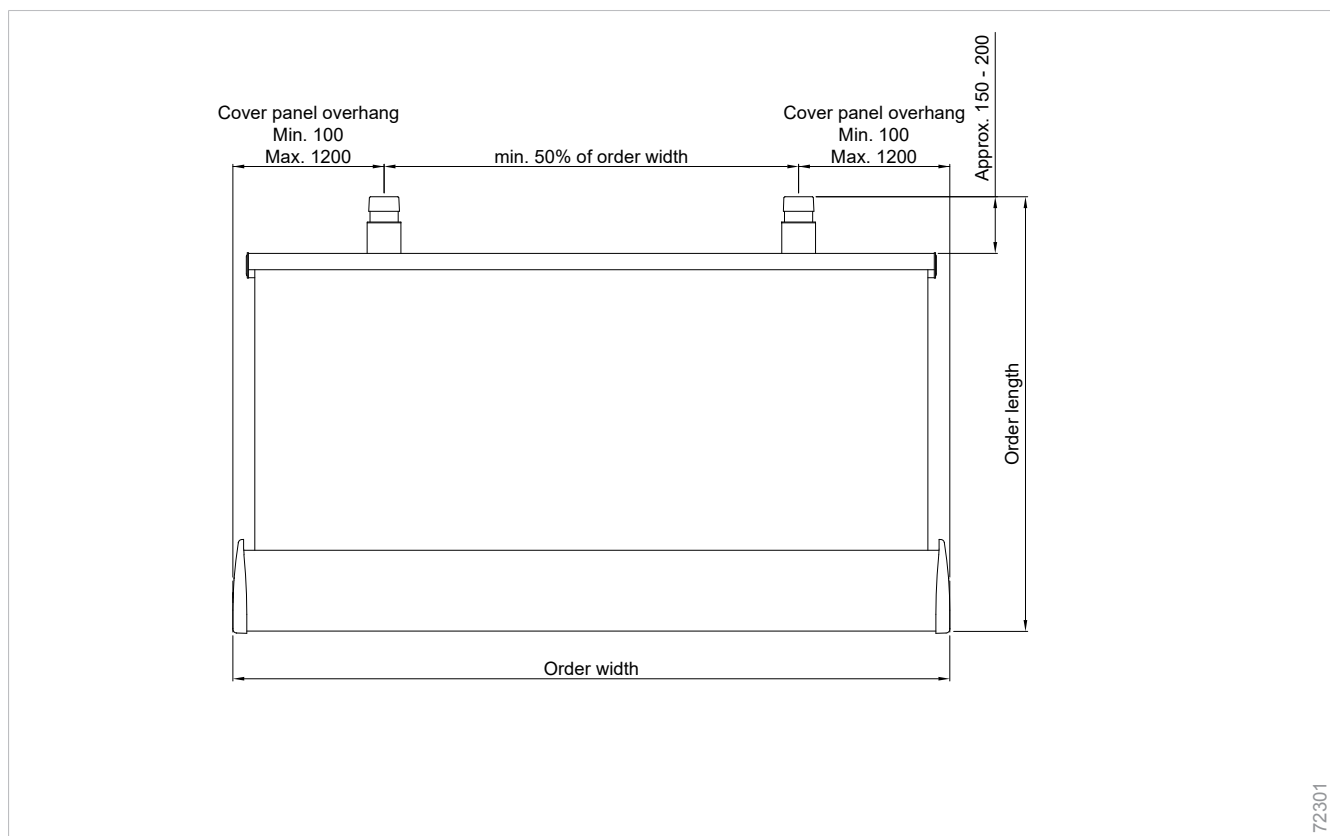
The **drive end or operation side** is always seen from the cover panel in extension direction.

**Order width** = from outer edge of side cover to outer edge of side cover.

### Measuring instructions - W7

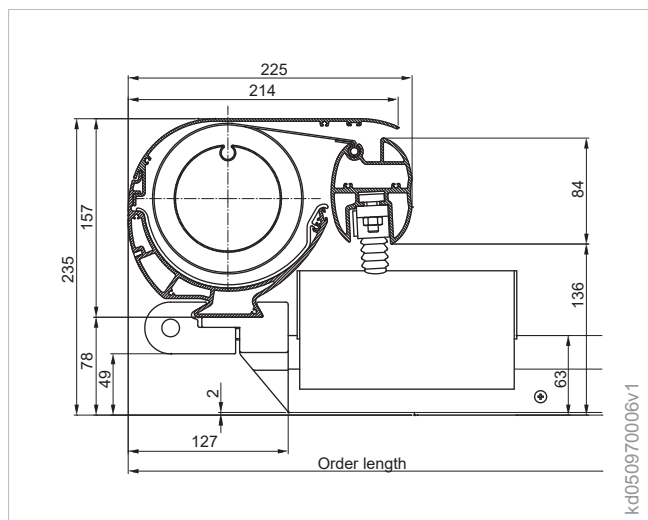


## Individual unit - W7

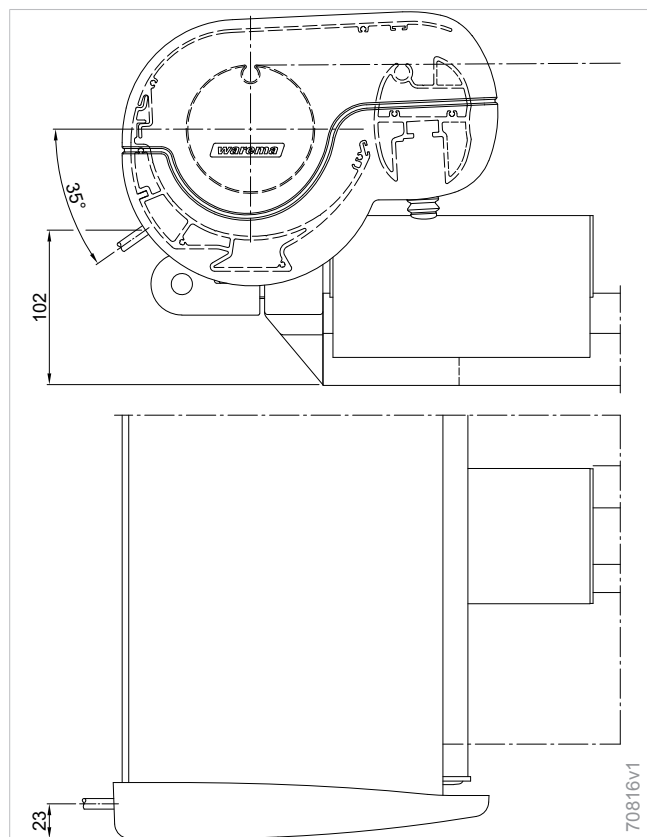


## Details

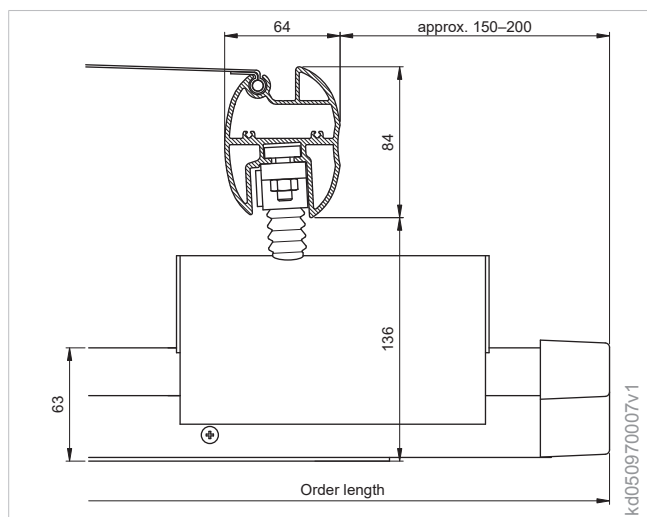
### Side view - W7



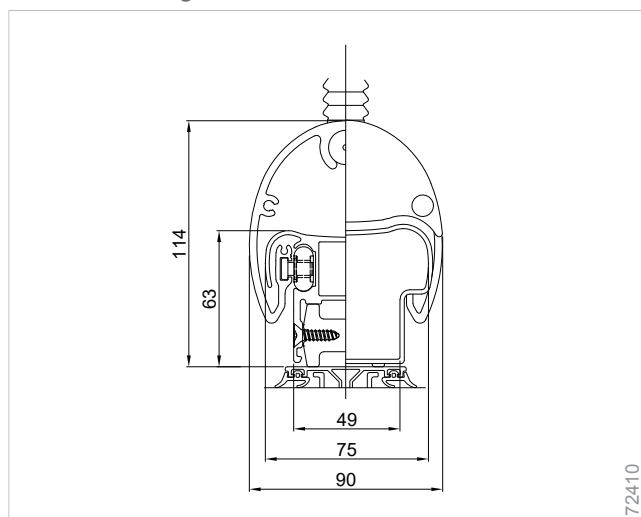
### Cable exit - W7



Front rail - W7



Guide block and guide rails - W7



Planning

Terrea

Perea

Patio  
side screens

Climara

Supplementary  
accessories

Components

Drive  
variants

Standards

## Further information

Calculate the individual suitable and permissible fixing materials  
<http://warema2.atbit5.de/app/Plugcalculator.asp?lang=EN>



Use our free planning programme to plan your sun protection systems  
<https://sonnenschutzplaner.com/>



Configure and plan your product with myWAREMA  
<https://my.warema.com>



Experience the range of colours and fabrics of the WAREMA collections  
<https://www.warema.de/Tools/Kollektionsberater.php>



TechDataPLUS Conservatory awnings  
<https://docs.warema.com/1.1447.7>





# Conservatory awnings Climara, on glass

## Conservatory awning Climara W19

### Reliable

The conservatory awning is cleverly protected against soiling thanks to the additional brush seal.

### Sophisticated

Tried and tested back-pull principle in a new design

### Efficient

Perfect shading for large and small glass surfaces



### Construction limit values

|                                   |                   |
|-----------------------------------|-------------------|
| Maximum order width               | 6000 mm           |
| Maximum order length              | 6000 mm           |
| Maximum order area                | 30 m <sup>2</sup> |
| Maximum order width of group unit | 12000 mm          |

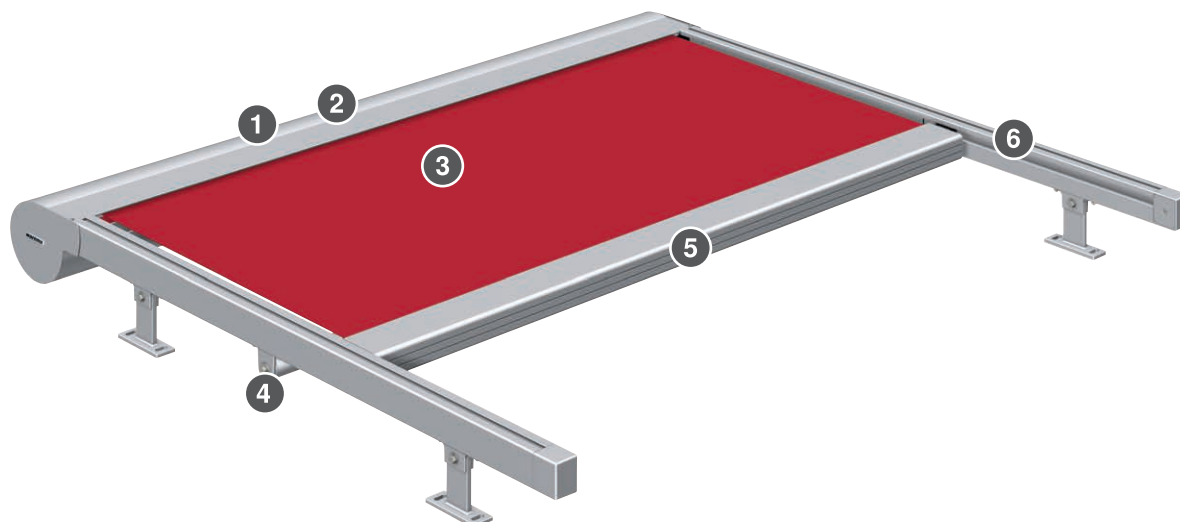


### Product characteristics

- External conservatory awning
- With back-pull principle

# Components

## Conservatory awning Climara W19



- 1 Cover panel
- 2 Shaft
- 3 Fabric

- 4 Reinforcement profile
- 5 Front rail
- 6 Guide rail

### Cover panel

#### Cover panel - D3/W9/W10/W10<sup>2</sup>/W19/W20

|          |                     |
|----------|---------------------|
| Material | Aluminium, extruded |
| Surface  | Powder-coated       |
| Width    | 199 mm              |
| Height   | 158 mm              |

#### + Side cover

#### Cover panel side cover - D3/W9/W10/W10<sup>2</sup>/W19/W20

|          |               |
|----------|---------------|
| Material | Aluminium     |
| Surface  | Powder-coated |
| Width    | 227 mm        |
| Height   | 159 mm        |

### Shaft

#### Fabric shaft Ø 85 mm

|          |                  |
|----------|------------------|
| Material | Galvanised steel |
| Surface  | Plain            |
| Profile  | Groove tube      |
| Diameter | 85 mm            |

#### Motor shaft Ø 56 mm

|          |               |
|----------|---------------|
| Material | Aluminium     |
| Surface  | Plain         |
| Profile  | Round profile |
| Diameter | 56 mm         |

### Front rail

#### Front rail - W9/W10/W10<sup>2</sup>/W19/W20/H1

|          |                     |
|----------|---------------------|
| Material | Aluminium, extruded |
| Surface  | Powder-coated       |
| Width    | 94 mm               |
| Height   | 54 mm               |

### Reinforcement profile

#### Reinforcement profile Ø 40 mm

|          |                     |
|----------|---------------------|
| Material | Aluminium, extruded |
| Surface  | Powder-coated       |
| Diameter | 40 mm               |

#### Reinforcement profile Ø 60 mm

|          |                     |
|----------|---------------------|
| Material | Aluminium, extruded |
| Surface  | Powder-coated       |
| Diameter | 60 mm               |

### Bracket

- Bracket H31
- Bracket H34
- Bracket H36
- Bracket H41
- Bracket H60
- Bracket H61
- Bracket H62
- Bracket H101
- Bracket H102

+ see "Guide rail bracket - Conservatory awnings Climara", Page 320

## Guide variants

- Back-pull

## Guide rail

### Guide rail - D3/W9/W19

|          |                     |
|----------|---------------------|
| Material | Aluminium, extruded |
| Surface  | Powder-coated       |
| Width    | 45 mm               |
| Height   | 64 mm               |

## Pulling element

### Toothed belt

|                 |                   |
|-----------------|-------------------|
| Material, notes | With steel insert |
|-----------------|-------------------|

## Drive variants

- Motor

## Motor

- WM REA

## Radio motor, optional

- WMS-WM (WMS)
- W-WM (EWFS)

+ see "Drive variants", Page 367

## Construction limit values

| Configuration variants                              | Minimum order width | Maximum order width | Minimum order length | Maximum order length | Maximum order area | Minimum inclination angle | Maximum inclination angle | Maximum order width of group unit | Maximum order area of group unit |
|-----------------------------------------------------|---------------------|---------------------|----------------------|----------------------|--------------------|---------------------------|---------------------------|-----------------------------------|----------------------------------|
| <b>Fabric qualities</b>                             |                     |                     |                      |                      |                    |                           |                           |                                   |                                  |
| Acrylic fabric / Twilight Pearl                     | 770 mm              | 6000 mm             | 750 mm               | 6000 mm              | 30 m <sup>2</sup>  | 0 °                       | 45 °                      | 12000 mm                          | 60 m <sup>2</sup>                |
| Soltis 92                                           | 770 mm              | 3500 mm             | 750 mm               | 4500 mm              | 16 m <sup>2</sup>  | 0 °                       | 45 °                      | 7000 mm                           | 32 m <sup>2</sup>                |
| <b>Fabric qualities + Supplementary accessories</b> |                     |                     |                      |                      |                    |                           |                           |                                   |                                  |
| Acrylic fabric / Twilight Pearl + VUNO model        | 770 mm              | 6000 mm             | 750 mm               | 6000 mm              | 30 m <sup>2</sup>  | 1 °                       | 40 °                      | 10000 mm                          | 50 m <sup>2</sup>                |
| Acrylic fabric / Twilight Pearl + VUNO model        | 770 mm              | 5000 mm             | 750 mm               | 6000 mm              | 30 m <sup>2</sup>  | 41 °                      | 90 °                      | 5000 mm                           | 30 m <sup>2</sup>                |
| Soltis 92 + VUNO model                              | 770 mm              | 3500 mm             | 750 mm               | 4500 mm              | 16 m <sup>2</sup>  | 1 °                       | 40 °                      | 7000 mm                           | 30 m <sup>2</sup>                |
| Soltis 92 + VUNO model                              | 770 mm              | 3500 mm             | 750 mm               | 4500 mm              | 16 m <sup>2</sup>  | 41 °                      | 90 °                      | 3500 mm                           | 16 m <sup>2</sup>                |

### Series-mounted units:

- The minimum width for the travelling unit is 290 mm.
- Each awning section requires two single guide rails.
- Two guide rails can be mounted on one bracket.
- In the case of a series-mounted unit, an expansion joint of 20 mm is required after 12000 mm!

### Reinforcement profile:

- For order lengths of 3001 mm and greater, a reinforcement profile is used.
- For order widths from 3501 mm or order lengths from 3001 mm, the Ø 40 mm profile is either equipped with a support or a Ø 60 mm profile is used.

## Colours

- WAREMA Colour World

+ see "WAREMA Colour World", Page 12

## Fabric qualities

- Standard acrylic fabric
- Lumera acrylic fabric

Fabric qualities, optional:

- Perfora acrylic
- All Weather acrylic
- Soltis 92
- Twilight Pearl

+ see "Awning collection", Page 356

## Supplementary accessories

- Fabric lettering, painted
- Sunprint

+ see "Supplementary accessories", Page 257

## Dimensions

Weight per running metre: 15 - 17 kg/lfm

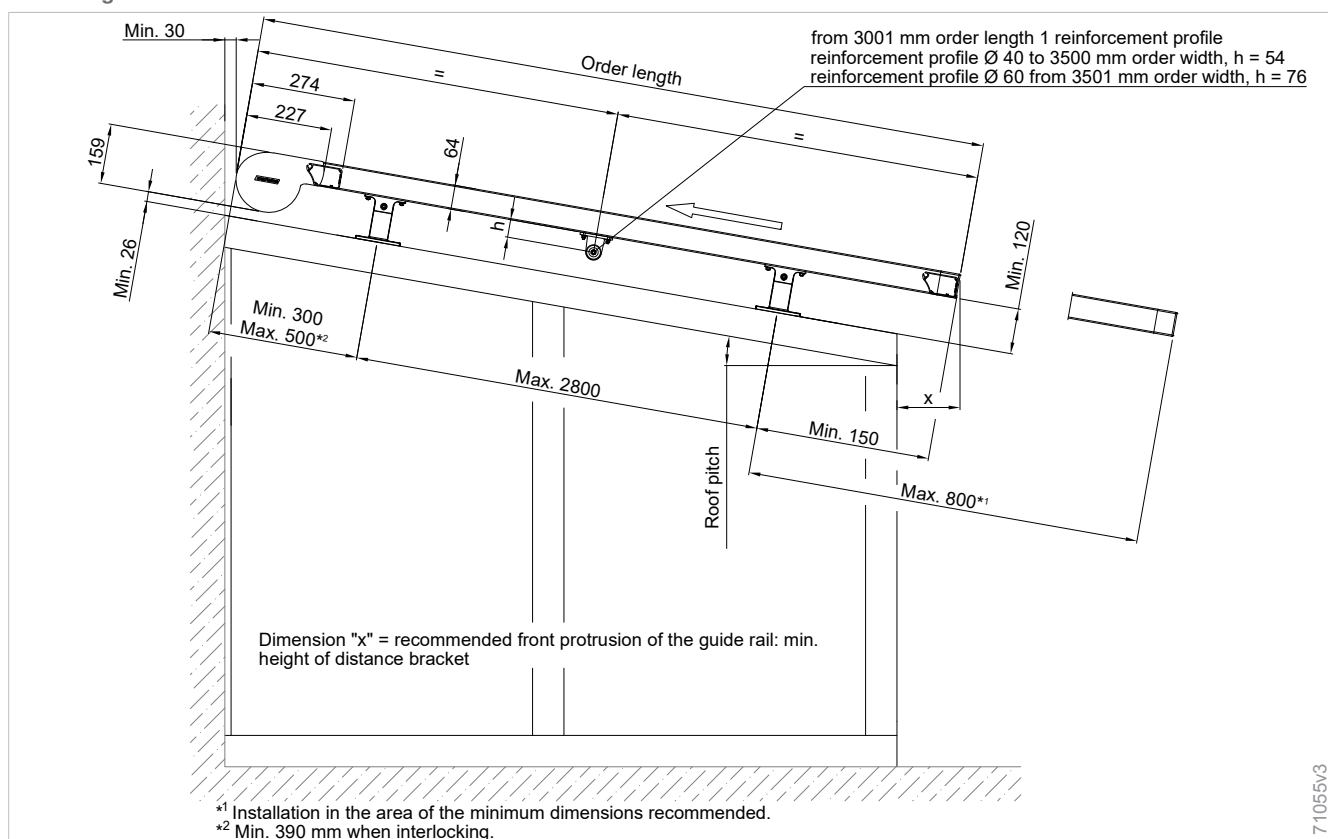
Weight per running metre, notes: Cover panel without guide rail and bracket

## Dimension determination

The **drive end or operation side** is always seen from the cover panel in extension direction.

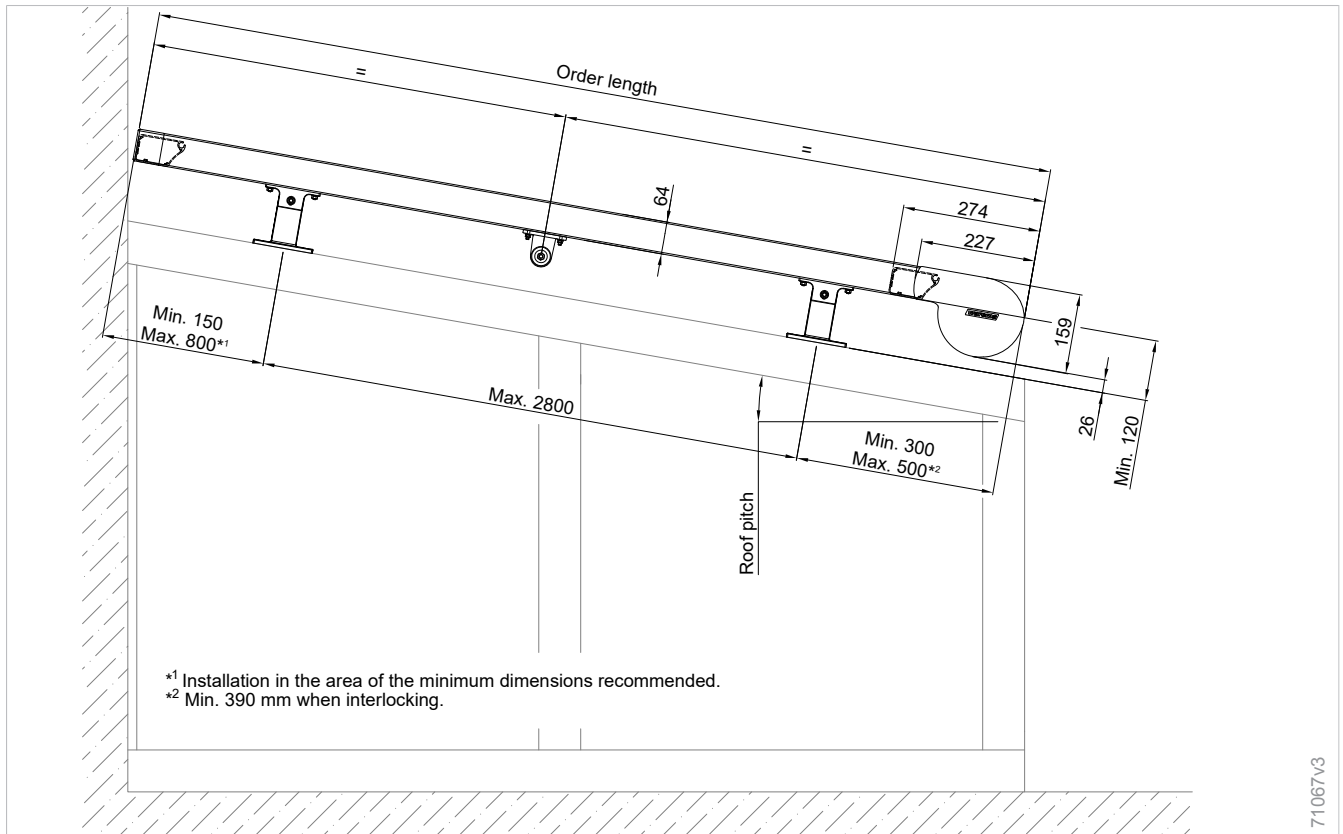
**Order width** = guide rail axis to guide rail axis.

### Measuring instructions - W19



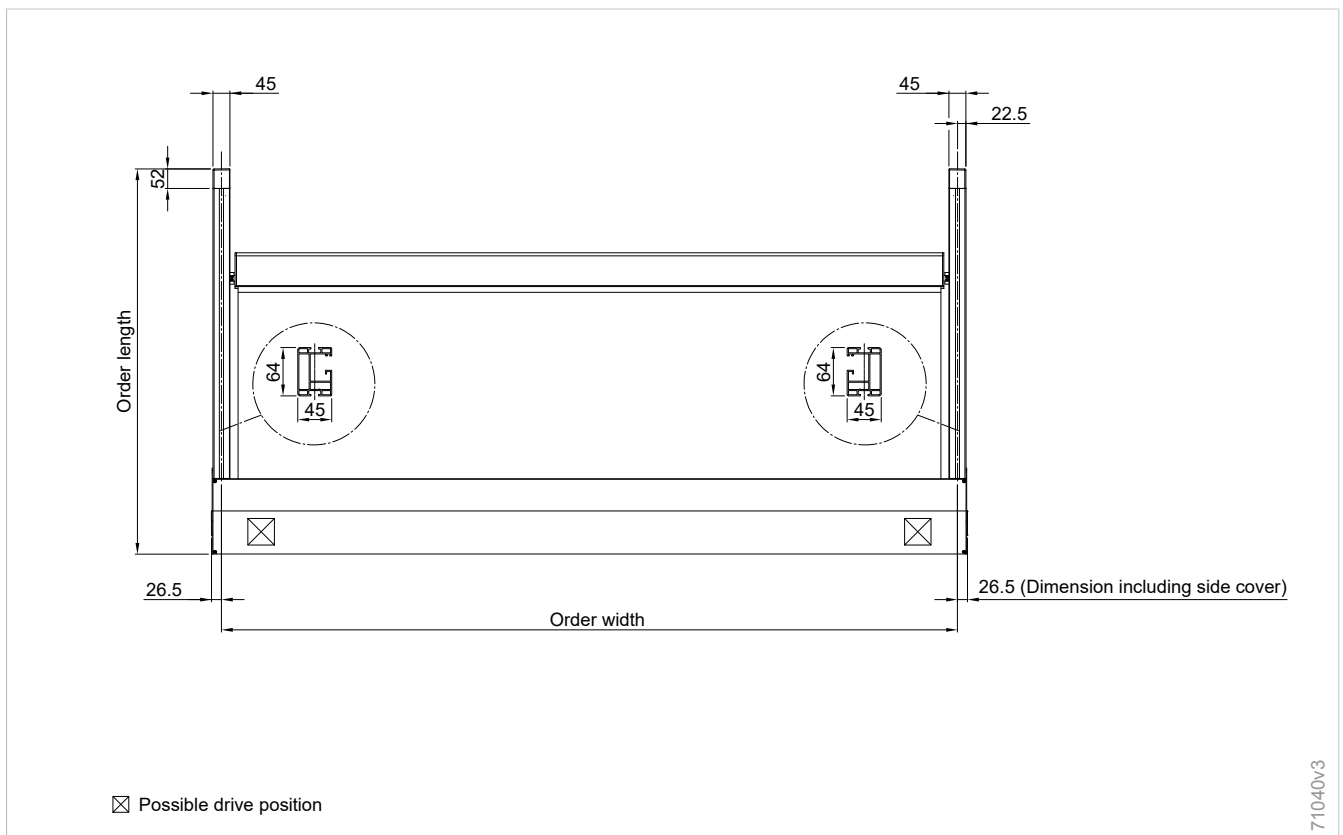


Direction of movement "from bottom to top" - W19



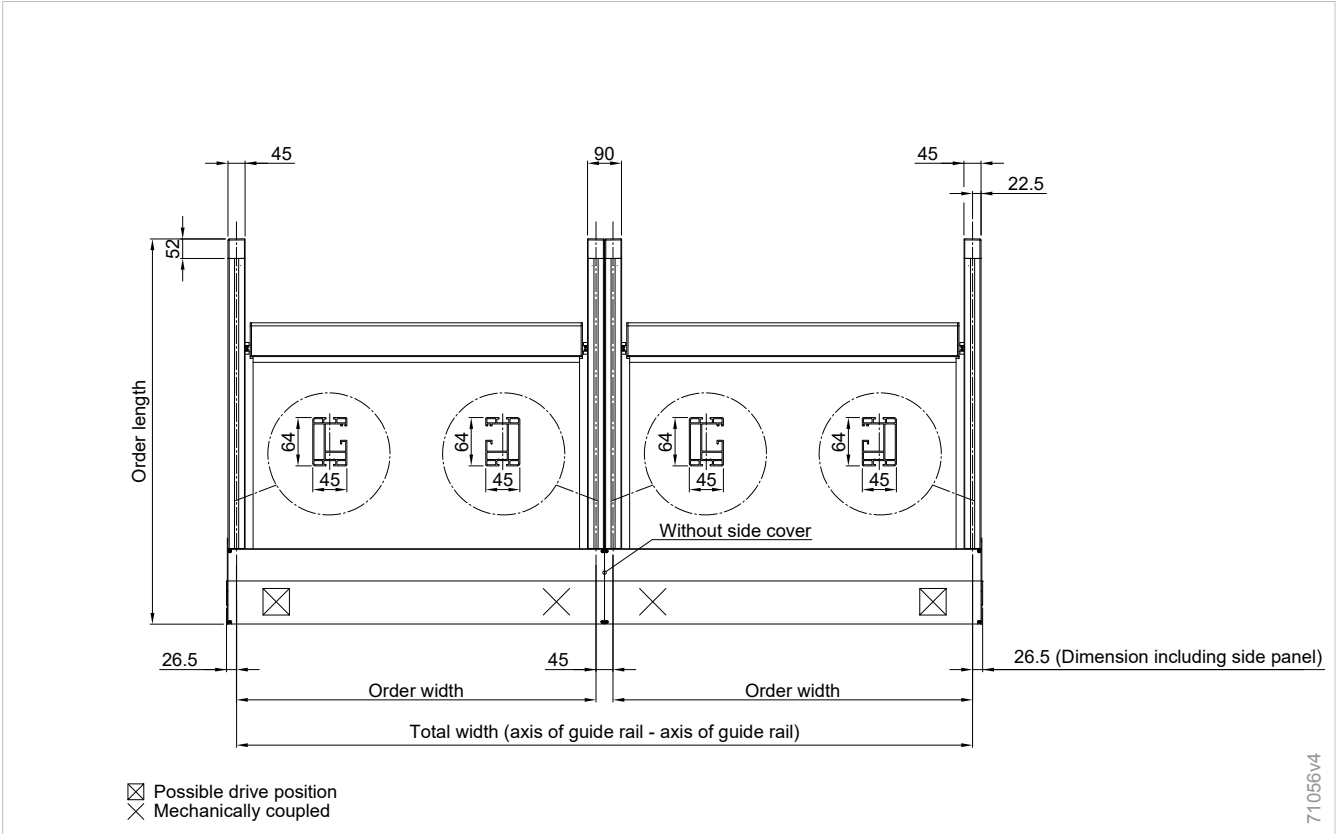
71067v3

Individual unit - W9/W19



71040v3

Group unit - W19



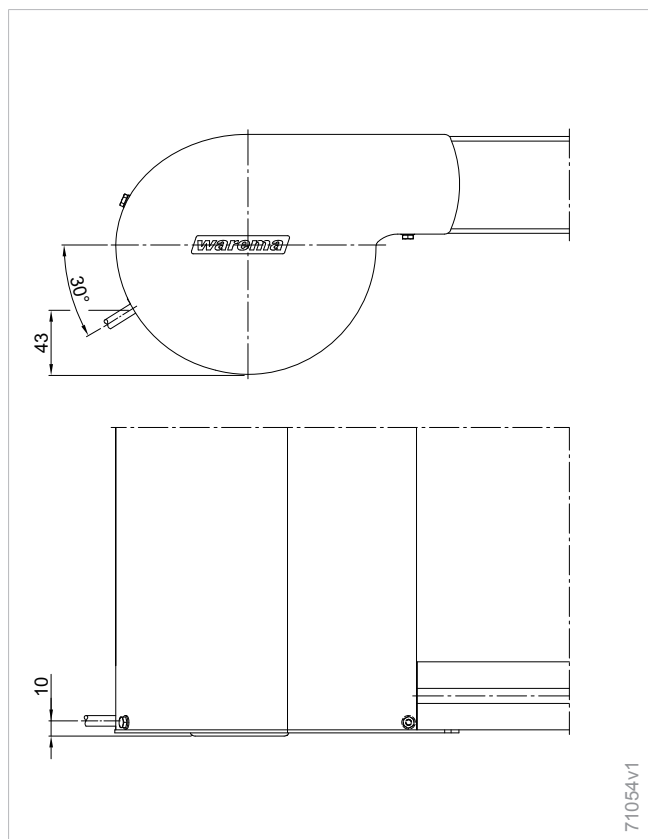
Quantity determination

Number of guide rail brackets

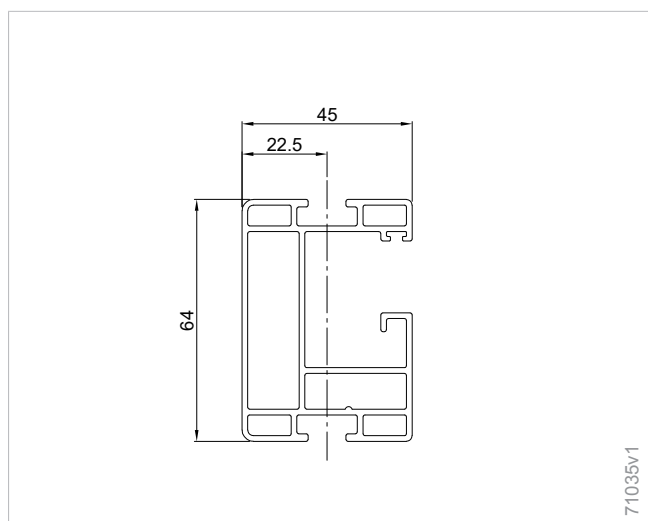
| Configuration variants                            | Order length   | Number |
|---------------------------------------------------|----------------|--------|
| <b>Components</b>                                 |                |        |
| Guide rail bracket - Conservatory awnings Climara | 0 - 3000 mm    | 2      |
| Guide rail bracket - Conservatory awnings Climara | 3001 - 6000 mm | 3      |

## Details

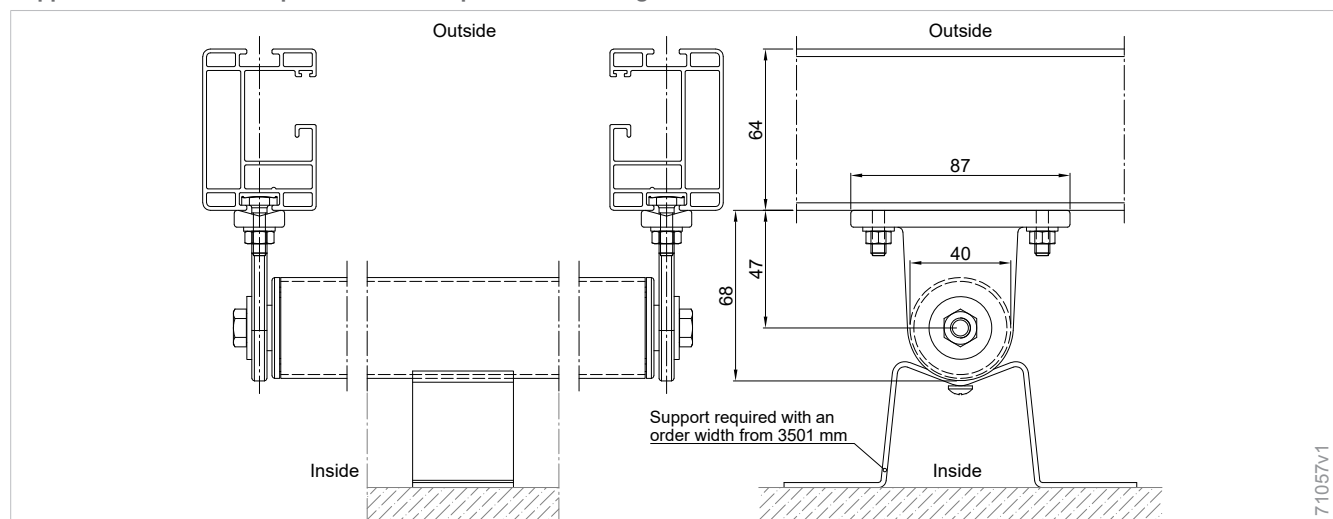
### Cable exit - W9/W19



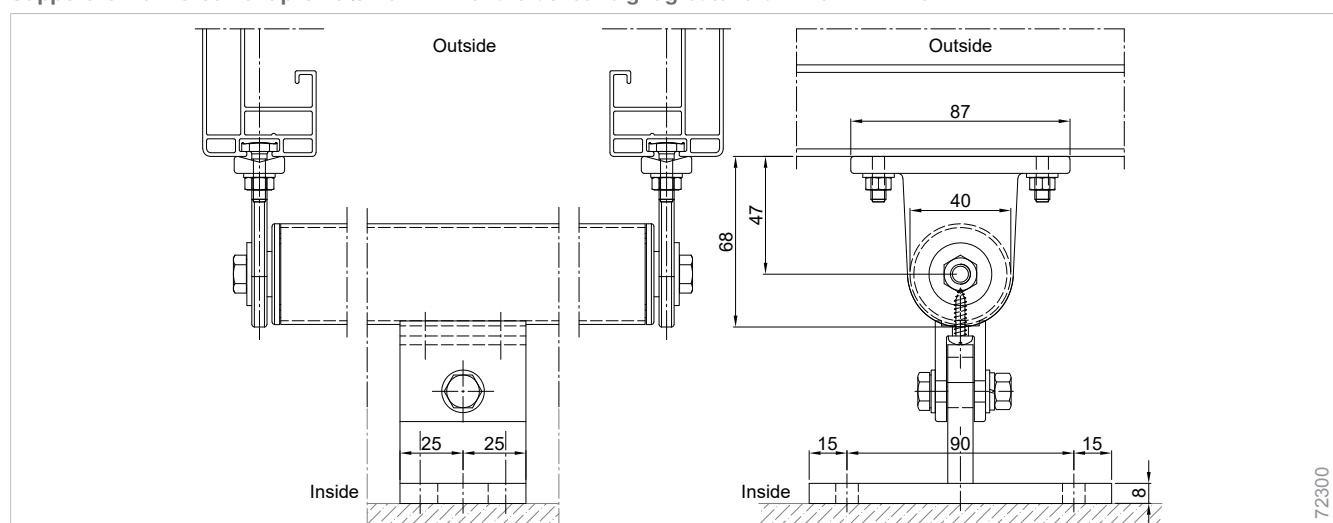
### Guide rail - D3/W9/W19



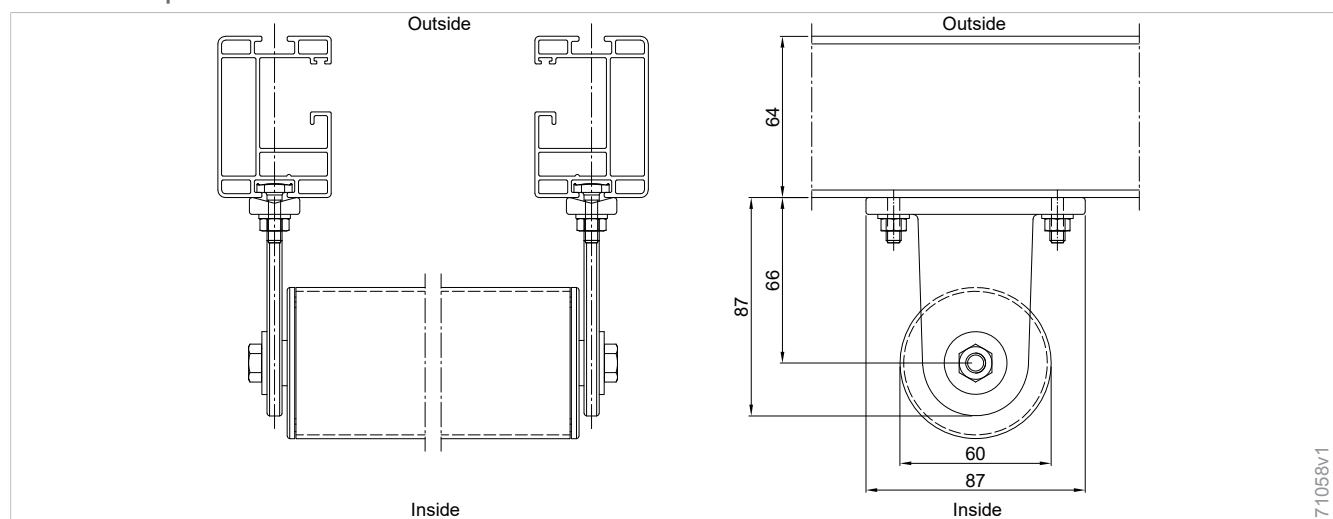
# Support for reinforcement profile Ø 40 mm up to a bracket height of 170 mm- W19



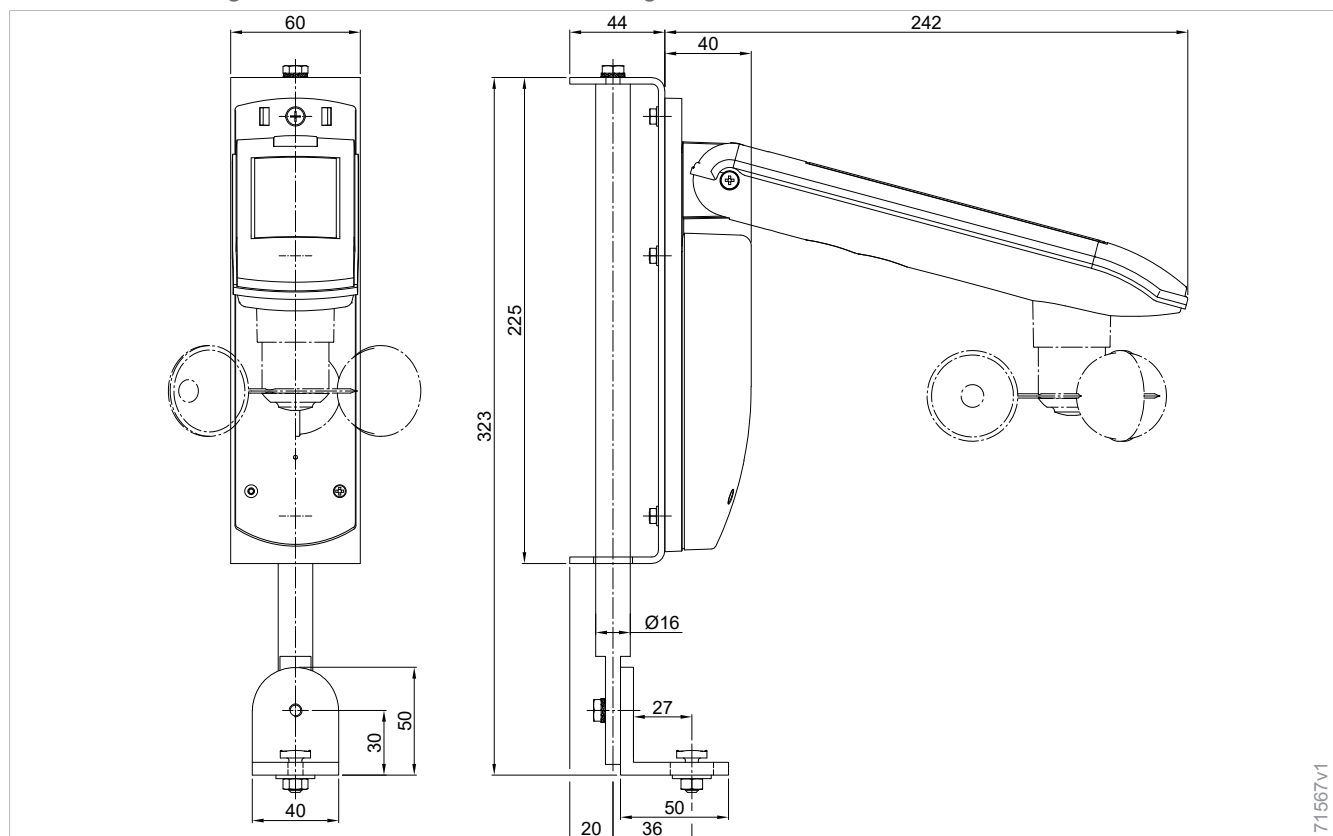
# Support for reinforcement profile Ø 40 mm with a bracket height greater than 170 mm- W19



# Reinforcement profile Ø 60 mm - W19



### Bracket for connecting a WMS or EWFS weather station to the guide rail



71567v1

## Additional product information

### Guide rail bracket height greater than 300 mm

For a **guide rail bracket height of over 300 mm**, two Ø 60 mm reinforcement profiles with lateral supports are attached.

The maximum guide rail bracket height is 500 mm.

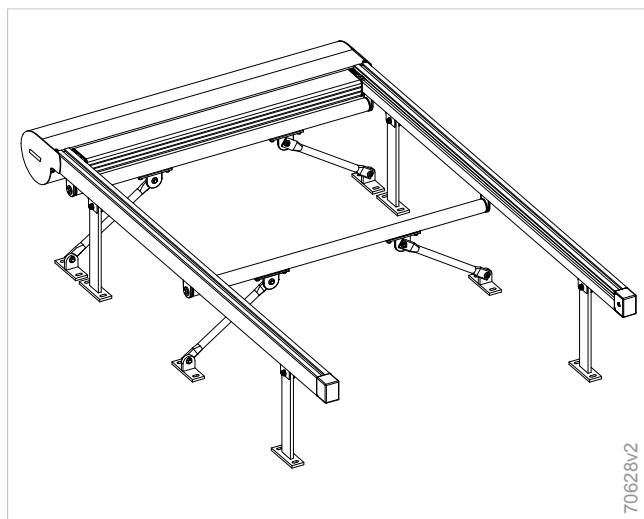
For a guide rail bracket height above 300 mm, the minimum order width is 900 mm.

The following components are used as standard:

- Bracket for rod
- Fixed Ø 60 mm reinforcement profile
- Welded bracket H101

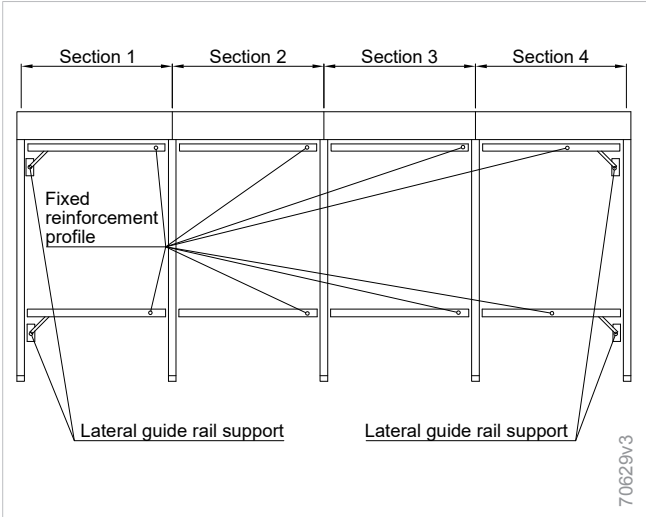
The two reinforcement profiles are installed for every section of coupled conservatory awnings and series-mounted units. With series-mounted units, the two outer sections accommodate the support.

### Support for cover panel and guide rail support - W19

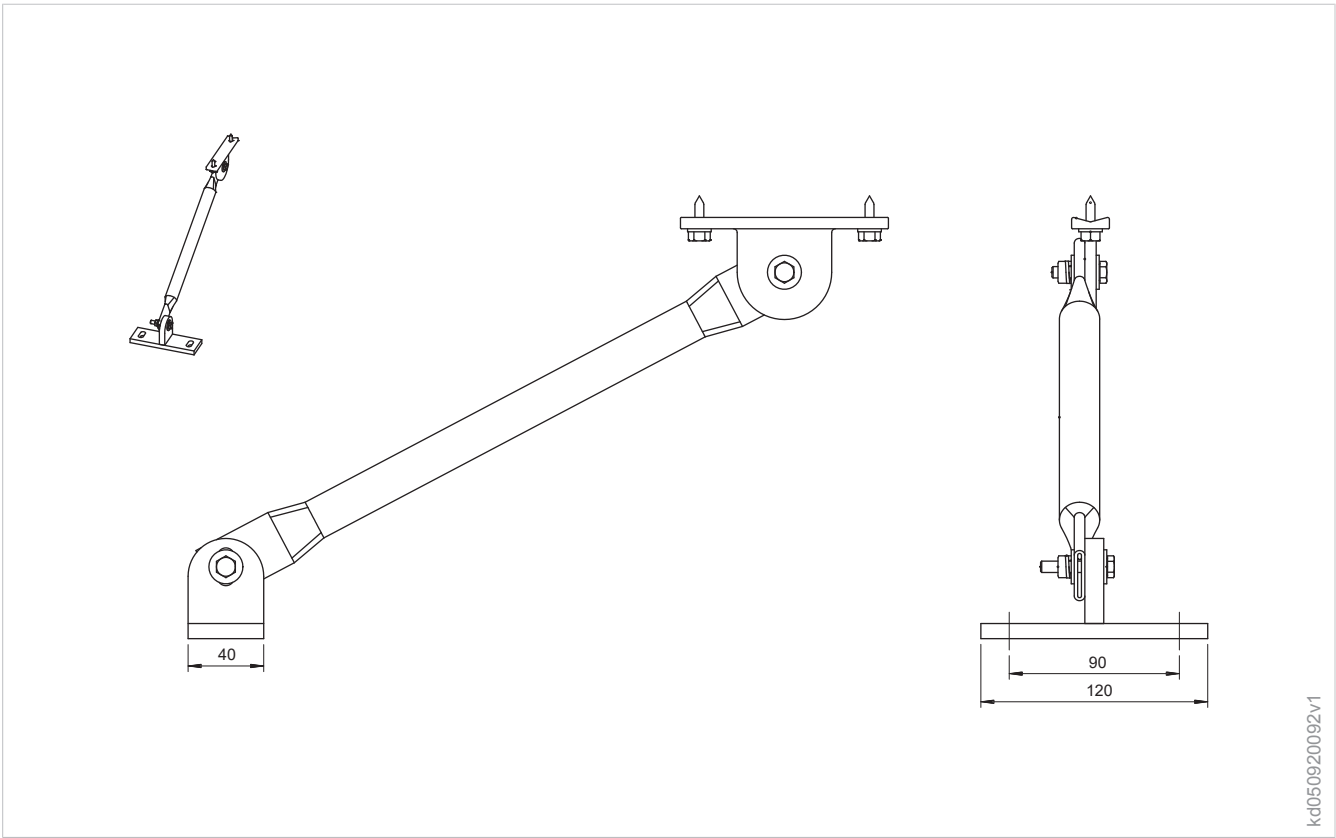


70628v2

Support for series-mounted units



Bracket for reinforcement profile



## Klöckner-Moeller switch

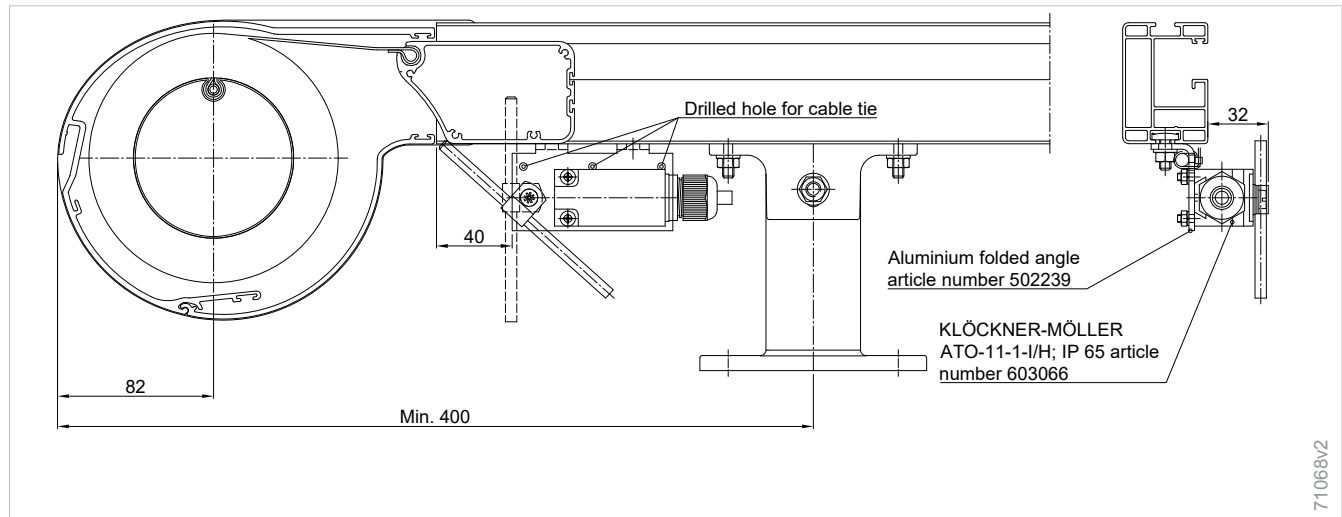
When using a conservatory awning **W19 above a ventilation wing** (no smoke and heat venting system), it is necessary to use a Klöckner-Moeller switch.

This creates a mutual interlock between the conservatory awning W19 and the wing. That means that the conservatory awning will not extend as soon as the ventilation wing is opened and the wing will not open when the awning is extended.

The Klöckner-Moeller switch should always be mounted and operated in combination with a reed contact switch on the ventilation wing to ensure mutual interlocking.

More information on request.

### Klöckner-Moeller switch



## VUNO model

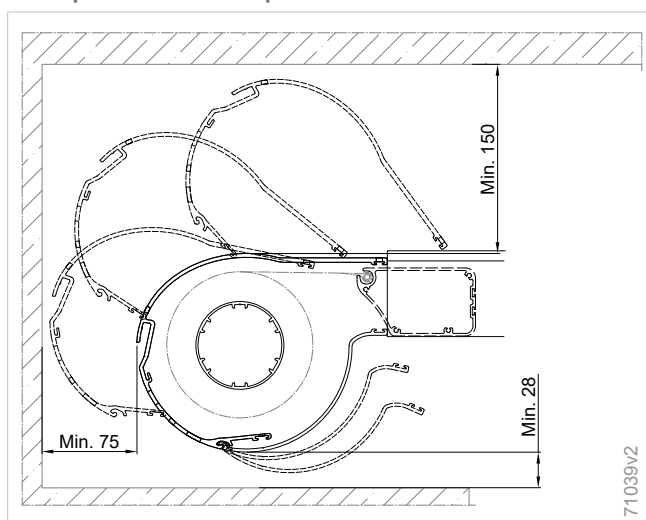
Conservatory awnings Climara can be used with a "from bottom to top" direction of movement.

### Notes:

- Each awning section requires two guide rails.
- Because the cover panel opens in the extension direction, there is an increased risk of the fabric becoming soiled.
- State clearly on the order form: Direction of movement "from bottom to top".
- State the roof pitch angle when ordering.

## Mounting examples

### Cover panel installation space - W19



Planning

Terrea

Perea

Patio  
side screens

**Climara**

Supplementary  
accessories

Components

Drive  
variants

Standards

### Further information

Calculate the individual suitable and permissible fixing materials  
<http://warema2.atbit5.de/app/Plugcalculator.asp?lang=EN>



Use our free planning programme to plan your sun protection systems  
<https://sonnenschutzplaner.com/>



Configure and plan your product with myWAREMA  
<https://my.warema.com>



Experience the range of colours and fabrics of the WAREMA collections  
<https://www.warema.de/Tools/Kollektionsberater.php>



TechDataPLUS Conservatory awnings  
<https://docs.warema.com/1.1447.7>







# Conservatory awnings Climara, on glass

## Conservatory awning Climara W20

### Efficient

The flat and compact conservatory awning W20 blends in perfectly with the design of conservatories, patio roofs and pergolas and provides protection against heat and solar radiation.

### Attractive

The secudrive® guidance system prevents light gaps between the fabric and rail and delivers full-area shading together with outstanding fabric tension.

### Sophisticated

The reinforcement profile ensures unique stability and simultaneously impresses with its modern design.



### Construction limit values

|                      |                   |
|----------------------|-------------------|
| Maximum order width  | 6500 mm           |
| Maximum order length | 6000 mm           |
| Maximum order area   | 30 m <sup>2</sup> |

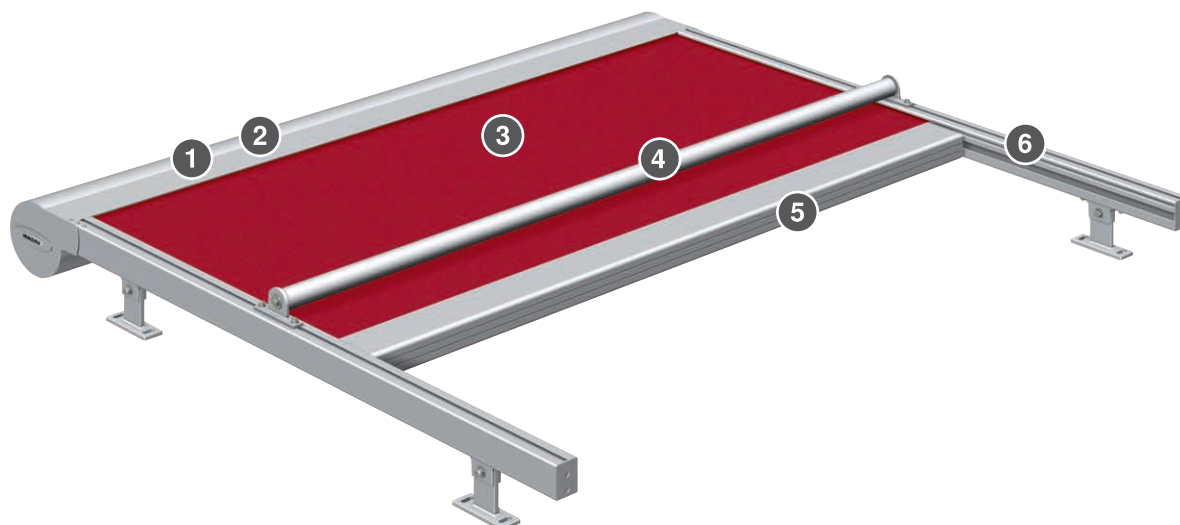


### Product characteristics

- External conservatory awning with secudrive® technology
- Areas up to 30 m<sup>2</sup>

# Components

## Conservatory awning Climara W20



- 1 Cover panel
- 2 Shaft
- 3 Fabric

- 4 Reinforcement profile
- 5 Front rail
- 6 Guide rail

### Cover panel

#### Cover panel - D3/W9/W10/W10<sup>2</sup>/W19/W20

|          |                     |
|----------|---------------------|
| Material | Aluminium, extruded |
| Surface  | Powder-coated       |
| Width    | 199 mm              |
| Height   | 158 mm              |

#### + Side cover

#### Cover panel side cover - D3/W9/W10/W10<sup>2</sup>/W19/W20

|          |               |
|----------|---------------|
| Material | Aluminium     |
| Surface  | Powder-coated |
| Width    | 227 mm        |
| Height   | 159 mm        |

### Shaft

#### Fabric shaft Ø 86.2 mm

|          |               |
|----------|---------------|
| Material | Aluminium     |
| Surface  | Plain         |
| Profile  | Round profile |
| Diameter | 86.2 mm       |

#### Motor shaft Ø 70 mm

|          |               |
|----------|---------------|
| Material | Aluminium     |
| Surface  | Plain         |
| Profile  | Round profile |
| Diameter | 70 mm         |

### Front rail

#### Front rail - W9/W10/W10<sup>2</sup>/W19/W20/H1

|          |                     |
|----------|---------------------|
| Material | Aluminium, extruded |
| Surface  | Powder-coated       |
| Width    | 94 mm               |
| Height   | 54 mm               |

### Reinforcement profile

#### Reinforcement profile Ø 40 mm

|          |                     |
|----------|---------------------|
| Material | Aluminium, extruded |
| Surface  | Powder-coated       |
| Diameter | 40 mm               |

#### Reinforcement profile Ø 60 mm

|          |                     |
|----------|---------------------|
| Material | Aluminium, extruded |
| Surface  | Powder-coated       |
| Diameter | 60 mm               |

### Bracket

- Bracket H31
- Bracket H34
- Bracket H36
- Bracket H41
- Bracket H60
- Bracket H61
- Bracket H62
- Bracket H101
- Bracket H102

+ see "Guide rail bracket - Conservatory awnings Climara", Page 320

## Guide variants

- secudrive®

## Guide rail

### Guide rail - W10/W10<sup>2</sup>

|          |                     |
|----------|---------------------|
| Material | Aluminium, extruded |
| Surface  | Powder-coated       |
| Width    | 45 mm               |
| Height   | 60 mm               |

## Drive variants

- Motor

## Motor

- WM REA

## Radio motor, optional

- WMS-WM (WMS)
- WMS-PM (WMS)
- W-WM (EWFS)

⊕ see "Drive variants", Page 367

## Colours

- WAREMA Colour World

⊕ see "WAREMA Colour World", Page 12

## Fabric qualities

- Standard acrylic fabric
- Lumera acrylic fabric

Fabric qualities, optional:

- Screen fabric
- Perfora acrylic
- All Weather acrylic
- Soltis 92
- Twilight Pearl

⊕ see "Awning collection", Page 356

## Supplementary accessories

- WMS sensor system
- Fabric lettering, painted
- Sunprint

⊕ see "Supplementary accessories", Page 257

## Construction limit values

| Configuration variants                                                               | Minimum order width | Maximum order width | Minimum order length | Maximum order length | Maximum order area | Minimum inclination angle | Maximum inclination angle |
|--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|---------------------|---------------------|----------------------|----------------------|--------------------|---------------------------|---------------------------|
| <b>Fabric qualities</b>                                                              |                     |                     |                      |                      |                    |                           |                           |
| Standard acrylic fabric / Lumera acrylic fabric / Perfora acrylic                    | 650 mm              | 6500 mm             | 950 mm               | 6000 mm              | 30 m <sup>2</sup>  | 0 °                       | 45 °                      |
| All Weather acrylic / Twilight Pearl                                                 | 650 mm              | 6500 mm             | 950 mm               | 6000 mm              | 28 m <sup>2</sup>  | 0 °                       | 45 °                      |
| Soltis 92 / Screen fabric                                                            | 650 mm              | 3500 mm             | 950 mm               | 4000 mm              | 14 m <sup>2</sup>  | 0 °                       | 45 °                      |
| <b>Fabric qualities + Supplementary accessories</b>                                  |                     |                     |                      |                      |                    |                           |                           |
| Standard acrylic fabric / Lumera acrylic fabric / Perfora acrylic + Drainage cutouts | 650 mm              | 6500 mm             | 950 mm               | 6000 mm              | 30 m <sup>2</sup>  | 3 °                       | 16 °                      |
| Standard acrylic fabric / Lumera acrylic fabric / Perfora acrylic + VUNO model       | 650 mm              | 6500 mm             | 950 mm               | 6000 mm              | 30 m <sup>2</sup>  | 0 °                       | 45 °                      |
| All Weather acrylic / Twilight Pearl + Drainage cutouts                              | 650 mm              | 6500 mm             | 950 mm               | 6000 mm              | 28 m <sup>2</sup>  | 3 °                       | 16 °                      |
| All Weather acrylic / Twilight Pearl + VUNO model                                    | 650 mm              | 6500 mm             | 950 mm               | 6000 mm              | 28 m <sup>2</sup>  | 0 °                       | 45 °                      |
| Soltis 92 / Screen fabric + VUNO model                                               | 650 mm              | 3500 mm             | 950 mm               | 4000 mm              | 14 m <sup>2</sup>  | 0 °                       | 45 °                      |

### Series-mounted units:

- Generally, only individual units are possible, i.e. no unit coupling!
- Each awning section requires two single guide rails.
- Two guide rails can be mounted on one bracket.
- In the case of a series-mounted unit, an expansion joint of 20 mm is required after 13000 mm!

### Reinforcement profile:

- For order lengths of 2501 mm and greater, a Ø 40 mm reinforcement profile is used.
- For order widths from 3501 mm, a Ø 60 mm profile is used.

## Dimensions

Weight per running metre: 13,5 - 15 kg/lfm

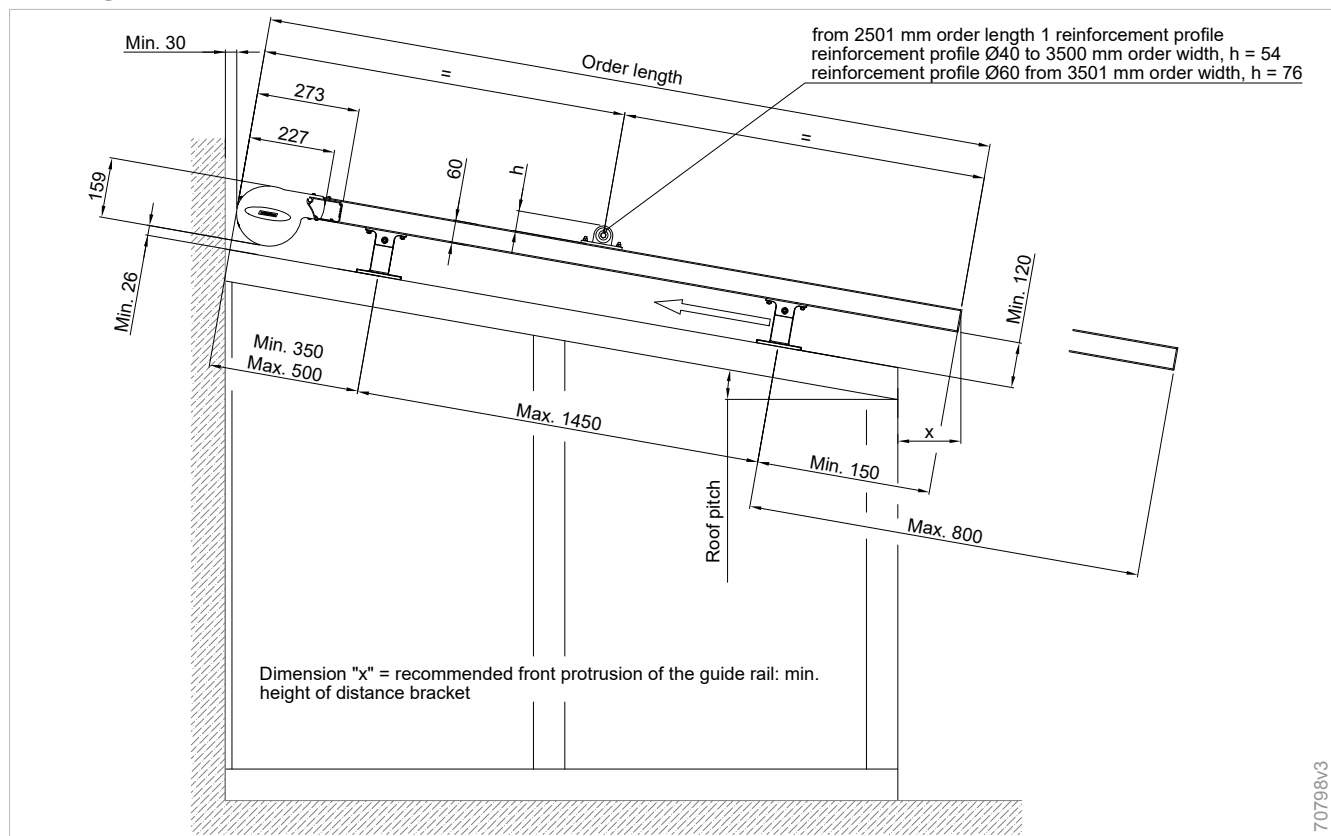
Weight per running metre, notes: Cover panel without guide rail and bracket

## Dimension determination

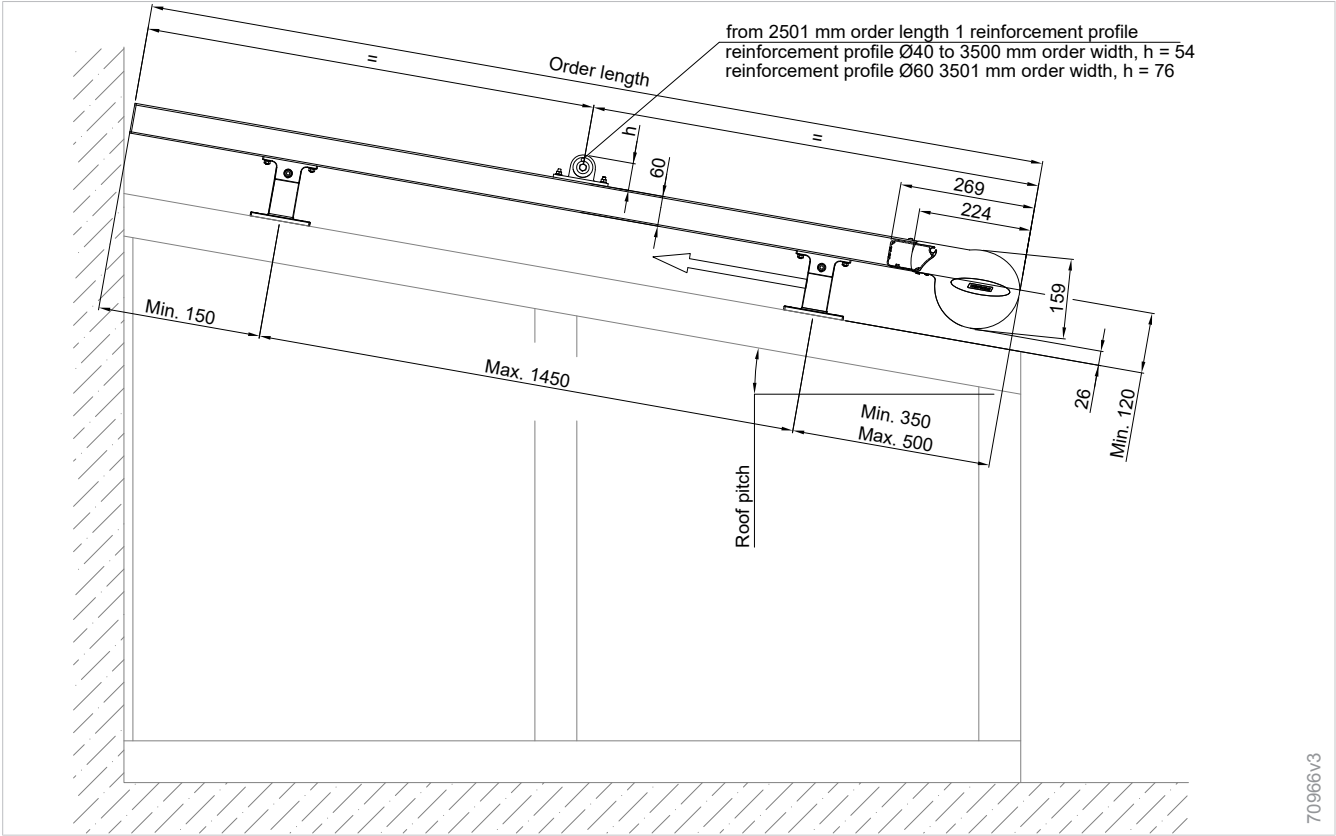
The **drive end or operation side** is always seen from the cover panel in extension direction.

**Order width** = guide rail axis to guide rail axis.

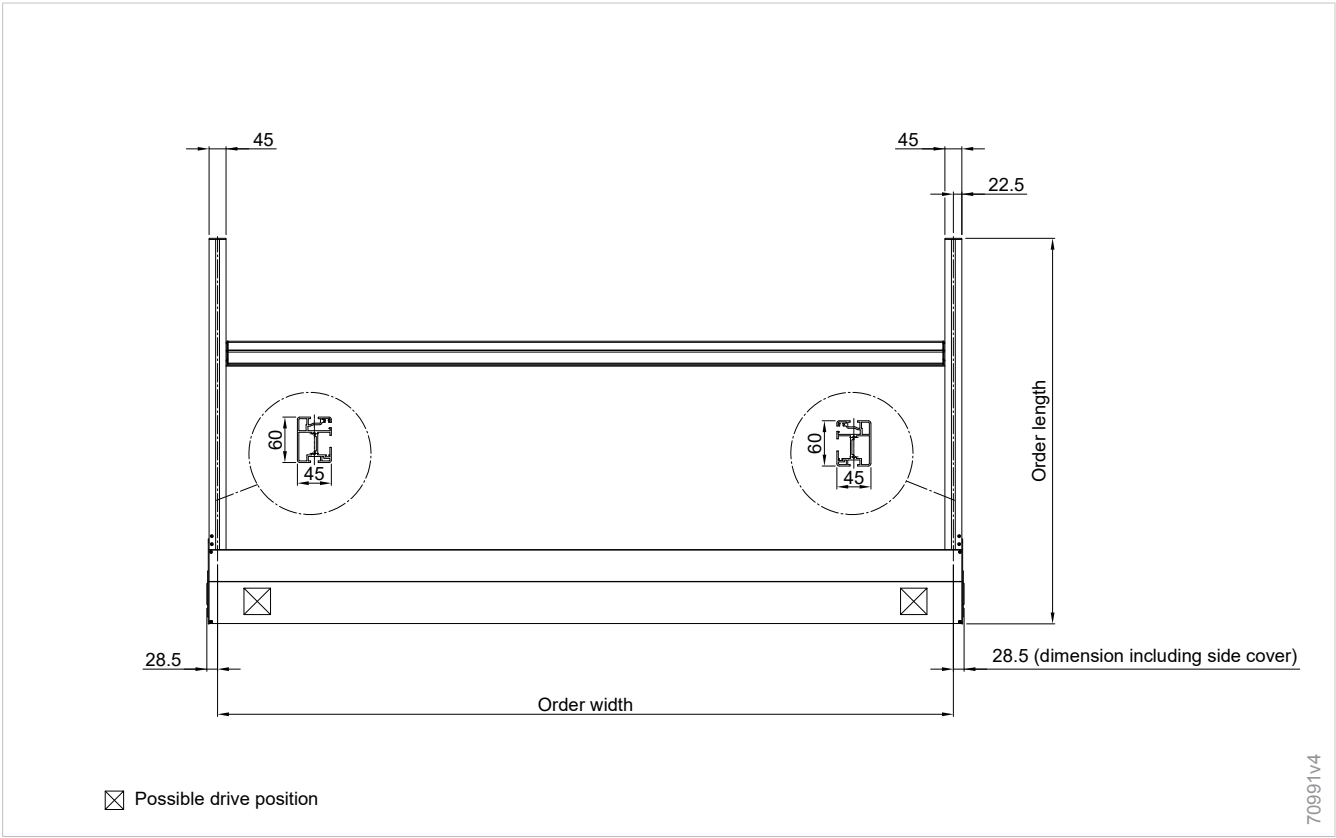
### Measuring instructions - W20



Direction of movement "from bottom to top" - W20



Individual unit - W20

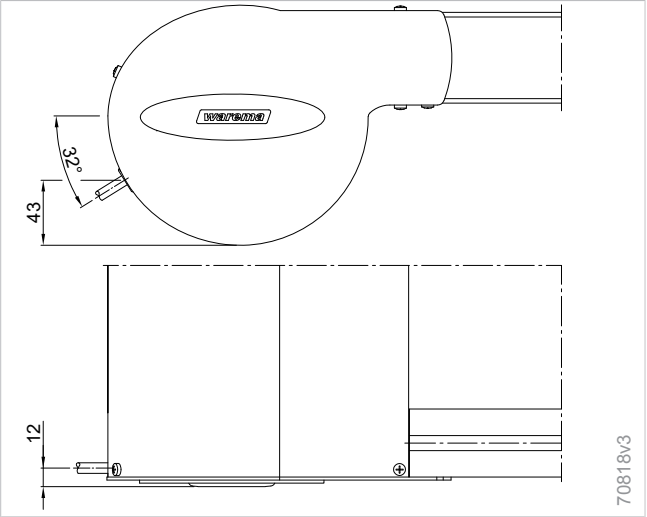


### Number of guide rail brackets

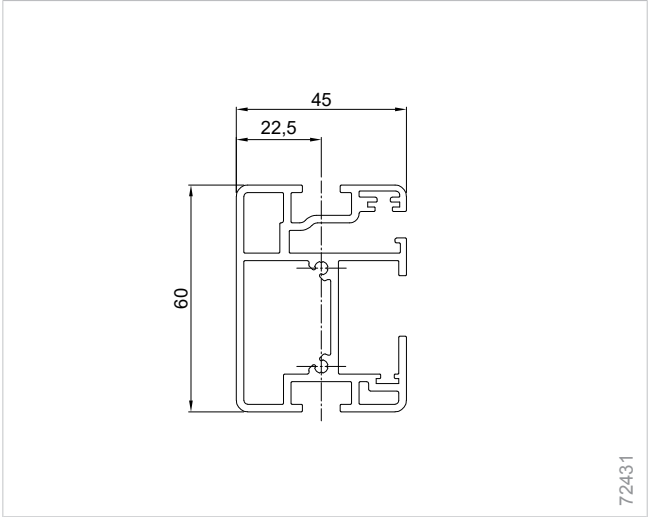
| Configuration variants                            | Order length   | Number |
|---------------------------------------------------|----------------|--------|
| Components                                        |                |        |
| Guide rail bracket - Conservatory awnings Climara | 0 - 2000 mm    | 2      |
| Guide rail bracket - Conservatory awnings Climara | 2001 - 3500 mm | 3      |
| Guide rail bracket - Conservatory awnings Climara | 3501 - 5000 mm | 4      |
| Guide rail bracket - Conservatory awnings Climara | 5001 - 6000 mm | 5      |

# Details

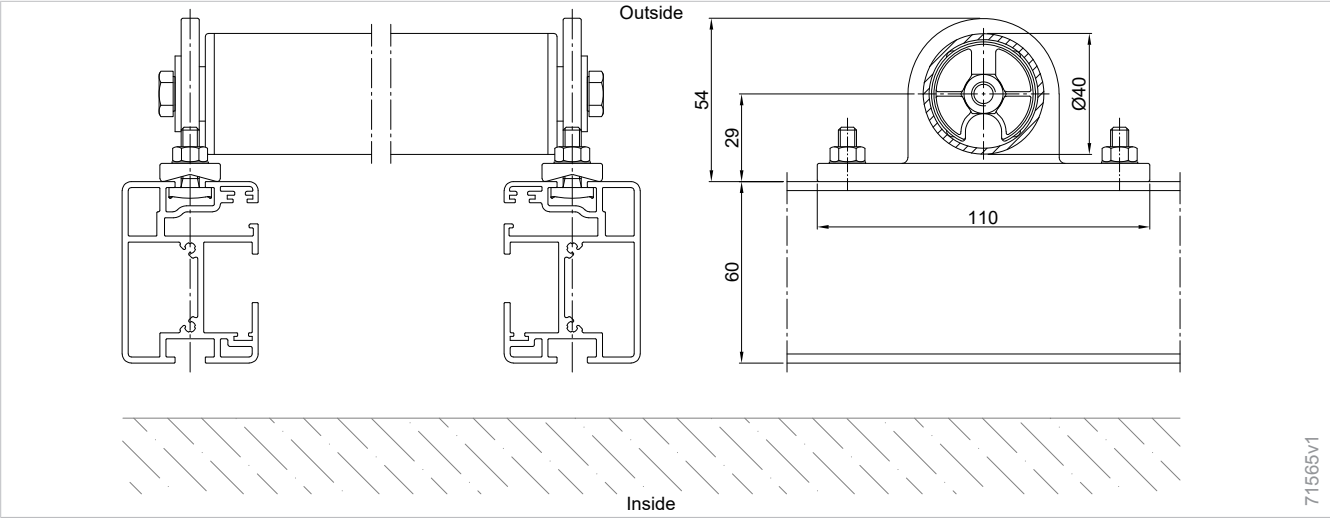
Cable exit - W10/W10<sup>2</sup>/W20



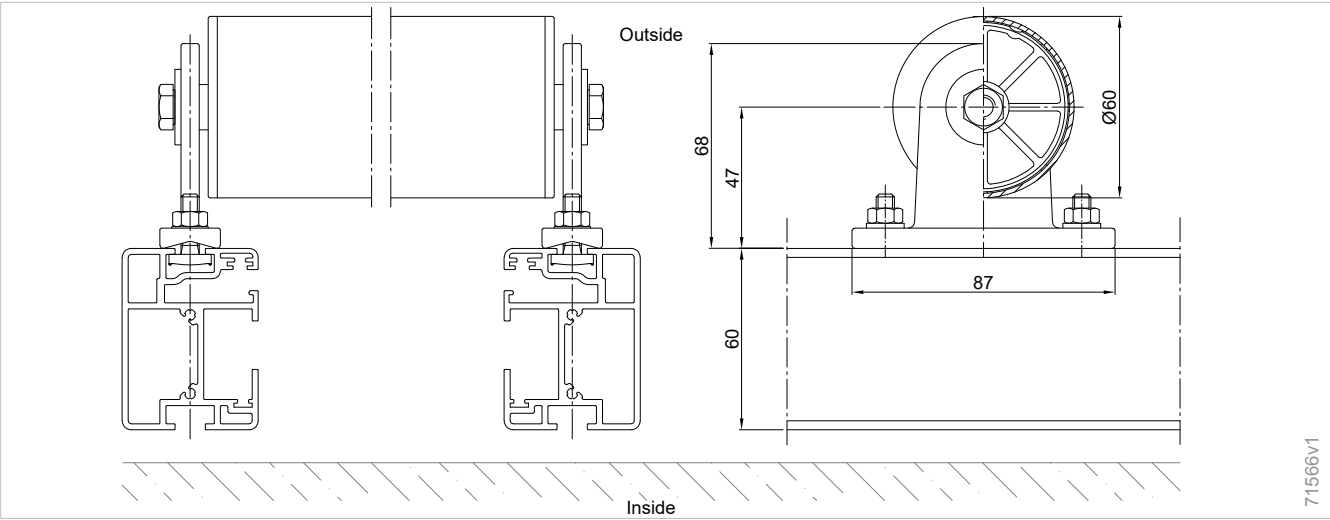
Guide rail - W20



Reinforcement profile Ø 40 mm - W20

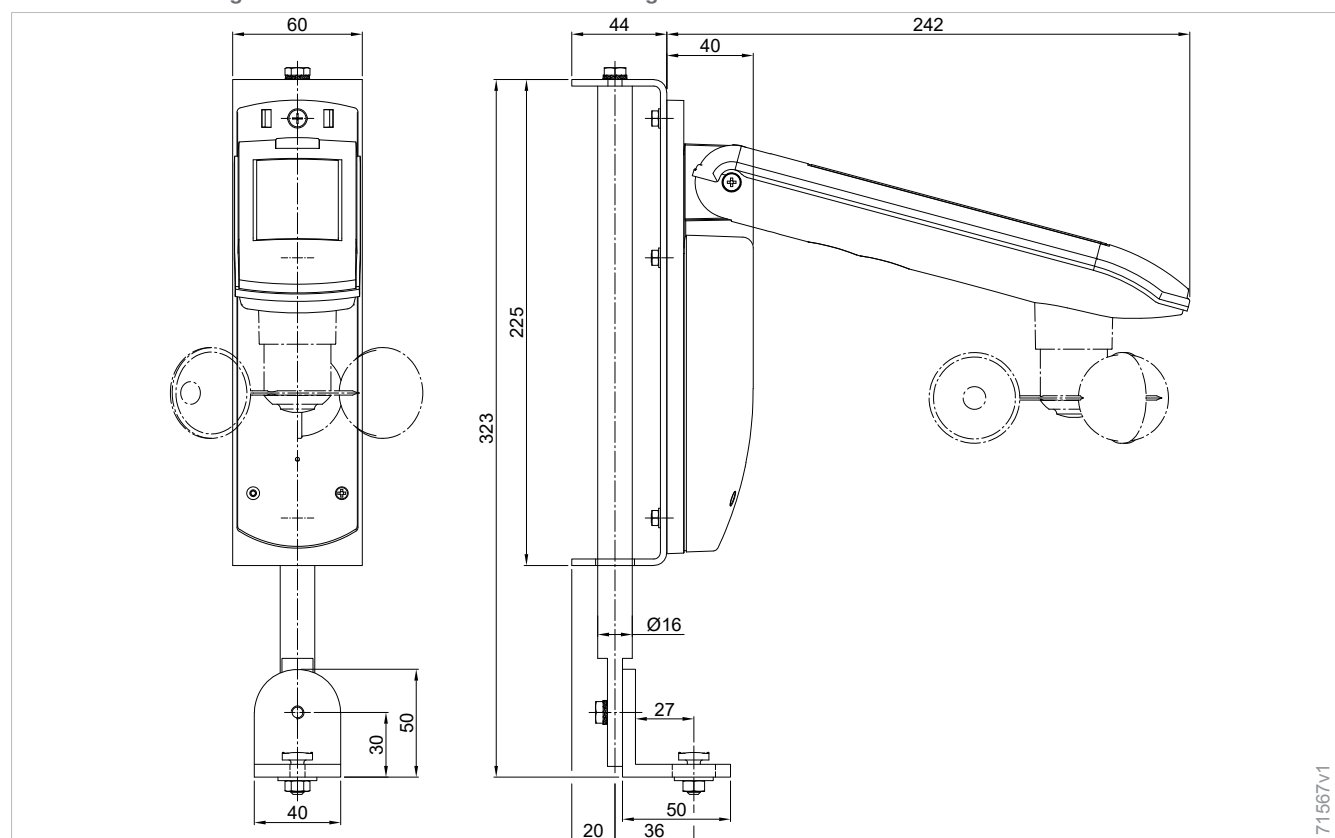


Reinforcement profile Ø 60 mm - W20





# Bracket for connecting a WMS or EWFS weather station to the guide rail



71567v1

## Additional product information

### Protects the unit from damage caused by rain

The conservatory awning W20 is intended to be used as a **sun shading system**, not as rain protection.

To prevent **destruction of/damage to** the awning due to sudden rain, one of the following pre-conditions must be fulfilled:

- Control including precipitation sensor
- Drainage cutouts in the fabric

If none of these pre-conditions is fulfilled, the **user is responsible** for retracting the awning before it starts to rain.

Small amounts of residual water can lead to **smudges** at the edges of awnings.

#### Number of drainage cutouts

| Order area        | Number |
|-------------------|--------|
| 15 m <sup>2</sup> | 6      |
| 20 m <sup>2</sup> | 8      |
| 24 m <sup>2</sup> | 10     |
| 30 m <sup>2</sup> | 12     |

### SDO switch - Mutual interlock

When using a conservatory awning **W20 above a ventilation wing** (no smoke and heat extraction system), it is necessary to use an SDO switch, which is integrated into the awning.

This creates a mutual interlock between the conservatory awning and the wing. That means that the conservatory awning will not extend as soon as the ventilation wing is opened and the wing will not open when the awning is extended.

The minimum order width is increased to 900 mm.

More information on request.

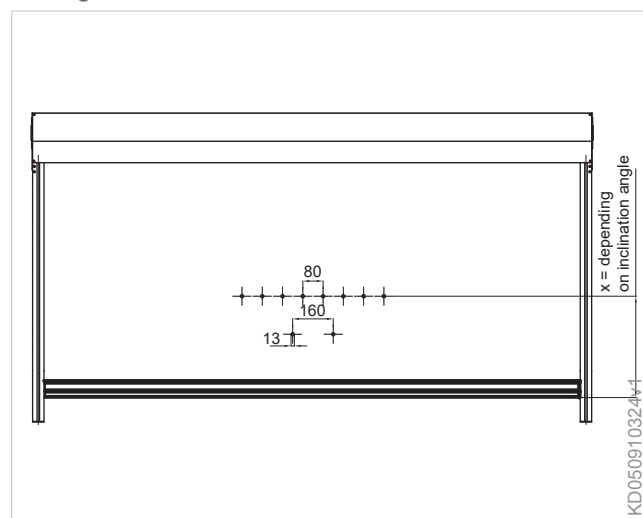
### VUNO model

Conservatory awnings Climara can be used with a "from bottom to top" direction of movement.

#### Notes:

- Each awning section requires two guide rails.
- Because the cover panel opens in the extension direction, there is an increased risk of the fabric becoming soiled.
- State clearly on the order form: Direction of movement "from bottom to top".
- State the roof pitch angle when ordering.

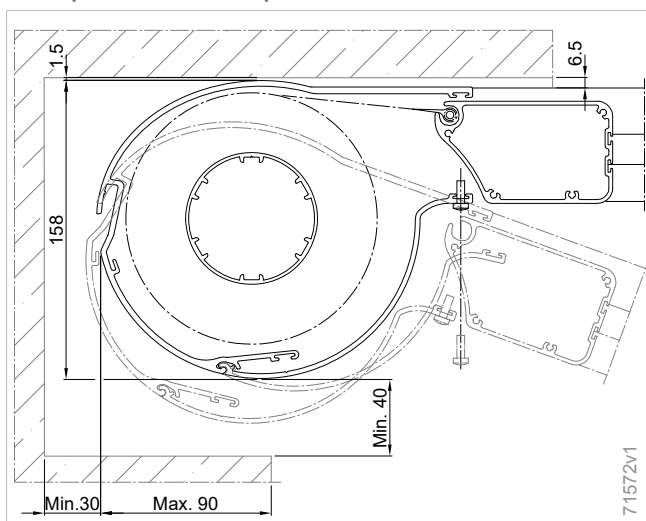
#### Drainage cutouts



Dimension x depends on inclination angle of the unit between 200 mm (16°) and 1115 mm (3°).

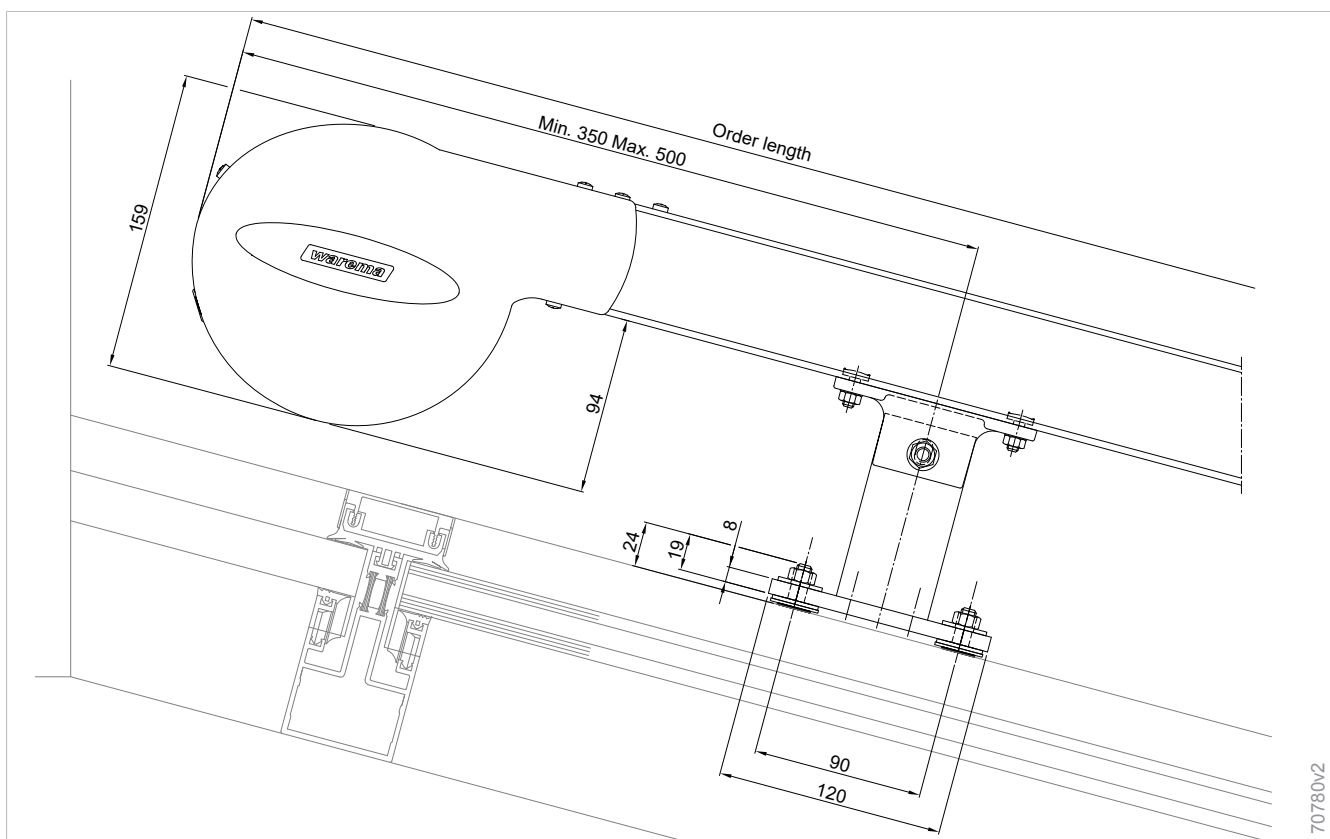
## Mounting examples

### Cover panel installation space - W20



**Attention:** Installation or inspection of the cover panel only possible outside the shaft.

### Guide rail fixation - W20



## Further information

Calculate the individual suitable and permissible fixing materials  
<http://warema2.atbit5.de/app/Plugcalculator.asp?lang=EN>



Use our free planning programme to plan your sun protection systems  
<https://sonnenschutzplaner.com/>



Configure and plan your product with myWAREMA  
<https://my.warema.com>



Experience the range of colours and fabrics of the WAREMA collections  
<https://www.warema.de/Tools/Kollektionsberater.php>



TechDataPLUS Conservatory awnings  
<https://docs.warema.com/1.1447.7>





# Contents

## Supplementary accessories

|                                                                          |     |
|--------------------------------------------------------------------------|-----|
| WMS Wind sensor and WMS sensor system.....                               | 258 |
| WMS Wind sensor.....                                                     | 259 |
| WMS sensor system.....                                                   | 260 |
| Valance roller blind.....                                                | 262 |
| Valance roller blind with crank.....                                     | 263 |
| Valance roller blind with motor and basic model.....                     | 265 |
| Valance roller blind with motor and integrated WMS comfort control.....  | 266 |
| Valance roller blind with motor and storage battery and WMS control..... | 268 |
| Wind protection for valance roller blind.....                            | 270 |
| Details.....                                                             | 271 |
| Lighting.....                                                            | 274 |
| Integrated lighting.....                                                 | 275 |
| LED strip light rail.....                                                | 277 |
| Radiant heater.....                                                      | 282 |
| Basic radiant heater.....                                                | 283 |
| Design radiant heater.....                                               | 284 |
| Other supplementary accessories.....                                     | 286 |
| Turning gear.....                                                        | 287 |
| Protective fabric cover.....                                             | 288 |
| Balcony fabrics.....                                                     | 289 |
| Stretcher frame.....                                                     | 292 |
| Front-mounted awnings with easyZIP guidance.....                         | 298 |
| Multicube set.....                                                       | 302 |
| Patio frame.....                                                         | 304 |
| Patio frame Terrea.....                                                  | 305 |
| Patio frame Perea.....                                                   | 312 |
| Printed fabrics.....                                                     | 316 |
| Fabric lettering, painted.....                                           | 317 |
| Sunprint.....                                                            | 318 |

Planning

Terrea

Perea

Patio  
side screens

Climara

Supplementary  
accessories

Components

Drive  
variants

Standards



## Supplementary accessories

### WMS Wind sensor and WMS sensor system

#### Safe

The awning is securely protected thanks to the smart WMS sensors.

#### Comfortable

The WMS sensor system automatically extends the awning when the sun shines, even if no one is at home.

#### Direct

WMS sensor system - direct integration in the awning adds invisible value for design, comfort and safety.

#### Can be used for:

- Articulated arm and cassette awnings Terrea
- Pergola awnings Perea
- Conservatory awnings Climara



#### Product characteristics

- WMS Wind sensor on the front rail of the articulated arm and cassette awning Terrea for fully automatic control according to wind.
- WMS sensor system for conservatory awnings Climara W20 and pergola awning Perea P40 for control according to wind, photo and precipitation.

# WMS Wind sensor

## Can be used for:

- Articulated arm and cassette awnings Terrea

## Product characteristics

Operating voltage, Battery 2 x 1.5 V micro cell (AAA)  
notes

|                        |         |
|------------------------|---------|
| Transmission frequency | 2,4 GHz |
| Degree of protection   | IP 54   |
| Safety class           | III     |
| Width                  | 71 mm   |
| Height                 | 40 mm   |
| Depth                  | 26 mm   |

## Product characteristics

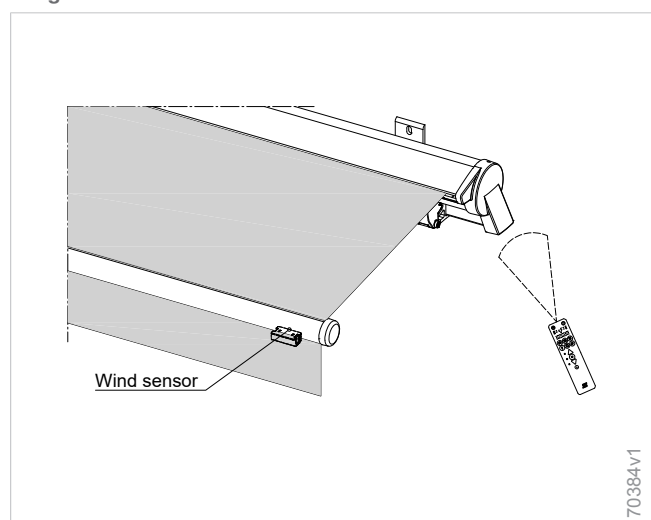
- Operation of the awning via a WMS transmitter
- Fully automatic control according to wind
- Power supplied by batteries
- Wind monitoring to protect the awning
- Sensitivity of the wind sensor adjusted to the projection of the awning
- Suitable for retrofitting
- Compact dimensions

## Notes

- No separate mounting required
- Additional switch operation only possible via WMS Transmitter UP

## Mounting examples

### Integrated WMS wind sensor





# WMS sensor system

## Can be used for:

- Perea P40
- Climara W20

## Product characteristics

|        |        |
|--------|--------|
| Width  | 265 mm |
| Height | 19 mm  |
| Depth  | 40 mm  |

## Product characteristics

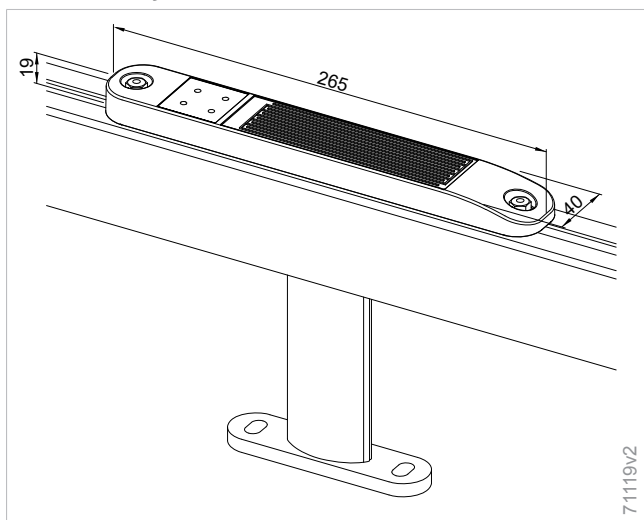
- The awning is operated via a WMS transmitter.
- Fully automatic control according to wind, photo and precipitation.
- The WMS Sensor is positioned at the front on the guide rail on the connection side, fastening directly via the pole (type P40) or the guide rail bracket (type W20).
- The WMS Sensor detects wind movements through vibrations directly on the guide rail.
- In combination with the WMS radio motor, the signals are evaluated and the awning is retracted if the wind is too strong.
- In addition, the sensor provides the measuring values for photo and precipitation.
- The measuring values are transmitted by radio to the receiver in the awning and induce the retraction or extension of the awning depending on the situation.

## Notes

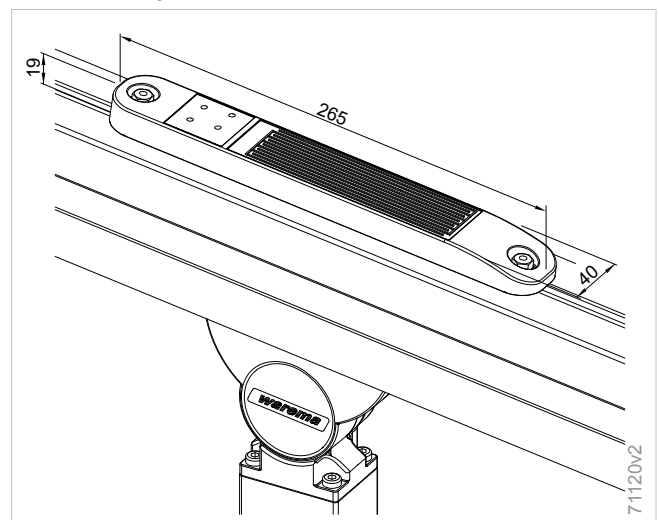
- Additional switch operation only possible via WMS Transmitter UP.
- In series-mounted units and in reveals, the awning must be completely premounted or disassembled for installation and inspection.
- Maximum of two units in a row. Each unit requires a separate sensor system which must always be attached to the external guide rail.

## Mounting examples

WMS sensor system for W20



WMS sensor system for P40







## Supplementary accessories

### Valance roller blind

#### Flexible

With a valance roller blind, even patios and balconies aligned to the south west can become a sheltered retreat.

#### Comfortable

The integrated WMS Comfort control makes channel operation possible.

#### Safe

A combination with the WMS Comfort control ensures that only the valance roller blind and then the awning is retracted.

#### Can be used for:

- Articulated arm and cassette awnings Terrea
- Pergola awnings Perea
- Conservatory awnings Climara



#### Product characteristics

- Additional vertical visual privacy and sun shading
- Perfora acrylic fabric and Twilight Pearl offer a view to the outside at the same time.

# Valance roller blind with crank

## Can be used for:

- Terrea 580
- Terrea K50
- Terrea K60
- Terrea K70
- Terrea G60
- Terrea H60
- Perea P40
- Climara W9
- Climara W10

## Components

### Shaft

#### Fabric shaft Ø 35 mm

|          |                     |
|----------|---------------------|
| Material | Aluminium, extruded |
| Surface  | Anodised            |
| Profile  | Groove tube         |
| Diameter | 35 mm               |

## Drive variants

- Crank

### Crank

- Crank with ball hook

### Gear

- Screw gear with spindle lock

+ see "Drive variants", Page 367

## Fabric qualities

- Standard acrylic fabric
- Lumera acrylic fabric

Fabric qualities, optional:

- Perfora acrylic
- Screen fabric
- Twilight Pearl

+ see "Awning collection", Page 356

## Notes

- For coupled units, the valance roller blind is supplied as a two-piece unit and can always be operated separately.
- Valance roller blind 580, G60, H60 available with or without additional valance.

**Operating note:** Valance roller blinds with crank operation must be retracted before closing the awning as otherwise there may be a danger of damage to the fabric and front rail. This applies especially when using the combination of a wind control and a valance roller blind with crank.

## Construction limit values

| Configuration variants                                                                            | Products             | 580, K50 | K60, K70 | G60, H60 | P40     | W9, W10 |
|---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|----------------------|----------|----------|----------|---------|---------|
| <b>Fabric qualities</b>                                                                           |                      |          |          |          |         |         |
| Standard acrylic fabric - unicoloured / Lumera acrylic fabric - unicoloured                       | Maximum order height | 1800 mm  | 2200 mm  | 2000 mm  | 2500 mm | 2200 mm |
| Perfora acrylic                                                                                   | Maximum order height | 1800 mm  | 2200 mm  | 2000 mm  | 2500 mm | 2200 mm |
| Screen fabric                                                                                     | Maximum order height | 1400 mm  | 2200 mm  | 1500 mm  | 1800 mm | 1400 mm |
| Twilight Pearl                                                                                    | Maximum order height | 2000 mm  | 2500 mm  | 2300 mm  | 2500 mm | 2200 mm |
| <b>Fabric qualities + Fabric processing</b>                                                       |                      |          |          |          |         |         |
| Standard acrylic fabric - strips / Lumera acrylic fabric - strips + Sewing / Gluing (overlapping) | Maximum order height | 1000 mm  | 1600 mm  | 1400 mm  | 1900 mm | 1200 mm |
| Standard acrylic fabric - strips / Lumera acrylic fabric - strips + UltraSeam™                    | Maximum order height | 1800 mm  | 2200 mm  | 2000 mm  |         |         |

### Maximum projection:

- 580: 2500 mm
- G60, H60, K60, K70: 3500 mm
- Group units K60, K70: 3000 mm

### Maximum order width:

- W9, W10: 5000 mm

For the **turning gear** model with valance roller blind, the construction limit values for the turning gear apply.

# Valance roller blind with motor and basic model

## Can be used for:

- Terrea K60
- Terrea K70
- Terrea G60
- Terrea H60

## Components

### Shaft

#### Fabric shaft Ø 42 mm

|          |                     |
|----------|---------------------|
| Material | Aluminium, extruded |
| Surface  | Plain               |
| Profile  | Groove tube         |
| Diameter | 42 mm               |

## Drive variants

- Motor

### Motor

- MM9/16 (valance roller blind)

+ see "Drive variants", Page 367

## Fabric qualities

- Standard acrylic fabric
- Lumera acrylic fabric

Fabric qualities, optional:

- Perfora acrylic
- Screen fabric
- Twilight Pearl

+ see "Awning collection", Page 356

## Product characteristics

Operation of awning and valance roller blind via separate switches.

## Notes

- Motor without additional motor control unit
- No safety function when retracting the awning
- No additional control options
- For coupled units, the valance roller blind is supplied as a two-piece unit and can always be operated separately.
- Valance roller blind G60, H60 available with or without additional valance.

## Construction limit values

| Configuration variants                                                                            | Products             | K60, K70 | G60, H60 |
|---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|----------------------|----------|----------|
| <b>Fabric qualities</b>                                                                           |                      |          |          |
| Standard acrylic fabric - unicoloured / Lumera acrylic fabric - unicoloured                       | Maximum order height | 1800 mm  | 1600 mm  |
| Perfora acrylic                                                                                   | Maximum order height | 1800 mm  | 1600 mm  |
| Screen fabric                                                                                     | Maximum order height | 1600 mm  | 1000 mm  |
| Twilight Pearl                                                                                    | Maximum order height | 2000 mm  | 1800 mm  |
| <b>Fabric qualities + Fabric processing</b>                                                       |                      |          |          |
| Standard acrylic fabric - strips / Lumera acrylic fabric - strips + Sewing / Gluing (overlapping) | Maximum order height | 1200 mm  | 1000 mm  |
| Standard acrylic fabric - strips / Lumera acrylic fabric - strips + Ultra-Seam™                   | Maximum order height | 1800 mm  | 1600 mm  |

**Basic model** only possible with individual units.

Maximum projection:

- G60, H60, K60, K70: 3500 mm
- Group units K60, K70: 3000 mm

A combination with **turning gear** is not possible.

# Valance roller blind with motor and integrated WMS comfort control

## Can be used for:

- Terrea K60
- Terrea K70
- Terrea G60
- Terrea H60

## Components

### Shaft

#### Fabric shaft Ø 42 mm

|          |                     |
|----------|---------------------|
| Material | Aluminium, extruded |
| Surface  | Plain               |
| Profile  | Groove tube         |
| Diameter | 42 mm               |

## Drive variants

- Motor

### Motor

- MM9/16 (valance roller blind)

+ see "Drive variants", Page 367

## Fabric qualities

- Standard acrylic fabric
- Lumera acrylic fabric

Fabric qualities, optional:

- Perfora acrylic
- Screen fabric
- Twilight Pearl

+ see "Awning collection", Page 356

## Product characteristics

- WMS control integrated into the awning
- Fully automatic control according to wind
- Operation of awning and valance roller blind via WMS transmitter on one channel

## Notes

- For coupled units, the valance roller blind is supplied as a two-piece unit and can always be operated separately.
- Valance roller blind G60, H60 available with or without additional valance.

## Construction limit values

| Configuration variants                                                                            | Products             | K60, K70 | G60, H60 |
|---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|----------------------|----------|----------|
| <b>Fabric qualities</b>                                                                           |                      |          |          |
| Standard acrylic fabric - unicoloured / Lumera acrylic fabric - unicoloured                       | Maximum order height | 1800 mm  | 1600 mm  |
| Perfora acrylic                                                                                   | Maximum order height | 1800 mm  | 1600 mm  |
| Screen fabric                                                                                     | Maximum order height | 1600 mm  | 1000 mm  |
| Twilight Pearl                                                                                    | Maximum order height | 2000 mm  | 1800 mm  |
| <b>Fabric qualities + Fabric processing</b>                                                       |                      |          |          |
| Standard acrylic fabric - strips / Lumera acrylic fabric - strips + Sewing / Gluing (overlapping) | Maximum order height | 1200 mm  | 1000 mm  |
| Standard acrylic fabric - strips / Lumera acrylic fabric - strips + Ultra-Seam™                   | Maximum order height | 1800 mm  | 1600 mm  |

An additional control is integrated for **coupled units** and a second wind sensor is built in.

### Maximum projection:

- G60, H60, K60, K70: 3500 mm
- Group units K60, K70: 3000 mm

A combination with **turning gear** is not possible.

## Additional product information

### Connection when supplied with WMS

#### Connecting line:

- No external power distributor required
- Only one visible connecting line
- Depending on the equipment/model, it can be positioned on the drive end or the non-drive end.

The precise installation of the control and drive is indicated by labels on the bearing tube or in the side cover of the cassette/cover panel.



# Valance roller blind with motor and storage battery and WMS control

## Can be used for:

- Perea P40
- Climara W10

## Components

### Shaft

#### Fabric shaft Ø 42 mm

|          |                     |
|----------|---------------------|
| Material | Aluminium, extruded |
| Surface  | Plain               |
| Profile  | Groove tube         |
| Diameter | 42 mm               |

## Drive variants

- Motor

### Motor

- P6/20M (valance roller blind)

+ see "Drive variants", Page 367

## Fabric qualities

- Standard acrylic fabric
- Lumera acrylic fabric

Fabric qualities, optional:

- Perfora acrylic
- Screen fabric
- Twilight Pearl

+ see "Awning collection", Page 356

## Product characteristics

- Motor with upstream WMS receiver incl. battery charge control.
- Operation of awning and valance roller blind via WMS transmitter
- A control housing is attached below the drop profile in the peripheral area.

## Notes

Optional additional control options using WMS sensor system incl. fully automatic control according to wind.

**Installation/dismantling of series-mounted units and units in the reveal, W10/P40:** In series-mounted units and in reveals, the awning must be completely premounted or disassembled for installation and inspection.

## Construction limit values

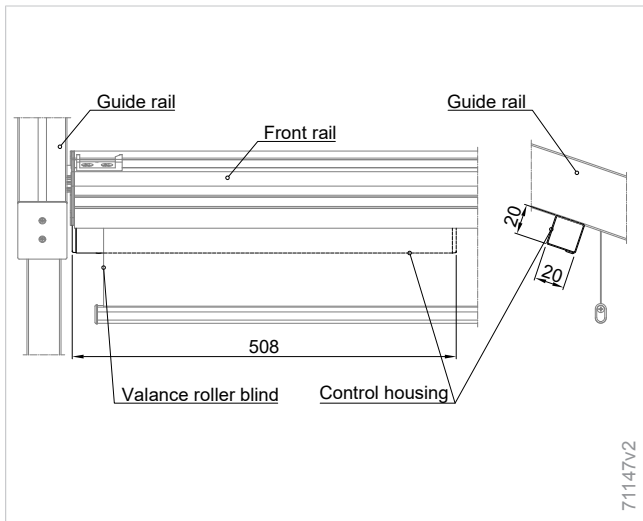
| Configuration variants                                                                            | Products             | P40     | W10     |
|---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|----------------------|---------|---------|
| <b>Fabric qualities</b>                                                                           |                      |         |         |
| Standard acrylic fabric - unicoloured / Lumera acrylic fabric - unicoloured                       | Maximum order height | 2500 mm | 1400 mm |
| Perfora acrylic                                                                                   | Maximum order height | 2500 mm | 1400 mm |
| Screen fabric                                                                                     | Maximum order height | 1800 mm | 1200 mm |
| Twilight Pearl                                                                                    | Maximum order height | 2500 mm | 1500 mm |
| <b>Fabric qualities + Fabric processing</b>                                                       |                      |         |         |
| Standard acrylic fabric - strips / Lumera acrylic fabric - strips + Sewing / Gluing (overlapping) | Maximum order height | 1200 mm | 500 mm  |

### Maximum order width:

- W10: 5000 mm

# Dimension determination

## Details



Planning

Terrea

Perea

Patio  
side screens

Climara

**Supplementary  
accessories**

Components

Drive  
variants

Standards

# Wind protection for valance roller blind

## Can be used for:

- Perea P40
- Climara W9
- Climara W10

## Product characteristics

Optional wind protection for the valance roller blind to prevent it from swinging in light wind.

The rubber cords can be hung, for example, from a hook on-site, thus reducing the fabric's movements in light wind.

## Notes

The wind protection must only be used under supervision and not in combination with wind monitoring.

# Details

## Fabric recommendation

We recommend the use of Perfora acrylic fabric quality. Thanks to its perforation, this improves the view out. Especially for use with valance roller blinds, we use a special bale width of 2000 mm for this quality. With crosswise processing and seamless design (up to a valance roller blind height of 1800 mm), the Perfora acrylic fabric will win you over with very good optical results.

Alternatively, we recommend the use of unicoloured acrylic fabrics with transverse seam, as they offer much significantly improved winding behaviour in comparison with longitudinal processing.

For multi-strips with longitudinal seam, we recommend UltraSeam™.

The height is defined from the centre of the front rail to the bottom edge of the drop profile. Using the maximum possible height minimises the sagging of the fabric shaft.

## Patio awnings with valance roller blind and motor

The lines specified in the wiring diagrams are minimum diameters intended for copper, regardless of the length and the resulting voltage drops. The specified lines are recommendations.

According to VDE 0022, only the installer of electrical units is responsible for compliance with power supply company and VDE requirements.

Valance roller blinds with basic model must be retracted before closing the patio awning as the fabric and front rail might otherwise be damaged.

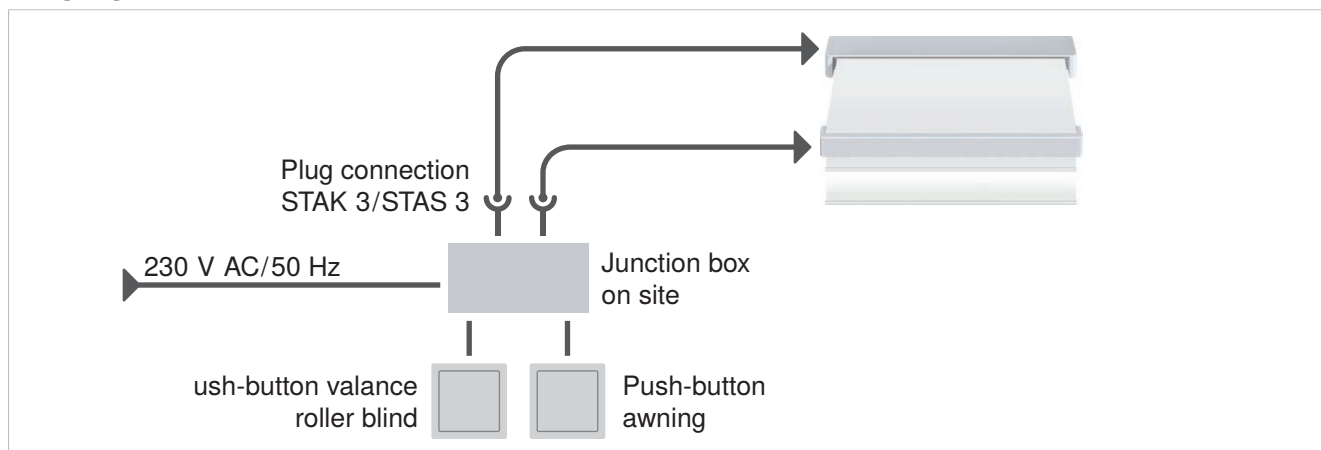
For patio awnings with WMS Comfort control, the awning and valance roller blind are operated via a WMS transmitter.

With individual units, the valance roller blind retracts first and then the awning in the event of a wind alarm.

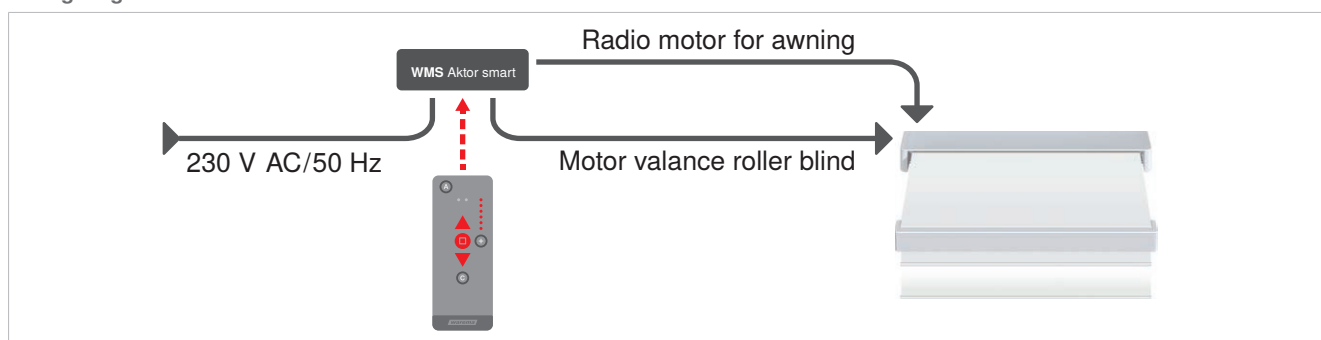
For types W10 and P40 with valance roller blind as well as a motor and WMS control, the awning and valance roller blind are operated via a WMS transmitter. The battery charge is ensured and monitored by the receiver. When the charging level is critical, the valance roller blind is automatically retracted (subsequent manual operation may result in a time delay in the operation of the awning).

Where patio awnings have WMS sensors, the valance roller blind retracts first and then the awning in the event of a wind alarm.

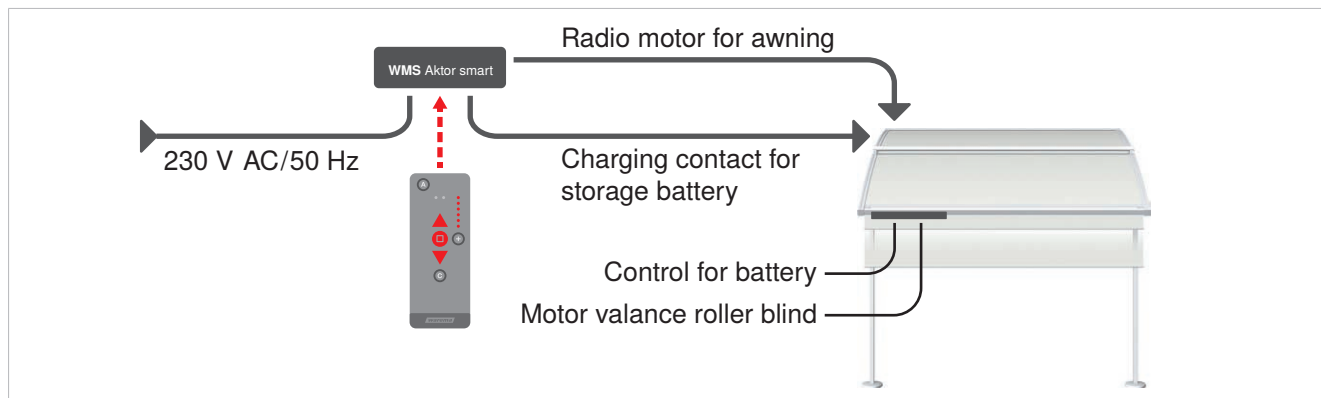
Wiring diagram for valance roller blind with motor and basic model



Wiring diagram for valance roller blind with motor and WMS comfort control



Wiring diagram for valance roller blind with battery-operated motor and WMS comfort control







## Supplementary accessories

### Lighting

#### Continuous

The new LED strips with 120 LEDs/m create a seamless light band of warm, white light.

#### Adjustable

Thanks to the WMS Dimmer, the lighting can be individually adjusted to every situation.

#### Smart

With the integrated lighting in conjunction with WMS control, the control completely disappears into the awning and is therefore perfectly hidden and neat.

#### Can be used for:

- Articulated arm and cassette awnings Terrea
- Pergola awnings Perea
- Conservatory awnings Climara
- Lamaxa slat roofs



#### Product characteristics

- Lighting integrated into the front rail, the cassette or the guide rails
- Separate light rail offers additional lighting options.

# Integrated lighting

## Can be used for:

- Terrea 580
- Terrea K50
- Terrea K60
- Terrea K70
- Terrea G60
- Terrea H60
- Perea P40
- Perea P60
- Climara W10

## Set

### Lens - integrated LED strips

#### LED strip

|                      |                                      |
|----------------------|--------------------------------------|
| Operating voltage    | 24 V DC                              |
| Total power of light | 400 running metre per metre, 400 W/m |
| Degree of protection | IP 67                                |
| Durability           | Approx. 10000 operating hours        |
| Colour temperature   | 2900 - 3400 K                        |

#### Power supply unit - LED strips

|                                 |                     |
|---------------------------------|---------------------|
| Connecting line, maximum length | 1000 mm with STAS 3 |
| Degree of protection            | IP 54               |

## Product characteristics

|                 |                                                                                                                                                          |
|-----------------|----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| Operation       | Optionally with switch (external power supply unit) or WMS transmitter with WMS dimmer (integrated)                                                      |
| Attachment      | <b>G60/H60/K60:</b> Front rail<br><b>580/K50:</b> Cassette<br><b>K70:</b> Cassette and/or front rail<br><b>P40/P60/W10:</b> Guide rails (left and right) |
| Connection type | In the case of delivery without radio control on-site, in the case of delivery with WMS already connected.                                               |

## Notes

**Unlit area:** The LED strips are assembled in increments of 50 mm. This can lead to an unlit area:

- **Articulated arm and cassette awnings:** Max. 25 mm per side
- **W10 and P40:** Max. 50 mm on front end of guide rails
- **P60:** Max. 100 mm up to drainage gutter. In the P60, the LED strips end at the drainage gutter, i.e. there is an additional unlit area from the drainage gutter to the front rail. Offset: Order depth -500 mm = length of LED strip

**Installation/dismantling of series-mounted units and units in the reveal, W10/P40/P60:** In series-mounted units and in reveals, the awning must be completely premounted or disassembled for installation and inspection.

Integrated lighting not possible in combination with awning crank operation.

## Additional product information

### Connection when supplied with WMS

#### Connecting line:

- No external power distributor required
- Only one visible connecting line
- Depending on the equipment/model, it can be positioned on the drive end or the non-drive end.

The precise installation of the control and drive is indicated by labels on the bearing tube or in the side cover of the cassette/cover panel.



## Position of integrated LED strips

Integrated lighting - Terrea 580



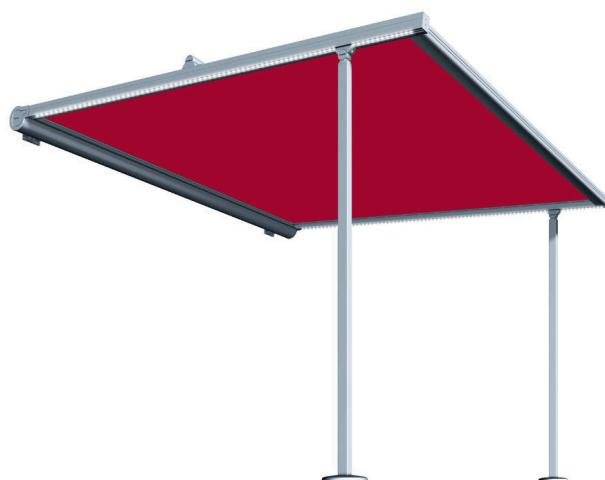
Integrated lighting - Terrea H60



Integrated lighting - Terrea K50



Integrated lighting - Perea P40



LED strip light rail and integrated lighting - Terrea K60



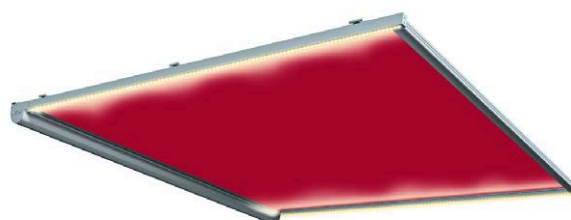
Integrated lighting - Perea P60



Integrated lighting - Terrea K70



Integrated lighting - Climara W10



# LED strip light rail

## Can be used for:

- Articulated arm and cassette awnings Terrea
- Conservatory awnings Climara W10
- Pergola awnings Perea
- Retrofitting solution with external control for all other situations

## Set

### Profile for LED strip light rails

|          |                     |
|----------|---------------------|
| Material | Aluminium, extruded |
| Surface  | Powder-coated       |
| Profile  | Round profile       |
| Diameter | 20 mm               |

The LED strip light rail is closed laterally.

### Lens - LED strip light rail

#### LED strip

|                      |                                      |
|----------------------|--------------------------------------|
| Operating voltage    | 24 V DC                              |
| Total power of light | 400 running metre per metre, 400 W/m |
| Degree of protection | IP 67                                |
| Durability           | Approx. 10000 operating hours        |
| Colour temperature   | 2900 - 3400 K                        |

#### Power supply unit - LED strips

|                                 |                     |
|---------------------------------|---------------------|
| Connecting line, maximum length | 1000 mm with STAS 3 |
| Degree of protection            | IP 54               |

## Colours

- WAREMA Colour World

+ see "WAREMA Colour World", Page 12

## Product characteristics

|                 |                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                             |
|-----------------|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| Operation       | Optionally with switch, WMS Plug receiver or WMS Dimmer (LED)                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                               |
| Attachment      | <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>– <b>Articulated arm awnings Terrea:</b> With bracket made from folded aluminium on the bearing tube</li> <li>– <b>Cassette awnings Terrea, pergola awnings Perea P40 and P60 and conservatory awning Climara W10:</b> Directly on the cassette or cover panel via clip holder</li> <li>– <b>Pergola awning Perea P70:</b> Directly on the travelling reinforcement profiles via clip holder, max. 6 light rails per unit</li> </ul> |
| Connection type | On-site, without plug-in connector, included with orders of awnings with WMS radio motor control integrated into the awning                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                 |
| Lighting angle  | 90 °                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                        |

## Notes

### Installation/dismantling of series-mounted units and units in the reveal, W10/P40/P60 with integrated control:

In series-mounted units and in reveals, the awning must be completely premounted or disassembled for installation and inspection.

### Retrofitting:

- Generally only possible with external accommodation of the control
- Not possible for the pergola awning Perea P70

## Dimension determination

Connection side generally seen from outside.

### Offset

| Products                         | Configuration variants | Offset |
|----------------------------------|------------------------|--------|
| <b>Drive variants</b>            |                        |        |
| 530 / G60 / H60                  | Motor                  | 20 mm  |
| 530 / G60 / H60                  | Crank                  | 20 mm  |
| 550                              | Motor                  | 120 mm |
| 550                              | Crank                  | 250 mm |
| 580                              | Motor                  | 150 mm |
| 580                              | Crank                  | 230 mm |
| K50                              | Motor                  | 20 mm  |
| K50                              | Crank                  | 350 mm |
| K60                              | Motor                  | 140 mm |
| K60                              | Crank                  | 350 mm |
| K70                              | Motor                  | 120 mm |
| P40 / P60                        | Motor                  | 65 mm  |
| P70                              | Motor                  | 144 mm |
| W10                              | Motor                  | 0 mm   |
| <b>Supplementary accessories</b> |                        |        |
| G60 / H60                        | Turning gear           | 200 mm |

The LED strip light rail is always shorter than the order width of the awning by the width of the offset specified in the table.

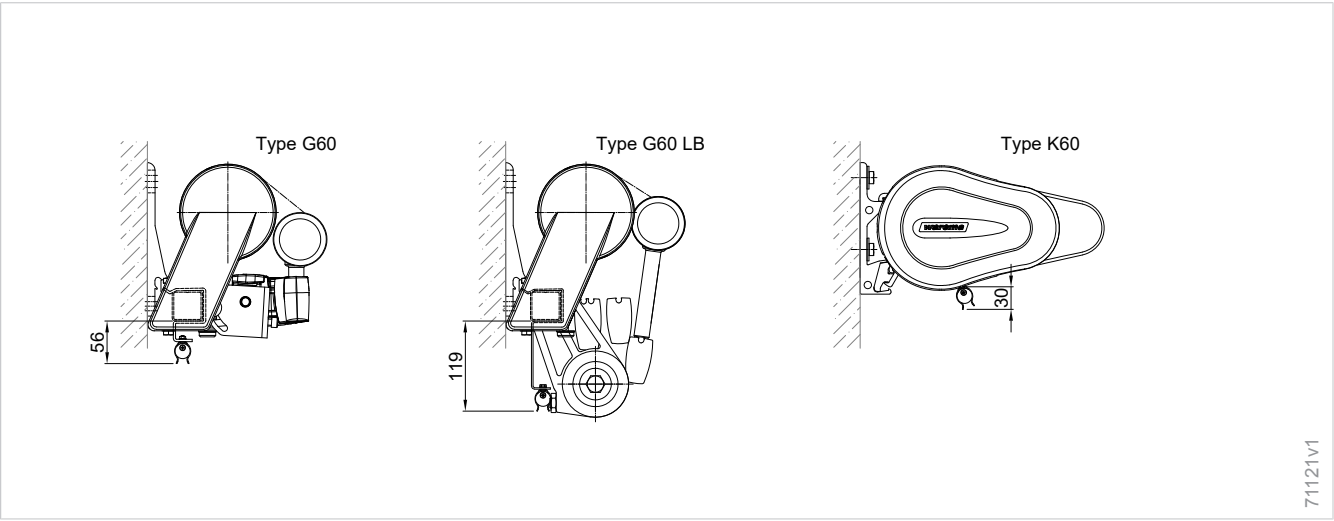
## Quantity determination

### Number of fixing points

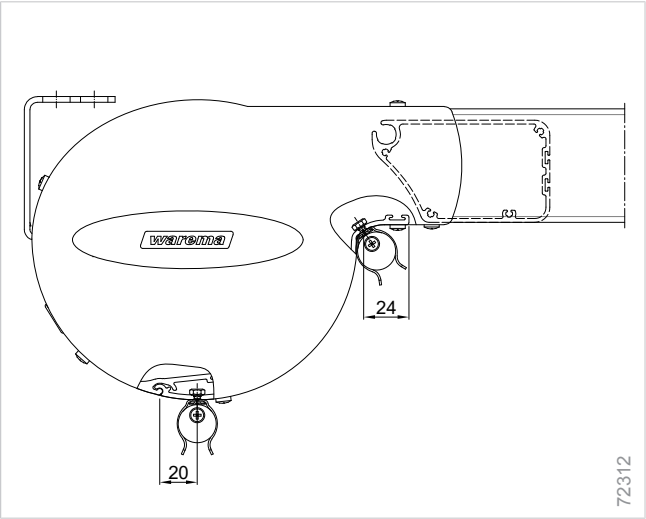
| Configuration variants           | Order width    | Number |
|----------------------------------|----------------|--------|
| <b>Supplementary accessories</b> |                |        |
| LED strip light rail             | 2000 mm        | 2      |
| LED strip light rail             | 2001 - 3000 mm | 3      |
| LED strip light rail             | 3001 - 4000 mm | 4      |
| LED strip light rail             | 4001 - 5000 mm | 5      |
| LED strip light rail             | 5001 - 6000 mm | 6      |
| LED strip light rail             | 6001 - 7001 mm | 7      |

Details

Example brackets for LED strip light rail



Light rail connection - W10



## Additional product information

### Position of LED strip light rail - Examples

LED strip light rail and integrated lighting - Terrea K60



LED strip light rail - Climara W10



LED strip light rail - Terrea H60



LED strip light rail - Perea P40



LED strip light rail - Perea P70







## Supplementary accessories

### Radiant heater

#### Comfortable

The radiant heater creates a cosy warmth on the patio, even in the evening.

#### Versatile

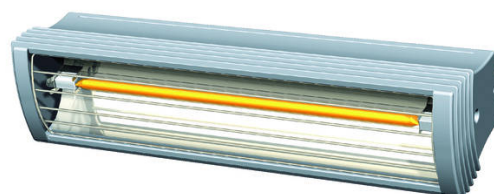
With various installation options on the awning, patio roof or building wall, many different applications are possible.

#### Convenient

The WMS Plug receiver Power makes for easy operation via hand-held transmitter.

#### Can be used for:

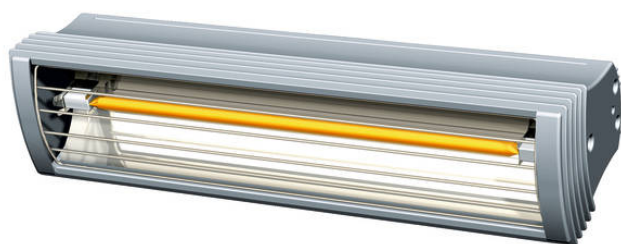
- Articulated arm and cassette awnings Terrea
- Pergola awnings Perea
- Conservatory awnings Climara
- Lamaxa slat roofs



#### Product characteristics

- Cosy warmth
- 2 models to choose from
- Operation via hand-held transmitter or switch

# Basic radiant heater



## Colours

- RAL 9006 white aluminium, satin finish
- RAL 9016 traffic white, satin finish
- RAL 9005 jet black, satin finish

+ see "WAREMA Colour World", Page 12

## Product characteristics

|                      |                                                            |
|----------------------|------------------------------------------------------------|
| Material             | Aluminium                                                  |
| Surface              | Powder-coated                                              |
| Power                | 1500 W                                                     |
| Operation            | Optionally with switch or EWFS or WMS radio remote control |
| Attachment           | Possible on the awning or the building wall with a bracket |
| Operating voltage    | 230 V AC                                                   |
| Connection type      | 4m with safety plug                                        |
| Degree of protection | IPX4                                                       |
| Width                | 390 mm                                                     |
| Height               | 100 mm                                                     |
| Depth                | 108 mm                                                     |

## Product characteristics

Infrared quartz technology with Philips gold tube

## Notes

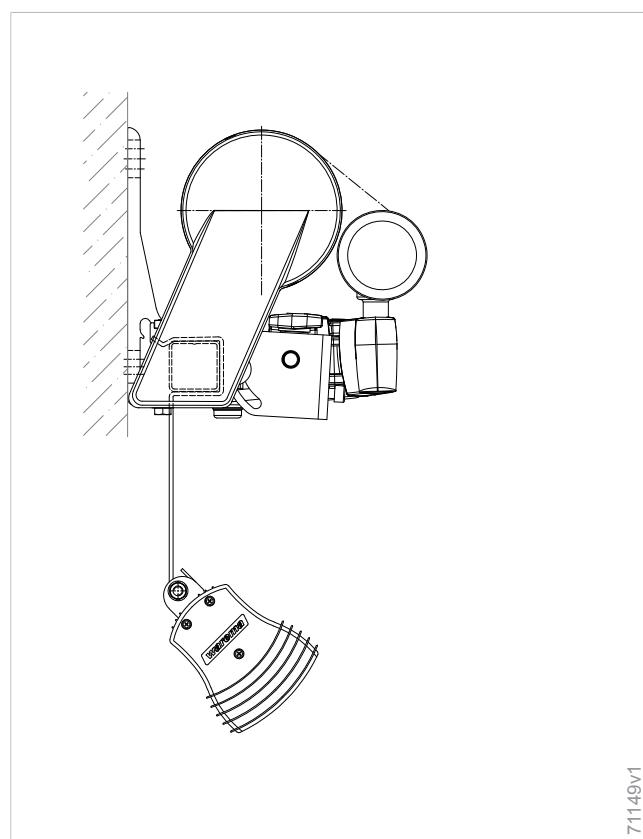
### Minimum distance:

- In the lighting area, the minimum distance to flammable materials must be at least 1000 mm.
- In this context, the use of a radiant heater with awnings with a superordinate electronic control and a manual valance roller blind, for example, is not recommended.
- For awnings with valance or valance roller blind, the radiant heater must only be operated when the awning is extended.
- The radiant heater is only suitable for outdoor use.
- Please observe the safety instructions in the installation and operating instructions.

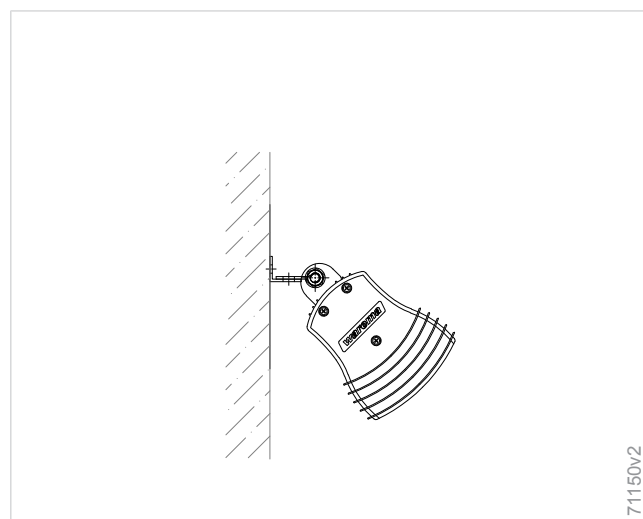
**Fuse required:** Please note when planning that a separate fuse C16A is required for radiant heaters.

## Mounting examples

Bracket for radiant heater for G60



Bracket for radiant heater for wall installation





# Design radiant heater



## Colours

- WAREMA Colour World

+ see "WAREMA Colour World", Page 12

## Product characteristics

|                      |                                                                |
|----------------------|----------------------------------------------------------------|
| Power                | 2200 W                                                         |
| Operation            | Optionally with switch or WMS radio remote control.            |
| Attachment           | Possible on the slat roof or the building wall with a bracket. |
| Operating voltage    | 230 V AC                                                       |
| Connection type      | 5 m without plug connector with open cable whip                |
| Degree of protection | IP 65                                                          |
| Inclination angle    | 30 - 40 °                                                      |
| Width                | 974 mm                                                         |
| Height               | 176 mm                                                         |
| Depth                | 174 mm                                                         |

## Product characteristics

- Infrared short wave radiant heater
- Reduced red light radiation thanks to black glass ceramic cover
- Powder-coated housing

## Notes

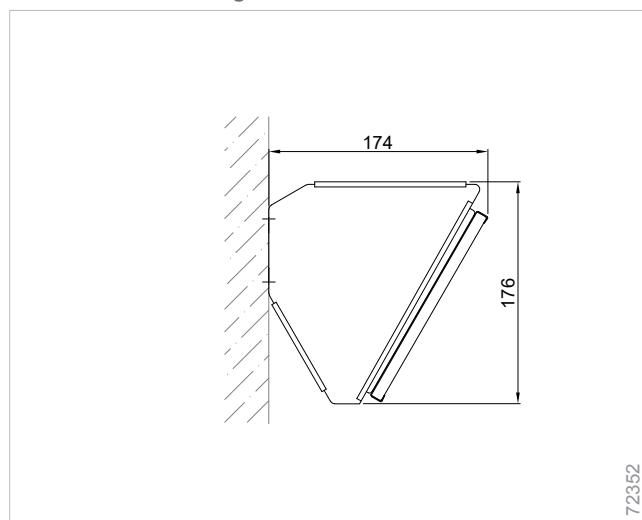
### Minimum distance:

- In the lighting area, the minimum distance to flammable materials must be at least 1000 mm.
- In this context, the use of a radiant heater with awnings with a superordinate electronic control and a manual valance roller blind, for example, is not recommended.
- For awnings with valance or valance roller blind, the radiant heater must only be operated when the awning is extended.
- The radiant heater is only suitable for outdoor use.
- Please observe the safety instructions in the installation and operating instructions.

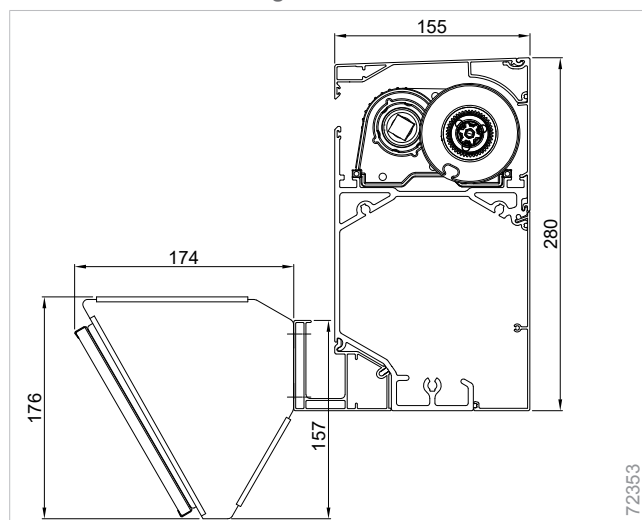
**Fuse required:** Please note when planning that a separate fuse C16A is required for radiant heaters.

## Mounting examples

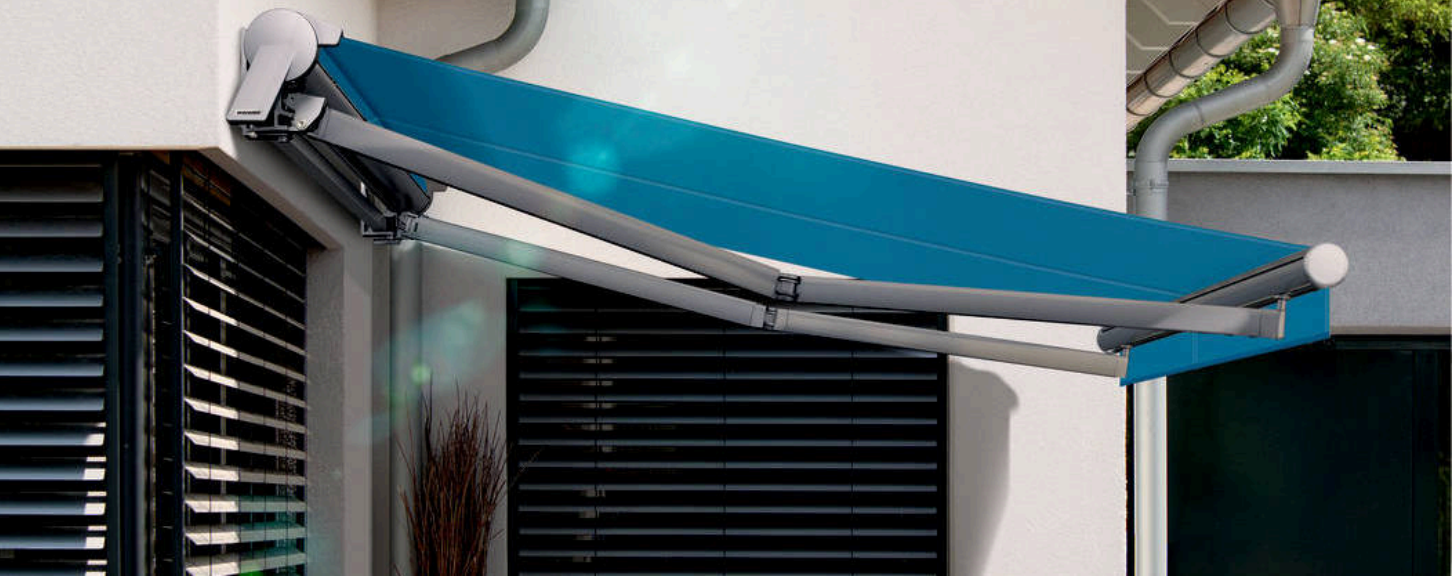
### Wall installation - design radiant heater



### Installation Lamaxa - Design radiant heater







## Supplementary accessories

### Other supplementary accessories

#### Individual

Thanks to the wide range of additional equipment options, the awning can be adapted to specific wishes and needs on site.

#### Flexible

Using the turning gear, the inclination angle can be easily adjusted based on the position of the sun.

#### Protected

The balcony fabric and fixed frame offer additional protection against sun, wind and prying eyes.



#### ☒ Product characteristics

- Turning gear for individual inclination adjustments, for example to protect against low lying sun.
- Fabric protective cover to protect open awnings from soiling in winter.
- Balcony fabric as additional visual privacy, sun shading and wind protection.

# Turning gear

## Can be used for:

- Terrea G60
- Terrea H60

## Colours

- WAREMA Colour World

+ see "WAREMA Colour World", Page 12

## Product characteristics

|                         |                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                           |
|-------------------------|---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| Maximum order width     | 6500 mm                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                   |
| Maximum projection      | 3500 mm                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                   |
| Surface                 | Powder-coated                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                             |
| Adjustment range        | 5 - 45 °                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                  |
| Adjustment range, notes | <b>Turning gear operation:</b> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>- When the turning gear is in operation, the awning may only be extended by a maximum of 1 m.</li> <li>- Before retracting the awning, the inclination angle must be adjusted to 5°-30°.</li> </ul> |

## Drive variants

- Crank

## Crank

- Crank with ball hook

## Gear

- Angle gear

+ see "Drive variants", Page 367

## Construction limit values

Equipment with **turning gear is not possible** with:

- Group units
- LB model
- Integrated WMS Wind sensor
- Electrical valance roller blind

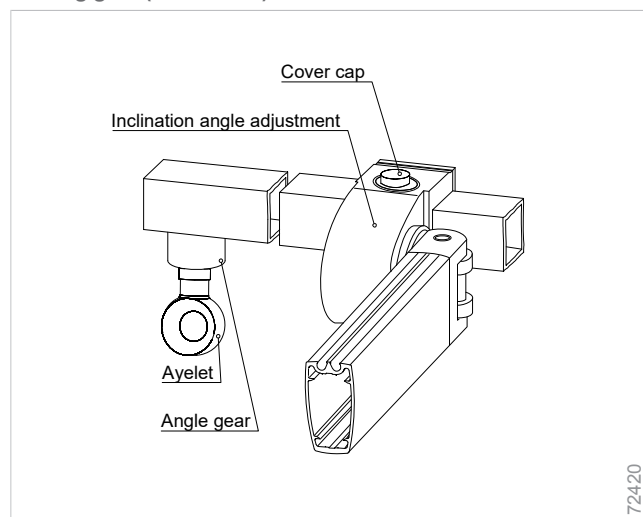
## Maximum width combined with valance roller blind (crank):

- For 3500 mm projection: 4500 mm
- For 3000 mm projection: 5500 mm

## Dimension determination

### Details

#### Turning gear (Terrea G60)



## Protective fabric cover

### Can be used for:

- Terrea 530
- Terrea G60

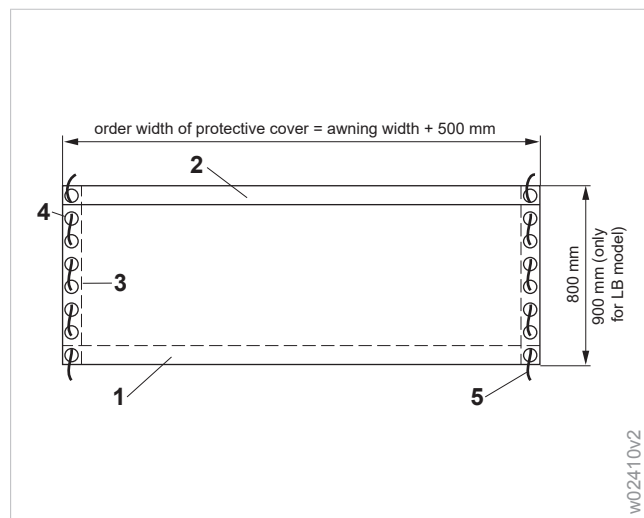
## Product characteristics

### Order data:

- Awning type
- Awning width
- Design no. or design of our choice

**LB model** awnings are delivered with a cover height of 900 mm

### Protective fabric cover for Terrea articulated arm awnings



- |   |                                       |   |                               |
|---|---------------------------------------|---|-------------------------------|
| 1 | Velcro loop tape, sewn-on on the back | 4 | Brass eyelets Ø 8 mm, punched |
| 2 | Velcro hook tape, sewn-on             | 5 | PVC cord                      |
| 3 | Lateral hem seam, 50 mm measured flat |   |                               |

# Balcony fabrics

## Can be used for:

- Balcony railings

## Product characteristics

### Standard model:

- Balcony fabric: Acrylic fabric, sewing completed
- Hem: 50 mm, surrounding, measured flat
- Brass eyelets (Ø): Inside 8.0 mm, outside 15 mm, punched into the hem
- Special shapes: On request – Please provide detailed sketch

## Notes

### Order data:

- Width
- Height
- Design no.
- No. of eyelets or distance between eyelets
- Stripe direction (vertical/crosswise)
- Accessories such as PVC cord or rope

The length of the PVC cord or rope needed for fixing is calculated using the rule of thumb: fabric perimeter x 1.5.

## Construction limit values

### Maximum production dimensions

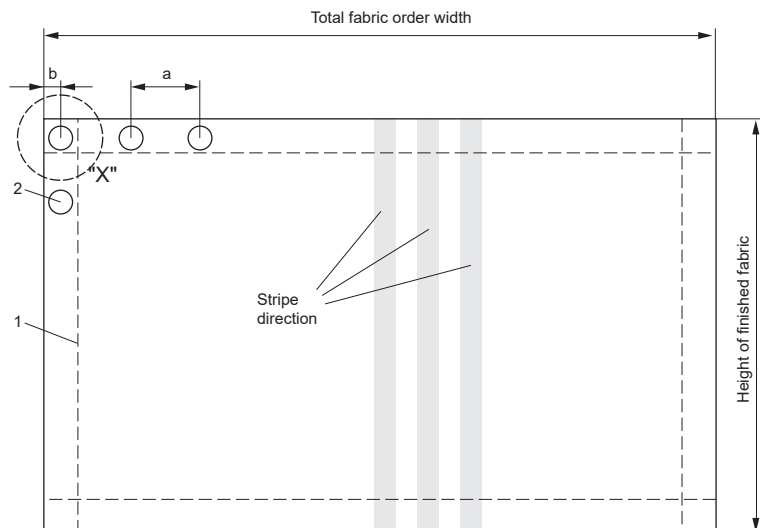
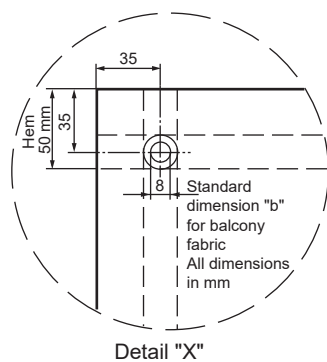
| Configuration variants                                                                                         | Web width | Maximum order width | Maximum projection | Maximum order area |
|----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|-----------|---------------------|--------------------|--------------------|
| <b>Fabric qualities + Fabric processing</b>                                                                    |           |                     |                    |                    |
| Standard acrylic fabric / Lumera acrylic fabric / Perfora acrylic + Sewing / Gluing (overlapping) / UltraSeam™ | 1200 mm   | 8000 mm             | 8000 mm            | 30 m <sup>2</sup>  |
| All Weather acrylic + Sewing / UltraSeam™                                                                      | 1200 mm   | 8000 mm             | 8000 mm            | 30 m <sup>2</sup>  |
| Soltis 92 + Welding                                                                                            | 1770 mm   | 8000 mm             | 8000 mm            | 30 m <sup>2</sup>  |
| Lacquered fabric Precontraint 302 + Welding                                                                    | 1800 mm   | 8000 mm             | 8000 mm            | 30 m <sup>2</sup>  |
| Twilight Pearl + Sewing                                                                                        | 2600 mm   | 8000 mm             | 8000 mm            | 30 m <sup>2</sup>  |

For **horizontal stripes** the order height is limited to maximum 1100 mm.

The **eyelets** have to be punched with a maximum distance of 100 mm from the outer edge.

## Dimension determination

### Balcony fabric



w02408v2

- 1 Hem seam
- 2 Brass eyelet

- a Distance between the eyelets in the various sections (evenly spaced)
- b Eyelet spacing from outer edge of fabric (35 mm)

## Additional product information

### Possible accessories - Balcony fabrics

- 5.2 mm PVC fully round cord, Art. No. 301 001
- 3.0 mm cord, white, Art. No. 408 010
- Cable ties, Art. No. 802 220
- Hook-and-loop strip, hooks, Art. No. 403 046
- Hook-and-loop strip, hooks, self-adhesive, Art. No. 403 039
- Hook-and-loop strip, adhesive, Art. No. 403 047
- Push button, top, Art. No. 747 007
- Push button, bottom of fabric screw, Art. No. 747 003
- Push button, bottom of tapping screw, Art. No. 747 004
- Push button, screw-on bottom, Art. No. 747 041
- Push button, diameter 8 mm

Push button, bottom of tapping screw (Art. No. 747 004)



Push button, top (Art. No. 747 007)



Push button, bottom of fabric screw (Art. No. 747 003)



Push button, screw-on bottom (Art. No. 747 041)



Planning

Terrea

Perea

Patio  
side screens

Climara

Supplementary  
accessories

Components

Drive  
variants

Standards



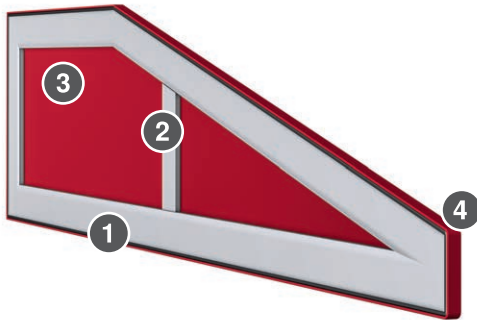
# Stretcher frame

## Can be used for:

- Conservatory awnings Climara
- Pergola awnings Perea

## Components

### Stretcher frame



- |   |                  |   |                      |
|---|------------------|---|----------------------|
| 1 | Frame profile    | 3 | Fabric               |
| 2 | Sash bar profile | 4 | Bead with cover tape |

## Profile

### Frame profile, 14x58 mm, for sash frame

|          |                     |
|----------|---------------------|
| Material | Aluminium, extruded |
| Surface  | Powder-coated       |
| Width    | 58 mm               |
| Height   | 14 mm               |

### Seat 13x48 mm, for sash bar, for sash frame

|          |                     |
|----------|---------------------|
| Material | Aluminium, extruded |
| Surface  | Powder-coated       |
| Width    | 48 mm               |
| Height   | 13 mm               |

## Fabric protection plate

|          |               |
|----------|---------------|
| Material | Aluminium     |
| Surface  | Powder-coated |
| Width    | 40 mm         |
| Height   | 35 mm         |

## Colours

- WAREMA Colour World

+ see "WAREMA Colour World", Page 12

## Fabric qualities

- Standard acrylic fabric
- Lumera acrylic fabric

Fabric qualities, optional:

- Perfora acrylic
- All Weather acrylic
- Soltis 92
- Screen fabric
- Lacquered fabric Precontraint 302
- Rainproof textile W36
- Rainproof textile Soltis W96

+ see "Awning collection", Page 356

## Notes

**Intended use:** For structural reasons, the WAREMA stretcher frames cannot bear snow loads and are therefore only to be used for sun shading.

## Construction limit values

| Configuration variants                                                                                                                | Maximum order width | Maximum order area |
|---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|---------------------|--------------------|
| <b>Fabric qualities</b>                                                                                                               |                     |                    |
| Acrylic fabric / Soltis 92 / Screen fabric / Lacquered fabric Precontraint 302 / Rainproof textile Soltis W96 / Rainproof textile W36 | 5000 mm             | 4 m <sup>2</sup>   |

**Number of sash bar profiles:** The number of the sash bar profiles corresponds to the construction size. For an order width or height of 1000 mm or greater, at least one sash bar profile is required.

### Inside angle X:

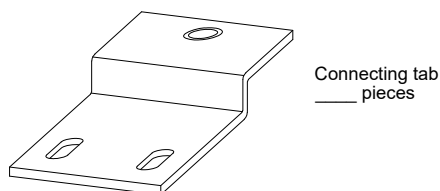
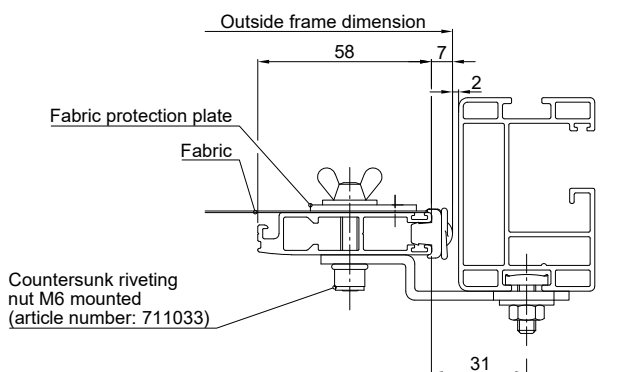
- Type 1 and 2 at least 21°
- Type 4 and 5: Between 9° and 20°

## Dimension determination

### Fixing on W19/W20 or on window frame - fixed frame

#### ☐ Fixing option A:

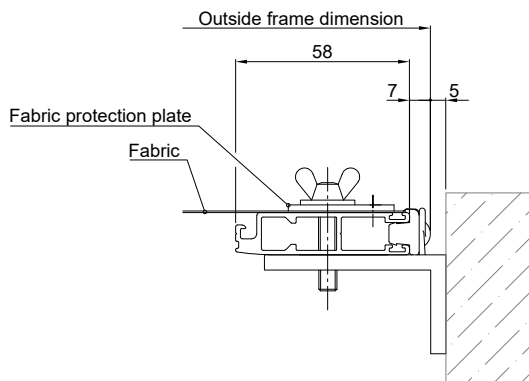
Fixing on on-site guide rails, type W19 or W20



1 fabric protection plate incl. 2 blind rivets, 1 mounting plate incl. screws and locking ring and one wing screw M6x30 incl. washer are supplied for each connecting tab.

#### ☐ Fixing option B:

Fixing on the window frame



1 fabric protection plate incl. 2 blind rivets and one wing screw M6x30 incl. washer are supplied for each fixing bracket. Fixing screws of choice are supplied for fixing.

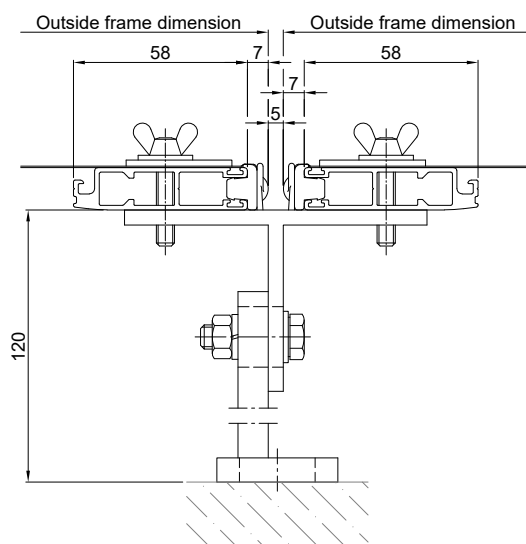
- ☐ 2 wood screws DIN 571 6x25 incl. washers
- ☐ 2 tapping screws 7976 6.3x22 incl. washers

71145v4

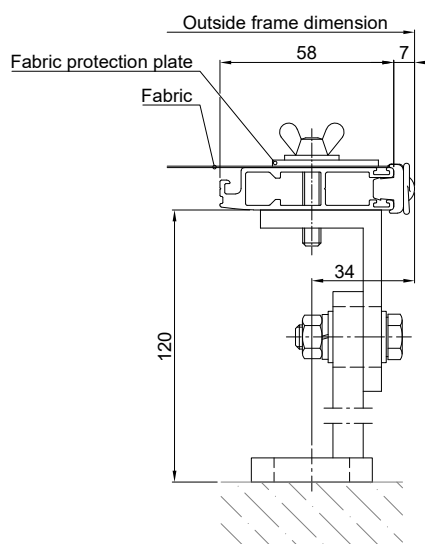
### Fixing with brackets - fixed frame

#### ☐ Fixing option C:

Fixing with guide rail bracket



1 fabric protection plate incl. 2 blind rivets and one wing screw M6x30 incl. washer are supplied for each guide rail bracket. Fixing screws of choice will be supplied for fixing.

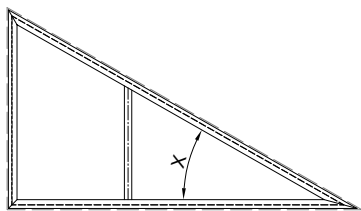


- ☐ 2 wood screws DIN 571 6x60 incl. washers
- ☐ 2 tapping screws DIN 7976 6.3x60 incl. washers
- ☐ 4 nuts, 4 washers (for fixing on on-site dowel pins M8)  
(Doubled quantity for double brackets)

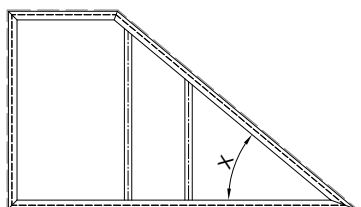
71655v2

## Type overview - fixed frame

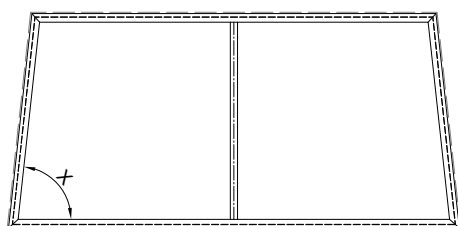
Type 1



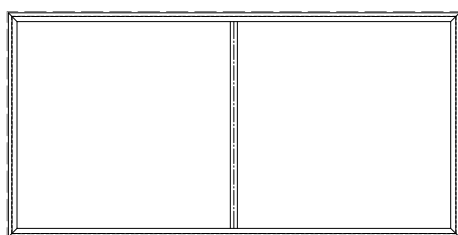
Type 2



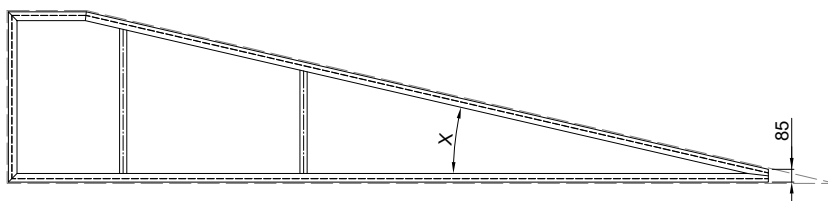
Type 2.1



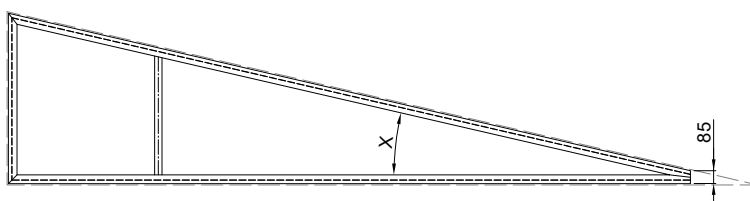
Type 3



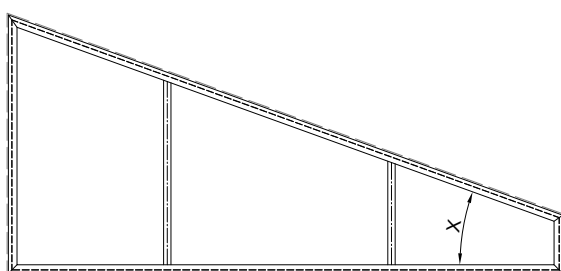
Type 4



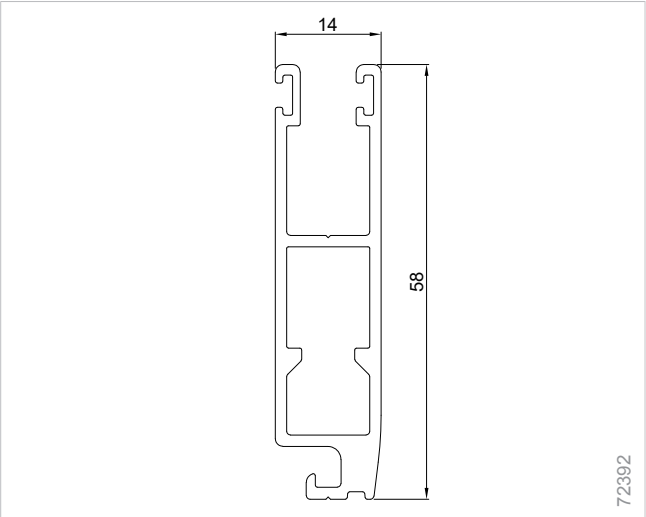
Type 5



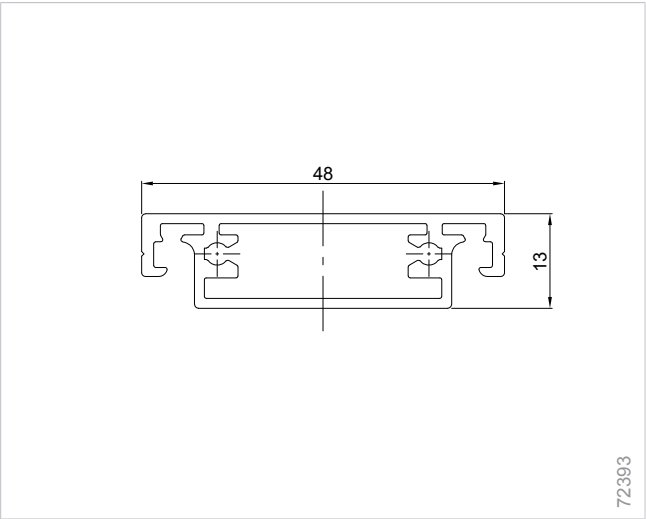
Type 6



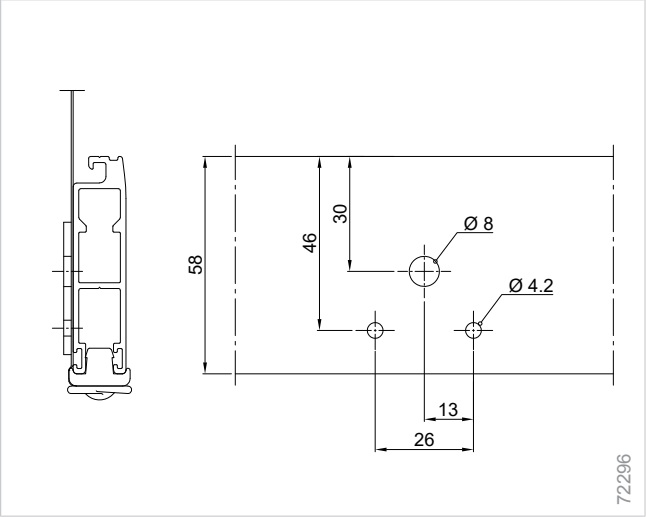
Frame profile 14 x 58 mm



Sash bar profile 13x48 mm

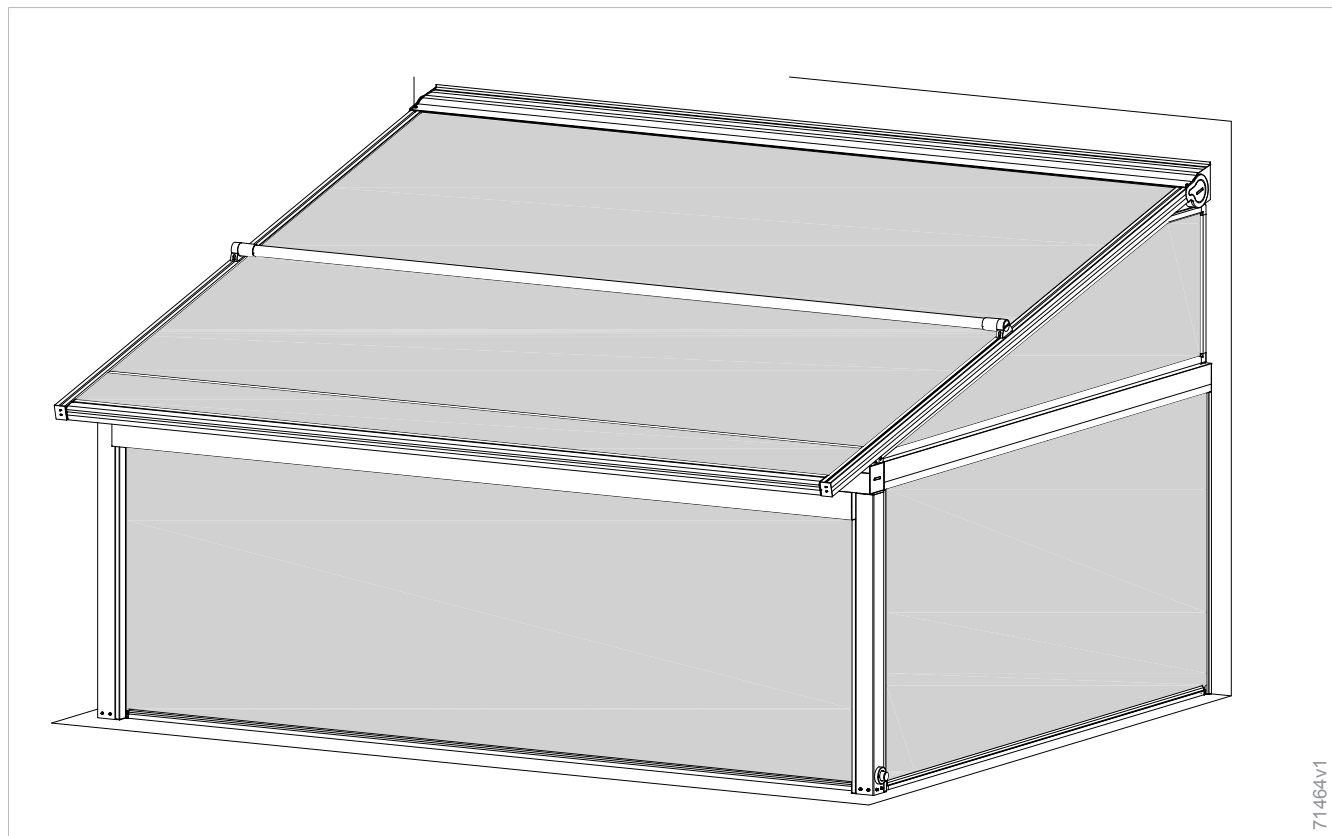


Fabric protection plate fixing template - fixed frame

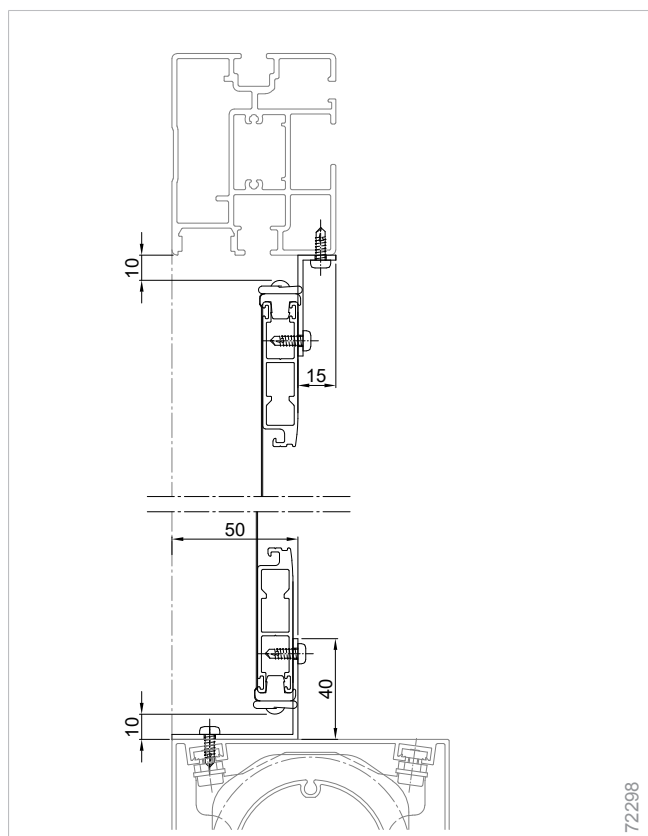


## Mounting examples

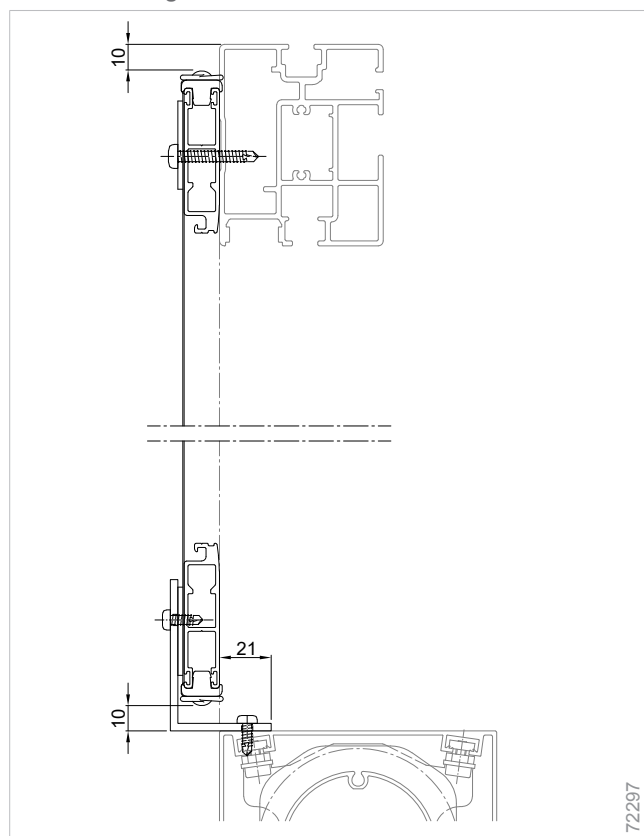
Front-mounted awning with easyZIP guidance and fixed frame- P60



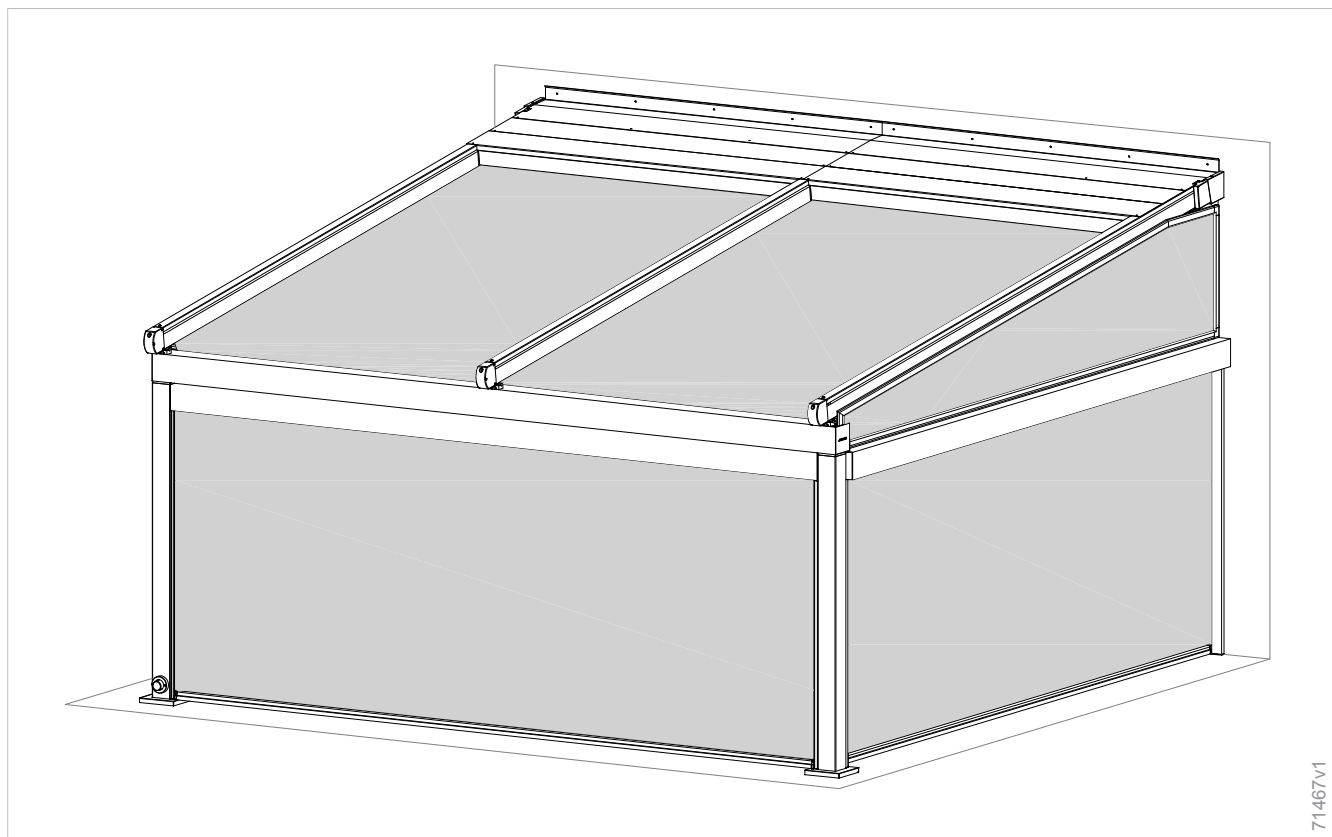
Connection to Perea P60 with front-mounted awning fixed frame



Connection to Perea P60 with integrated lighting and front-mounted awning fixed frame



# Front-mounted awning with easyZIP guidance and fixed frame- P70



Planning

Terrea

Perea

Patio  
side screens

Climara

Supplementary  
accessories

Components

Drive  
variants

Standards



## Supplementary accessories

### Front-mounted awnings with easyZIP guidance

#### Protected

Front-mounted awnings offer visual privacy and weather protection

#### Wind-stable

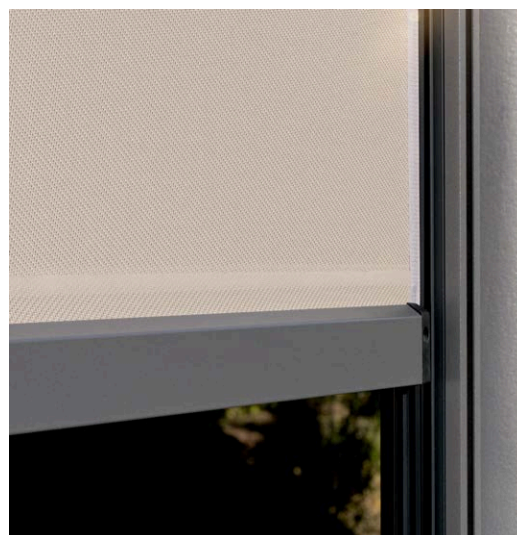
High wind stability up to 150 km/h in combination with easyZIP guidance

#### Attractive

A comprehensive fabric collection offers complete design freedom across colours, patterns and fabric qualities.

#### Can be used for:

- Perea P60
- Perea P70



#### Product characteristics

- Vertical visual privacy, sun shading and wind protection
- Fixing of front-mounted awnings between the poles or between the wall and pole

## Notes

### Measurement:

- We recommend ordering front-mounted awnings with easyZIP guidance on the left and right side only **once the main unit has been installed**. Inaccuracies when measuring can lead to deviations.
- When using the size 15 cover panel, laterally mounted front-mounted awnings with easyZIP guidance project out beyond the poles **inwards in the P60** and **outwards with the P70**.
- The front cover panel of the front-mounted awning with easyZIP guidance is set **frontwards (like the drainage gutter) in the P60** and **backwards (towards the inside) in the P70**.
- The **water drain** must be set frontwards or laterally on the pole.
- When using the base plate with **base cover**, the front-mounted awning with easyZIP guidance does not travel to the ground but rather a 25 mm gap is produced.

### Cable exit:

- Front-mounted awnings with easyZIP guidance on the left and right side, for example, are intended for installation using a cable exit from the facade.
- If front-mounted awnings with easyZIP guidance are installed at the front, the cable exit is provided from the drainage gutter. The cable is laid on the side where the mains connection to the house wall is located (connection side).

### Drainage gutter:

- The wiring is already present in the drainage gutter.
- In order to be connected, the drainage gutter must be accessible from the side. If this is not the case, please consult the Applied Engineering department.
- If window awnings with easyZIP guidance are to be connected laterally or to the front with the **pergola awning Perea P60**, the large drainage gutter 150x150 mm must be planned.

### Order data:

- The preparation for the mains connection of front-mounted awnings with easyZIP guidance at the front must be specified when ordering.
- For more information on the front mounted awnings with easyZIP guidance, see the technical documentation for window awnings.

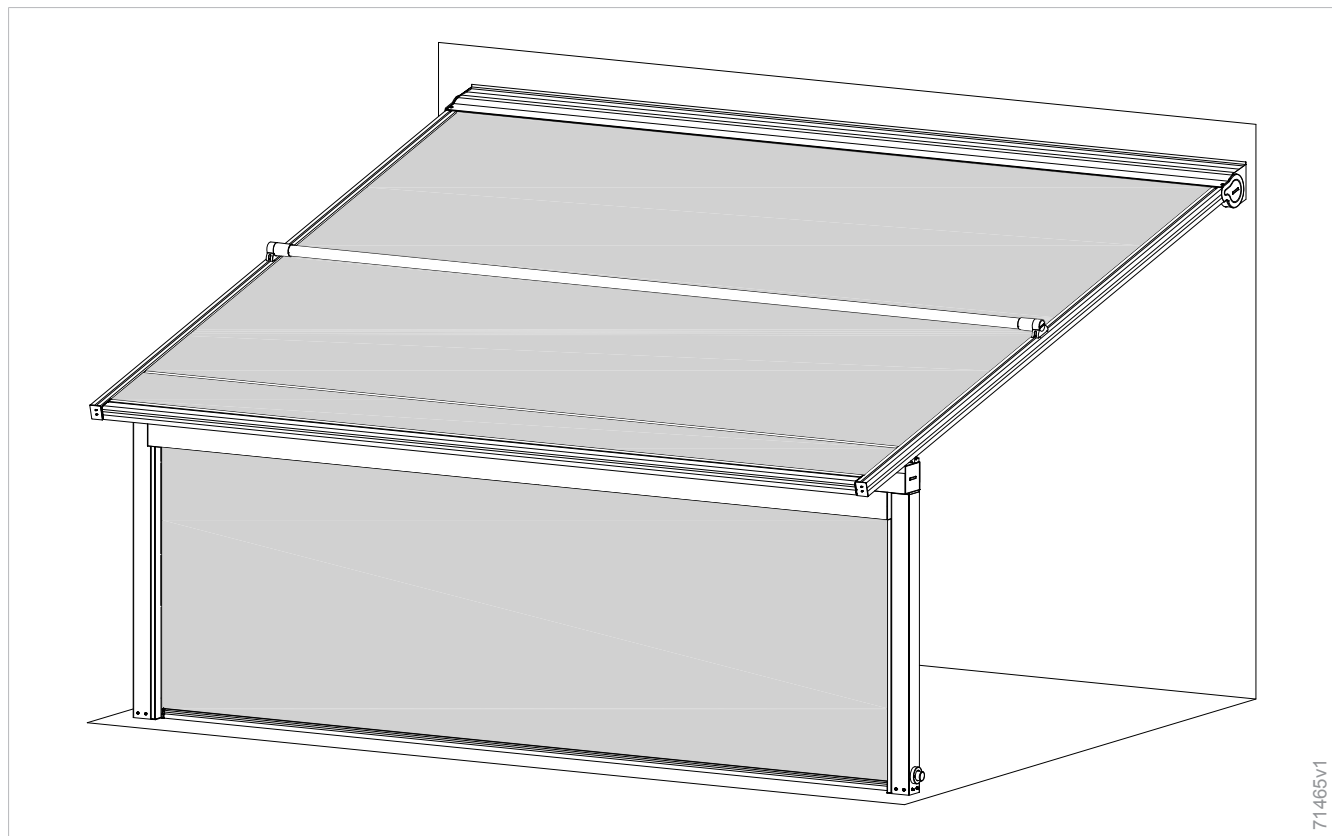
### Shading of upper triangle:

If the sides are completely closed, we recommend using either a stretcher frame or a closure with an aluminium sheet

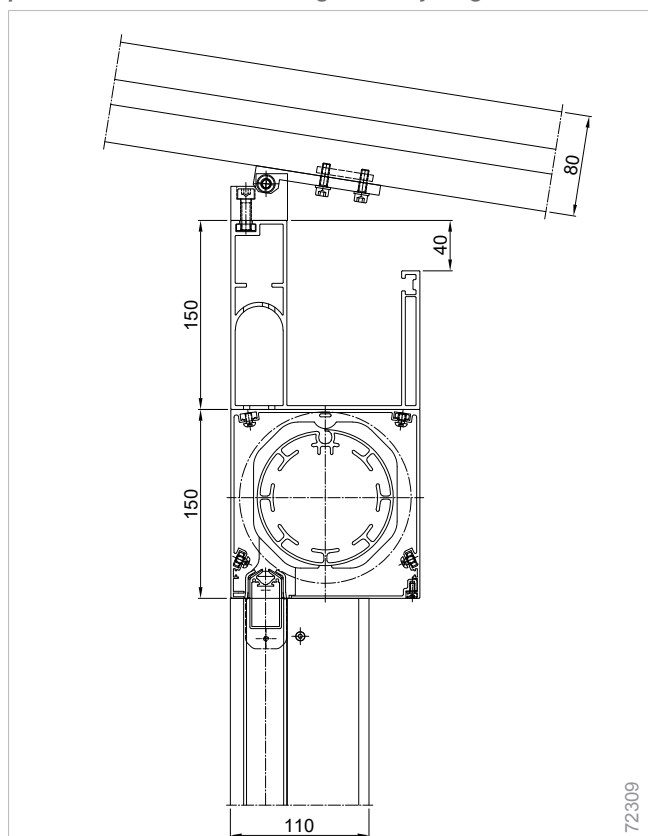


## Mounting examples

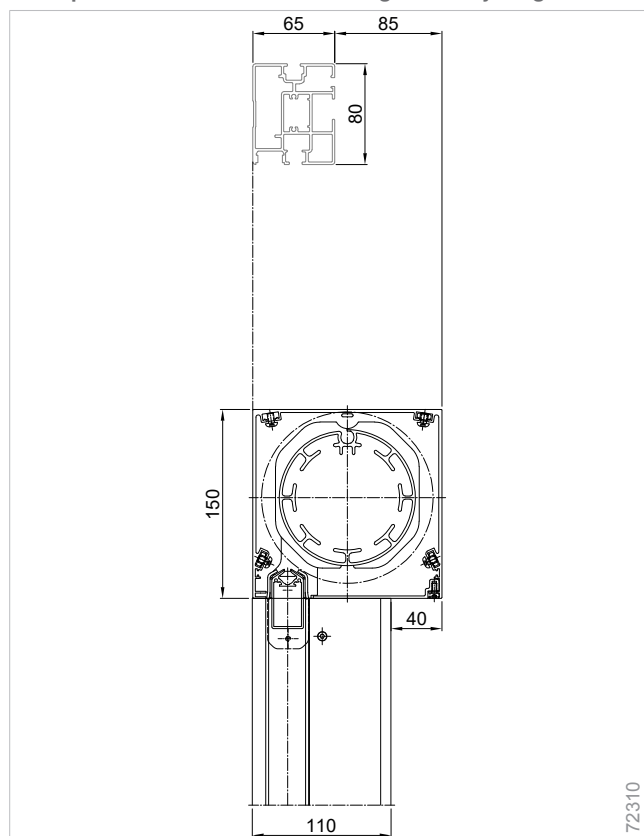
Front-mounted awning with easyZIP guidance - P60



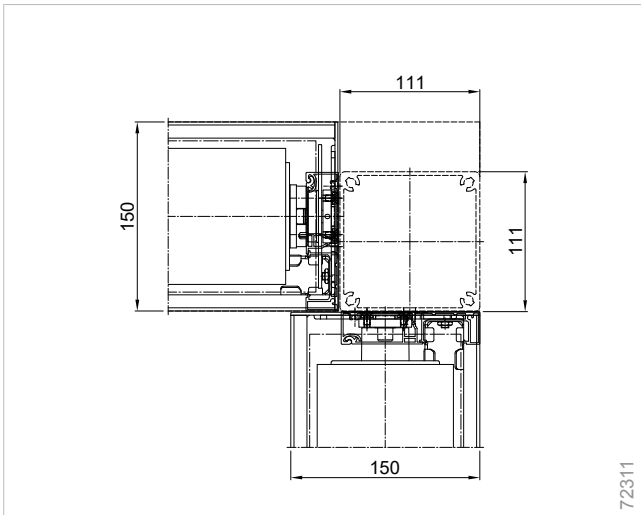
Installation between the poles for Perea P60 - size 15 cover panel for front-mounted awning with easyZIP guidance



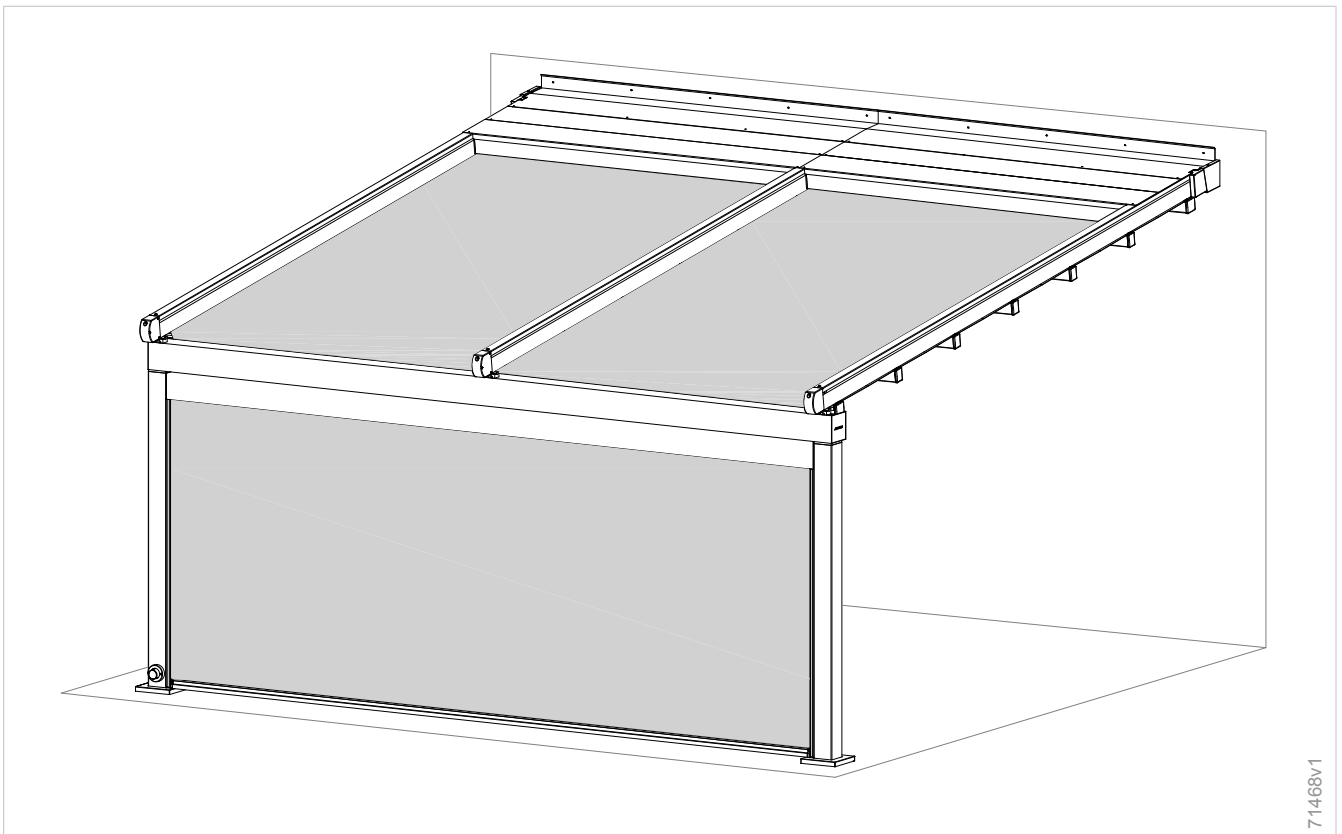
Installation between poles for Perea P60 and wall - size 15 cover panel for front-mounted awning with easyZIP guidance



Protrusion over pole for Perea P60 - size 15 cover panel for front-mounted awning with easyZIP guidance



Front-mounted awning with easyZIP guidance - P70



Planning

Terrea

Perea

Patio  
side screens

Climara

Supplementary  
accessories

Components

Drive  
variants

Standards



## Supplementary accessories

### Multicube set

#### Simple

The pole is weighted down by the gabion and therefore a screw connection in the substructure is not required.

#### Trendy

The Multicube set also offers an attractive seating surface.

#### Individual

The on-site filling means that the appearance can be individually adjusted.

#### Can be used for:

- Pergola awnings Perea



#### Product characteristics

- Pole fixing without screw connection in the substructure
- Weight from on-site filling material

## Components

### Steel cage

#### Multicube 40 steel cage

|          |                  |
|----------|------------------|
| Material | Galvanised steel |
| Surface  | Plain            |
| Width    | 340 mm           |
| Height   | 400 mm           |
| Depth    | 340 mm           |

Steel cage made of double-bar mesh mats, in galvanised quality with floor.

### Pad for wooden seat

#### Multicube pad for wooden seat

|                 |                              |
|-----------------|------------------------------|
| Material        | Soft wood                    |
| Surface         | triple sealed                |
| Material colour | Grey, Anthracite, Dark brown |
| Width           | 550 mm                       |
| Height          | 40 mm                        |
| Depth           | 550 mm                       |

### Sheet base

#### Sheet base - Dublin 8Z

|          |                  |
|----------|------------------|
| Material | Galvanised steel |
| Surface  | Plain            |
| Width    | 1000 mm          |
| Height   | 100 mm           |
| Depth    | 1000 mm          |

Incl. adapter plate for pole fixing.

## Notes

#### Example weight

When filling with granite (bulk approx. 1.5 t/m<sup>3</sup>), the Multicube set has a total weight of approx. 315 kg.

**Attention:** Filling material is not included in the scope of delivery!

## Dimensions

|                   |                                       |
|-------------------|---------------------------------------|
| Width             | 1100 mm                               |
| Height            | 470 mm                                |
| Depth             | 1100 mm                               |
| Dimensions, notes | Total dimensions of the Multicube set |



## Supplementary accessories

### Patio frame

#### Flexible

With the patio frame, the awnings don't need to be installed on a building wall.

#### Expansive

Thanks to the two-sided connection option, expansive outdoor areas can be created.

#### Protected

With the optional intermediate cover, even the area between the two awnings remains dry.

#### Can be used for:

- Articulated arm and cassette awnings Terrea
- Pergola awnings Perea



#### Product characteristics

- Patio frame consisting of horizontal profile and supports
- Free-standing steel frame for one or two articulated arm or cassette awnings Terrea
- Aluminium frame attached to a wall or free-standing for pergola awnings Perea

# Patio frame Terrea

## Can be used for:

- Terrea 550
- Terrea 580
- Terrea K50
- Terrea K60
- Terrea K70
- Terrea 530
- Terrea G60
- Terrea H60

## Components

### Terrea patio frame



- 1 Horizontal profile      3 Pole  
2 Intermediate cover

## Pole

### Pole 80x80 mm - Patio frame Terrea

|          |                  |
|----------|------------------|
| Material | Galvanised steel |
| Surface  | Powder-coated    |
| Width    | 80 mm            |
| Height   | 80 mm            |

### Line routing:

- Drilled holes for cable routing are included when using radio motor or WMS/EWFS radio plug receiver for drive.
- Drilled holes for switch operation are not included.

### Pole 100x100 mm - Patio frame Terrea

|          |                  |
|----------|------------------|
| Material | Galvanised steel |
| Surface  | Powder-coated    |
| Width    | 100 mm           |
| Height   | 100 mm           |

### Line routing:

- Drilled holes for cable routing are included when using radio motor or WMS/EWFS radio plug receiver for drive.
- Drilled holes for switch operation are not included.

## Base plate

### Base plate - Patio frame Terrea

|          |                  |
|----------|------------------|
| Material | Galvanised steel |
| Surface  | Powder-coated    |
| Width    | 400 mm           |
| Height   | 250 mm           |

Stable substructure is required.

## Horizontal profile

### Horizontal profile 60x60 mm - Patio frame Terrea

|          |                  |
|----------|------------------|
| Material | Galvanised steel |
| Surface  | Powder-coated    |
| Width    | 60 mm            |
| Height   | 60 mm            |

### Field of application:

- 550
- 580
- K50

### Horizontal profile 80x200 mm - Patio frame Terrea

|          |                  |
|----------|------------------|
| Material | Galvanised steel |
| Surface  | Powder-coated    |
| Width    | 80 mm            |
| Height   | 200 mm           |

### Field of application:

- K60
- K70
- 530
- G60
- H60

## Intermediate cover, optional

### Intermediate cover - Patio frame Terrea

|                   |                                                              |
|-------------------|--------------------------------------------------------------|
| Material          | Aluminium, extruded                                          |
| Surface           | Powder-coated                                                |
| Depth             | 400 mm                                                       |
| Dimensions, notes | The intermediate cover is 50 mm wider than the awning width. |

### + Side cover, optional

### Intermediate cover side cover - Patio frame Terrea

|          |               |
|----------|---------------|
| Material | Aluminium     |
| Surface  | Powder-coated |
| Width    | 400 mm        |
| Height   | 250 mm        |

## Colours

- WAREMA Colour World

➕ see "WAREMA Colour World", Page 12

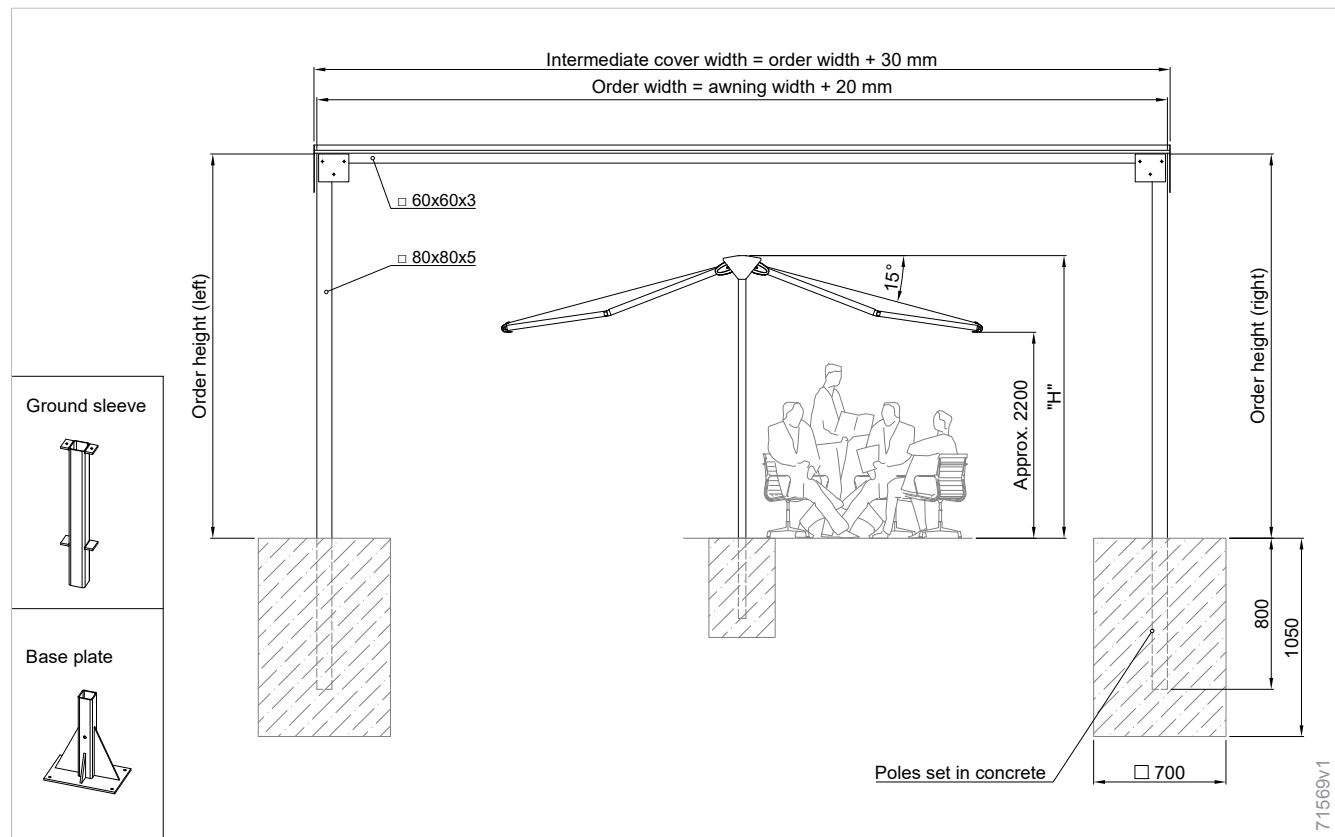


## Notes

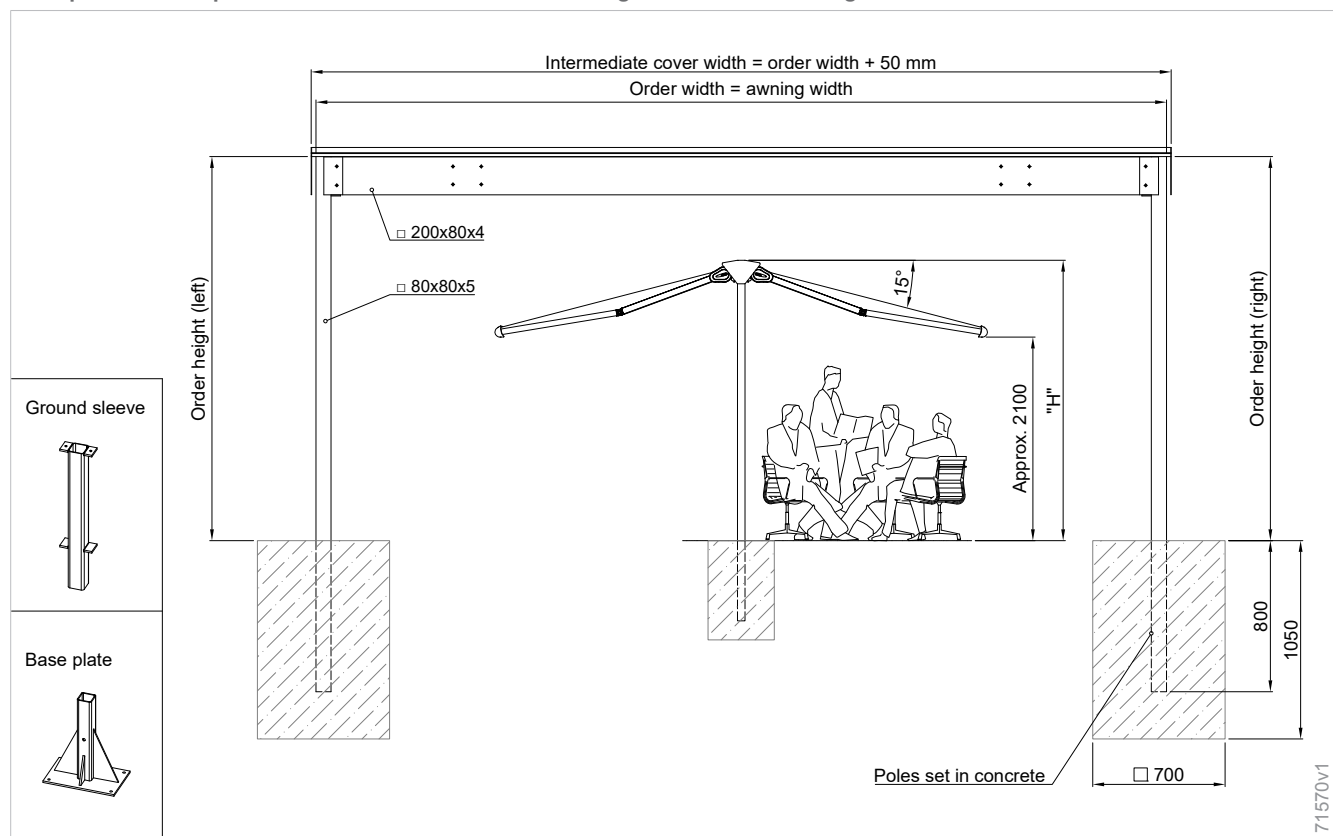
There is also a suitable patio frame for series-mounted units.

## Dimension determination

Principle sketch of patio frame for cassette awnings Terrea 550, 580 and K50



# Principle sketch for patio frame for all articulated arm awnings and cassette awnings Terrea K60 and K70



## Pole height

| Projection | Height  |
|------------|---------|
| 1500 mm    | 2800 mm |
| 2000 mm    | 2950 mm |
| 2500 mm    | 3100 mm |
| 3000 mm    | 3250 mm |
| 3500 mm    | 3400 mm |
| 4000 mm    | 3550 mm |

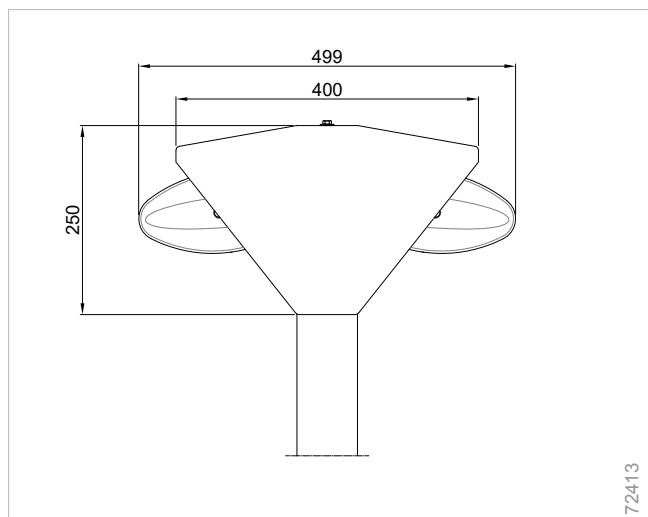
## Size and number of poles:

- From 6501 mm order width with 3 poles
- Up to a 3500 mm projection of poles 80x80 mm
- Up to a 4000 mm projection of poles 100x100 mm

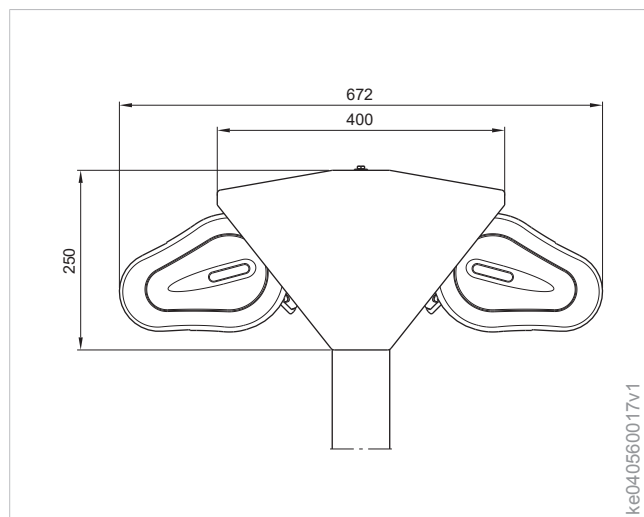


## Details

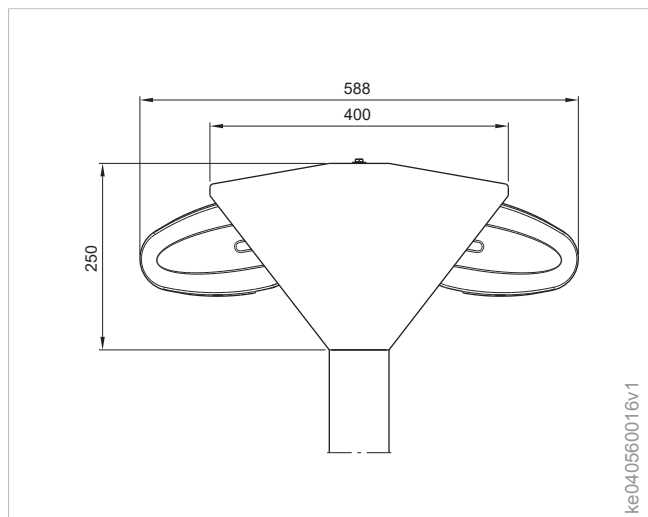
Side view - Terrea 550



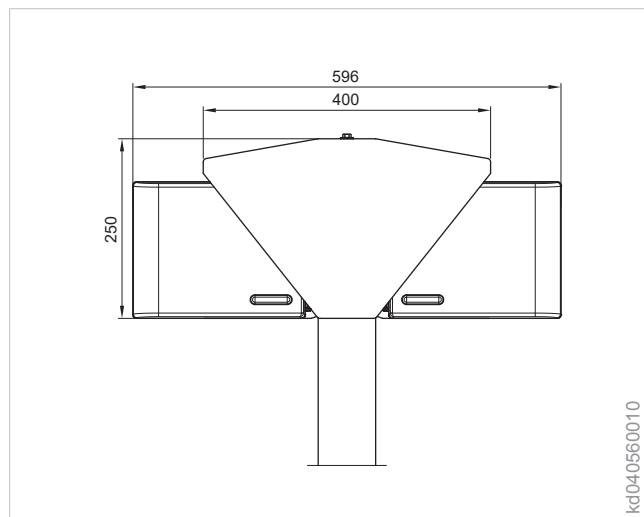
Side view - Terrea K60



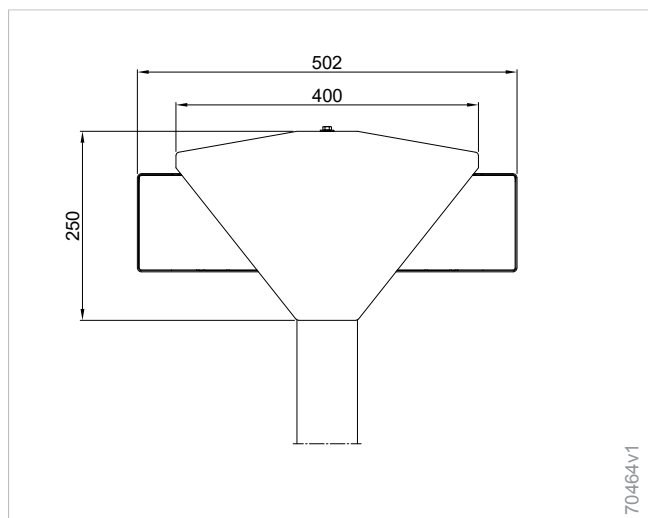
Side view - Terrea 580



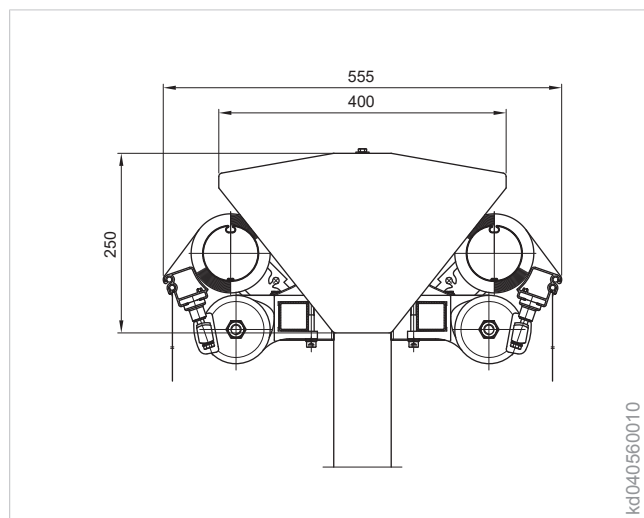
Side view - Terrea K70



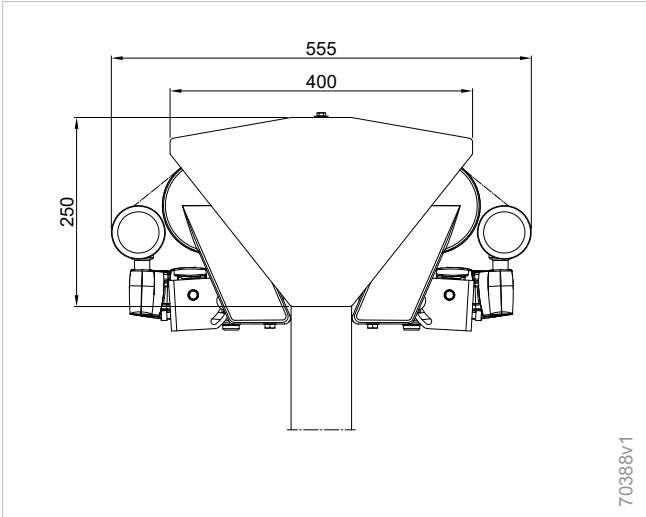
Side view - Terrea K50



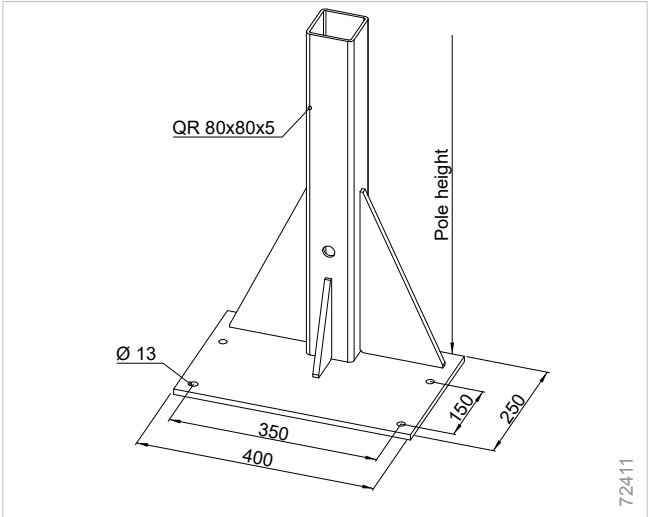
Side view - Terrea 530



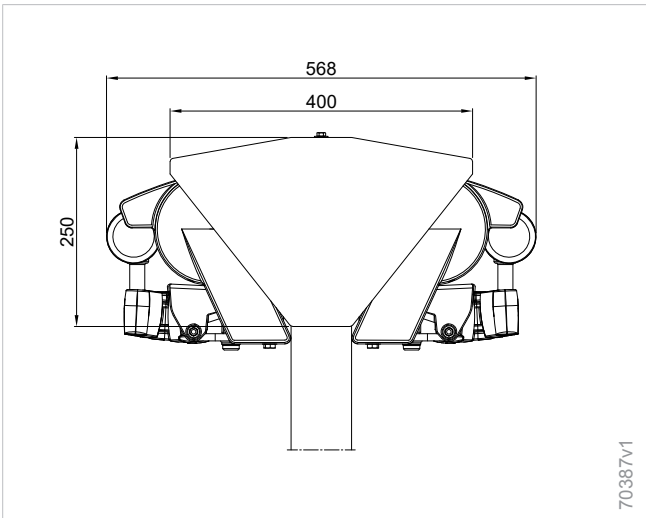
Side view - Terrea G60



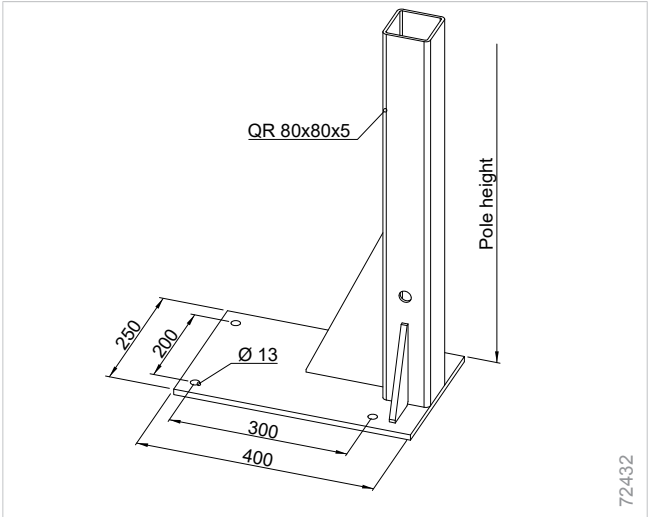
Flush base plate - Terrea patio frame



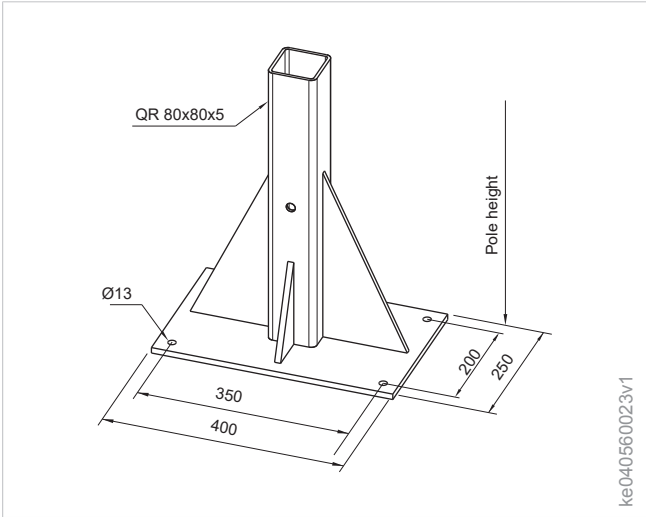
Side view - Terrea H60



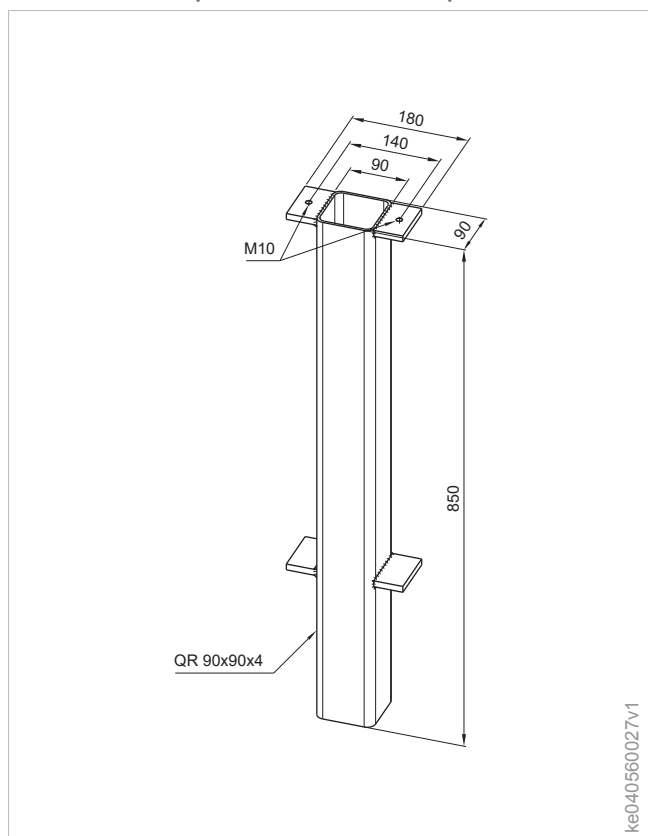
Base plate flush/house connection - unilateral Terrea patio frame



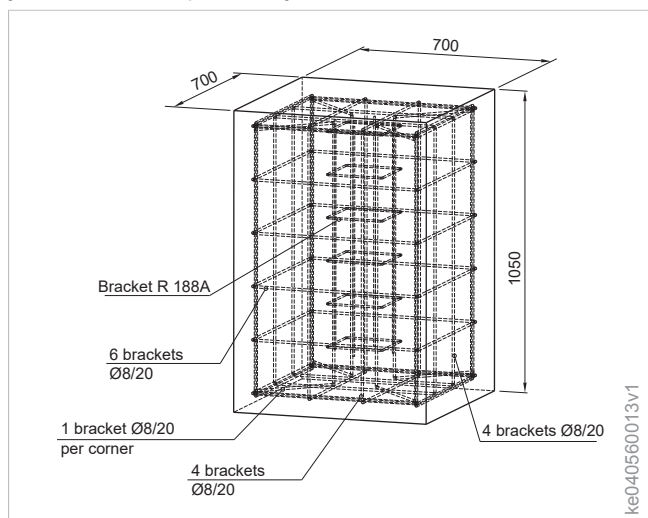
Central base plate - Terrea patio frame



## Ground sleeve for pole installation - Terrea patio frame



## Concrete foundation set in concrete for pole installation (to be performed on site) - Terrea patio frame



## Additional product information

### Installation options - Terrea patio frames

#### Poles set in concrete

- Concrete foundation C 20/25 with reinforcement
- Concreted-in pole section must be protected from corrosion on-site

#### Pole with ground sleeve

- Only possible for poles 80x80 mm
- Dimensions (WxH): 90x90 mm

#### Pole with base plate

- Dimensions (WxH): 400x250 mm
- On frost-proof, on-site foundation, dimensions (WxDxH) 600x600x800 mm

### Note on colour selection

We recommend the fine texture surface quality as it is resistant to external influences (dirt, scratches, etc.).

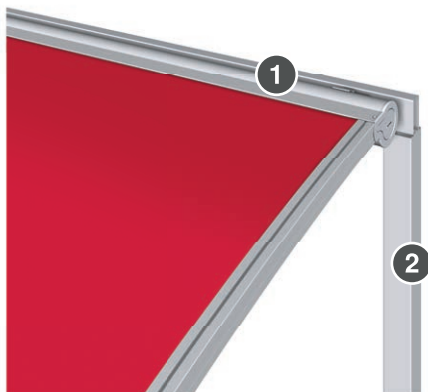
# Patio frame Perea

## Can be used for:

- Pergola awnings Perea

## Components

### Perea patio frame



1 Horizontal profile      2 Pole

## Pole

### Pole - P60/P70/patio frame Perea

|                      |                     |
|----------------------|---------------------|
| Maximum order height | 3000 mm             |
| Material             | Aluminium, extruded |
| Surface              | Powder-coated       |
| Width                | 111 mm              |
| Depth                | 111 mm              |

## Base plate

### Base plate - Patio frame Perea

|          |                  |
|----------|------------------|
| Material | Galvanised steel |
| Surface  | Powder-coated    |
| Width    | 200 mm           |
| Height   | 230 mm           |

## Horizontal profile

### Horizontal profile 60x150 mm - Patio frame Perea

|          |                     |
|----------|---------------------|
| Material | Aluminium, extruded |
| Surface  | Powder-coated       |
| Width    | 60 mm               |
| Height   | 150 mm              |

## Colours

- WAREMA Colour World

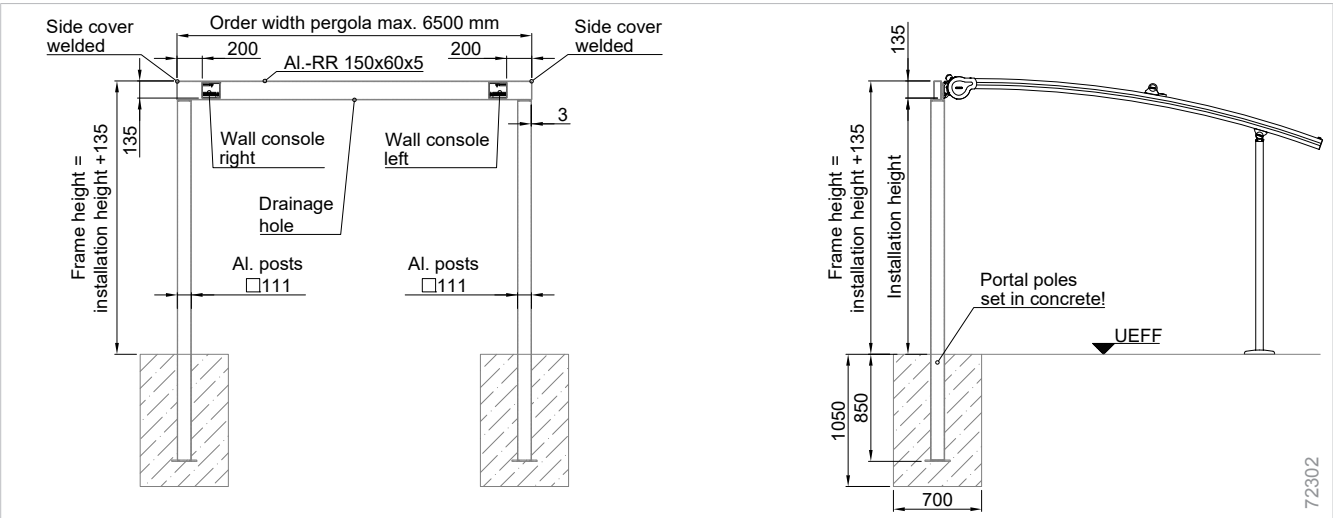
+ see "WAREMA Colour World", Page 12

## Notes

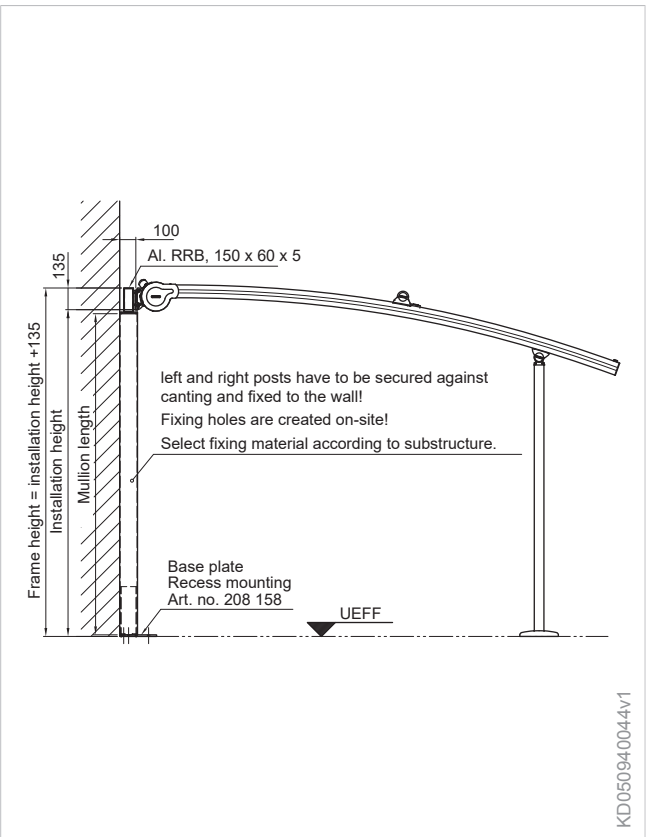
- For a free-standing patio frame embedded in plaster, a pergola awning Perea can be connected on each side.
- There is also a suitable patio frame for series-mounted units.

# Dimension determination

## Perea patio frame - pole, set in concrete

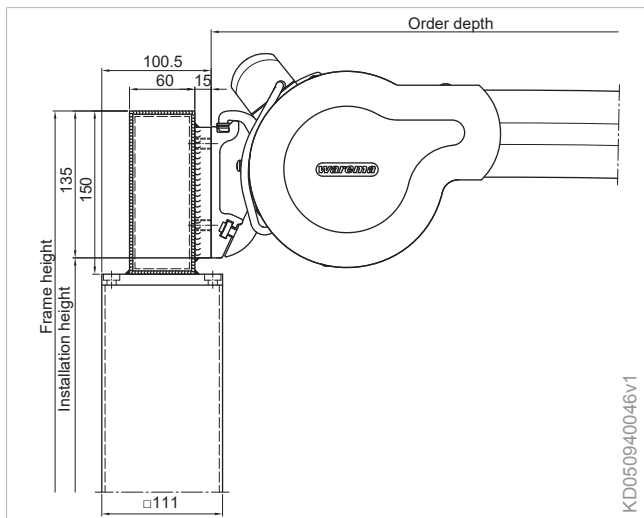


## Perea patio frame - pole with flush base plate

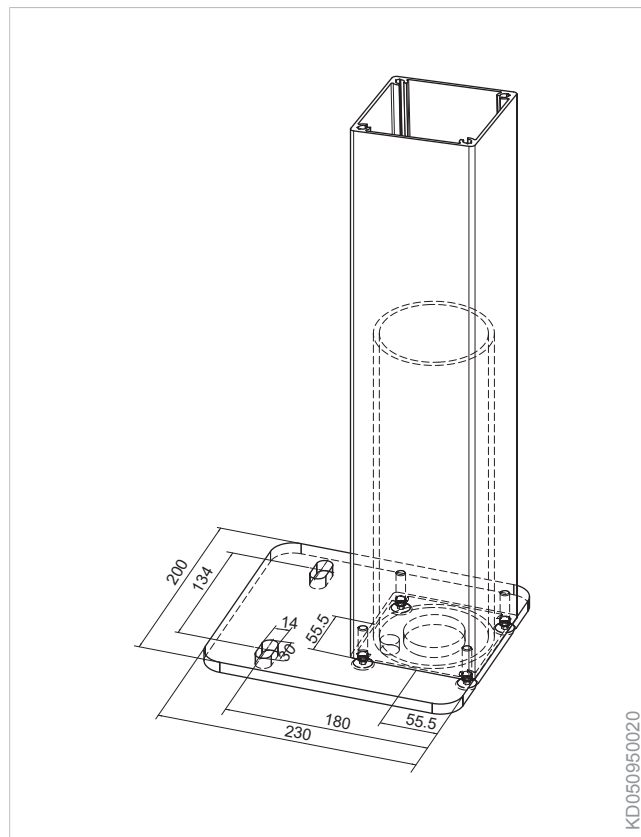


## Details

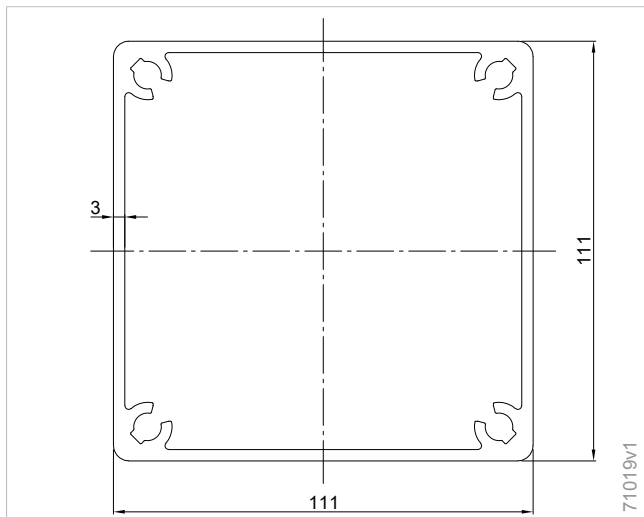
Side view - Perea patio frame



Base plate - Perea patio frame



Pole - P60/P70/patio frame Perea



## Additional product information

### Installation options - Perea patio frames

#### Poles set in concrete

- Concrete foundation C 20/25 with reinforcement
- Concreted-in pole section must be protected from corrosion on-site

#### Pole flush with base plate

- In connection with an additional connection of the patio frame, for example to the building wall
- On frost-proof, on-site foundation, dimensions (WxDxH) 600×600×800 mm







## Supplementary accessories

### Printed fabrics

#### Freedom

More options for the individual facade design  
- whether advertisements, logos or creative ideas.

#### Light-fast

The printed colours are particularly UV and light-resistant.

#### Striking

With Sunprint, even large prints are possible.

#### Can be used for:

- Articulated arm and cassette awnings Terrea
- Pergola awnings Perea
- Conservatory awnings Climara (except W7 and D3)



#### Product characteristics

- Printing of the awning fabric or valance
- Use of the awning as advertising space

## Fabric lettering, painted

Awning fabrics and valances can feature weather-proof inscriptions in almost any RAL CLASSIC Colour, with various font styles and individual logos using a screen printing process.

The font suggestions shown are only a selection of the many lettering alternatives available.

Ideal samples would be files in eps-, CorelDRAW® or Adobe Illustrator® format.

Inscription only available on Standard/Lumera acrylic fabric or lacquered fabric!

The price includes a one-off layout suggestion, additional corrections subject to surcharge

### Font type examples

- 1 **Arial**
- 2 *Commercial Script*
- 3 **Vijaya**
- 4 **Adobe Garamond Pro**
- 5 **Forte**

w01631v4

# Sunprint

Digital large format printing on awning fabrics offers a variety of applications both in the private and commercial field. Large-format prints on the entire surface of the awning or on a specific area can be carried out thanks to this manufacturing process.

## Base material:

The digital printing on an acrylic fabric (base colour white) with special surface treatment guarantees a photorealistic print-out.

## Template:

- Requires pictures as a template with a resolution of at least 40 x 40 dpi; we recommend a resolution of 70 x 70 dpi in its original size (equivalent to size of printed picture).
- Ideal image formats are JPG and EPS files.
- Images are printed according to the width-to-height ratio specified in the illustration. Thus, unprinted margins may occur on the awning fabric. These margins can be unicoloured, if required. Please inform us about your preferred colour shade, either according to Pantone or by means of a colour sample.
- The price includes a one-off layout suggestion, additional corrections subject to surcharge

## Notes:

- A reduction in the colour effect is expected over time. (Weather resistance level approx. 6 out of 8 acc. to DIN 54071).
- When using awnings with a fabric bearing shell, the seam areas are subject to increased soiling which affects the printed image.

## Further information

TechDataPLUS Supplementary accessories for patio awnings  
<https://docs.warema.com/1.1448.8>



# Contents

## Components

|                                                        |     |
|--------------------------------------------------------|-----|
| Guide rail bracket - Conservatory awnings Climara..... | 320 |
| Guide rail bracket - stand-off installation.....       | 321 |
| Guide rail bracket - direct installation.....          | 338 |
| Bracket.....                                           | 350 |
| Awning collection.....                                 | 356 |
| Awning collection.....                                 | 357 |
| Fabric processing.....                                 | 358 |
| Fabrics.....                                           | 360 |
| Valance.....                                           | 365 |

Planning

Terrea

Perea

Patio  
side screens

Climara

Supplementary  
accessories

**Components**

Drive  
variants

Standards



## Components

### Guide rail bracket - Conservatory awnings Climara

#### Flexible

The guide rail bracket for Climara conservatory awnings ensures they can be installed in almost any installation situation.

#### Simple

Planning is made easy with the use of universal brackets.

#### Configured

Special SL brackets make installation on Solarlux patio roofs easy.



#### Product characteristics

- Guide rail bracket for direct installation or installation with distance
- Adapted for installation underneath or on a patio roof

# Guide rail bracket - stand-off installation

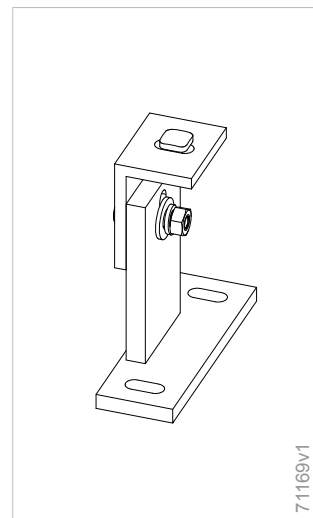
## Bracket H11

|          |               |
|----------|---------------|
| Material | Aluminium     |
| Surface  | Powder-coated |
| Width    | 40 mm         |
| Height   | 120 mm        |
| Depth    | 120 mm        |

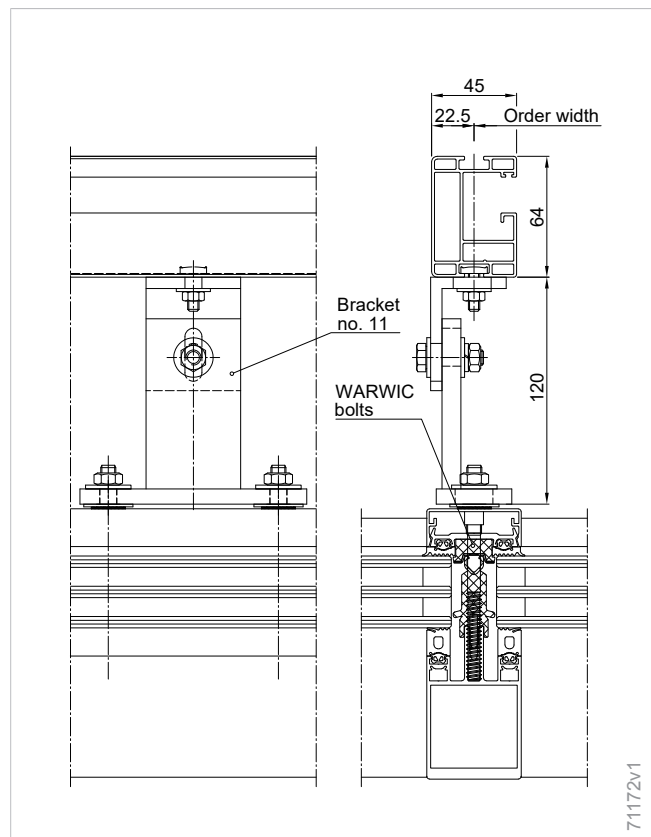
Field of application:

- D3

Bracket no. 11



Bracket no. 11, example D3



## Bracket H31

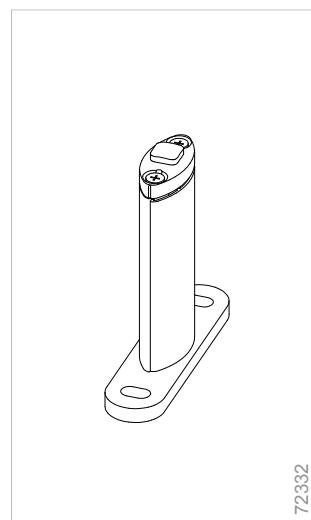
|          |               |
|----------|---------------|
| Material | Aluminium     |
| Surface  | Powder-coated |
| Width    | 30 mm         |
| Depth    | 120 mm        |

Field of application:

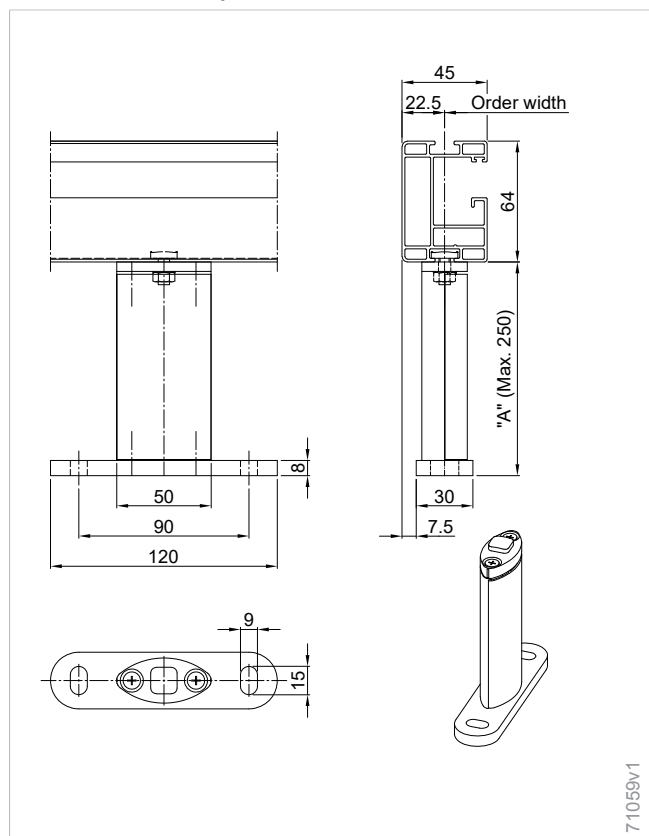
- W9
- W10
- W10<sup>2</sup>
- W19
- W20
- D3

Suitable double bracket: H61

Bracket no. 31



Bracket no. 31, example W19



## Bracket H34

|          |               |
|----------|---------------|
| Material | Aluminium     |
| Surface  | Powder-coated |
| Width    | 30 mm         |
| Depth    | 120 mm        |

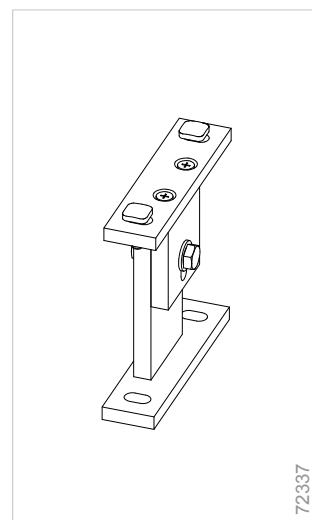
Field of application:

- W19
- W20
- D3

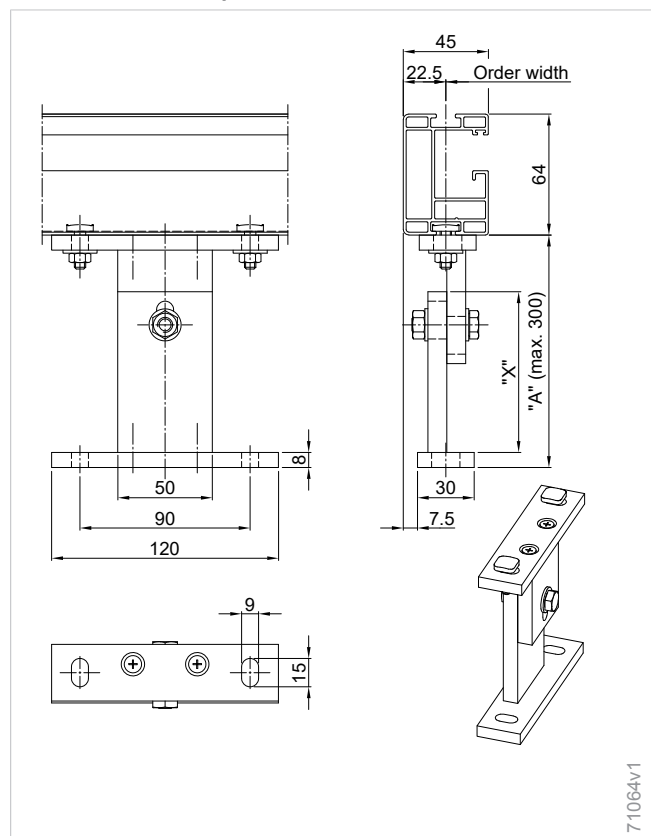
Suitable double bracket:

- H60
- H62

Bracket no. 34



Bracket no. 34, example W19





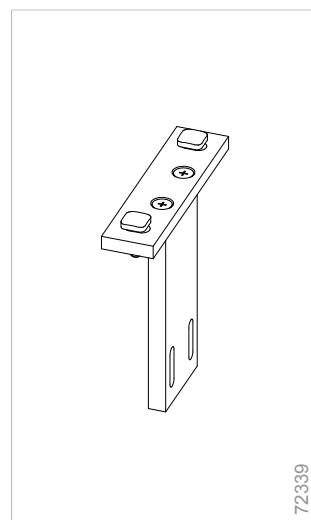
## Bracket H36

|          |               |
|----------|---------------|
| Material | Aluminium     |
| Surface  | Powder-coated |
| Width    | 30 mm         |
| Depth    | 120 mm        |

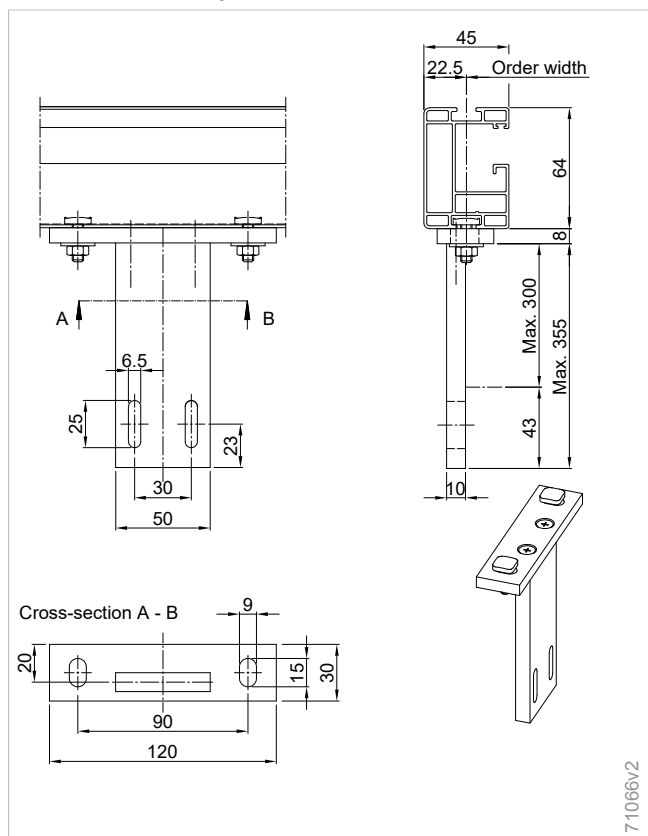
Field of application:

- W19
- W20
- D3

Bracket no. 36



Bracket no. 36, example W19



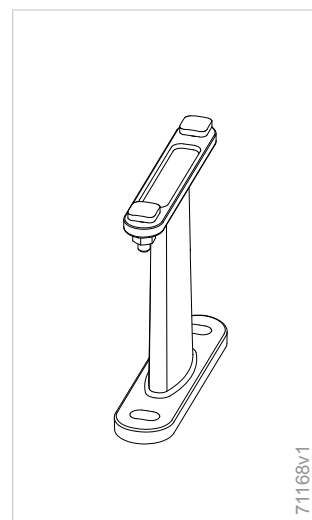
## Bracket H41

|          |               |
|----------|---------------|
| Material | Aluminium     |
| Surface  | Powder-coated |
| Width    | 30 mm         |
| Height   | 120 mm        |
| Depth    | 120 mm        |

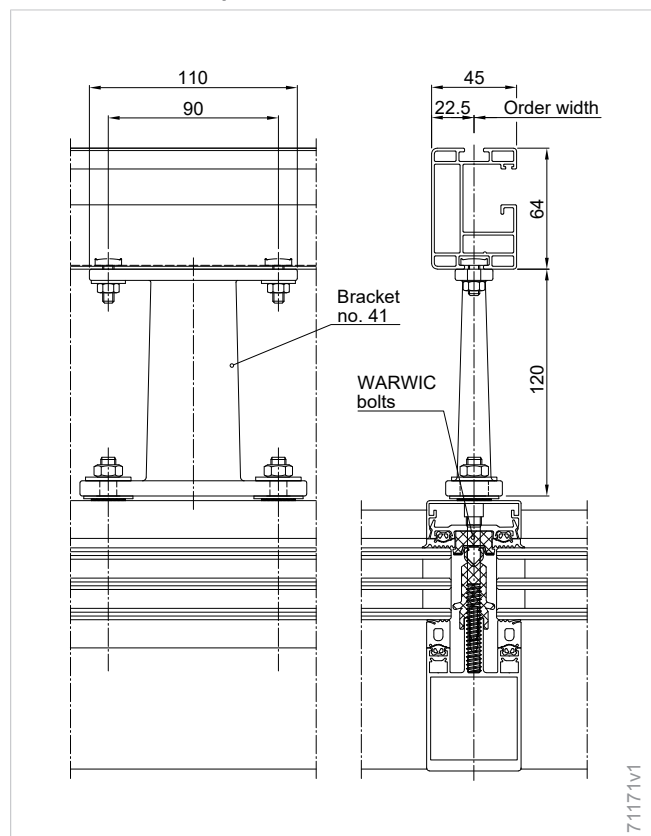
Field of application:

- W19
- W20
- D3

Bracket no. 41



Bracket no. 41, example W19



## Bracket H46

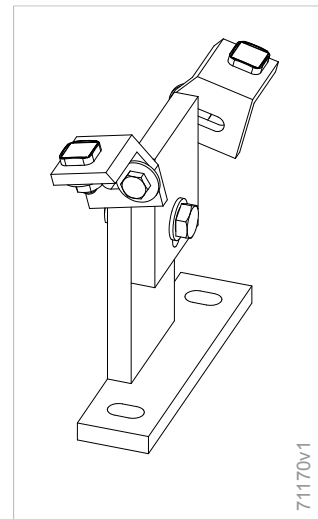
|          |               |
|----------|---------------|
| Material | Aluminium     |
| Surface  | Powder-coated |
| Width    | 30 mm         |
| Depth    | 120 mm        |

Field of application:

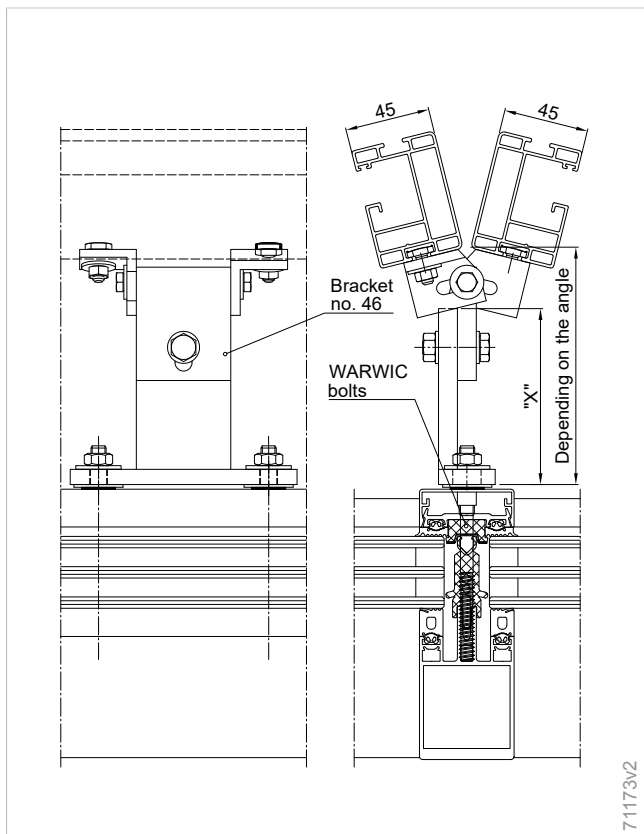
– D3

The usability of bracket H46 is tested depending on the roof pitch and the outside angle by the Applied Engineering department.

Bracket no. 46



Bracket no. 46 - D3



## Bracket H49

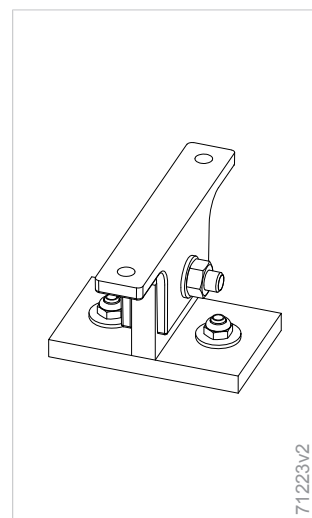
|          |               |
|----------|---------------|
| Material | Aluminium     |
| Surface  | Powder-coated |
| Width    | 80 mm         |
| Height   | 60 mm         |
| Depth    | 110 mm        |

Field of application:

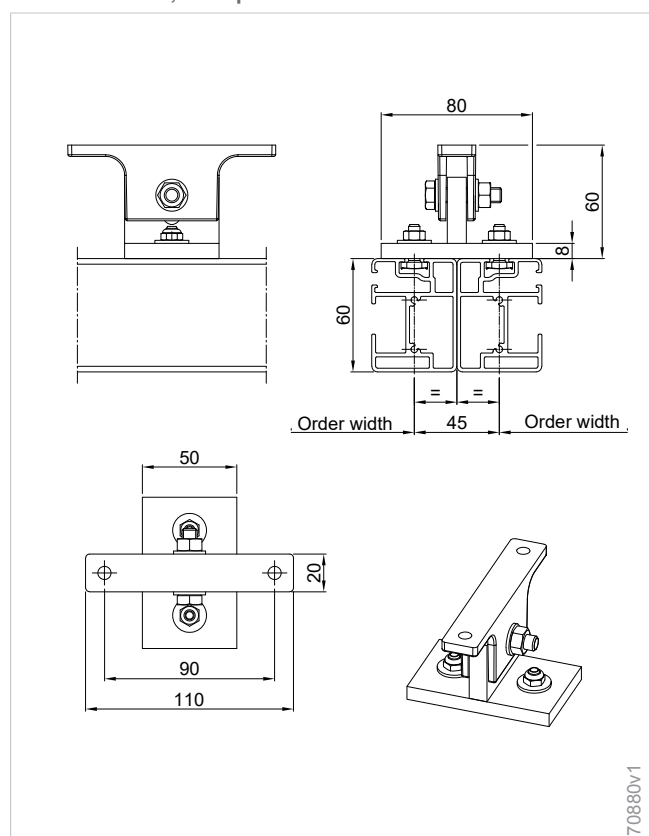
- W9
- W10
- W10<sup>2</sup>

Suitable single bracket: H101

Bracket no. 49



Bracket no. 49, guide rail bracket for series-mounted units, distance 60 mm, example W10



## Bracket H60

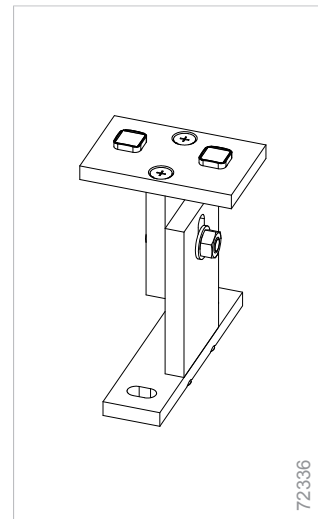
|          |               |
|----------|---------------|
| Material | Aluminium     |
| Surface  | Powder-coated |
| Width    | 80 mm         |
| Depth    | 120 mm        |

Field of application:

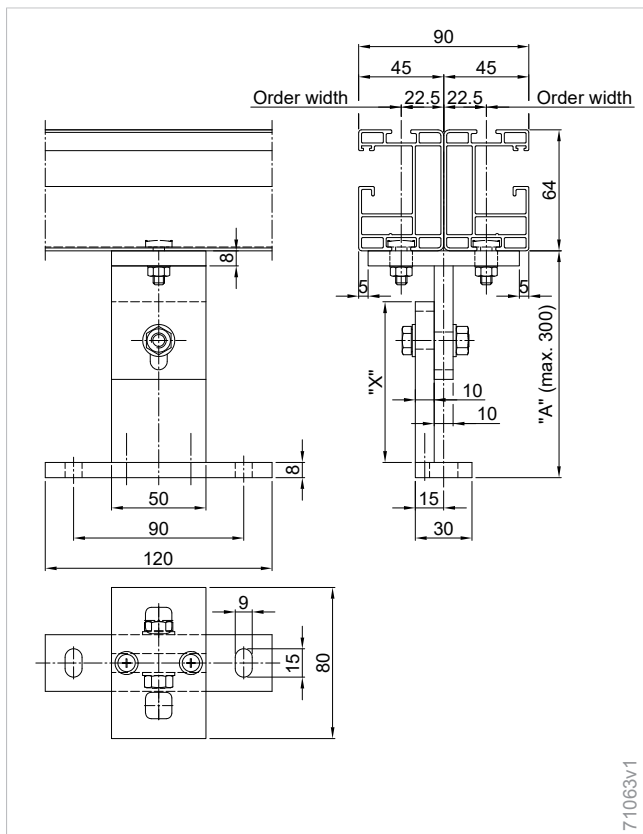
- W19
- W20
- D3

Suitable single bracket: H34

**Bracket no. 60**



**Bracket no. 60, example W19**



## Bracket H61

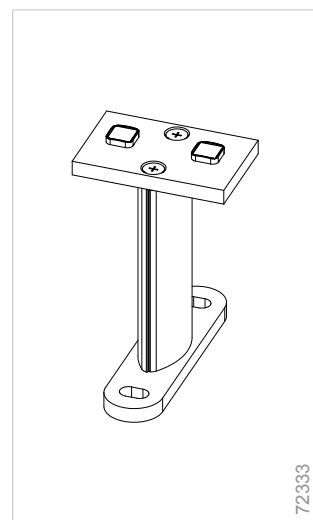
|          |               |
|----------|---------------|
| Material | Aluminium     |
| Surface  | Powder-coated |
| Width    | 80 mm         |
| Depth    | 120 mm        |

Field of application:

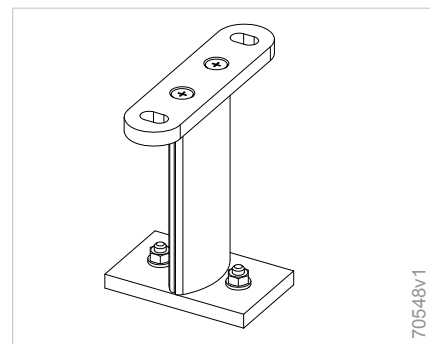
- W9
- W10
- W10<sup>2</sup>
- W19
- W20
- D3

Suitable single bracket: H31

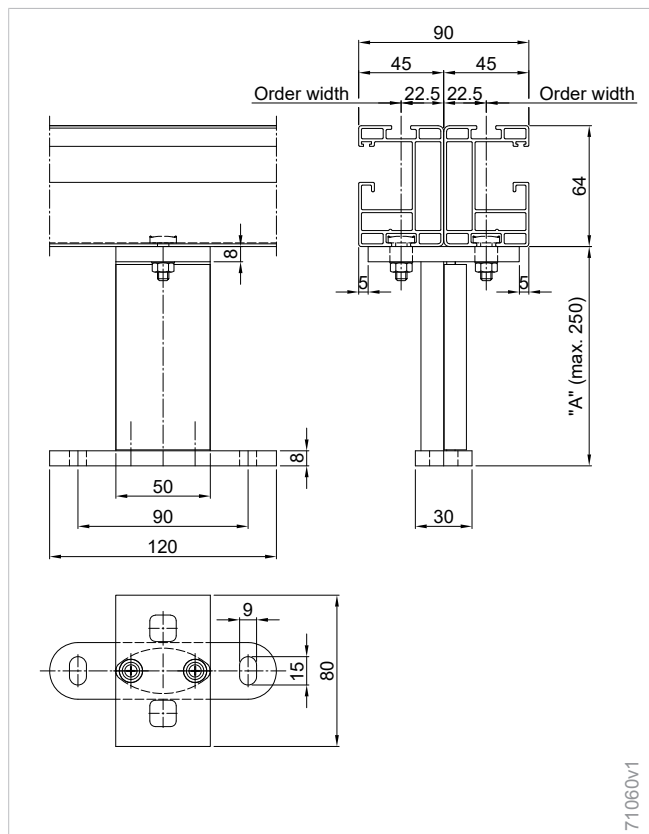
Bracket no. 61



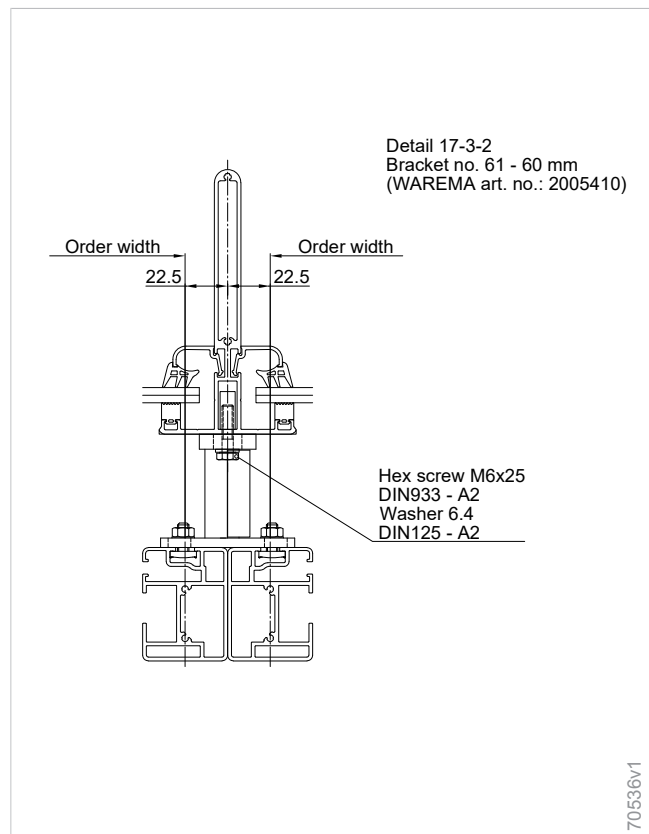
Bracket 61: Connection to Solarlux patio roof with light rail; double bracket



Bracket no. 61, example W19



Bracket no. 61, example W10



## Bracket H62

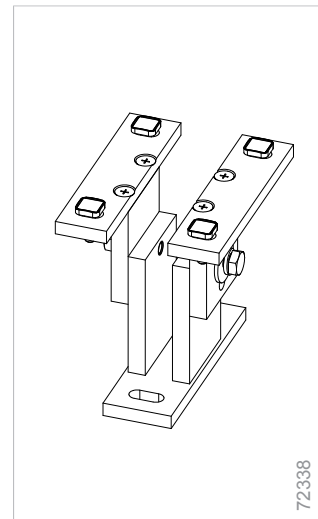
|          |               |
|----------|---------------|
| Material | Aluminium     |
| Surface  | Powder-coated |
| Width    | 95 mm         |
| Depth    | 120 mm        |

Field of application:

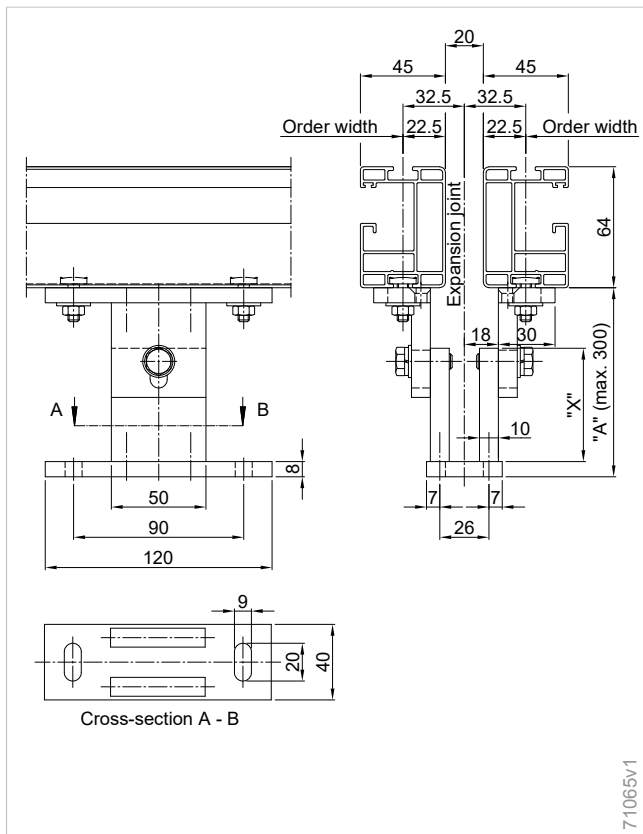
- W19
- W20
- D3

Suitable single bracket: H34

**Bracket no. 62**



**Bracket no. 62, example W19**



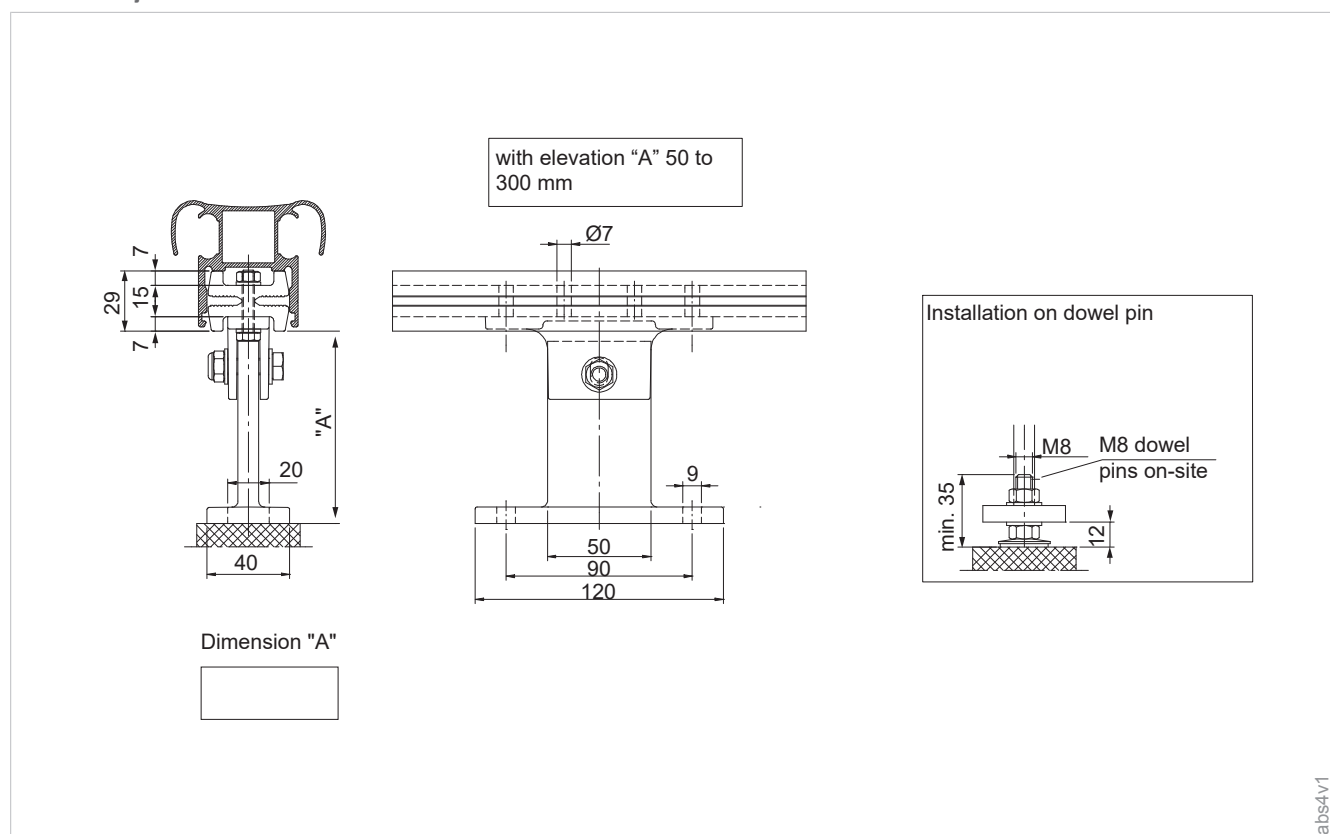
## Bracket H70

|          |               |
|----------|---------------|
| Material | Aluminium     |
| Surface  | Powder-coated |
| Width    | 39 mm         |
| Height   | 29 mm         |
| Depth    | 200 mm        |

Field of application:

- W7

Elevation adjustable with bracket H70 - W7





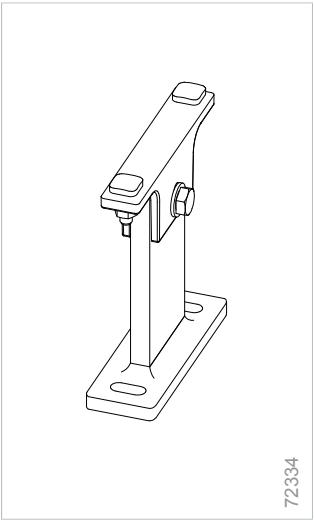
# Bracket H101

|          |               |
|----------|---------------|
| Material | Aluminium     |
| Surface  | Powder-coated |
| Width    | 40 mm         |
| Depth    | 120 mm        |

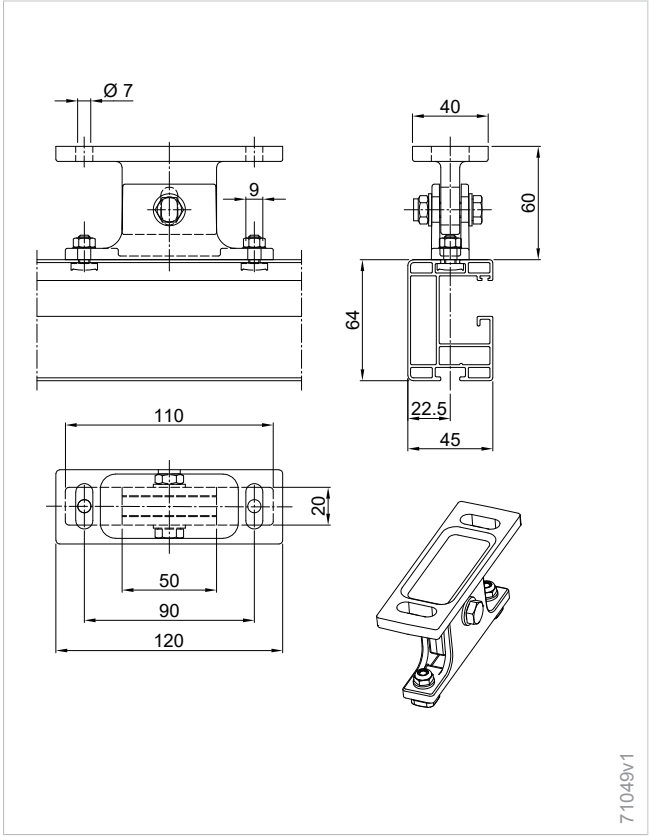
Field of application:

- W9
- W10
- W10<sup>2</sup>
- W19
- W20
- D3

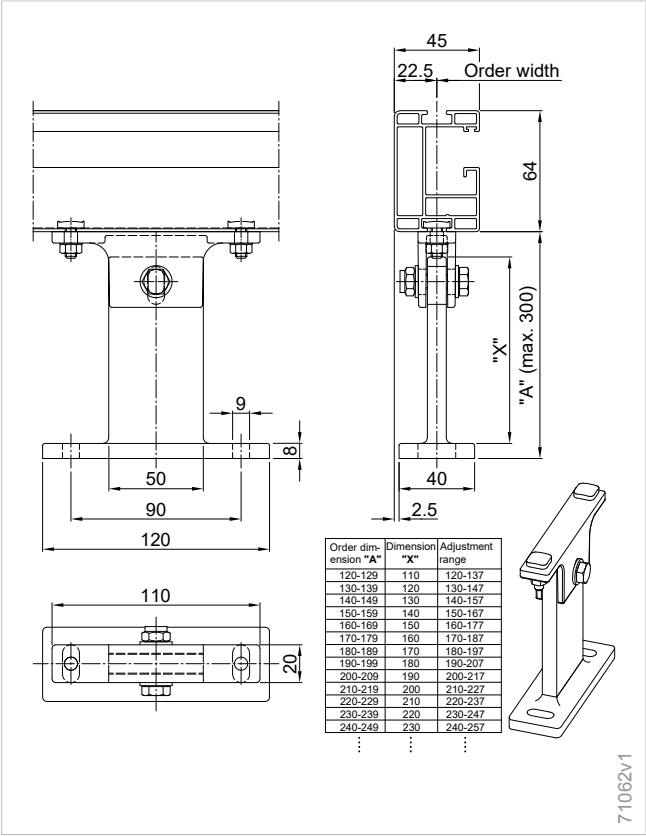
Bracket no. H101



Bracket no. H101, distance 60 mm, example W9



Bracket no. H101, example W19



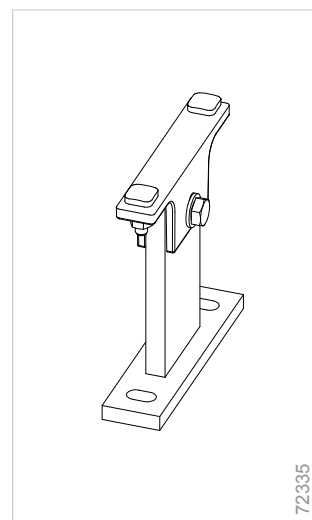
## Bracket H102

|          |               |
|----------|---------------|
| Material | Aluminium     |
| Surface  | Powder-coated |
| Width    | 30 mm         |
| Depth    | 110 mm        |

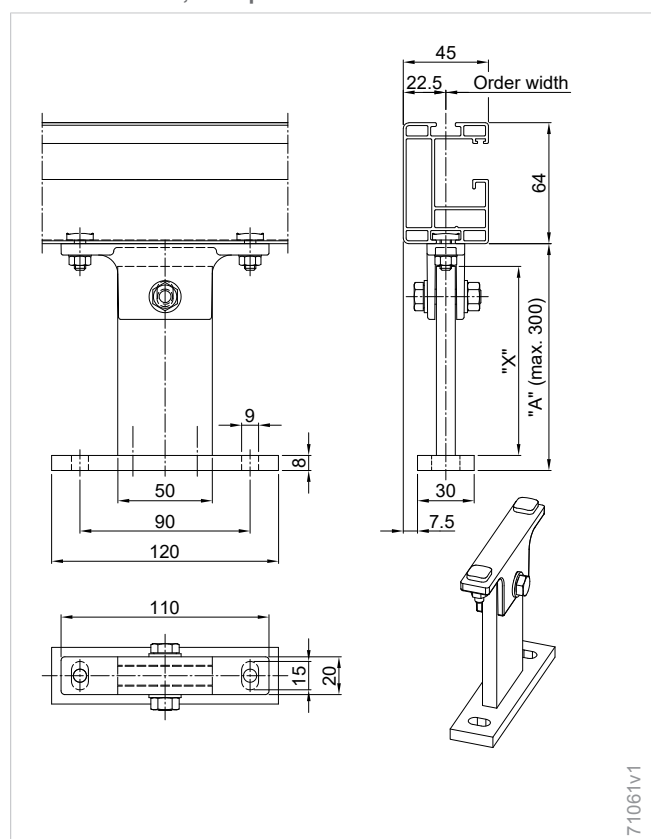
Field of application:

- W9
- W10
- W10<sup>2</sup>
- W19
- W20
- D3

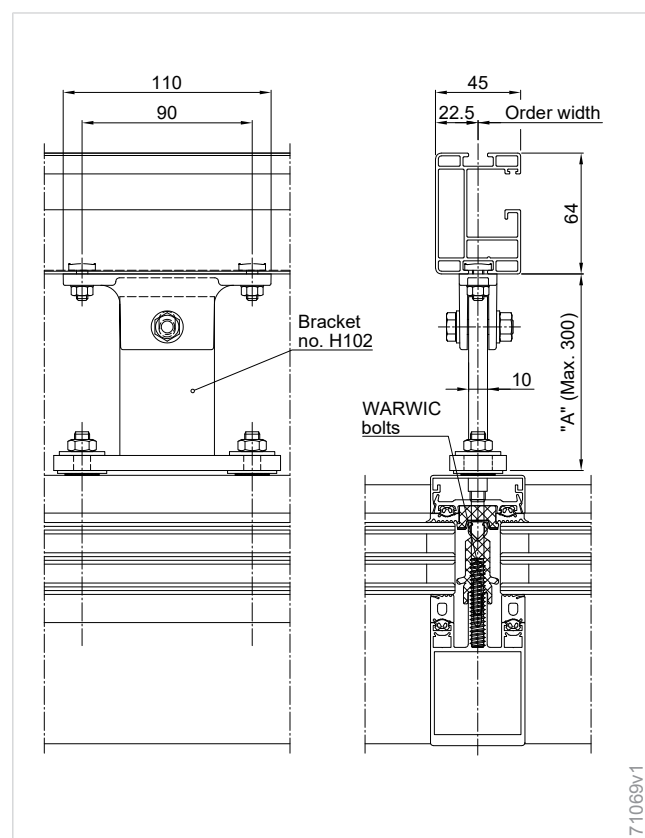
Bracket no. H102



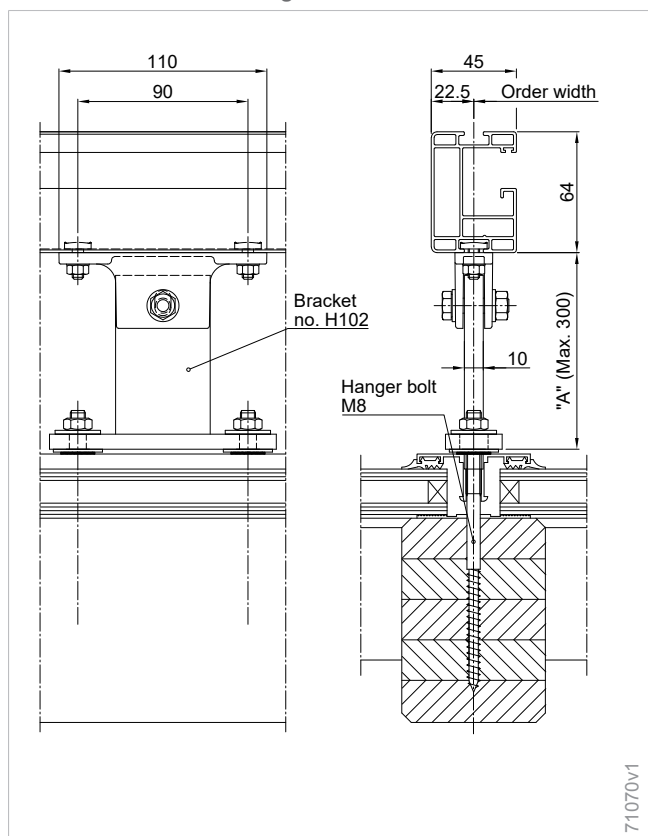
Bracket no. H102, example W19



Guide rail fixation with WARWIC bolts for transom and mullion facade - D3



# Guide rail fixation with hanger bolt



## Bracket SL06

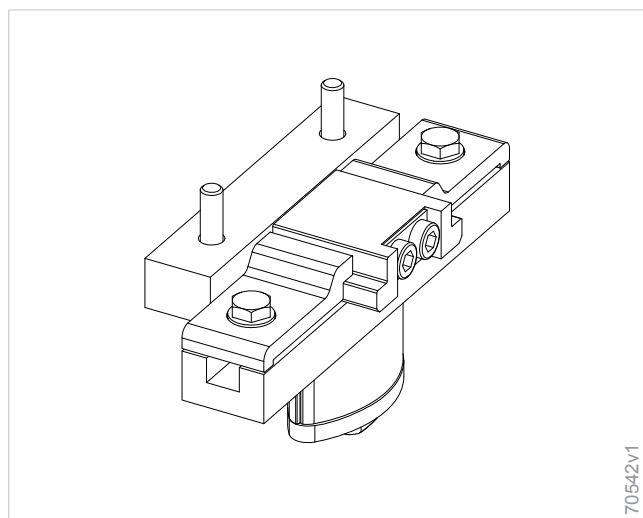
|          |               |
|----------|---------------|
| Material | Aluminium     |
| Surface  | Powder-coated |
| Width    | 55 mm         |
| Height   | 59 mm         |
| Depth    | 130 mm        |

Connection to Solarlux patio roof atrium without lateral glazing; with light rail on patio roof

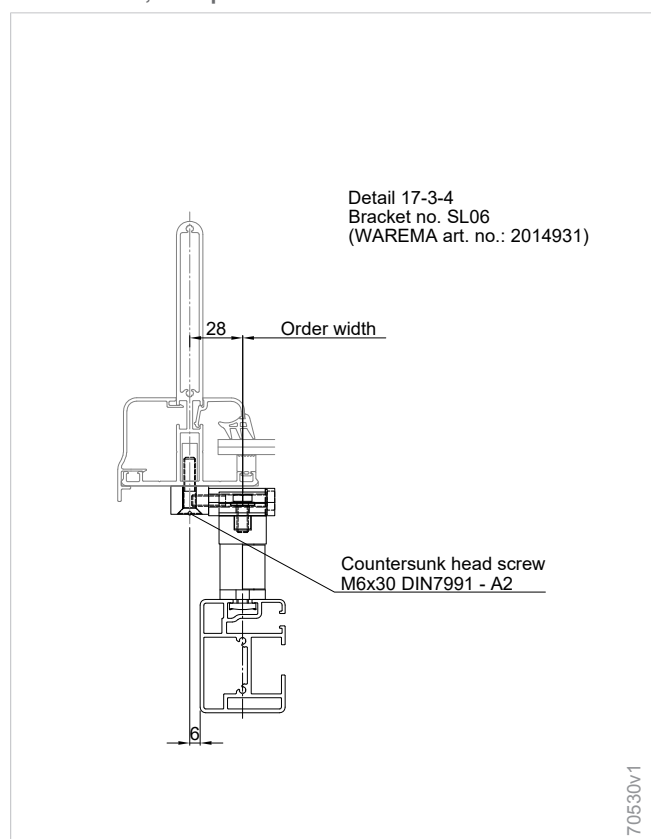
Field of application:

- W9
- W10
- W10<sup>2</sup>

Bracket SL06



Bracket SL06, example W10



Planning

Terrea

Perea

Patio  
side screens

Climara

Supplementary  
accessories

Components

Drive  
variants

Standards

## Bracket SL09

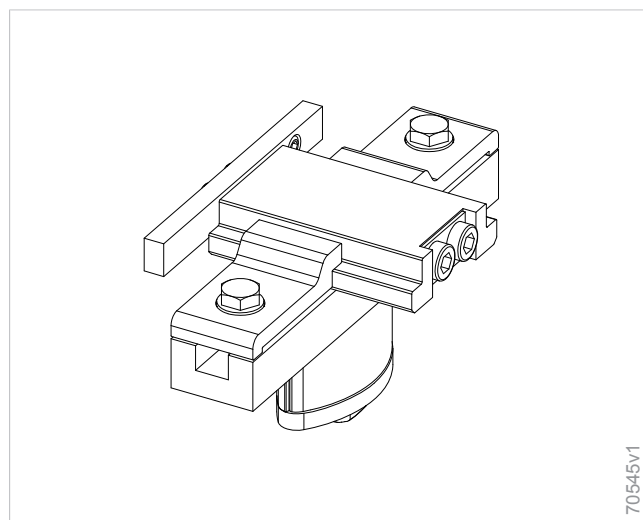
|          |               |
|----------|---------------|
| Material | Aluminium     |
| Surface  | Powder-coated |
| Width    | 74 mm         |
| Height   | 59 mm         |
| Depth    | 130 mm        |

Connection to Solarlux patio roof atrium with lateral glazing and light rail

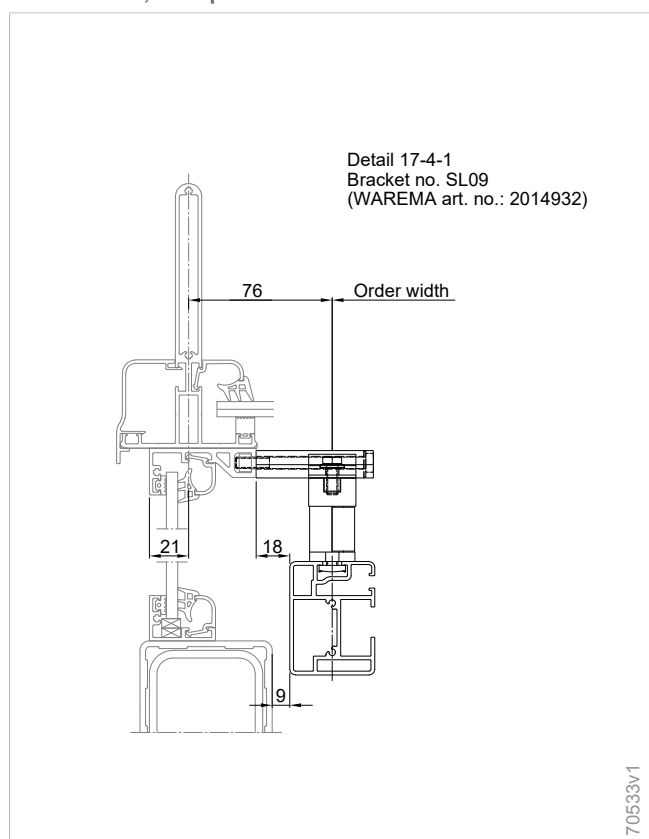
Field of application:

- W9
- W10
- W10<sup>2</sup>

Bracket SL09



Bracket SL09, example W10



## Bracket SL10

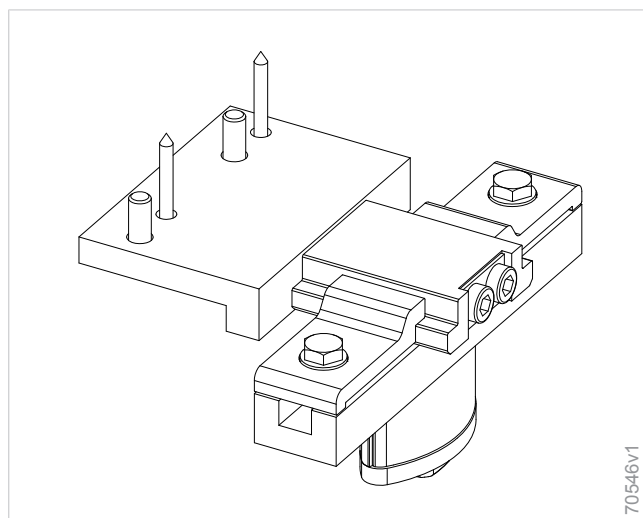
|          |               |
|----------|---------------|
| Material | Aluminium     |
| Surface  | Powder-coated |
| Width    | 105 mm        |
| Height   | 60 mm         |
| Depth    | 130 mm        |

Connection to Solarlux patio roof atrium with lateral glazing and light rail

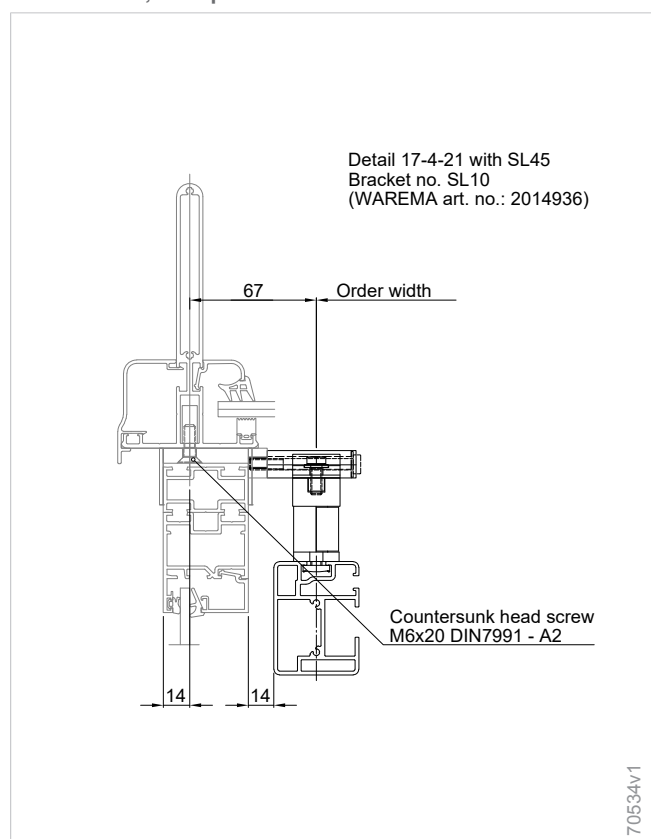
Field of application:

- W9
- W10
- W10<sup>2</sup>

Bracket SL10



Bracket SL10, example W10



Planning

Terrea

Perea

Patio  
side screens

Climara

Supplementary  
accessories

Components

Drive  
variants

Standards

# Guide rail bracket - direct installation

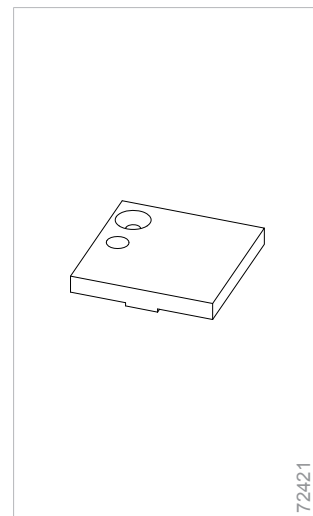
## Bracket H48

|          |               |
|----------|---------------|
| Material | Aluminium     |
| Surface  | Powder-coated |
| Width    | 40 mm         |
| Height   | 6.5 mm        |
| Depth    | 40 mm         |

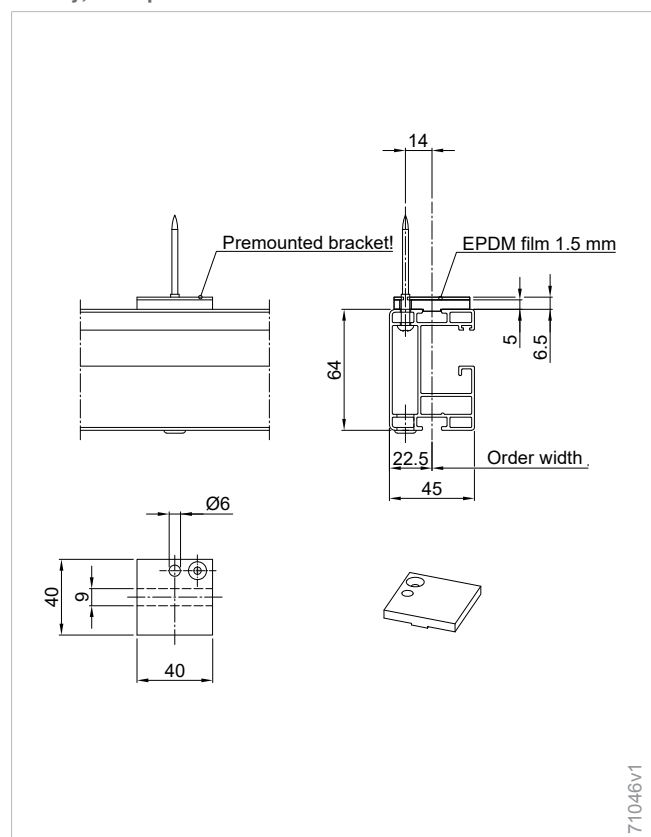
Field of application:

- W9
- W10
- W10<sup>2</sup>

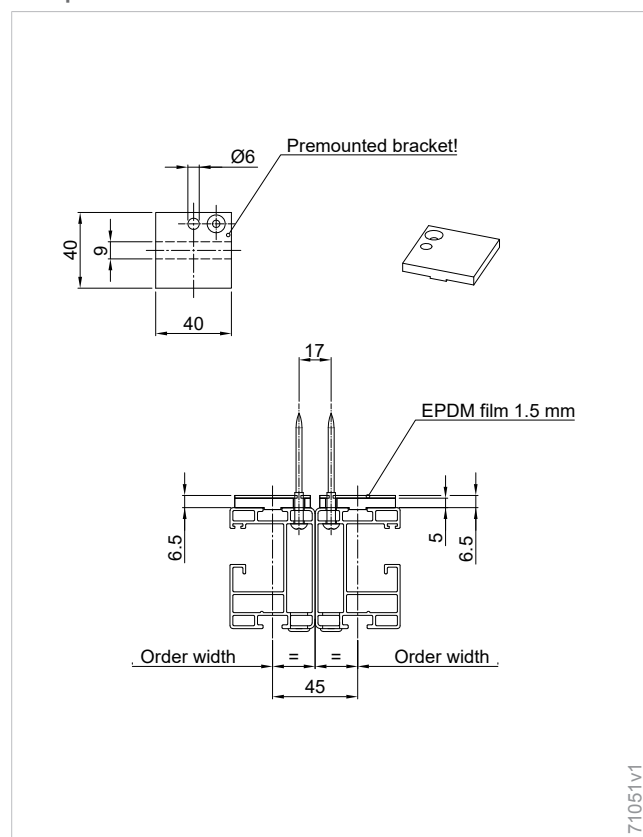
Bracket no. 48



Bracket no. 48, distance 6.5 mm, installed on guide rail at the factory, example W9



Bracket no. 48, series-mounted units, distance 6.5 mm, example W9



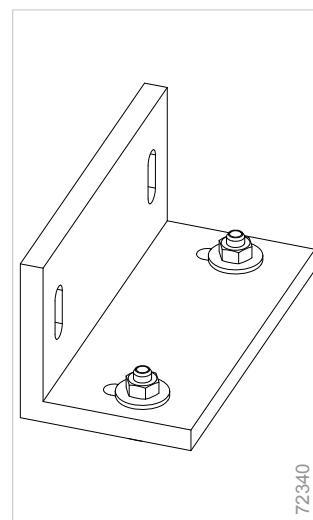
## Bracket H52

|          |               |
|----------|---------------|
| Material | Aluminium     |
| Surface  | Powder-coated |
| Width    | 40 mm         |
| Height   | 60 mm         |
| Depth    | 120 mm        |

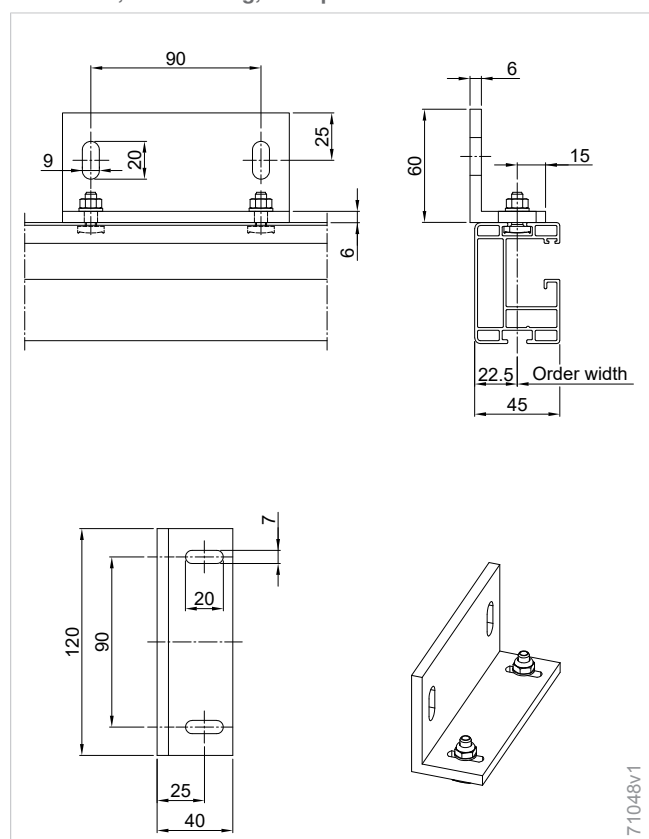
Field of application:

- W9
- W10
- W10<sup>2</sup>

Bracket no. 52



Bracket 52, lateral fixing, example W9



Planning

Terrea

Perea

Patio  
side screens

Climara

Supplementary  
accessories

Components

Drive  
variants

Standards



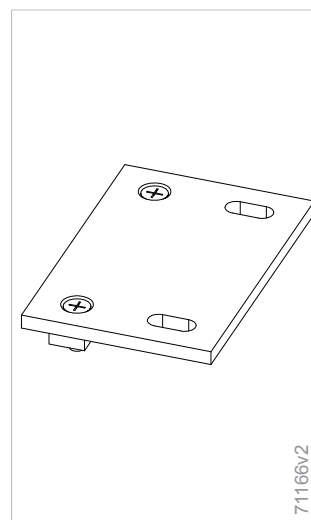
## Bracket H53

|          |               |
|----------|---------------|
| Material | Aluminium     |
| Surface  | Powder-coated |
| Width    | 80 mm         |
| Height   | 6 mm          |
| Depth    | 120 mm        |

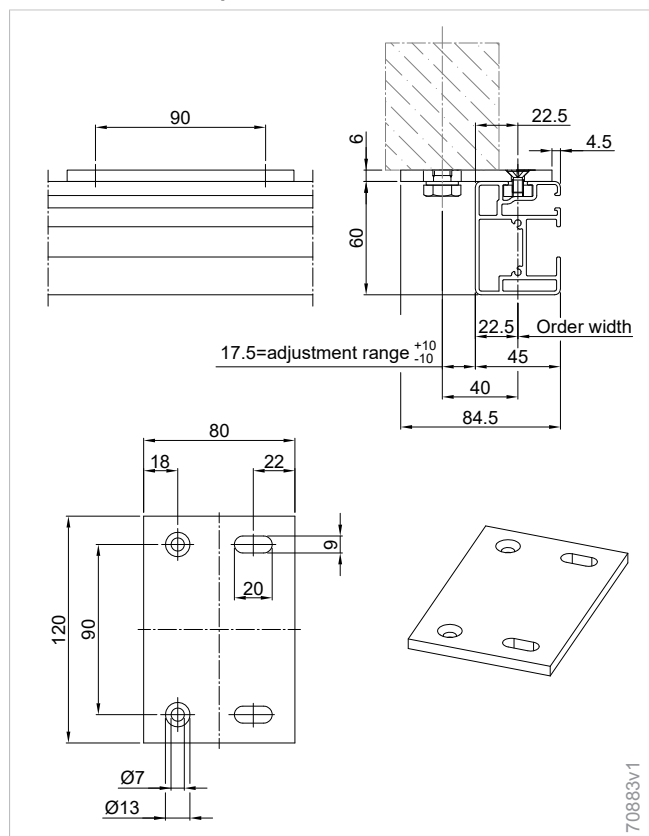
Field of application:

- W10
- W10<sup>2</sup>

Bracket no. 53



Bracket no. 53, example W10, W10<sup>2</sup>



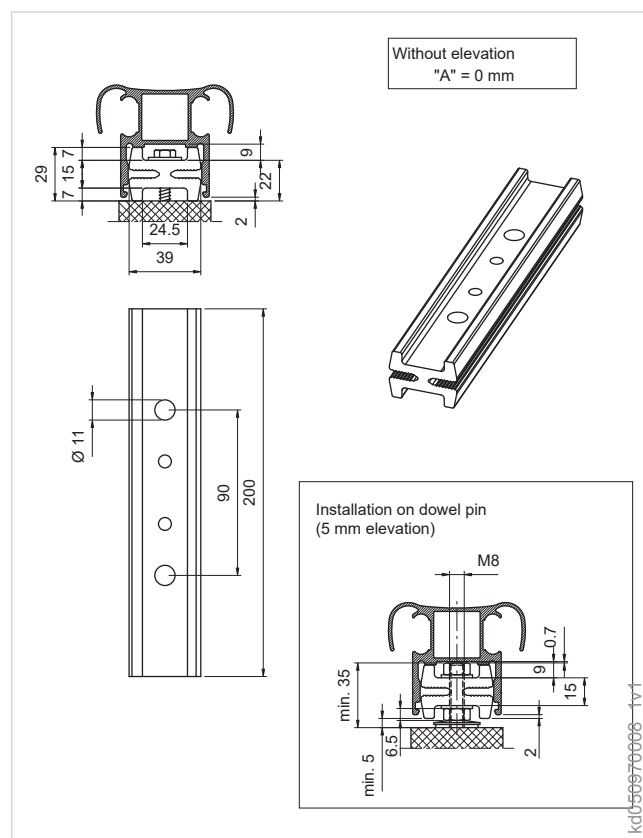
## Bracket H72

|          |               |
|----------|---------------|
| Material | Aluminium     |
| Surface  | Powder-coated |
| Width    | 40 mm         |
| Depth    | 120 mm        |

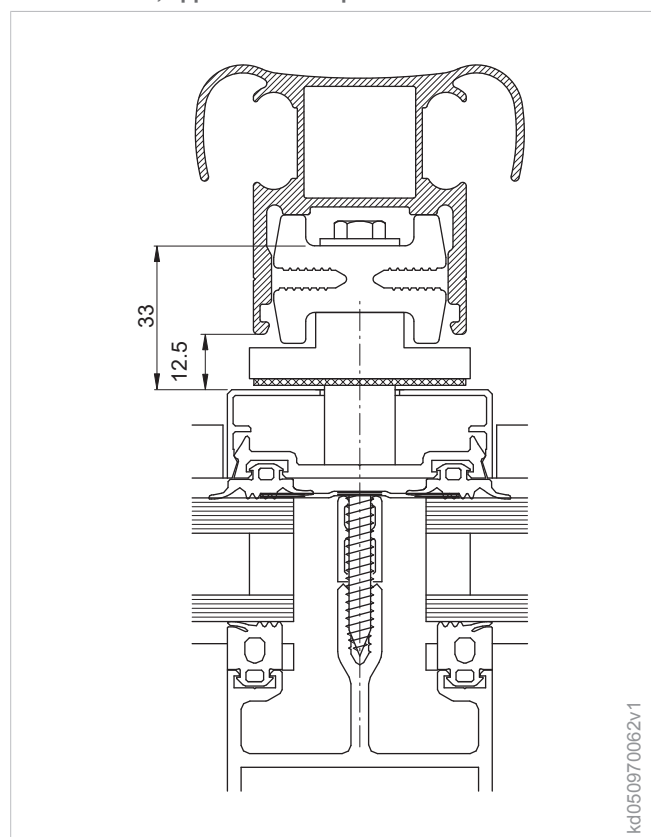
Field of application:

- W7

### Bracket no. 72



### Bracket no. 72; application example



Planning

Terrea

Perea

Patio  
side screens

Climara

Supplementary  
accessories

Components

Drive  
variants

Standards

## Bracket SL01

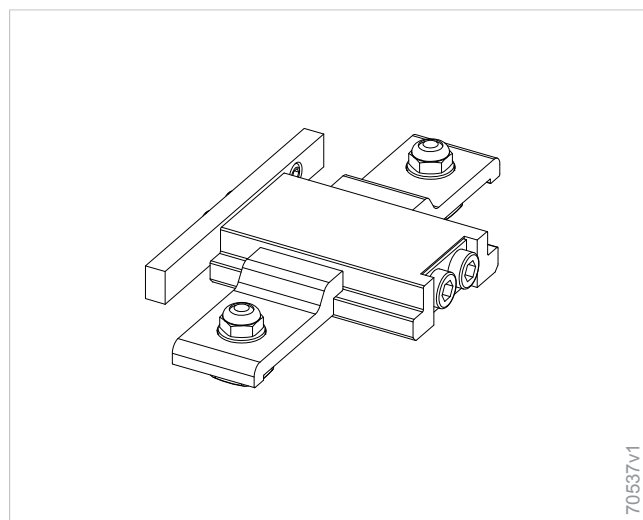
|          |               |
|----------|---------------|
| Material | Aluminium     |
| Surface  | Powder-coated |
| Width    | 74 mm         |
| Height   | 21 mm         |
| Depth    | 130 mm        |

Connection to Solarlux patio roof atrium with lateral glazing

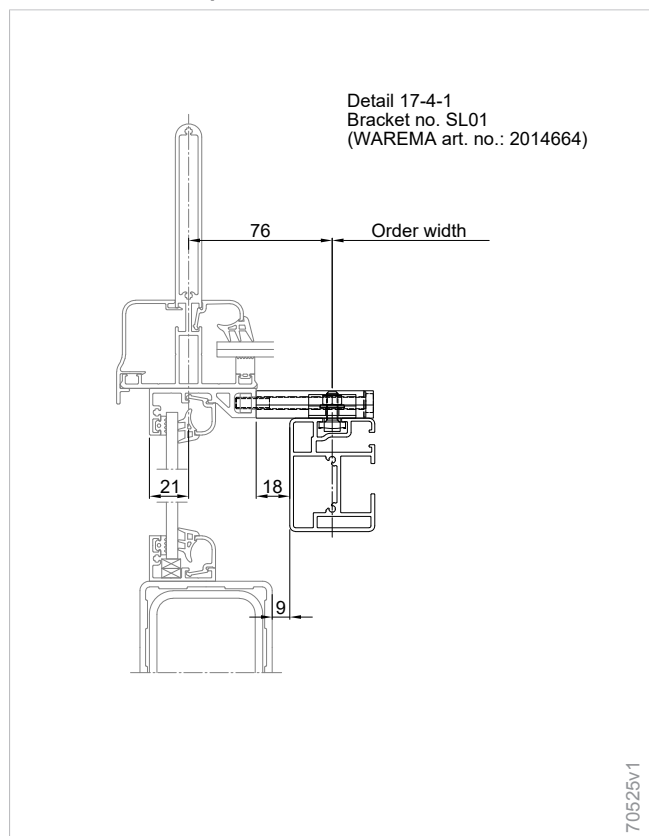
Field of application:

- W9
- W10
- W10<sup>2</sup>

Bracket SL01



Bracket SL01, example W10



## Bracket SL02

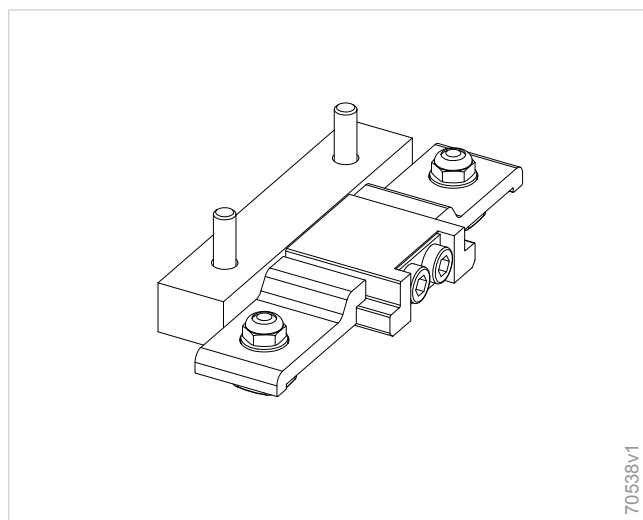
|          |               |
|----------|---------------|
| Material | Aluminium     |
| Surface  | Powder-coated |
| Width    | 55 mm         |
| Height   | 21 mm         |
| Depth    | 130 mm        |

Connection to Solarlux patio roof atrium without lateral glazing

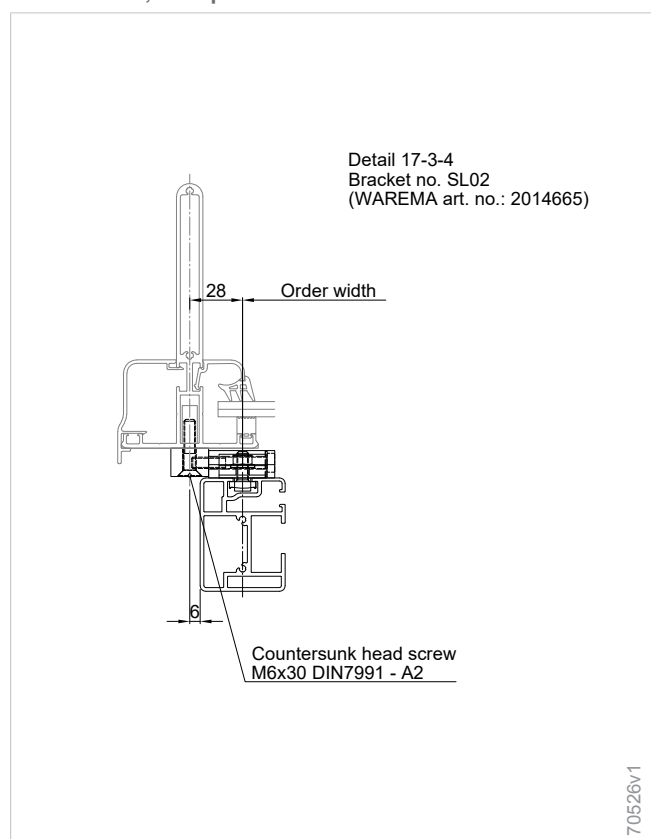
Field of application:

- W9
- W10
- W10<sup>2</sup>

Bracket SL02



Bracket SL02, example W10



Planning

Terrea

Perea

Patio  
side screens

Climara

Supplementary  
accessories

Components

Drive  
variants

Standards

## Bracket SL03

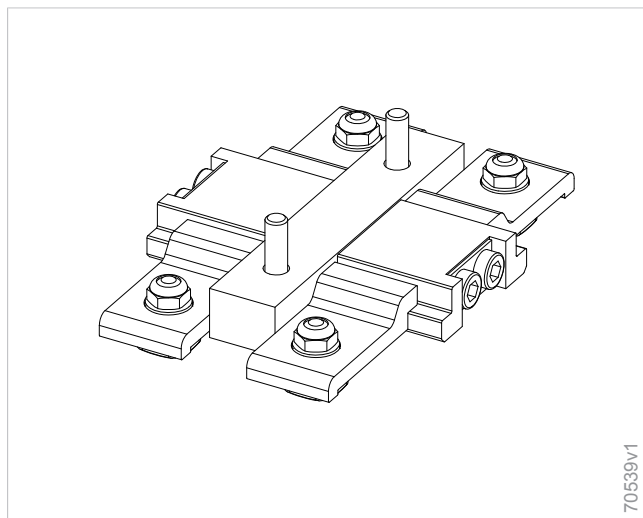
|          |               |
|----------|---------------|
| Material | Aluminium     |
| Surface  | Powder-coated |
| Width    | 90 mm         |
| Height   | 21 mm         |
| Depth    | 130 mm        |

Connection to Solarlux patio roof atrium without lateral glazing

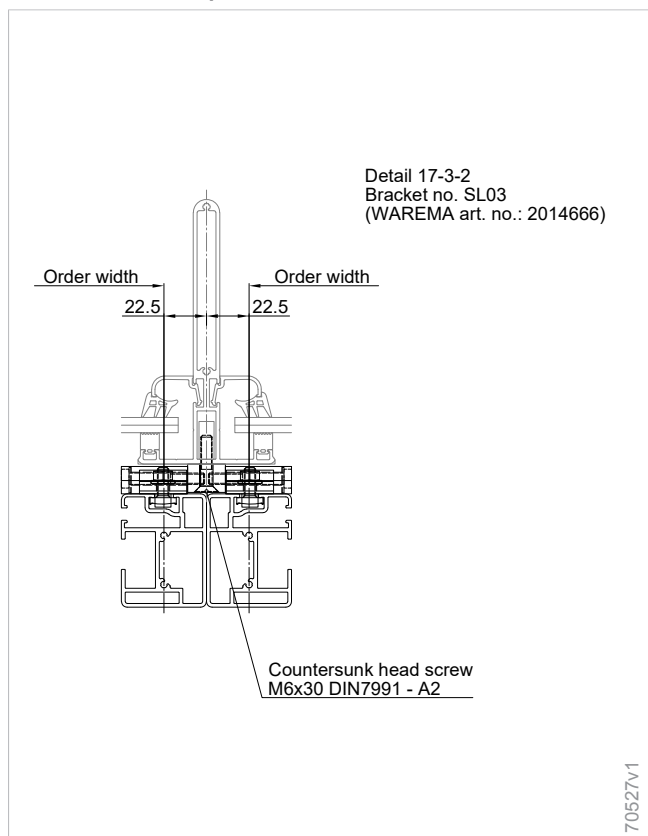
Field of application:

- W9
- W10
- W10<sup>2</sup>

Bracket SL03



Bracket SL03, example W10



## Bracket SL04

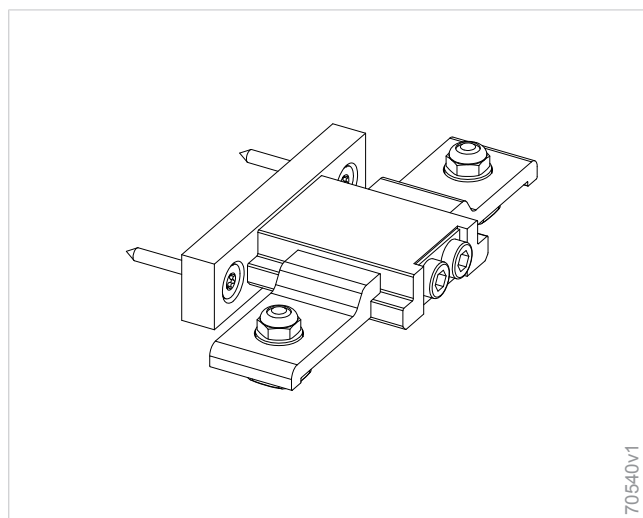
|          |               |
|----------|---------------|
| Material | Aluminium     |
| Surface  | Powder-coated |
| Width    | 60 mm         |
| Height   | 22 mm         |
| Depth    | 130 mm        |

Connection to Solarlux patio roof atrium with lateral glazing SL22

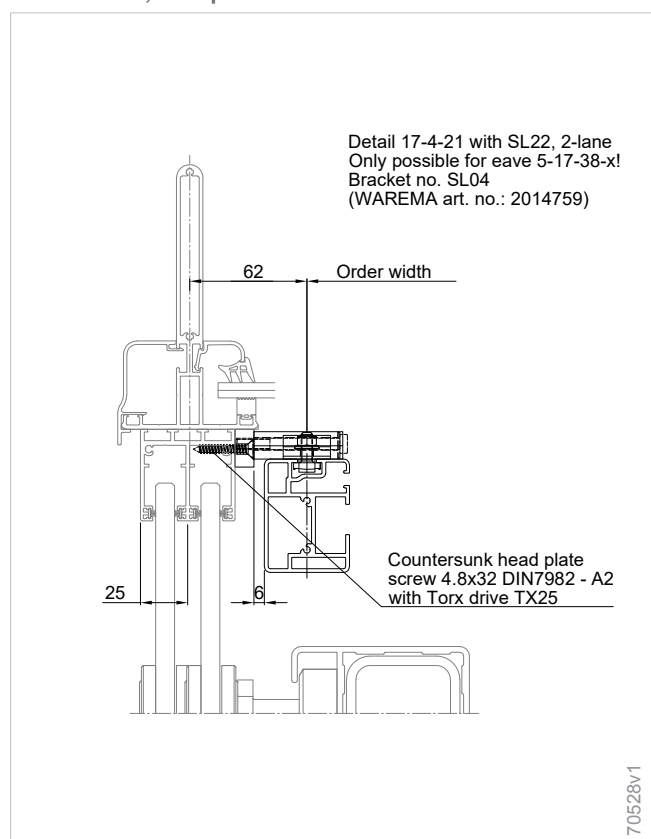
Field of application:

- W9
- W10
- W10<sup>2</sup>

Bracket SL04



Bracket SL04, example W10



Planning

Terrea

Perea

Patio side screens

Climara

Supplementary accessories

Components

Drive variants

Standards

## Bracket SL05

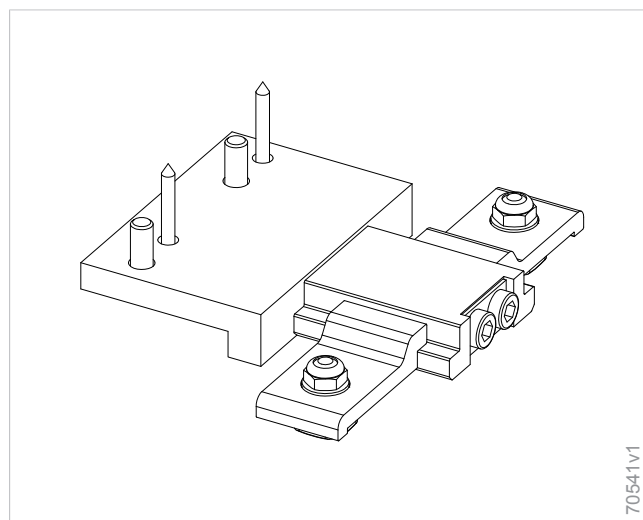
|          |               |
|----------|---------------|
| Material | Aluminium     |
| Surface  | Powder-coated |
| Width    | 105 mm        |
| Height   | 22 mm         |
| Depth    | 130 mm        |

Connection to Solarlux patio roof atrium with lateral glazing SL45

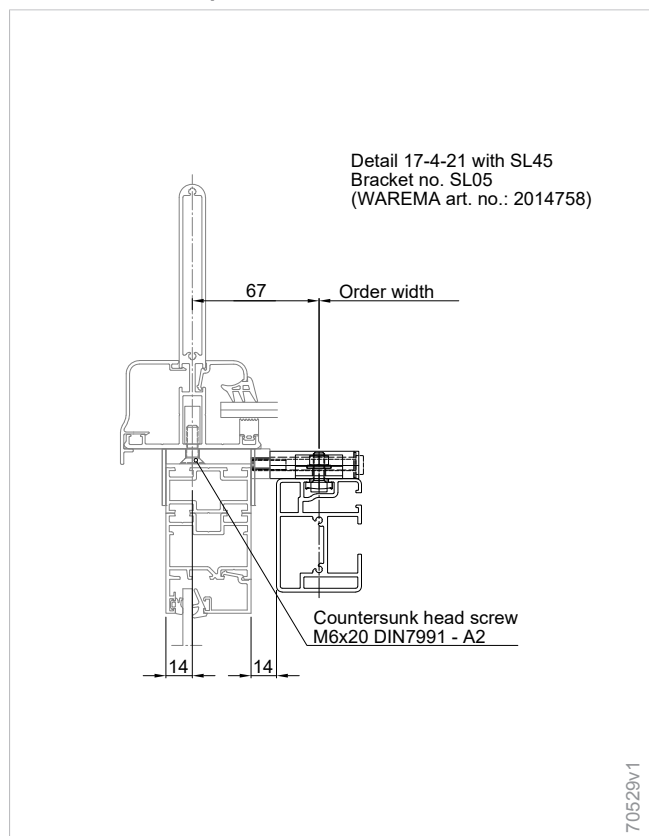
Field of application:

- W9
- W10
- W10<sup>2</sup>

Bracket SL05



Bracket SL05, example W10



## Bracket SL07

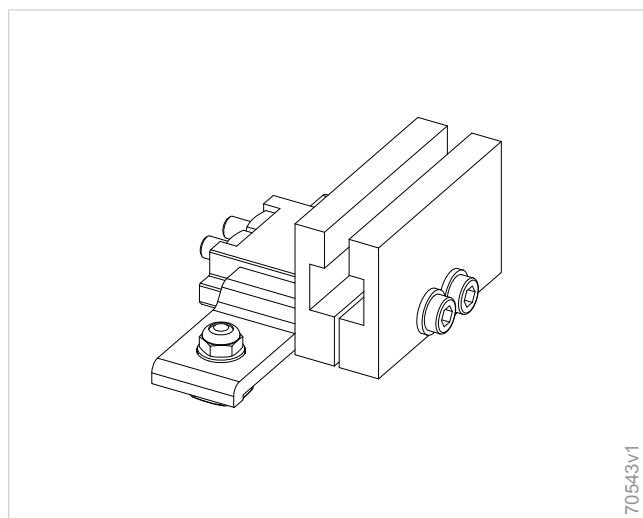
|          |               |
|----------|---------------|
| Material | Aluminium     |
| Surface  | Powder-coated |
| Width    | 74 mm         |
| Height   | 47 mm         |
| Depth    | 130 mm        |

Attachment to Solarlux patio roof Anova

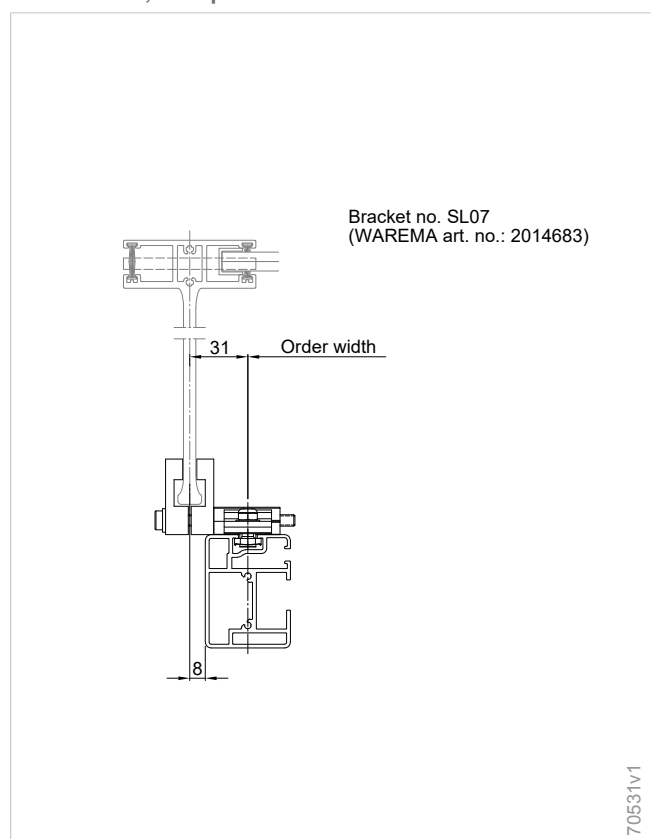
Field of application:

- W9
- W10
- W10<sup>2</sup>

Bracket SL07



Bracket SL07, example W10



Planning

Terrea

Perea

Patio  
side screens

Climara

Supplementary  
accessories

Components

Drive  
variants

Standards



## Bracket SL08

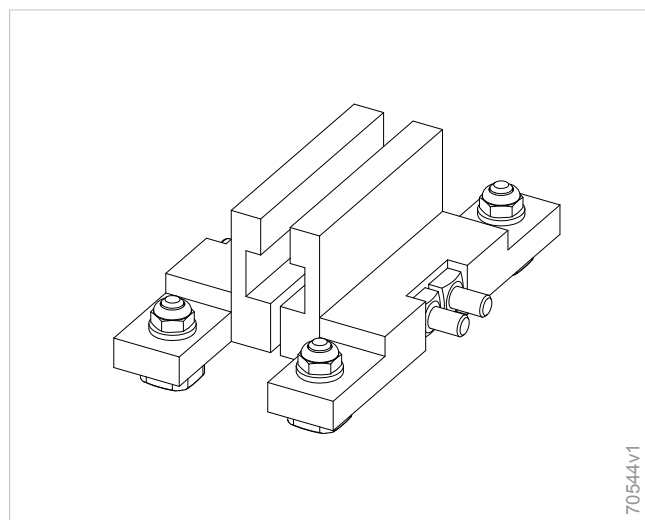
|          |               |
|----------|---------------|
| Material | Aluminium     |
| Surface  | Powder-coated |
| Width    | 76 mm         |
| Height   | 40 mm         |
| Depth    | 120 mm        |

Attachment to Solarlux patio roof Anova

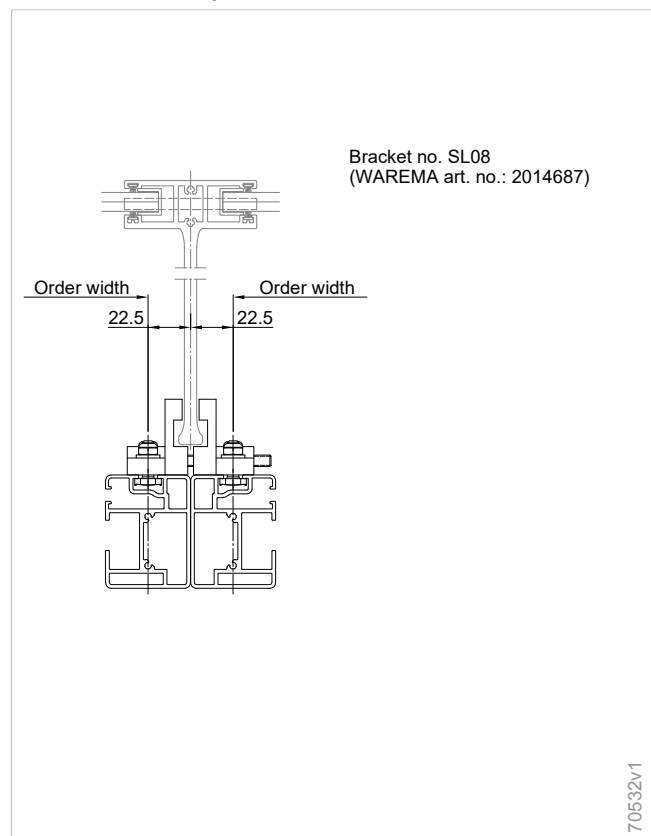
Field of application:

- W9
- W10
- W10<sup>2</sup>

Bracket SL08



Bracket SL08, example W10



## Bracket SL11

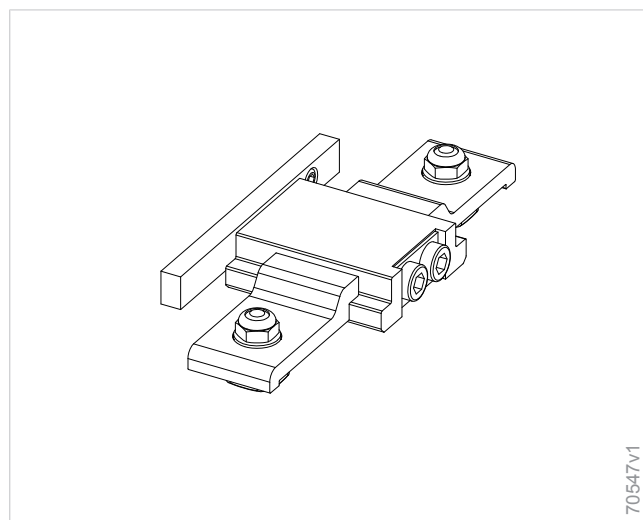
|          |               |
|----------|---------------|
| Material | Aluminium     |
| Surface  | Powder-coated |
| Width    | 60 mm         |
| Height   | 21 mm         |
| Depth    | 130 mm        |

Connection to Solarlux patio roof atrium with lateral glazing on lower rafter or in case of surrounding cover panel

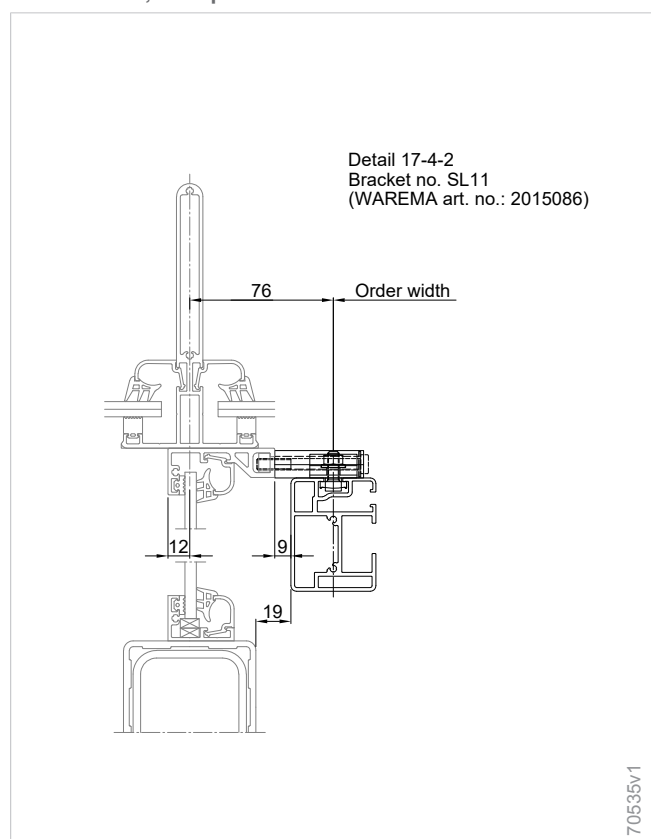
Field of application:

- W9
- W10
- W10<sup>2</sup>

Bracket SL11



Bracket SL11, example W10



Planning

Terrea

Perea

Patio  
side screens

Climara

Supplementary  
accessories

Components

Drive  
variants

Standards

# Bracket

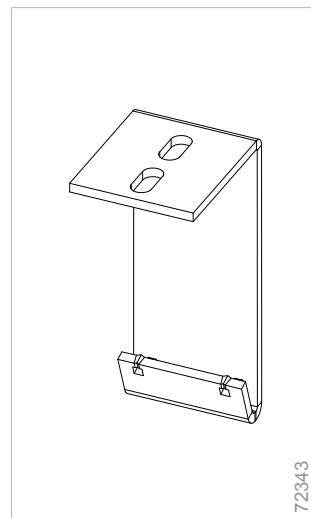
## Ceiling bracket 40x76 mm

|          |                  |
|----------|------------------|
| Material | Galvanised steel |
| Surface  | Powder-coated    |
| Width    | 40 mm            |
| Height   | 76 mm            |
| Depth    | 48 mm            |

Field of application:

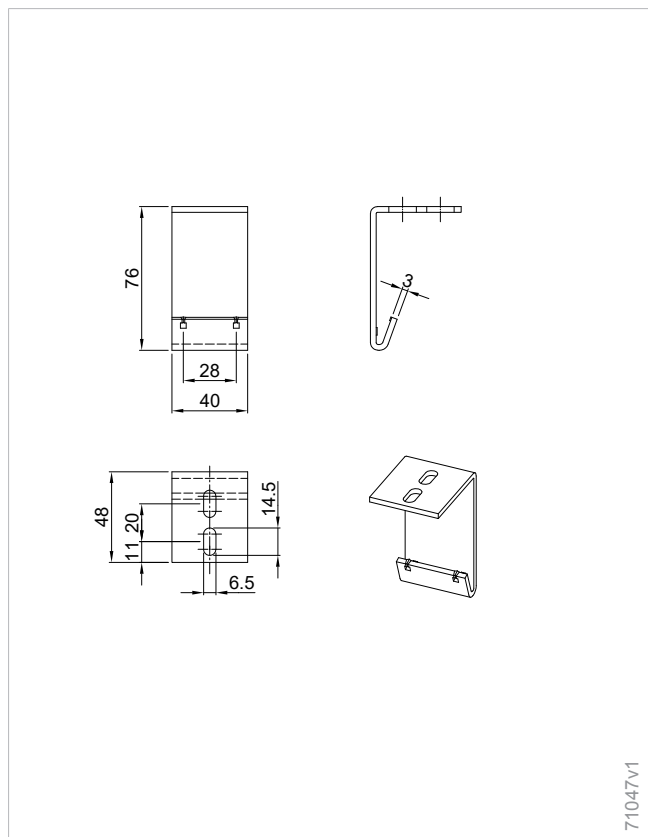
- Bracket H48
- Bracket H53

Ceiling bracket 40x76 mm



72343

Ceiling bracket 40x76 mm, distance 6.5 mm



71047v1

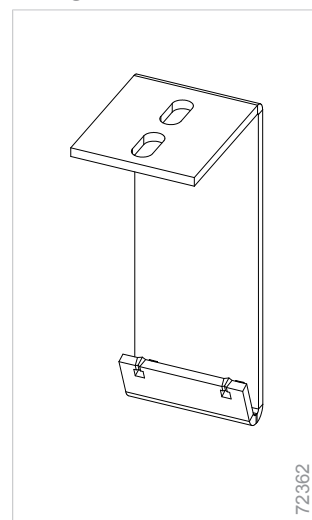
## Ceiling bracket 40x85 mm

|          |                  |
|----------|------------------|
| Material | Galvanised steel |
| Surface  | Powder-coated    |
| Width    | 40 mm            |
| Height   | 85 mm            |
| Depth    | 48 mm            |

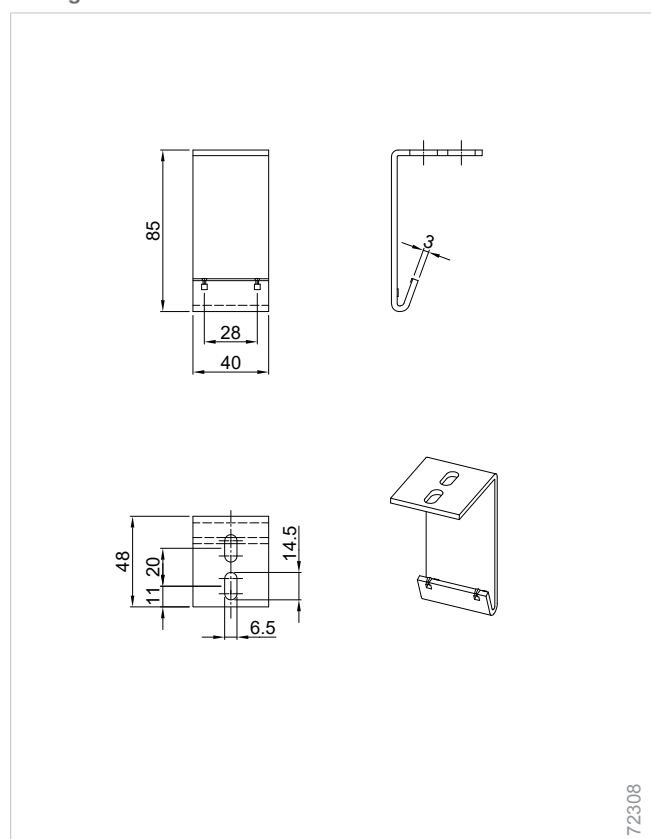
Field of application:

- Bracket SL01-SL05
- Bracket SL11

Ceiling bracket 40x85 mm



Ceiling bracket 40x85 mm



Planning

Terrea

Perea

Patio  
side screens

Climara

Supplementary  
accessories

**Components**

Drive  
variants

Standards

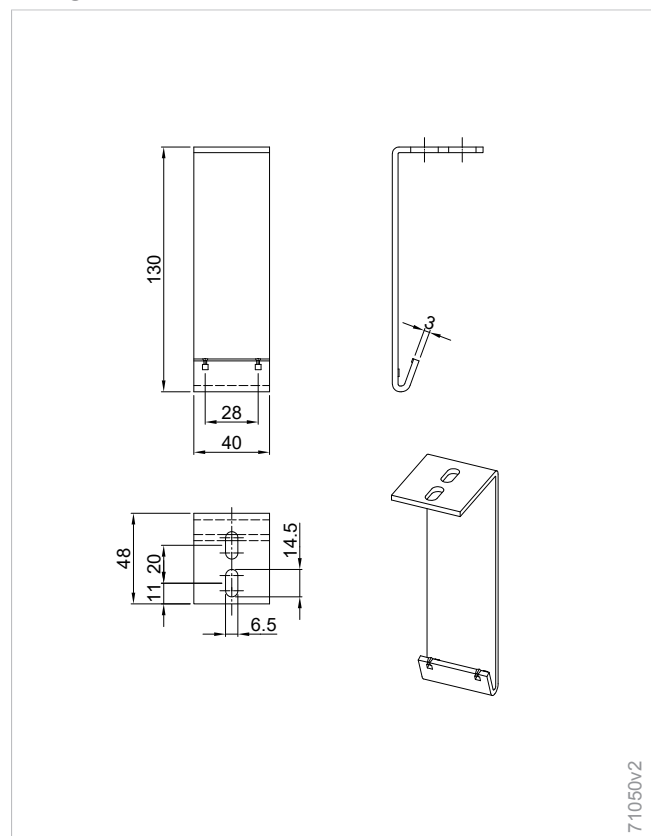
## Ceiling bracket 40x130 mm

|          |                  |
|----------|------------------|
| Material | Galvanised steel |
| Surface  | Powder-coated    |
| Width    | 40 mm            |
| Height   | 130 mm           |
| Depth    | 48 mm            |

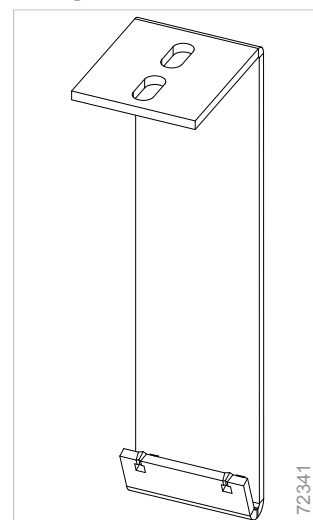
Field of application:

- Bracket H31
- Bracket H49
- Bracket H61
- Bracket H101
- Bracket H102
- Bracket SL06
- Bracket SL09
- Bracket SL10

Ceiling bracket 40x130 mm, distance 60 mm



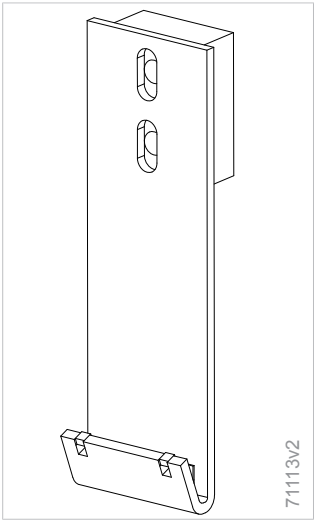
Ceiling bracket 40x130 mm



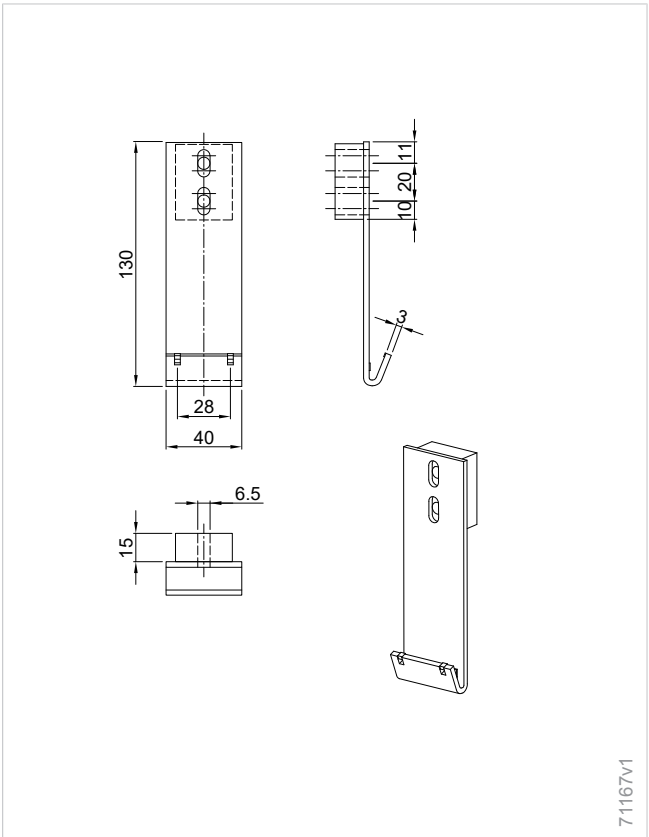
# Wall bracket 40x130 mm

|          |                  |
|----------|------------------|
| Material | Galvanised steel |
| Surface  | Powder-coated    |
| Width    | 40 mm            |
| Height   | 130 mm           |
| Depth    | 18 mm            |

Wall bracket 40x130 mm



Wall bracket 40x130 mm, installation in the reveal



Planning

Terrea

Perea

Patio  
side screens

Climara

Supplementary  
accessories

Components

Drive  
variants

Standards

## Adapter for installation on Solarlux patio roof atrium with large rafters

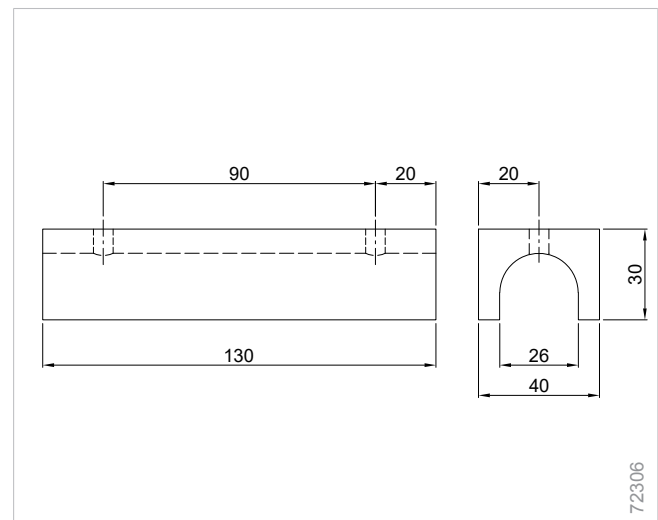
|          |               |
|----------|---------------|
| Material | Aluminium     |
| Surface  | Powder-coated |
| Width    | 40 mm         |
| Height   | 30 mm         |
| Depth    | 130 mm        |

For installation of guide rail bracket on Solarlux patio roof atrium with large rafters.

Field of application:

- W7
- W19
- W20
- D3

Adapter for Solarlux patio roof atrium - large rafters



## Adapter for installation on Solarlux patio roof atrium with small rafters

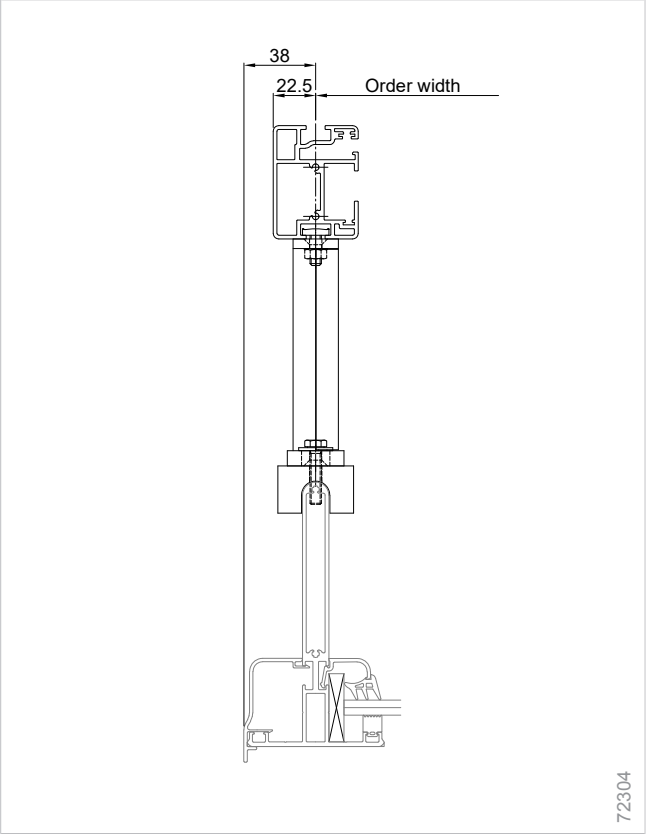
|          |               |
|----------|---------------|
| Material | Aluminium     |
| Surface  | Powder-coated |
| Width    | 40 mm         |
| Height   | 25 mm         |
| Depth    | 130 mm        |

For installation of guide rail bracket on Solarlux patio roof atrium with small rafters.

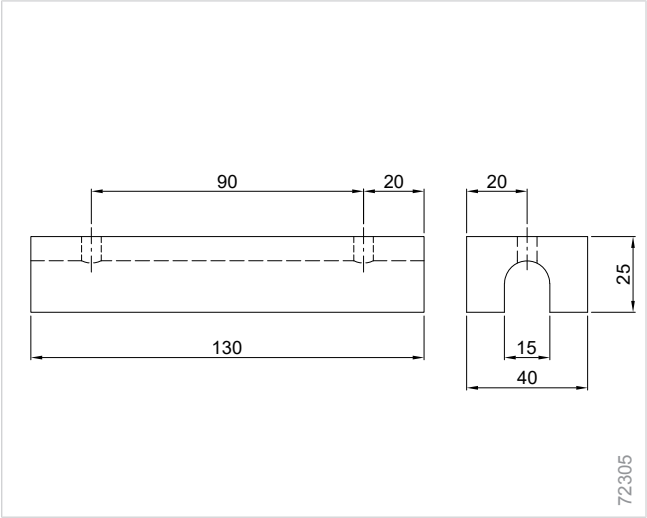
Field of application:

- W7
- W19
- W20
- D3

### Installation on Solarlux patio roof atrium, small rafters - Example W20



Adapter for Solarlux patio roof atrium - small rafters



Planning

Terrea

Perea

Patio  
side screens

Climara

Supplementary  
accessories

Components

Drive  
variants

Standards





# Components

## Awning collection

### Individual

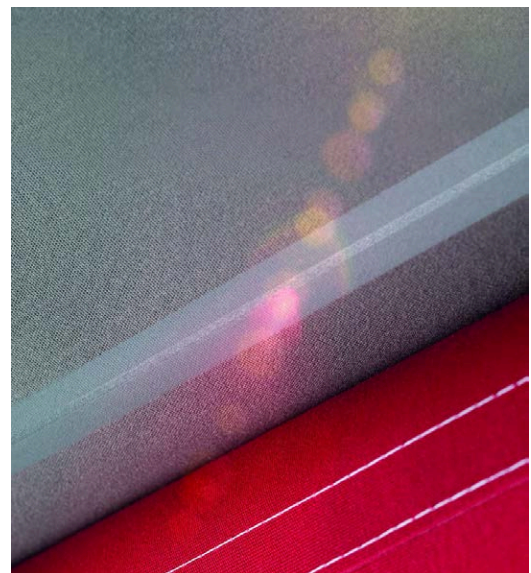
A large selection of different fabric qualities and designs make the awning an individual ornamental feature.

### Sophisticated

The various fabric qualities are technical, high-performance products and fulfil the highest requirements.

### Modern

As well as the Classics, the awning collection also offers designs in current trend colours.



#### Product characteristics

- Trendy collection with over 300 designs
- Various fabric qualities suitable to requirements

## Awning collection

| Designation                        | Material, fabrics                                                          | Fabric weight        | Web width | Building materials class | Fabric characteristics                                                                                                                                                                                                                         |
|------------------------------------|----------------------------------------------------------------------------|----------------------|-----------|--------------------------|------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| Standard acrylic fabric            | 100% brand acrylic fabric with fluorocarbon-based impregnation             | 300 g/m <sup>2</sup> | 1200 mm   | None                     | Light-fast, weather-fast, tear-resistant, dirt-repellent, rot-proof, air permeable, water-repellent                                                                                                                                            |
| Lumera acrylic fabric              | CBA fibre (Clean Brilliant Acrylic)                                        | 290 g/m <sup>2</sup> | 1200 mm   | None                     | Brilliant colours, luminosity, high water column, dirt-repellent                                                                                                                                                                               |
| Perfora acrylic                    | 100% brand acrylic fabric with perforation                                 | 270 g/m <sup>2</sup> | 1200 mm   | None                     | All fabric properties of standard acrylic and high degree of transparency through perforation. Reduced risk of formation of water pockets and heat accumulation as well as high-grade, elegant look through uniform perforation of the fabric. |
| All Weather acrylic                | 100% brand acrylic fabric with transparent acrylate coating on the outside | 335 g/m <sup>2</sup> | 1200 mm   | None                     | All fabric properties of standard acrylic fabric and nearly water-proof (water column 1000 mm)                                                                                                                                                 |
| Lacquered fabric Preconstraint 302 | PVC-coated polyester fabric                                                | 480 g/m <sup>2</sup> | 1800 mm   | B1 (DIN 4102-1)          |                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                |
| Screen fabric                      | PVC-coated glass fibre                                                     | 525 g/m <sup>2</sup> | 2500 mm   | B1 (DIN 4102-1)          | Weather-proof, shape-retaining, light-fast, low-weight screen fabrics are not permitted for use outdoors.                                                                                                                                      |
| Soltis 92                          | Base material made of highly tear-resistant polyester with PVC coating     | 420 g/m <sup>2</sup> | 1770 mm   | B1 (DIN 4102-1)          | Dirt-repellent, highly tear-resistant, high diagonal stability, resistant to UV rays                                                                                                                                                           |
| Soltis B92                         | Base material made of highly tear-resistant polyester with PVC coating     | 650 g/m <sup>2</sup> | 1700 mm   | B1 (DIN 4102-1)          | Sturdy polyester fabric with PVC coating, blackout                                                                                                                                                                                             |
| Rainproof textile Soltis W96       | Base material made of highly tear-resistant polyester with PVC coating     | 620 g/m <sup>2</sup> | 2670 mm   | M2 (NFP 92-507)          | Rain-proof, tear-resistant in combination with pleasant lighting conditions                                                                                                                                                                    |
| Twilight Pearl                     | Polyester mesh (PES)                                                       | 330 g/m <sup>2</sup> | 2600 mm   | B1 (DIN 4102-1)          | PVC-free, good view out                                                                                                                                                                                                                        |
| Rainproof textile W36              | PVC-coated polyester fabric                                                | 300 g/m <sup>2</sup> | 2050 mm   | None                     | Rain-proof, tear-resistant                                                                                                                                                                                                                     |

**Designs:** According to current WAREMA awning collection.

**Web widths:** For fabric qualities Screen and Soltis 92, larger web widths are possible on request.

## Fabric processing

### Sewing

All connecting seams and hems are produced with the particularly durable PTFE (Teflon-coated) sewing thread TENARA® in plain white using state-of-the-art sewing machines.

### UltraSeam™

The connecting seams and side hems are glued using the UltraSeam™ procedure. The strips of fabric at the cut edges of the fabric are aligned and joined together with the UltraSeam™ Tape (butt joint tape). Gluing is carried out with the aid of an ultrasonic welding gluing system. The fabric layers are wound smoothly around each other and the winding diameter in the seam and hem area is reduced thanks to the even fabric thickness. The bead hems are sewn with PTFE (Teflon-coated) sewing thread, such as TENARA® in plain white. This procedure can be used in all Terrea articulated arm and cassette awnings, as well as window awnings, in combination with all acrylic fabrics.

### Gluing (overlapping)

Upon request, connections between the strips of Standard/Lumera/Perfora acrylic fabrics are also available with overlapping glued seams. Here too, the bead hems are sewn with PTFE (Teflon-coated) sewing thread, such as TENARA® in plain white.

### Welding

The connecting seams as well as the hems are permanently bonded lengthwise or horizontally. This is performed with the aid of a high-frequency or thermal impulse welding device. In patio awnings with lacquered fabric or Soltis 92, the hems are generally sewn with PTFE (Teflon-coated) sewing thread, such as TENARA® in plain white.

## Fabric processing

### Fabric processing according to fabric quality

| Fabric quality                    | Fabric processing          |
|-----------------------------------|----------------------------|
| Standard acrylic fabric           | Sewing, UltraSeam™, gluing |
| Lumera acrylic fabric             | Sewing, UltraSeam™, gluing |
| Perfora acrylic                   | Sewing, UltraSeam™, gluing |
| All Weather acrylic               | Sewing, UltraSeam™         |
| Lacquered fabric Precontraint 302 | Welding                    |
| Screen fabric                     | Welding                    |
| Soltis 92                         | Welding                    |
| Soltis B92                        | Welding                    |
| Rainproof textile Soltis W96      | Welding                    |
| Twilight Pearl                    | Sewing                     |
| Rainproof textile W36             | Welding                    |

**Processing of Twilight Pearl:** In awnings with secudrive® guide, the fabric is fastened to the spring steel strip with a fabric strip visible at the side.





# Components

## Fabrics

### Flexible

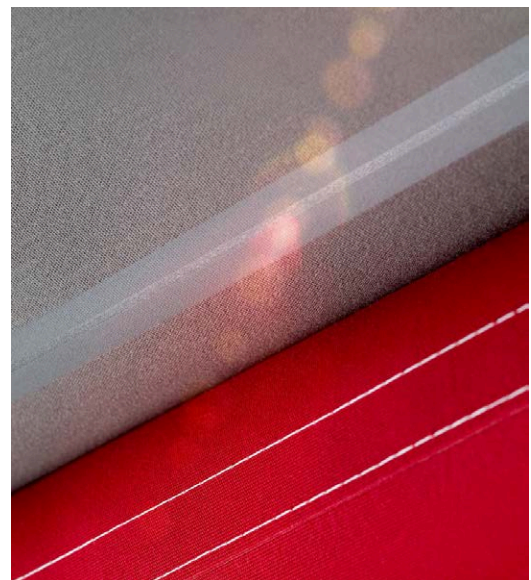
Thanks to special shapes, even difficult situations can be realised.

### Individual

A personal design is possible thanks to the numerous designs.

### Functional

The different qualities make different uses possible, ranging from sun shading to rain protection.



### Product characteristics

- Fabrics in standard and special shapes
- Various fabric qualities and processings

## Fabric qualities

- Standard acrylic fabric
- Lumera acrylic fabric
- Perfora acrylic
- All Weather acrylic
- Soltis 92
- Lacquered fabric Precontraint 302
- Twilight Pearl

+ see "Awning collection", Page 356

## Construction limit values

### Maximum production dimensions

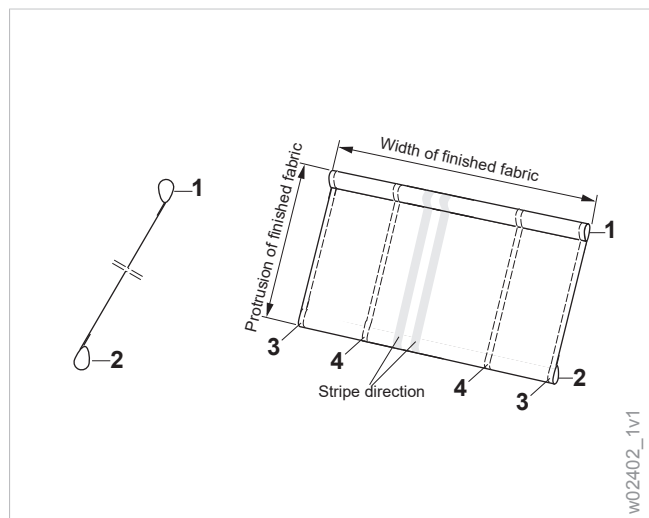
| Configuration variants                                                                  | Web width | Maximum order width | Maximum projection | Maximum order area   |
|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|-----------|---------------------|--------------------|----------------------|
| <b>Fabric qualities</b>                                                                 |           |                     |                    |                      |
| Standard acrylic fabric / Lumera acrylic fabric / Perfora acrylic / All Weather acrylic | 1200 mm   | 12500 mm            | 4300 mm            | 53,75 m <sup>2</sup> |
| Soltis 92                                                                               | 1770 mm   | 5500 mm             | 2800 mm            | 15,4 m <sup>2</sup>  |
| Lacquered fabric Precontraint 302                                                       | 1800 mm   | 5500 mm             | 2800 mm            | 15,4 m <sup>2</sup>  |
| Twilight Pearl                                                                          | 2600 mm   | 7000 mm             | 4300 mm            | 30,1 m <sup>2</sup>  |



## Dimension determination

### Details

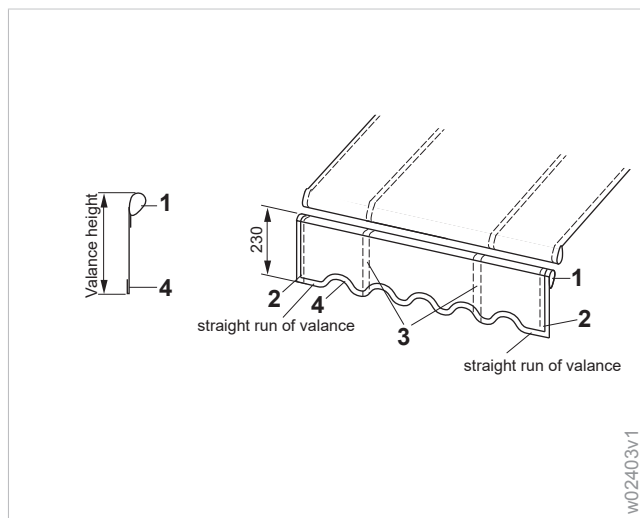
Awning fabric without valance (model A)



- |   |                                                                                               |   |                                  |
|---|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|---|----------------------------------|
| 1 | Loop for 6 mm bead fixing on the fabric shaft (50 mm measured flat, feedthrough inside 42 mm) | 3 | Lateral hem, 30 mm measured flat |
| 2 | Loop for 6 mm bead fixing on the drop profile (30 mm measured flat, feedthrough inside 25 mm) | 4 | Seam, 24 mm overlap              |

w02402\_1v1

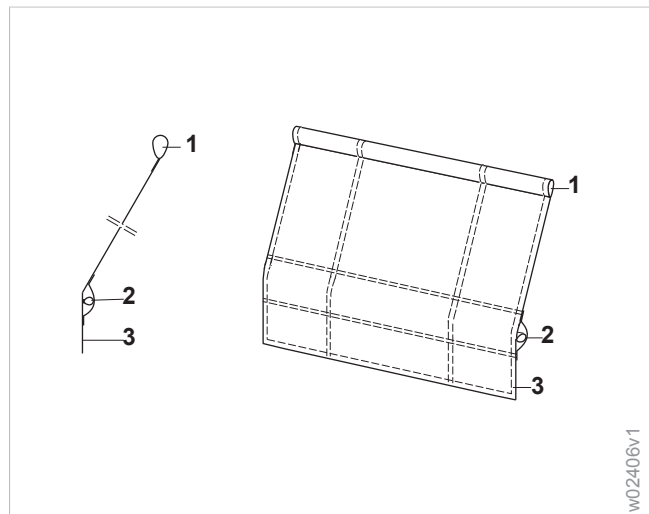
Awning fabric with valance, individually removable (model B)



- |   |                                                                                                 |   |                     |
|---|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|---|---------------------|
| 1 | Loop for 6 mm bead fixing on projection profile (30 mm measured flat, feedthrough inside 25 mm) | 3 | Seam, 24 mm overlap |
| 2 | Lateral hem, 30 mm measured flat                                                                | 4 | Edge trimming       |

w02403v1

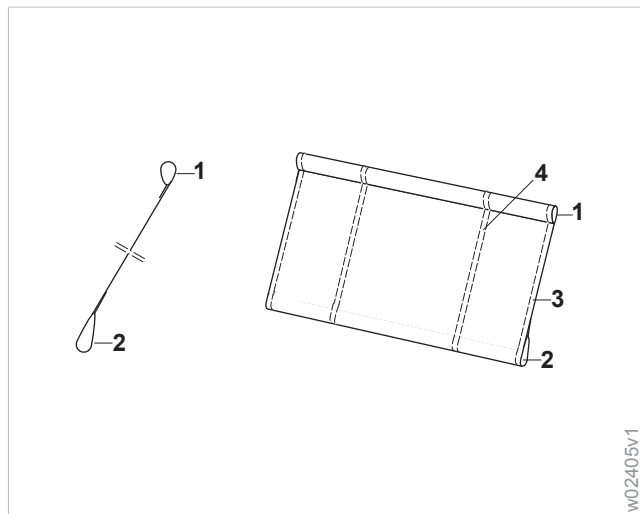
Awning fabric with sewn-on fabric strip (model C)



- |   |                                                                                                             |   |                                                  |
|---|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|---|--------------------------------------------------|
| 1 | Loop for 6 mm bead fixing on the valance roller blind shaft (30 mm measured flat, feedthrough inside 25 mm) | 3 | Valance sewn-on, height depending on awning type |
| 2 | Loop for aluminium tube, 16 mm round                                                                        | 4 | Seam, 24 mm overlap                              |

w02406v1

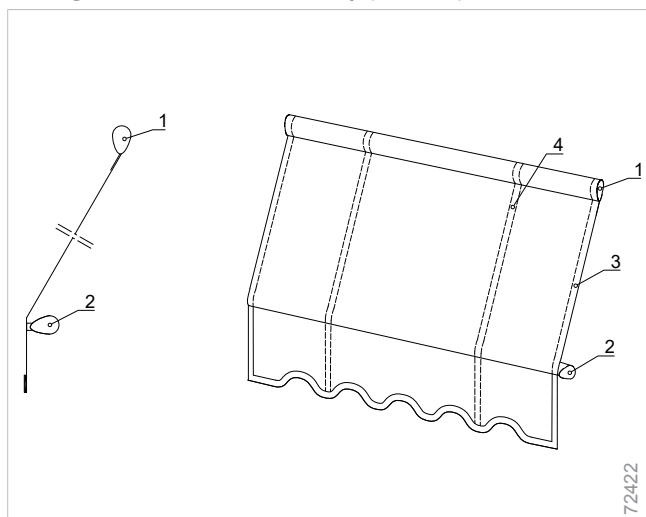
Awning fabric with fabric-wrapped drop profile (model D)



- |   |                                                                                               |   |                                  |
|---|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|---|----------------------------------|
| 1 | Loop for 6 mm bead fixing on the fabric shaft (50 mm measured flat, feedthrough inside 42 mm) | 3 | Lateral hem, 30 mm measured flat |
| 2 | Loop for drop profile (size in accordance with order data)                                    | 4 | Seam, 24 mm overlap              |

w02405v1

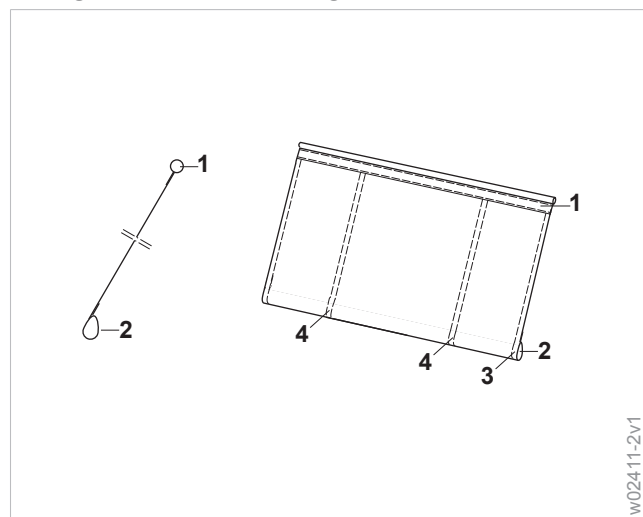
## Awning fabric with sewn bead loop (model E)



- |   |                                                                                                                          |   |                                  |
|---|--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|---|----------------------------------|
| 1 | Loop for 6 mm bead fixing on the fabric shaft (50 mm measured flat, feedthrough inside 42 mm)                            | 3 | Lateral hem, 30 mm measured flat |
| 2 | Loop for 6 mm bead fixing on drop profile (size in accordance with order data), alternatively with sewn-on fabric strips | 4 | Seam, 24 mm overlap              |

72422

## Awning fabric with sewn-on magnetic hook bead



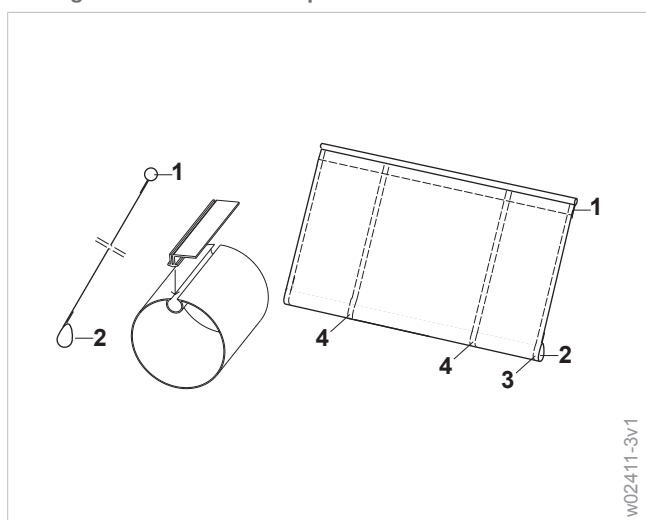
- |   |                                                                                                 |   |                                  |
|---|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|---|----------------------------------|
| 1 | Magnetic clamp beading, sewn-on                                                                 | 3 | Lateral hem, 30 mm measured flat |
| 2 | Loop for 6 mm bead fixing on projection profile (30 mm measured flat, feedthrough inside 25 mm) | 4 | Seam, 24 mm overlap              |

w02411-2v1

Maximum width: 7000 mm

This beading can only be used for attaching to the fabric shaft, since fixing is achieved by the fabric safety winding on the shaft.

## Awning fabric with sewn-in replacement bead



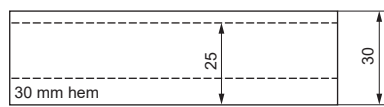
- |   |                                                                                                 |   |                                  |
|---|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|---|----------------------------------|
| 1 | Replacement bead, sewn-on                                                                       | 3 | Lateral hem, 30 mm measured flat |
| 2 | Loop for 6 mm bead fixing on projection profile (30 mm measured flat, feedthrough inside 25 mm) | 4 | Seam, 24 mm overlap              |

w02411-3v1

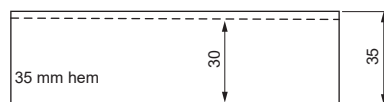
We recommend the use of the replacement bead only for fixing to the fabric shaft. Depending on the geometry of the drop profile, the replacement bead would be visible on the projection profile.



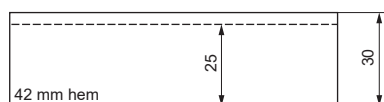
## Standard hems



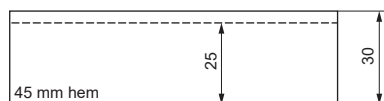
for awning fabric at the sides



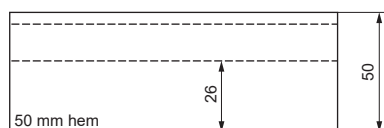
for awning fabric at top



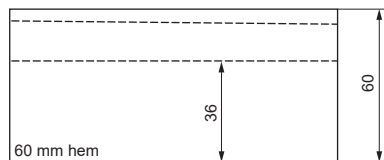
for awning fabric at bottom



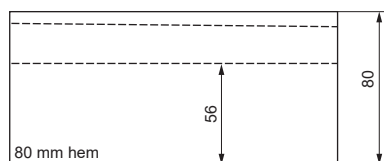
for standard valance



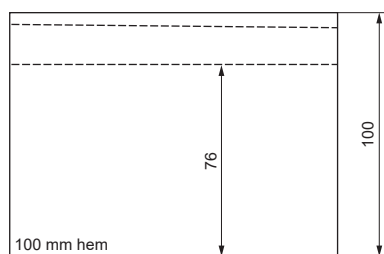
for balcony fabric or similar



for balcony fabric or similar



for balcony fabric or similar



for balcony fabric or similar



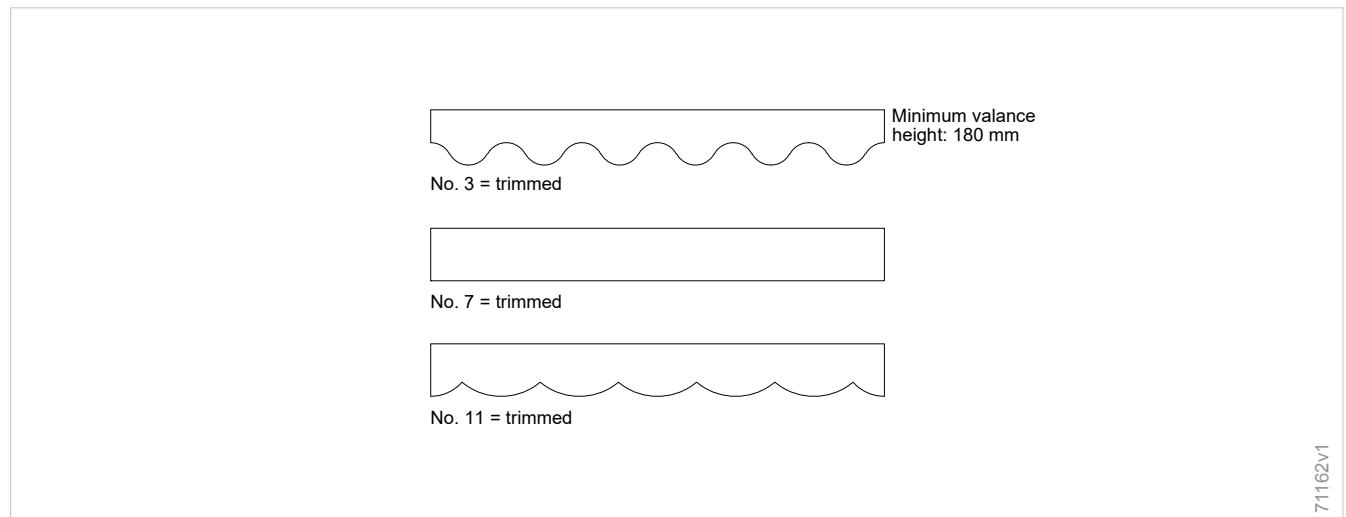
w04381v4

# Valance

The valance has a matching frame, is individually removable and is available in 3 shapes.

If no shape is stated, we will supply valance shape no. 11 (curved).

## Valance shapes



No. 3 Wavy  
No. 7 Straight

No. 11 Curved

Planning

Terrea

Perea

Patio  
side screens

Climara

Supplementary  
accessories

Components

Drive  
variants

Standards

## Further information

TechDataPLUS Components for patio awnings  
<https://docs.warema.com/1.1449.9>





# Contents

## Drive variants

|                                                 |     |
|-------------------------------------------------|-----|
| Motor.....                                      | 368 |
| Motor.....                                      | 369 |
| Standard motors, wired.....                     | 370 |
| LT50.....                                       | 370 |
| MM9/16 (valance roller blind).....              | 372 |
| Orea WT.....                                    | 373 |
| P6/20M (valance roller blind).....              | 375 |
| WM IMP.....                                     | 376 |
| WM REA.....                                     | 378 |
| WT.....                                         | 380 |
| ZM REA.....                                     | 382 |
| Standard motors, radio.....                     | 384 |
| W-MM (EWFS).....                                | 384 |
| W-MP (EWFS).....                                | 385 |
| W-WM (EWFS).....                                | 387 |
| WMS-MM (WMS).....                               | 388 |
| WMS-MP (WMS).....                               | 390 |
| WMS-PM (WMS).....                               | 392 |
| WMS-WM (WMS).....                               | 394 |
| Additional product information.....             | 396 |
| Functions in detail.....                        | 396 |
| Note on connecting lines.....                   | 396 |
| Plug-in connector/plug receiver.....            | 397 |
| Manual operation.....                           | 400 |
| Crank.....                                      | 401 |
| Crank gear.....                                 | 401 |
| Crank with ball hook.....                       | 401 |
| Manual operation for patio side screen 390..... | 402 |

Planning

Terrea

Perea

Patio  
side screens

Climara

Supplementary  
accessories

Components

Drive  
variants

Standards



## Drive variants

### Motor

**Always the perfect motorisation for your sun shading product – with drive systems from WAREMA**

### Quality

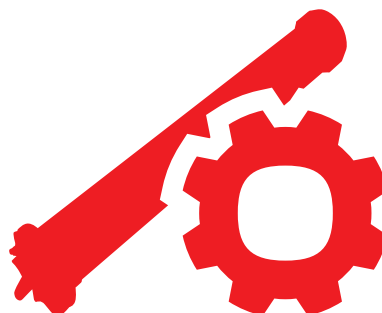
We only use innovative drives from reliable European quality suppliers. All drive solutions fulfil high quality standards. They are adapted to the corresponding WAREMA sun shading products and control systems.

### Know-how

WAREMA oversees the development of new drives - from the conception until market launch. Each WAREMA drive goes through a comprehensive series of tests.

### Perfectly matched

The drive setting instructions enable very comfortable installation and commissioning in the WAREMA sun shading product.



# Motor

Technologies at a glance

## Drives with mechanical limit switch-off

- Proven track record
- Reliable and precise
- Intuitive setting

## Drives with electronic limit switch-off

- Software/function matches the sun shading product specifically
- Comfortable adjustment of the motor limit positions with programming cable

## Electronic special drive WM REA for awnings with secudrive®

- With responsive block detection
- In the case of a blockage, the drive can differentiate between wind load and a fixed obstacle and correspondingly reacts sensitively to the situation.
- Extended awning protection, even with installation situations exposed to wind

## EWFS radio motor

- Based on our unidirectional EWFS radio system with a transmission frequency of 433.92 MHz
- Comprehensive range of functions, e.g. teachable comfort position
- Combinable with comprehensive control components such as hand-held transmitters and weather stations

## WMS Radio motor

- Based on our bidirectional WMS radio system with a transmission frequency of 2.4 GHz
- Maximum safety by means of an encrypted radio network
- Accurate moving to intermediate positions
- Exact position feedback
- Can also be operated via smartphone with WAREMA WebControl
- **Our highlight: On request, we can program your order with WMS radio motors for the delivered hand-held transmitter ex works, our service – your installation advantage!**

## Electronic special drive MM for valance roller blinds in patio awnings

- Drop profile of the valance roller blind always retracts to be flush with the front rail
- With fabric stretching adjustment, readjustment of the motor limit position is omitted!

Planning

Terrea

Perea

Patio  
side screens

Climara

Supplementary  
accessories

Components

Drive  
variants

Standards

# Standard motors, wired

## LT50

### Description:

- Position switch-off bottom
- Position switch-off top
- Set motor limit position with adjustment buttons on the motor

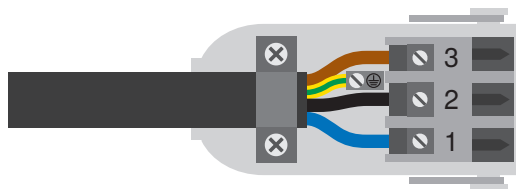
|                                  |                                                                   |
|----------------------------------|-------------------------------------------------------------------|
| Frequency                        | 50 Hz                                                             |
| Degree of protection             | IP 44                                                             |
| Motor construction type          | Tubular motor                                                     |
| Torque                           | 6 - 120 Nm                                                        |
| Speed                            | 17 U/min                                                          |
| Rated voltage                    | 230 V AC                                                          |
| Limit switch-off                 | Mechanical                                                        |
| Motor operating type             | Wired                                                             |
| Nominal current                  | 0,45 - 1,8 A                                                      |
| Rated power consumption          | 90 - 400 W                                                        |
| Idle losses in standby           | No                                                                |
| Minimum runtime at 23 °C         | 4 min                                                             |
| Motor line                       | 400 mm                                                            |
| Plug-in connector                | STAS 3                                                            |
| Overheat protection              | Yes                                                               |
| Operating temperature            | -10 - 40 °C                                                       |
| Operating temperature, temporary | -25 - 70 °C                                                       |
| Motor lines                      | – H05RR-F 4 G 0.75 mm <sup>2</sup> bk, type WAREMA                |
| Test/programming cable           | – WAREMA Smart programming cable<br>– Standard test cable up/down |
| Control systems                  | – controllable with all WAREMA control product lines for 230 V    |



### Additional product information

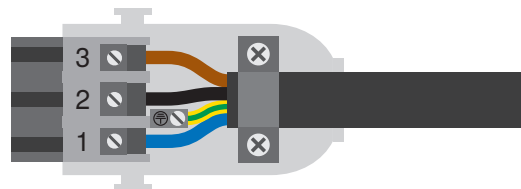
#### Wiring diagram STAS/STAK 3

(STAS 3) plug connector – motor connection



3 brown  
2 black  
1 blue  
⊕ green/yellow

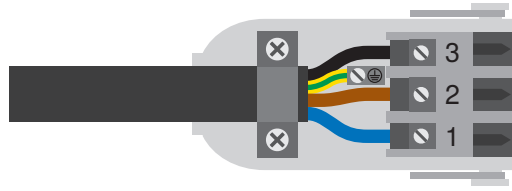
(STAK 3) coupling – connection on-site (230 V AC)



3 DOWN command (brown)  
2 UP command (black)  
1 Neutral conductor (blue)  
⊕ PE conductor (green/yellow)

9990818

(STAS 3) plug connector – motor connection – left-hand motion



3 black  
2 brown  
1 blue  
⊕ green/yellow

9990824v1

Planning

Terrea

Perea

Patio  
side screens

Climara

Supplementary  
accessories

Components

Drive  
variants

Standards



## MM9/16 (valance roller blind)

### Description:

- Position switch-off bottom
- Upper position switch-off (optional)
- Upper torque overload protection
- Fabric stretching adjustment
- Block detection (raising)

|                                  |                                                                                                                        |
|----------------------------------|------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| Frequency                        | 50 Hz                                                                                                                  |
| Degree of protection             | IP 44                                                                                                                  |
| Motor construction type          | Tubular motor                                                                                                          |
| Torque                           | 9 Nm                                                                                                                   |
| Speed                            | 16 U/min                                                                                                               |
| Rated voltage                    | 230 V AC                                                                                                               |
| Limit switch-off                 | Electronic                                                                                                             |
| Motor operating type             | Wired                                                                                                                  |
| Nominal current                  | 0,47 A                                                                                                                 |
| Rated power consumption          | 110 W                                                                                                                  |
| Idle losses in standby           | No                                                                                                                     |
| Minimum runtime at 23 °C         | 4 min                                                                                                                  |
| Overheat protection              | Yes                                                                                                                    |
| Operating temperature            | -10 - 40 °C                                                                                                            |
| Operating temperature, temporary | -20 - 80 °C                                                                                                            |
| Test/programming cable           | <ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>– WAREMA Smart programming cable</li><li>– Standard test cable up/down</li></ul> |



## Orea WT

### Description:

- Position switch-off bottom
- Upper torque overload protection
- Optimum box closure
- Fabric tension relief mechanism
- Fabric stretching adjustment
- Block detection (raising)
- Set motor limit position with programming cable
- Torque detection possible

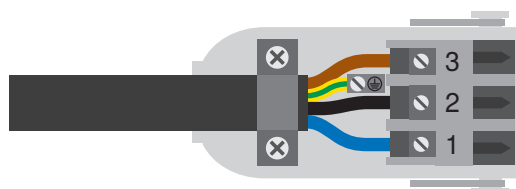


|                                  |                                                                |
|----------------------------------|----------------------------------------------------------------|
| Frequency                        | 50 Hz                                                          |
| Degree of protection             | IP 44                                                          |
| Motor construction type          | Tubular motor                                                  |
| Torque                           | 25 - 55 Nm                                                     |
| Speed                            | 17 U/min                                                       |
| Rated voltage                    | 230 V AC                                                       |
| Limit switch-off                 | Electronic                                                     |
| Motor operating type             | Wired                                                          |
| Nominal current                  | 0,8 - 1,25 A                                                   |
| Rated power consumption          | 170 - 290 W                                                    |
| Idle losses in standby           | No                                                             |
| Minimum runtime at 23 °C         | 4 min                                                          |
| Motor line                       | 400 mm                                                         |
| Plug-in connector                | STAS 3                                                         |
| Overheat protection              | Yes                                                            |
| Operating temperature            | -10 - 40 °C                                                    |
| Operating temperature, temporary | -25 - 70 °C                                                    |
| Motor lines                      | – H05RR-F 4 G 0.75 mm <sup>2</sup> bk, type WAREMA             |
| Test/programming cable           | – WAREMA Smart programming cable<br>– Somfy programming cable  |
| Control systems                  | – controllable with all WAREMA control product lines for 230 V |

### Additional product information

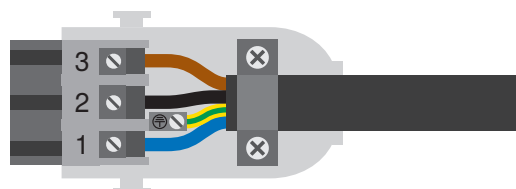
#### Wiring diagram STAS/STAK 3

(STAS 3) plug connector – motor connection



3 brown  
2 black  
1 blue  
⊕ green/yellow

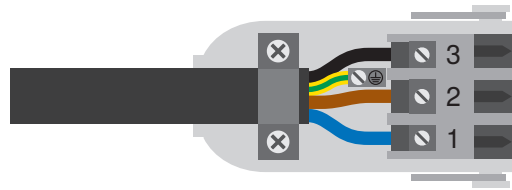
(STAK 3) coupling – connection on-site (230 V AC)



3 DOWN command (brown)  
2 UP command (black)  
1 Neutral conductor (blue)  
⊕ PE conductor (green/yellow)

9990818

(STAS 3) plug connector – motor connection – left-hand motion



3 black  
2 brown  
1 blue  
⊕ green/yellow

9990824v1

## P6/20M (valance roller blind)

### Description:

- Position switch-off bottom
- Position switch-off top
- Set motor limit position with adjustment buttons on the motor

|                                  |                                                                                                               |
|----------------------------------|---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| Degree of protection             | IP 44                                                                                                         |
| Motor construction type          | Tubular motor                                                                                                 |
| Torque                           | 6 Nm                                                                                                          |
| Speed                            | 20 U/min                                                                                                      |
| Rated voltage                    | 12 V DC                                                                                                       |
| Limit switch-off                 | Mechanical                                                                                                    |
| Motor operating type             | Wired                                                                                                         |
| Nominal current                  | 1,9 A                                                                                                         |
| Rated power consumption          | 23 W                                                                                                          |
| Idle losses in standby           | No                                                                                                            |
| Minimum runtime at 23 °C         | 4 min                                                                                                         |
| Motor line                       | 200 mm                                                                                                        |
| Plug-in connector                | Molex 5557                                                                                                    |
| Overheat protection              | No                                                                                                            |
| Operating temperature            | -10 - 40 °C                                                                                                   |
| Operating temperature, temporary | -20 - 80 °C                                                                                                   |
| Test/programming cable           | <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>– WAREMA Smart programming cable</li> <li>– Test cable 12 V</li> </ul> |



Planning

Terrea

Perea

Patio  
side screens

Climara

Supplementary  
accessories

Components

Drive  
variants

Standards

## WM IMP

### Description:

- Position switch-off bottom
- Upper torque overload protection
- Optimum box closure
- Fabric tension relief mechanism
- Fabric stretching adjustment
- Return pulse
- Block detection (retracting)
- Set motor limit positions with programming cable
- Torque detection possible

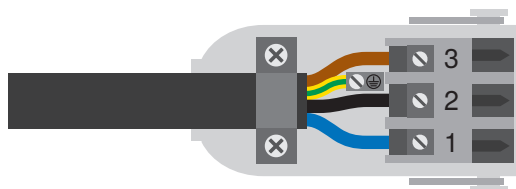


|                                  |                                                                |
|----------------------------------|----------------------------------------------------------------|
| Frequency                        | 50 Hz                                                          |
| Degree of protection             | IP 44                                                          |
| Motor construction type          | Tubular motor                                                  |
| Torque                           | 40 - 70 Nm                                                     |
| Speed                            | 17 U/min                                                       |
| Rated voltage                    | 230 V AC                                                       |
| Limit switch-off                 | Electronic                                                     |
| Motor operating type             | Wired                                                          |
| Nominal current                  | 1,15 - 1,9 A                                                   |
| Rated power consumption          | 260 - 430 W                                                    |
| Idle losses in standby           | No                                                             |
| Minimum runtime at 23 °C         | 4 min                                                          |
| Motor line                       | 500 mm                                                         |
| Plug-in connector                | STAS 3                                                         |
| Overheat protection              | Yes                                                            |
| Operating temperature            | -10 - 40 °C                                                    |
| Operating temperature, temporary | -20 - 80 °C                                                    |
| Motor lines                      | – H05RR-F 4 G 0.75 mm <sup>2</sup> bk, type WAREMA             |
| Test/programming cable           | – WAREMA Smart programming cable<br>– Becker programming cable |
| Control systems                  | – controllable with all WAREMA control product lines for 230 V |

### Additional product information

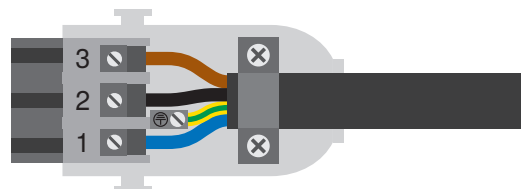
#### Wiring diagram STAS/STAK 3

(STAS 3) plug connector – motor connection



3 brown  
2 black  
1 blue  
⊕ green/yellow

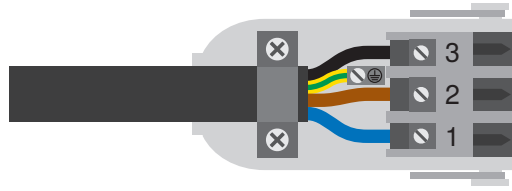
(STAK 3) coupling – connection on-site (230 V AC)



3 DOWN command (brown)  
2 UP command (black)  
1 Neutral conductor (blue)  
⊕ PE conductor (green/yellow)

9990818

(STAS 3) plug connector – motor connection – left-hand motion



3 black  
2 brown  
1 blue  
⊕ green/yellow

9990824v1

Planning

Terrea

Perea

Patio  
side screens

Climara

Supplementary  
accessories

Components

Drive  
variants

Standards

## WM REA

### Description:

- Position switch-off bottom
- Upper torque overload protection
- Optimum box closure
- Fabric tension relief mechanism
- Fabric stretching adjustment
- Block detection (retracting)
- Block detection (extending)
- Automatic limit position detection
- Responsive block detection
- Set motor limit positions with programming cable
- Torque detection possible

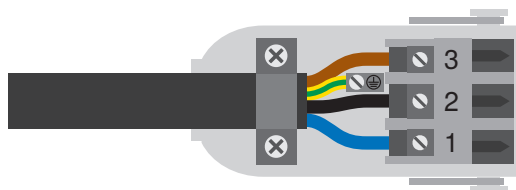


|                                  |                                                                |
|----------------------------------|----------------------------------------------------------------|
| Frequency                        | 50 Hz                                                          |
| Degree of protection             | IP 44                                                          |
| Motor construction type          | Tubular motor                                                  |
| Torque                           | 30 - 50 Nm                                                     |
| Speed                            | 17 U/min                                                       |
| Rated voltage                    | 230 V AC                                                       |
| Limit switch-off                 | Electronic                                                     |
| Motor operating type             | Wired                                                          |
| Nominal current                  | 0,9 - 1,4 A                                                    |
| Rated power consumption          | 205 - 315 W                                                    |
| Idle losses in standby           | No                                                             |
| Minimum runtime at 23 °C         | 4 min                                                          |
| Motor line                       | 500 mm                                                         |
| Plug-in connector                | STAS 3                                                         |
| Overheat protection              | Yes                                                            |
| Operating temperature            | -10 - 40 °C                                                    |
| Operating temperature, temporary | -20 - 80 °C                                                    |
| Motor lines                      | – H05RR-F 4 G 0.75 mm <sup>2</sup> bk, type WAREMA             |
| Test/programming cable           | – WAREMA Smart programming cable<br>– Becker programming cable |
| Control systems                  | – controllable with all WAREMA control product lines for 230 V |

### Additional product information

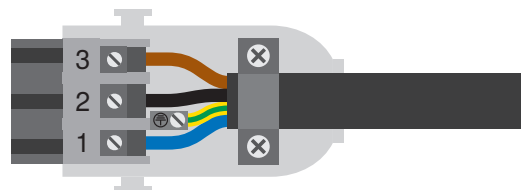
#### Wiring diagram STAS/STAK 3

(STAS 3) plug connector – motor connection



3 brown  
2 black  
1 blue  
⊕ green/yellow

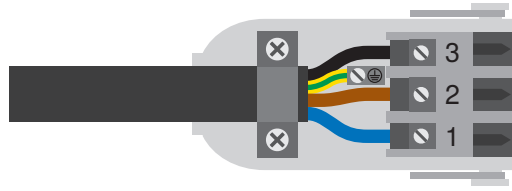
(STAK 3) coupling – connection on-site (230 V AC)



3 DOWN command (brown)  
2 UP command (black)  
1 Neutral conductor (blue)  
⊕ PE conductor (green/yellow)

9990818

(STAS 3) plug connector – motor connection – left-hand motion



3 black  
2 brown  
1 blue  
⊕ green/yellow

9990824v1

Planning

Terrea

Perea

Patio  
side screens

Climara

Supplementary  
accessories

Components

Drive  
variants

Standards



# WT

## Description:

- Torque overload protection bottom
- Upper torque overload protection
- Optimum box closure
- Fabric tension relief mechanism
- Fabric stretching adjustment
- Block detection (retracting)
- Block detection (extending)
- Automatic limit position detection
- Set motor limit positions with programming cable
- Torque detection possible

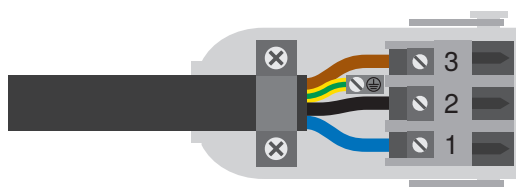


|                                  |                                                                |
|----------------------------------|----------------------------------------------------------------|
| Frequency                        | 50 Hz                                                          |
| Degree of protection             | IP 44                                                          |
| Motor construction type          | Tubular motor                                                  |
| Torque                           | 20 - 40 Nm                                                     |
| Speed                            | 17 U/min                                                       |
| Rated voltage                    | 230 V AC                                                       |
| Limit switch-off                 | Electronic                                                     |
| Motor operating type             | Wired                                                          |
| Nominal current                  | 0,75 - 1,15 A                                                  |
| Rated power consumption          | 160 - 260 W                                                    |
| Idle losses in standby           | No                                                             |
| Minimum runtime at 23 °C         | 4 min                                                          |
| Motor line                       | 500 mm                                                         |
| Plug-in connector                | STAS 3                                                         |
| Overheat protection              | Yes                                                            |
| Operating temperature            | -10 - 40 °C                                                    |
| Operating temperature, temporary | -20 - 80 °C                                                    |
| Motor lines                      | - H05RR-F 4 G 0.75 mm <sup>2</sup> bk, type WAREMA             |
| Test/programming cable           | - WAREMA Smart programming cable<br>- Becker programming cable |
| Control systems                  | - controllable with all WAREMA control product lines for 230 V |

## Additional product information

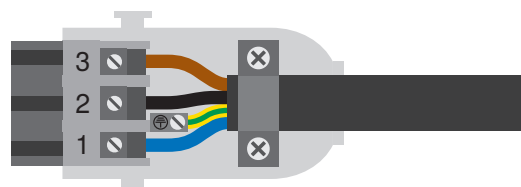
### Wiring diagram STAS/STAK 3

(STAS 3) plug connector – motor connection



3 brown  
2 black  
1 blue  
⊕ green/yellow

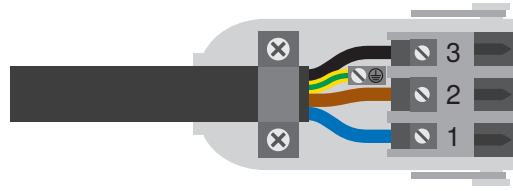
(STAK 3) coupling – connection on-site (230 V AC)



3 DOWN command (brown)  
2 UP command (black)  
1 Neutral conductor (blue)  
⊕ PE conductor (green/yellow)

9990818

(STAS 3) plug connector – motor connection – left-hand motion



3 black  
2 brown  
1 blue  
⊕ green/yellow

9990824v1

Planning

Terrea

Perea

Patio  
side screens

Climara

Supplementary  
accessories

Components

Drive  
variants

Standards

## ZM REA

### Description:

- Position switch-off bottom
- Upper position switch-off (optional)
- Upper torque overload protection
- Optimal box closure (only for torque overload protection)
- Block detection (raising, only with P70)
- Fabric stretching adjustment (only for torque overload protection)
- Set motor limit positions with programming cable

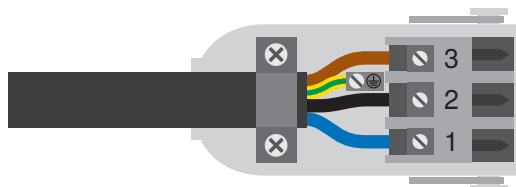


|                                  |                                                                |
|----------------------------------|----------------------------------------------------------------|
| Frequency                        | 50 Hz                                                          |
| Degree of protection             | IP 44                                                          |
| Motor construction type          | Tubular motor                                                  |
| Torque                           | 8 - 30 Nm                                                      |
| Speed                            | 17 U/min                                                       |
| Rated voltage                    | 230 V AC                                                       |
| Limit switch-off                 | Electronic                                                     |
| Motor operating type             | Wired                                                          |
| Nominal current                  | 0,45 - 0,9 A                                                   |
| Rated power consumption          | 100 - 205 W                                                    |
| Idle losses in standby           | No information                                                 |
| Minimum runtime at 23 °C         | 4 min                                                          |
| Motor line                       | 500 mm                                                         |
| Plug-in connector                | STAS 3                                                         |
| Overheat protection              | Yes                                                            |
| Operating temperature            | -10 - 40 °C                                                    |
| Operating temperature, temporary | -20 - 80 °C                                                    |
| Motor lines                      | – H05RR-F 4 G 0.75 mm <sup>2</sup> bk, type WAREMA             |
| Test/programming cable           | – WAREMA Smart programming cable<br>– Becker programming cable |
| Control systems                  | – controllable with all WAREMA control product lines for 230 V |

### Additional product information

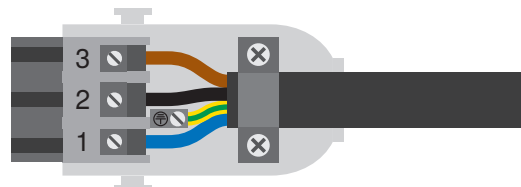
#### Wiring diagram STAS/STAK 3

(STAS 3) plug connector – motor connection



3 brown  
2 black  
1 blue  
⊕ green/yellow

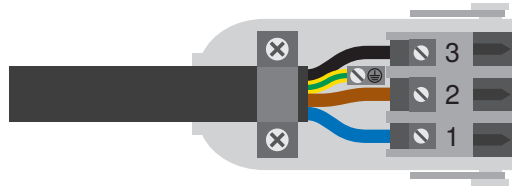
(STAK 3) coupling – connection on-site (230 V AC)



3 DOWN command (brown)  
2 UP command (black)  
1 Neutral conductor (blue)  
⊕ PE conductor (green/yellow)

9990818

(STAS 3) plug connector – motor connection – left-hand motion



3 black  
2 brown  
1 blue  
⊕ green/yellow

9990824v1

Planning

Terrea

Perea

Patio  
side screens

Climara

Supplementary  
accessories

Components

Drive  
variants

Standards

# Standard motors, radio

## W-MM (EWFS)

### Description:

- Position switch-off bottom
- Upper torque overload protection
- Optimum box closure
- Fabric tension relief mechanism
- Fabric stretching adjustment
- Block detection (raising)
- Comfort position (intermediate position)
- Set motor limit positions with EWFS hand-held transmitter

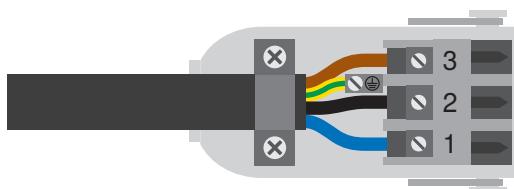


|                                  |                                                                 |
|----------------------------------|-----------------------------------------------------------------|
| Frequency                        | 50 Hz                                                           |
| Transmission frequency           | 433,92 MHz                                                      |
| Degree of protection             | IP 44                                                           |
| Motor construction type          | Tubular motor                                                   |
| Torque                           | 8 - 40 Nm                                                       |
| Speed                            | 17 U/min                                                        |
| Rated voltage                    | 230 V AC                                                        |
| Limit switch-off                 | Electronic                                                      |
| Motor operating type             | Radio                                                           |
| Nominal current                  | 0,45 - 1,15 A                                                   |
| Rated power consumption          | 100 - 260 W                                                     |
| Idle losses in standby           | Yes                                                             |
| Minimum runtime at 23 °C         | 4 min                                                           |
| Motor line                       | 500 mm                                                          |
| Plug-in connector                | STAS 3                                                          |
| Overheat protection              | Yes                                                             |
| Operating temperature            | -10 - 40 °C                                                     |
| Operating temperature, temporary | -25 - 80 °C                                                     |
| Motor lines                      | – H05RR-F 4 G 0.75 mm <sup>2</sup> bk, type WAREMA              |
| Test/programming cable           | – WAREMA Smart programming cable<br>– Test cable latch standard |
| Control systems                  | – Controllable with all EWFS transmitters                       |

### Additional product information

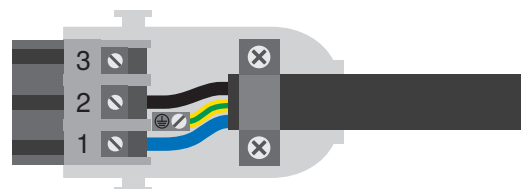
#### Wiring diagram STAS/STAK 3

(STAS 3) plug connector – motor connection



3 brown  
2 black  
1 blue  
⊕ green/yellow

(STAK 3) coupling – connection on-site (230 V AC)



3 Not assigned  
2 Phase L (black)  
1 Neutral conductor (blue)  
⊕ PE conductor (green/yellow)

9990825

## W-MP (EWFS)

### Description:

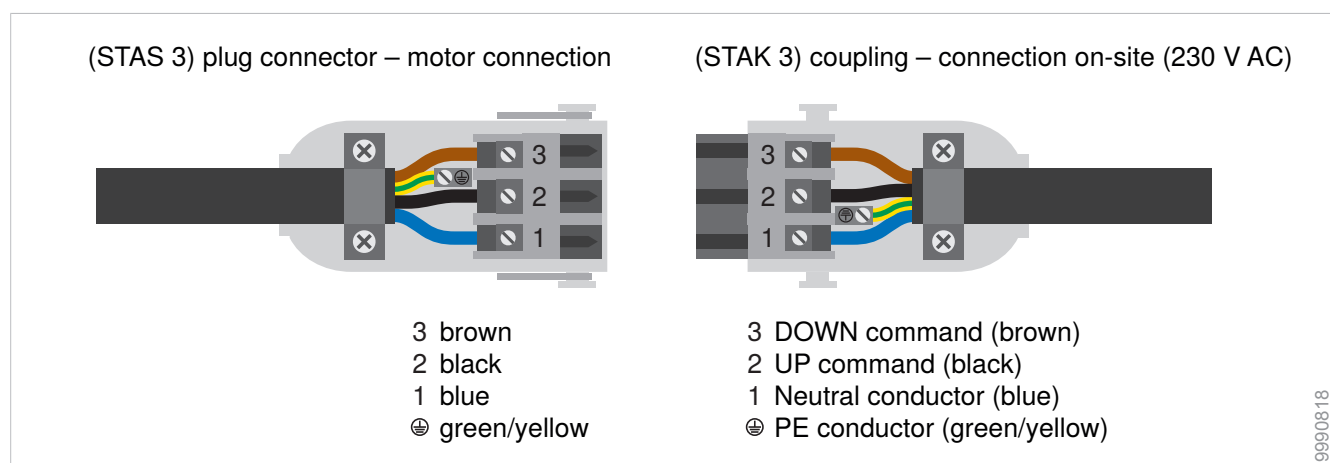
- Position switch-off bottom
- Position switch-off top
- Block detection (raising)
- Comfort position (intermediate position)
- Set motor limit positions with EWFS hand-held transmitter



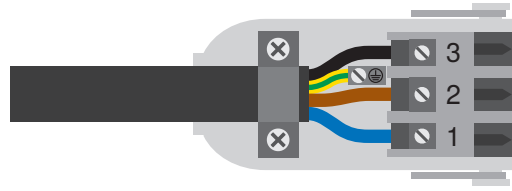
|                                  |                                                                 |
|----------------------------------|-----------------------------------------------------------------|
| Frequency                        | 50 Hz                                                           |
| Transmission frequency           | 433,92 MHz                                                      |
| Degree of protection             | IP 44                                                           |
| Motor construction type          | Tubular motor                                                   |
| Torque                           | 8 - 40 Nm                                                       |
| Speed                            | 17 U/min                                                        |
| Rated voltage                    | 230 V AC                                                        |
| Limit switch-off                 | Electronic                                                      |
| Motor operating type             | Radio                                                           |
| Nominal current                  | 0,45 - 1,15 A                                                   |
| Rated power consumption          | 100 - 260 W                                                     |
| Idle losses in standby           | Yes                                                             |
| Minimum runtime at 23 °C         | 4 min                                                           |
| Motor line                       | 500 mm                                                          |
| Plug-in connector                | STAS 3                                                          |
| Overheat protection              | Yes                                                             |
| Operating temperature            | -10 - 40 °C                                                     |
| Operating temperature, temporary | -20 - 80 °C                                                     |
| Motor lines                      | – H05RR-F 4 G 0.75 mm <sup>2</sup> bk, type WAREMA              |
| Test/programming cable           | – WAREMA Smart programming cable<br>– Test cable latch standard |
| Control systems                  | – Controllable with all EWFS transmitters                       |

### Additional product information

#### Wiring diagram STAS/STAK 3



(STAS 3) plug connector – motor connection – left-hand motion



3 black  
2 brown  
1 blue  
⊕ green/yellow

9990824v1

## W-WM (EWFS)

### Description:

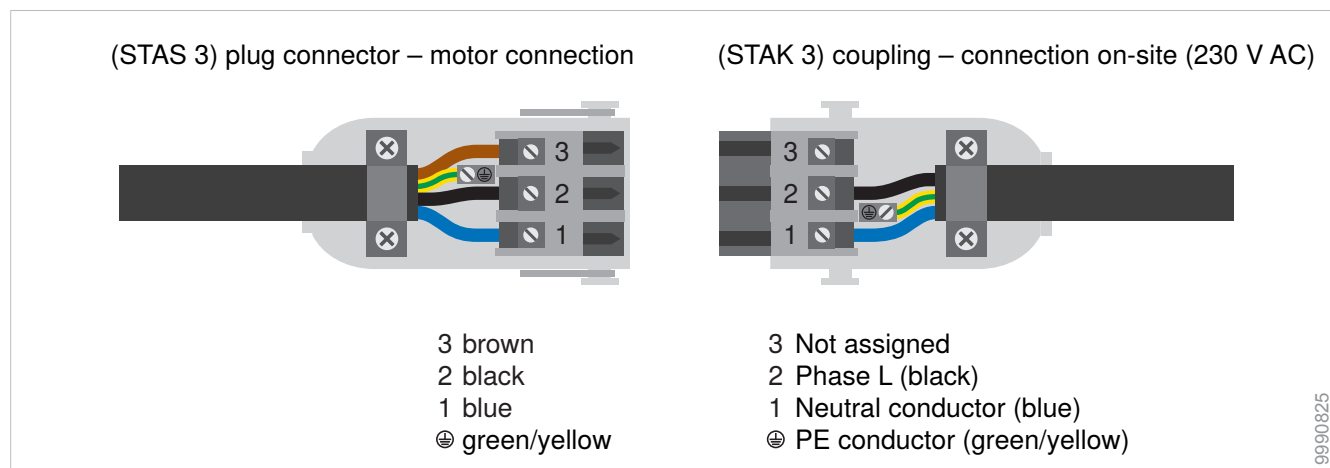
- Position switch-off bottom
- Upper torque overload protection
- Optimum box closure
- Fabric tension relief mechanism
- Fabric stretching adjustment
- Block detection (raising)
- Block detection (extending)
- Comfort position (intermediate position)
- Set motor limit positions with EWFS hand-held transmitter



|                                  |                                                                 |
|----------------------------------|-----------------------------------------------------------------|
| Frequency                        | 50 Hz                                                           |
| Transmission frequency           | 433,92 MHz                                                      |
| Degree of protection             | IP 44                                                           |
| Motor construction type          | Tubular motor                                                   |
| Torque                           | 12 - 40 Nm                                                      |
| Speed                            | 17 U/min                                                        |
| Rated voltage                    | 230 V AC                                                        |
| Limit switch-off                 | Electronic                                                      |
| Motor operating type             | Radio                                                           |
| Nominal current                  | 0,5 - 1,15 A                                                    |
| Rated power consumption          | 110 - 260 W                                                     |
| Idle losses in standby           | Yes                                                             |
| Minimum runtime at 23 °C         | 4 min                                                           |
| Motor line                       | 500 mm                                                          |
| Plug-in connector                | STAS 3                                                          |
| Overheat protection              | Yes                                                             |
| Operating temperature            | -10 - 40 °C                                                     |
| Operating temperature, temporary | -20 - 80 °C                                                     |
| Motor lines                      | – H05RR-F 4 G 0.75 mm <sup>2</sup> bk, type WAREMA              |
| Test/programming cable           | – WAREMA Smart programming cable<br>– Test cable latch standard |
| Control systems                  | – Controllable with all EWFS transmitters                       |

### Additional product information

#### Wiring diagram STAS/STAK 3





## WMS-MM (WMS)

### Description:

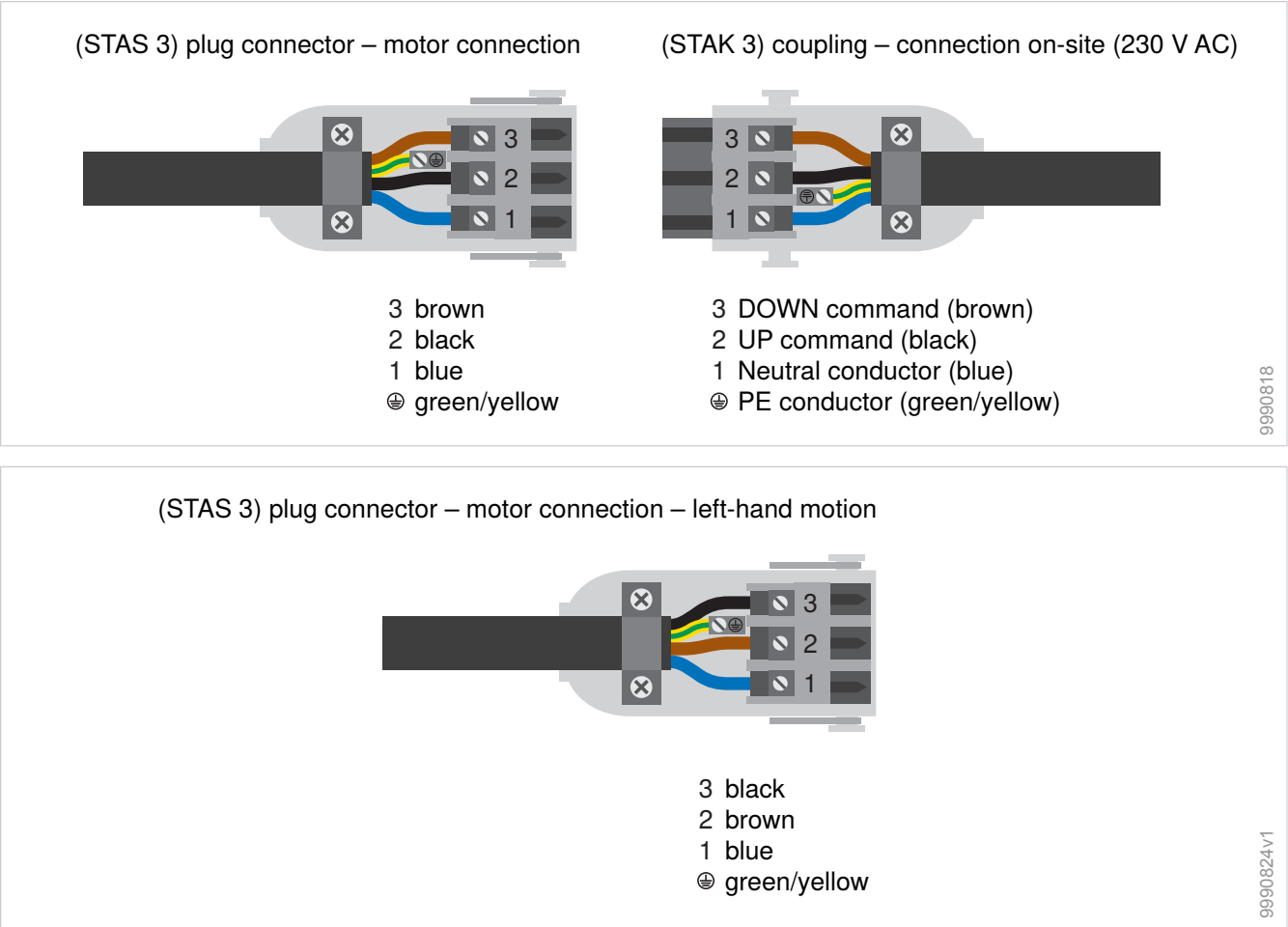
- Position switch-off bottom
- Upper torque overload protection
- Optimum box closure
- Fabric tension relief mechanism
- Fabric stretching adjustment
- Block detection (raising)
- Comfort position (intermediate position)
- Set motor limit positions with WMS Hand-held transmitter, WMS Central transmitter or WMS studio pro
- Bidirectional radio technology
- Position feedback via WMS radio control
- Accurate positioning using WMS radio control
- Intelligent routing function



|                                  |                                                                 |
|----------------------------------|-----------------------------------------------------------------|
| Frequency                        | 50 Hz                                                           |
| Transmission frequency           | 2,4 GHz                                                         |
| Degree of protection             | IP 44                                                           |
| Motor construction type          | Tubular motor                                                   |
| Torque                           | 8 - 50 Nm                                                       |
| Speed                            | 17 U/min                                                        |
| Rated voltage                    | 230 V AC                                                        |
| Limit switch-off                 | Electronic                                                      |
| Motor operating type             | Radio                                                           |
| Nominal current                  | 0,45 - 1,4 A                                                    |
| Rated power consumption          | 100 - 315 W                                                     |
| Idle losses in standby           | Yes                                                             |
| Minimum runtime at 23 °C         | 4 min                                                           |
| Motor line                       | 500 mm                                                          |
| Plug-in connector                | STAS 3                                                          |
| Overheat protection              | Yes                                                             |
| Operating temperature            | -10 - 40 °C                                                     |
| Operating temperature, temporary | -20 - 80 °C                                                     |
| Motor lines                      | - H05RR-F 4 G 0.75 mm <sup>2</sup> bk, type WAREMA              |
| Test/programming cable           | - WAREMA Smart programming cable<br>- Test cable latch standard |
| Control systems                  | - Controllable with all WMS transmitters                        |

# Additional product information

## Wiring diagram STAS/STAK 3



9990818

9990824v1

Planning

Terrea

Perea

Patio  
side screens

Climara

Supplementary  
accessories

Components

Drive  
variants

Standards

## WMS-MP (WMS)

### Description:

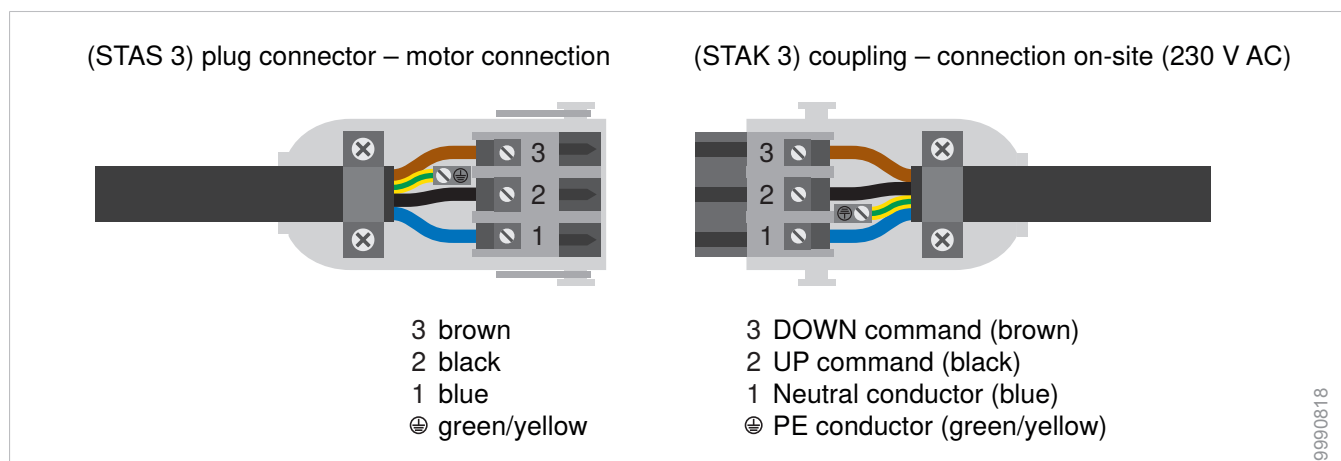
- Position switch-off bottom
- Position switch-off top
- Block detection (raising)
- Comfort position (intermediate position)
- Set motor limit positions with WMS Hand-held transmitter, WMS Central transmitter or WMS studio pro
- Bidirectional radio technology
- Position feedback via WMS radio control
- Accurate positioning using WMS radio control
- Intelligent routing function



|                                  |                                                                 |
|----------------------------------|-----------------------------------------------------------------|
| Frequency                        | 50 Hz                                                           |
| Transmission frequency           | 2,4 GHz                                                         |
| Degree of protection             | IP 44                                                           |
| Motor construction type          | Tubular motor                                                   |
| Torque                           | 8 - 50 Nm                                                       |
| Speed                            | 17 U/min                                                        |
| Rated voltage                    | 230 V AC                                                        |
| Limit switch-off                 | Electronic                                                      |
| Motor operating type             | Radio                                                           |
| Nominal current                  | 0,45 - 1,4 A                                                    |
| Rated power consumption          | 100 - 315 W                                                     |
| Idle losses in standby           | Yes                                                             |
| Minimum runtime at 23 °C         | 4 min                                                           |
| Motor line                       | 500 mm                                                          |
| Plug-in connector                | STAS 3                                                          |
| Overheat protection              | Yes                                                             |
| Operating temperature            | -10 - 40 °C                                                     |
| Operating temperature, temporary | -20 - 80 °C                                                     |
| Motor lines                      | – H05RR-F 4 G 0.75 mm <sup>2</sup> bk, type WAREMA              |
| Test/programming cable           | – WAREMA Smart programming cable<br>– Test cable latch standard |
| Control systems                  | – Controllable with all WMS transmitters                        |

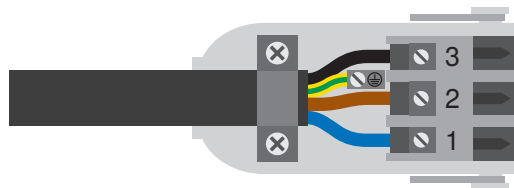
### Additional product information

#### Wiring diagram STAS/STAK 3



9990818

(STAS 3) plug connector – motor connection – left-hand motion



3 black  
2 brown  
1 blue  
⊕ green/yellow

9990824v1

Planning

Terrea

Perea

Patio  
side screens

Climara

Supplementary  
accessories

Components

Drive  
variants

Standards

## WMS-PM (WMS)

### Description:

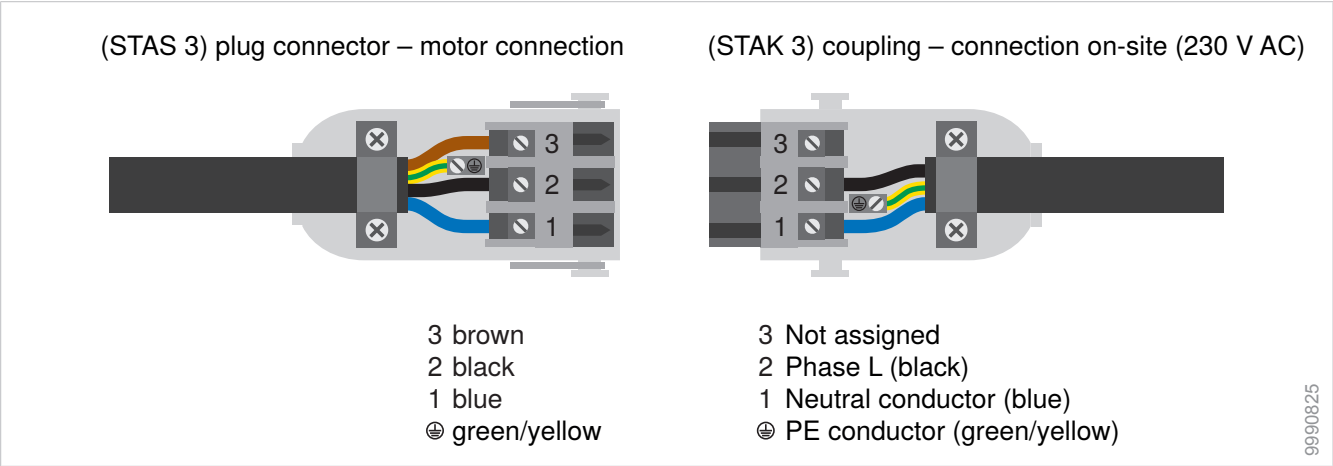
- Position switch-off bottom
- Upper torque overload protection
- Optimum box closure
- Fabric tension relief mechanism
- Fabric stretching adjustment
- Block detection (retracting)
- Block detection (extending)
- Comfort position (intermediate position)
- Responsive block detection
- Set motor limit positions with WMS Hand-held transmitter, WMS Central transmitter or WMS studio pro
- Bidirectional radio technology
- Position feedback via WMS radio control
- Accurate positioning using WMS radio control
- Intelligent routing function



|                                  |                                                                 |
|----------------------------------|-----------------------------------------------------------------|
| Frequency                        | 50 Hz                                                           |
| Transmission frequency           | 2,4 GHz                                                         |
| Degree of protection             | IP 44                                                           |
| Motor construction type          | Tubular motor                                                   |
| Torque                           | 12 - 50 Nm                                                      |
| Speed                            | 17 U/min                                                        |
| Rated voltage                    | 230 V AC                                                        |
| Limit switch-off                 | Electronic                                                      |
| Motor operating type             | Radio                                                           |
| Nominal current                  | 0,5 - 1,4 A                                                     |
| Rated power consumption          | 110 - 315 W                                                     |
| Idle losses in standby           | Yes                                                             |
| Minimum runtime at 23 °C         | 4 min                                                           |
| Motor line                       | 500 mm                                                          |
| Plug-in connector                | STAS 3                                                          |
| Overheat protection              | Yes                                                             |
| Operating temperature            | -10 - 40 °C                                                     |
| Operating temperature, temporary | -20 - 80 °C                                                     |
| Motor lines                      | - H05RR-F 4 G 0.75 mm <sup>2</sup> bk, type WAREMA              |
| Test/programming cable           | - WAREMA Smart programming cable<br>- Test cable latch standard |
| Control systems                  | - Controllable with all WMS transmitters                        |

# Additional product information

## Wiring diagram STAS/STAK 3



## WMS-WM (WMS)

### Description:

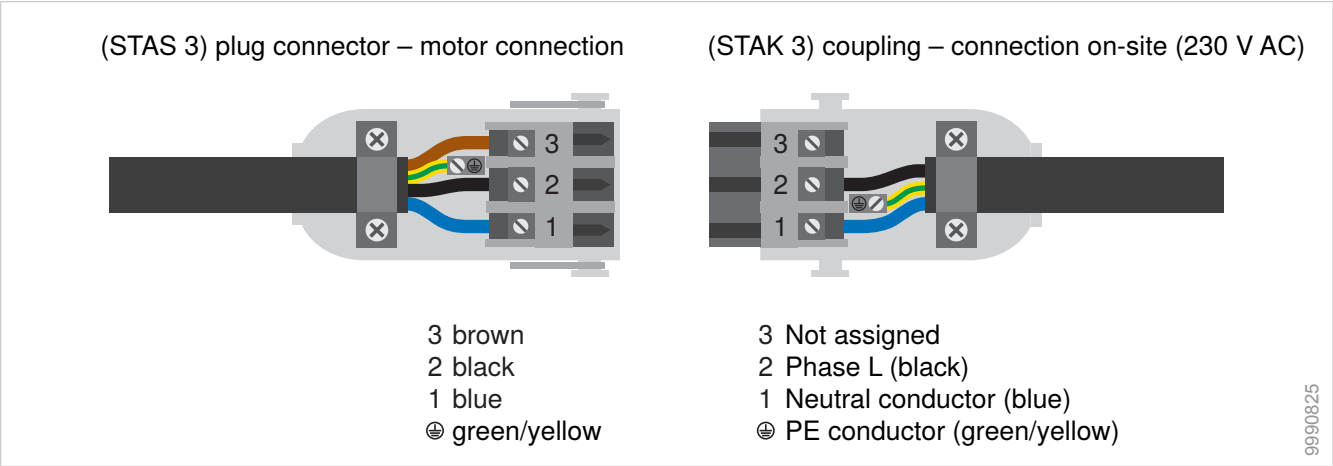
- Position switch-off bottom
- Upper torque overload protection
- Optimum box closure
- Fabric tension relief mechanism
- Fabric stretching adjustment
- Block detection (raising)
- Block detection (extending)
- Comfort position (intermediate position)
- Responsive block detection
- Set motor limit positions with WMS Hand-held transmitter, WMS Central transmitter or WMS studio pro
- Bidirectional radio technology
- Position feedback via WMS radio control
- Accurate positioning using WMS radio control
- Intelligent routing function

|                                  |                                                                 |
|----------------------------------|-----------------------------------------------------------------|
| Frequency                        | 50 Hz                                                           |
| Transmission frequency           | 2,4 GHz                                                         |
| Degree of protection             | IP 44                                                           |
| Motor construction type          | Tubular motor                                                   |
| Torque                           | 12 - 50 Nm                                                      |
| Speed                            | 17 U/min                                                        |
| Rated voltage                    | 230 V AC                                                        |
| Limit switch-off                 | Electronic                                                      |
| Motor operating type             | Radio                                                           |
| Nominal current                  | 0,5 - 1,4 A                                                     |
| Rated power consumption          | 110 - 315 W                                                     |
| Idle losses in standby           | Yes                                                             |
| Minimum runtime at 23 °C         | 4 min                                                           |
| Motor line                       | 500 mm                                                          |
| Plug-in connector                | STAS 3                                                          |
| Overheat protection              | Yes                                                             |
| Operating temperature            | -10 - 40 °C                                                     |
| Operating temperature, temporary | -20 - 80 °C                                                     |
| Motor lines                      | - H05RR-F 4 G 0.75 mm <sup>2</sup> bk, type WAREMA              |
| Test/programming cable           | - WAREMA Smart programming cable<br>- Test cable latch standard |
| Control systems                  | - Controllable with all WMS transmitters                        |



# Additional product information

## Wiring diagram STAS/STAK 3





## Additional product information

### Functions in detail

#### **Position switch-off (motor limit position)**

Drive stops precisely at an exactly adjustable position.

#### **Torque overload protection (motor limit position)**

Drive moves against a system stop. Switch-off torque optimally matches the sun shading product.

#### **Optimum box closure**

The cassette or cover panel is always closed correctly.

#### **Fabric tension relief mechanism**

Short, optically invisible extension movement after the torque overload protection activates in order to preserve the awning fabric.

#### **Fabric stretching adjustment**

For drives with torque overload protection in the upper limit position, an elongation of the awning fabric is compensated.

#### **Return pulse**

Short return pulse in the lower limit position for fabric tensioning.

#### **Block detection (raising)**

Drive stops in the event of blockages and thus protects the sun shading product from damage

#### **Automatic limit position detection**

Very easy commissioning by means of approaching the end stops in given order.

#### **Comfort position (intermediate position)**

Individually adjustable for EWFS and WMS radio motor.

#### **Drive with connection for additional crank operation**

The product can also be operated via a collapsible crank in the event of a power failure.

#### **Responsive block detection**

Drive reacts sensitively to blockages and thus ensures maximum protection of the sun shading product.

### Note on connecting lines

WAREMA only uses halogen-free lines which are resistant to UV rays, approved for permanent use outside and correspond to the standard requirements.

For convenient on-site connection, WAREMA delivers the matching plug-in connector for on-site wiring, which, if necessary, easily facilitates an all-pole disconnection from the power supply system.

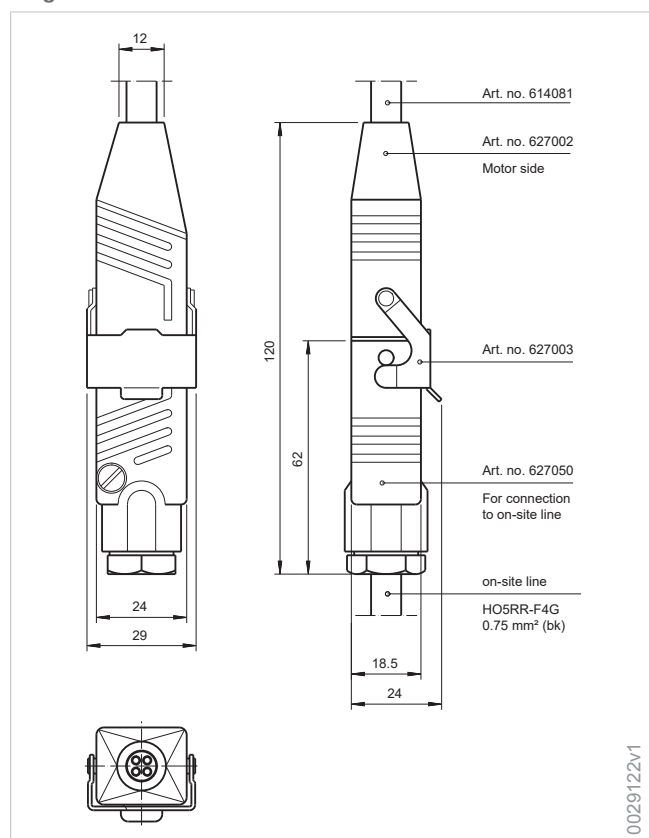
As an additional service, preassembled cable whips, line extensions and rolled products can be ordered from WAREMA in standard dimensions. Special lengths possible on request.

#### **Connecting the plug-in connection - Attention!**

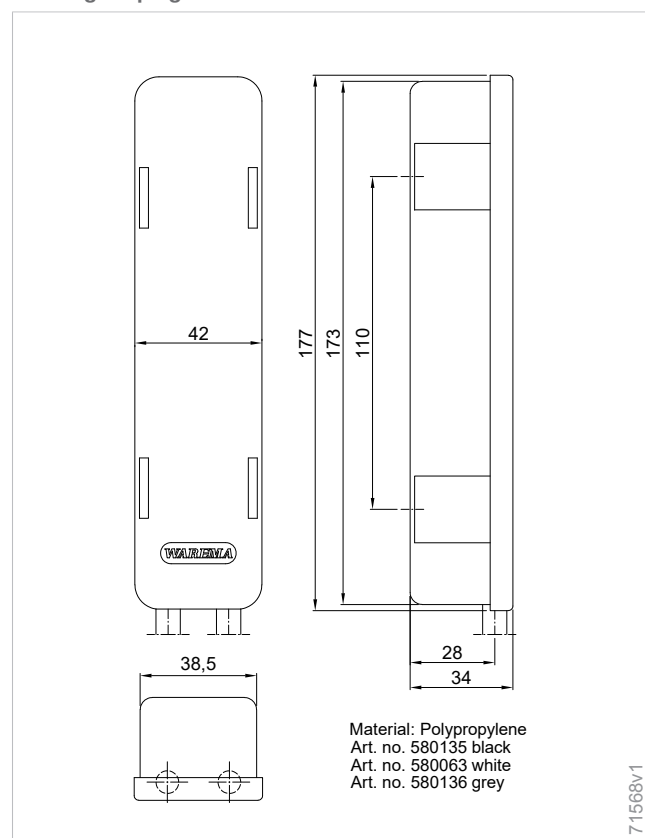
Follow the wiring diagram closely to avoid damaging the motor. WAREMA will not accept liability for damage due to improper installation.

# Plug-in connector/plug receiver

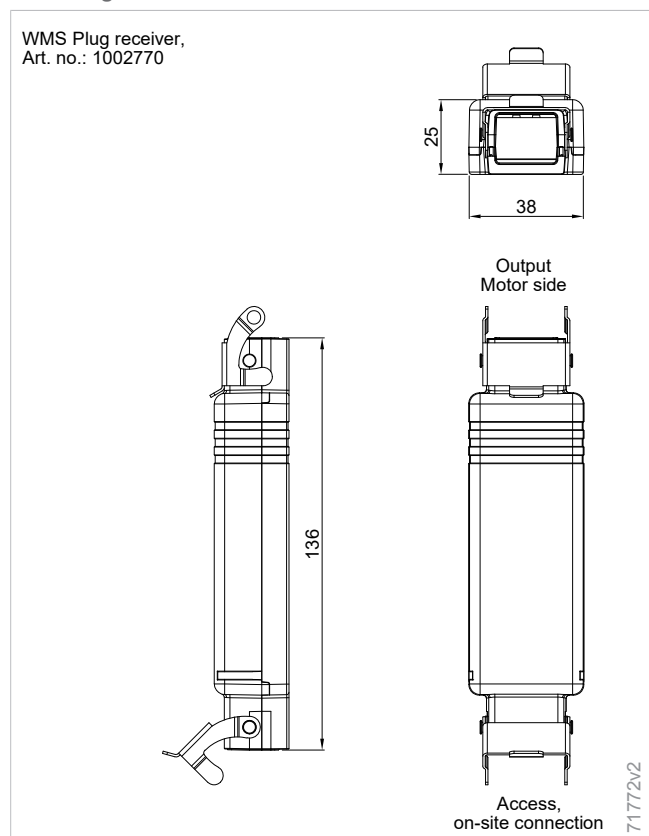
## Plug-in connector



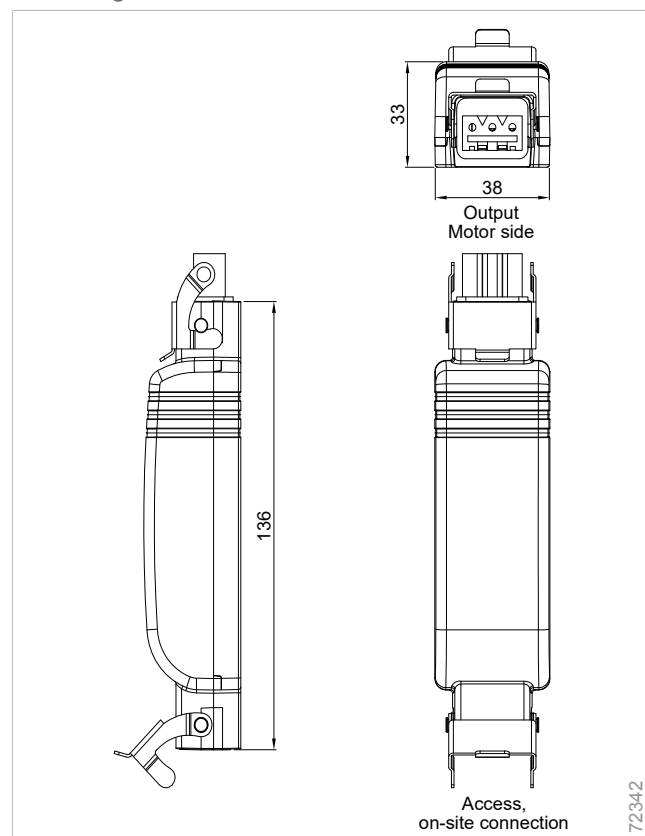
## Housing for plug-in connector



## WMS Plug receiver

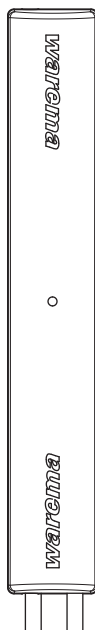
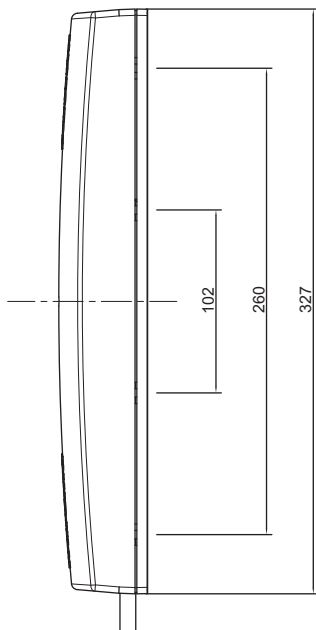
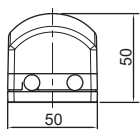


## EWFS Plug receiver



# Housing for WMS/EWFS wireless plug receiver

Material: Polypropylene  
 Art. no.: 317745 white  
 Art. no.: 317748 grey  
 Art. no.: 317751 black



ansichten\_montagegehaeuse\_2v1





## Drive variants

### Manual operation

#### Independent

A crank drive is ideally suited for retrofitting awnings. With crank operation, no power supply is required.

#### Material-friendly operation

The even crank drive power transmission makes for material-friendly and smooth running during operation.

#### Various technical models

Various transmission types can be used depending on the selected sun shading product.



# Crank

## Crank gear

Bevel gear with free wheel at the lower limit point

|             |       |
|-------------|-------|
| Translation | 4,4:1 |
|-------------|-------|

Bevel gear with integrated limit stop 3:1

|             |     |
|-------------|-----|
| Translation | 3:1 |
|-------------|-----|

Bevel gear with integrated limit stop 5.33:1

|             |        |
|-------------|--------|
| Translation | 5,33:1 |
|-------------|--------|

Screw gear with limit stop

|             |     |
|-------------|-----|
| Translation | 7:1 |
|-------------|-----|

Screw gear with spindle lock

|             |       |
|-------------|-------|
| Translation | 3,5:1 |
|-------------|-------|

Screw gear without limit stop

|             |     |
|-------------|-----|
| Translation | 9:1 |
|-------------|-----|

Spindle drive

|             |     |
|-------------|-----|
| Translation | 1:4 |
|-------------|-----|

Angle gear

|             |     |
|-------------|-----|
| Translation | 4:1 |
|-------------|-----|

Attached laterally

## Crank with ball hook

Crank with ball hook

|          |                  |
|----------|------------------|
| Material | Galvanised steel |
|----------|------------------|

|                 |       |
|-----------------|-------|
| Material colour | Plain |
|-----------------|-------|

|                 |                                   |
|-----------------|-----------------------------------|
| Material, notes | Plastic operating elements, black |
|-----------------|-----------------------------------|

|                   |                                                                                                          |
|-------------------|----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| Dimensions, notes | Crank lengths:<br>– 800 mm<br>– 1000 mm<br>– 1200 mm<br>– 1400 mm<br>– 1600 mm<br>– 1800 mm<br>– 2000 mm |
|-------------------|----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|

# Manual operation for patio side screen 390

Manual extraction of front rail.

The handle is hung in the handle bracket and locked.

The operating force increases when extending.

## Further information

TechDataPLUS Drive variants for patio awnings  
<https://docs.warema.com/1.1450.1>



# Contents

## Standards

|                                                      |     |                           |
|------------------------------------------------------|-----|---------------------------|
| Intended use.....                                    | 404 | Planning                  |
| Rain class.....                                      | 404 |                           |
| Wind resistance of retracted unit.....               | 405 |                           |
| Wind resistance of extended unit, patio awnings..... | 405 |                           |
| Wind forces.....                                     | 406 |                           |
| Allocation of wind resistance class.....             | 406 | Terrea                    |
| General information.....                             | 407 |                           |
| DIN ISO 9001.....                                    | 407 |                           |
| CE mark.....                                         | 407 |                           |
| DIN EN 14201.....                                    | 407 |                           |
| 230 V lines.....                                     | 407 |                           |
| Corrosion.....                                       | 407 | Perea                     |
| Sound insulation in building construction.....       | 407 |                           |
| Note on drawing contents.....                        | 408 |                           |
|                                                      |     | Patio side screens        |
|                                                      |     | Climara                   |
|                                                      |     | Supplementary accessories |
|                                                      |     | Components                |
|                                                      |     | Drive variants            |



## Intended use

An awning is intended to be used as a sun shading system, not as rain protection. But nevertheless, due to its water-repellent impregnation, light rain will not cause the awning and the awning fabric to lose their shape. If an awning fabric has been retracted when wet, the awning must be extended again as soon as possible for drying. We must point out that moisture can increase wrinkling when winding the unit in. To prevent the fabric from getting wet, we recommend automatic control according to sun, wind, rain and time of day, using a WAREMA control unit.

Important information!

Your awning is a sun shading product and must, to ensure its intended use, be retracted in time before any of the following conditions occur:

- wind above the maximum permitted wind speed limit
- rain
- snowfall
- storm fronts and bad weather fronts (gusts)
- In the case of moisture or cold weather, the awning fabric may become stiff due to icy conditions – the motor safety switch may be triggered and may prevent retraction or extending for a short time.
- When the cover panel or the guide rail is iced over, the awning must not be operated. The awning first has to be de-iced in order to make it operable.

To avoid damaging fabric and frame we recommend using a WAREMA control unit designed for use with awnings.

Please see our documentation on control systems.

## Rain class

Almost all articulated arm, cassette and pergola awnings achieve rain class 2 in accordance with DIN EN 13561. The respective minimum inclination angles are included in the description of the different types. The rain class is achieved only in the completely extended condition. In the intermediate position, water drainage is not guaranteed and the awning can become damaged. If the inclination is too small, the awning must not be extended in rain, as water bulges can form in the awning fabric. This can damage the awning and endanger people.

## Wind resistance of retracted unit

All WAREMA products intended for outdoor use are designed for a wind load of 1.1 kN/m<sup>2</sup>. The directive entitled "Wind loads for construction of closures and awnings when retracted" (published by the Industrieverband Technische Textilien - Rollladen - Sonnenschutz e.V. - ITRS and the Bundesverband Rollladen + Sonnenschutz e. V.) defines the positions at which these products can be installed without requiring special precautions!

## Wind resistance of extended unit, patio awnings

WAREMA awnings conform to DIN EN 13561 and achieve different wind resistance classes:

The awnings meet the requirements of the specified wind resistance classes in accordance with DIN EN 13561 only if

- the awning is installed with the type and number of consoles recommended by WAREMA, and
- the information from the screw anchor manufacturer was observed when installing the awning, and
- the articulated arm and cassette awning is installed taking into account the screw anchor pull-out force as specified by WAREMA.

An examination of the substructure to check for the required load-bearing capacity must be performed by the fitter/specialist dealer.

Please note that the consoles and fixing material must always correspond to the respective substructure, awning type and size, and the selected wind resistance class. If in doubt, please consult our Applied Engineering department or your screw anchor supplier.

The console positions and pull-out forces indicated in this document relate to the concrete substructure C20/25 (B25) and installation on wood/rafters. You can find information on other substructures at [konsolenplaner.warema.de](http://konsolenplaner.warema.de). The wind resistance classes may vary for different mounting substructures, types of installation and sizes. Note in particular the rafter installation with the wood substructure: wind resistance class 1 or 0.

|                                             | Wind resistance class<br>according to DIN EN 13561 |
|---------------------------------------------|----------------------------------------------------|
| Articulated arm and cassette awnings Terrea | 2                                                  |
| Pergola awnings Perea                       | 3                                                  |
| Conservatory awnings Climara D3, W7, W19    | 2                                                  |
| Conservatory awnings Climara W20            | 3                                                  |
| Patio side screens                          | 2                                                  |

For the pergola awning Perea P70, use up to Beaufort number 7 is permitted.

## Wind forces

| Beaufort level | Designation                    | Average wind speed m/s | Average wind speed km/h | Back pressure q (average value) in N/m <sup>2</sup> | Examples of the effects of inland wind                                                           |
|----------------|--------------------------------|------------------------|-------------------------|-----------------------------------------------------|--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| 0              | Calm                           | 0–0.2                  | <1                      | 0                                                   | Smoke rises vertically                                                                           |
| 1              | Light air                      | 0.3–1.4                | 1–5                     | 0.6                                                 | Smoke drift indicates wind direction                                                             |
| 2              | Light breeze                   | 1.5–3.4                | 6–12                    | 6                                                   | Wind felt on exposed skin, leaves rustle, vanes begin to move                                    |
| 3              | Light breeze, light wind       | 3.5–5.4                | 13–19                   | 16                                                  | Leaves and small twigs constantly moving, light flags extended                                   |
| 4              | Moderate breeze, moderate wind | 5.5–7.4                | 20–27                   | 30                                                  | Dust and loose paper raised, small branches begin to move                                        |
| 5              | Fresh breeze fresh wind        | 7.5–10.4               | 28–37                   | 60                                                  | Small trees in leaf begin to sway, white horses begin to form on lakes                           |
| 6              | Strong wind                    | 10.5–13.4              | 38–48                   | 110                                                 | Large branches in motion, umbrella use becomes difficult, whistling heard in overhead wires      |
| 7              | High wind                      | 13.5–17.4              | 49–62                   | 160                                                 | Whole trees in motion, effort needed to walk against the wind                                    |
| 8              | Gale                           | 17.5–20.4              | 63–73                   | 230                                                 | Some twigs broken from trees, progress on foot is seriously impeded                              |
| 9              | Strong gale                    | 20.5–24.4              | 74–87                   | 330                                                 | Some branches break off trees, minor damage to buildings (roof tiles or smoke covers lifted off) |
| 10             | Storm                          | 24.5–28.4              | 88–102                  | 460                                                 | Wind breaks trees, extensive damage to buildings                                                 |
| 11             | Violent storm                  | 28.5–32.4              | 103–117                 | 600                                                 | Wind uproots trees, wide-spread storm damage                                                     |
| 12             | Hurricane-force                | From 32.5              | From 118                | 770                                                 | Serious devastation                                                                              |

## Allocation of wind resistance class

| Wind resistance class according to DIN EN 13561 | Beaufort level |
|-------------------------------------------------|----------------|
| 0                                               | 0-3            |
| 1                                               | 4              |
| 2                                               | 5              |
| 3                                               | 6              |

## General information

### DIN ISO 9001

The certification according to ISO 9001 is an award that emphasises the high quality level of WAREMA sun shading technology. The requirement covers the entire manufacturing process from design and development to production and through to installation and service.

### CE mark

Motorised external and internal sun shading systems are governed by Machinery Directive 2006/42/EC. An EC Declaration of Conformity is available for these products. External sun shading systems, regardless of the type of drive, are governed by the Construction Products Regulation 305/2011/EC. Declarations of performance are available for these products for the mandated property: wind resistance when extended.

All products governed by the Machinery Directive and/or the Construction Products Regulation are provided with a CE-mark.

Manually operated internal sun shading systems are not governed by either of these two directives or regulations and must not, therefore, be provided with a CE-mark. External or internal sun shading systems conform to the relevant standard, which sets out the details therein:

DIN EN 13659, DIN EN 13561 or DIN EN 13120.

Exceptions - the following products are not provided with a CE-mark: sun sails, patio side screens, insect screens - these products are either not mentioned in the harmonised standards or no testing procedure is defined.

### DIN EN 14201

All WAREMA products are designed to be especially durable. All WAREMA products fulfil durability classes 2 or 3 as standard, tested according to DIN EN 14201.

### 230 V lines

All 230 V lines fulfil Euro class Fca. Special lines are to be requested if necessary.

### Corrosion

WAREMA products achieve the corrosion classes described in the relevant standard. However, under extreme conditions (e.g. close to the coast), some corrosion of exposed stainless steel, chrome-plated or zinc-coated components may occur.

### Sound insulation in building construction

Currently, no recognised testing method for power-operated closures/awnings exists to determine the emissions in accordance with "DIN 4109-1:2018 Sound insulation in building construction". Because of this, it is not possible to provide the planner with concrete values for the respective sun shading system that they can use to determine the occurring immission in the room requiring insulation in advance with a transfer function.

ITRS e. V. shall provide a leaflet for sun shading in combination with sound insulation in building construction as support up until a recognised testing procedure exists.

This leaflet can be found at:

[https://ivrsa.de/technische\\_unterlagen/](https://ivrsa.de/technische_unterlagen/)



## Note on drawing contents

The greyed-out sections of the illustration represent interfaces to general trades which, on the whole, must be planned and performed independently and on-site. WAREMA does not provide services for the greyed-out interfaces and assumes no liability for them.



# Customer Center

## External venetian blinds

Tel. +49 9391 20-3140 • Fax -3149  
raffstoren.international@warema.de

## Roller shutters

Tel. +49 9391 20-3240 • Fax -3249  
rollladen.international@warema.de

## Black-out blinds

Tel. +49 9391 20-3240 • Fax -3249  
verdunkelungen.international@warema.de

## Awnings

Tel. +49 9391 20-3440, -3340  
Fax +49 9391 20-3349  
markisen.international@warema.de

## Internal sun shading systems

### Quotations:

Tel. +49 9391 20-3540 • Fax -3549  
rollladen.international@warema.de

### Order processing/applied engineering:

Tel. +49 3722 710-3540 • Fax -3549  
rollladen.international@warema.de

## Smart Building Solutions

Tel. +49 9391 20-3740 • Fax -3749  
steuerungssysteme.international@warema.de

## Maintenance

Tel. +49 9391 20-1901 • Fax -9339  
service@warema.de

## WAREMA Renkhoff SE

Hans-Wilhelm-Renkhoff-Straße 2  
97828 Marktheidenfeld • Germany  
Postfach 1355 • 97822 Marktheidenfeld  
Tel. +49 9391 20-0 • Fax -4299  
info@warema.de • www.warema.de

## WAREMA International GmbH

Dillberg 14  
97828 Marktheidenfeld • Germany  
Postfach 1355 • 97822 Marktheidenfeld  
Tel. +49 9391 20-0 • Fax -3899  
info@warema.com • www.warema.com

## WAREMA Austria GmbH

Zaunweg 6  
5071 Wals bei Salzburg • Austria  
Tel. +43 662 853015-0 • Fax -99  
info@warema.at • www.warema.at

## WAREMA France SARL

96, Avenue du Général de Gaulle  
92250 La Garenne Colombes • France  
Tel. +33 1 556609-40 • Fax -49  
info@warema.fr • www.warema.fr

## WAREMA Nederland B.V.

Oude Graaf 8  
6002 NL Weert • Netherlands  
Tel. +31 495 530205  
Fax +31 495 524526  
info@warema.nl • www.warema.nl

## WAREMA Schweiz GmbH

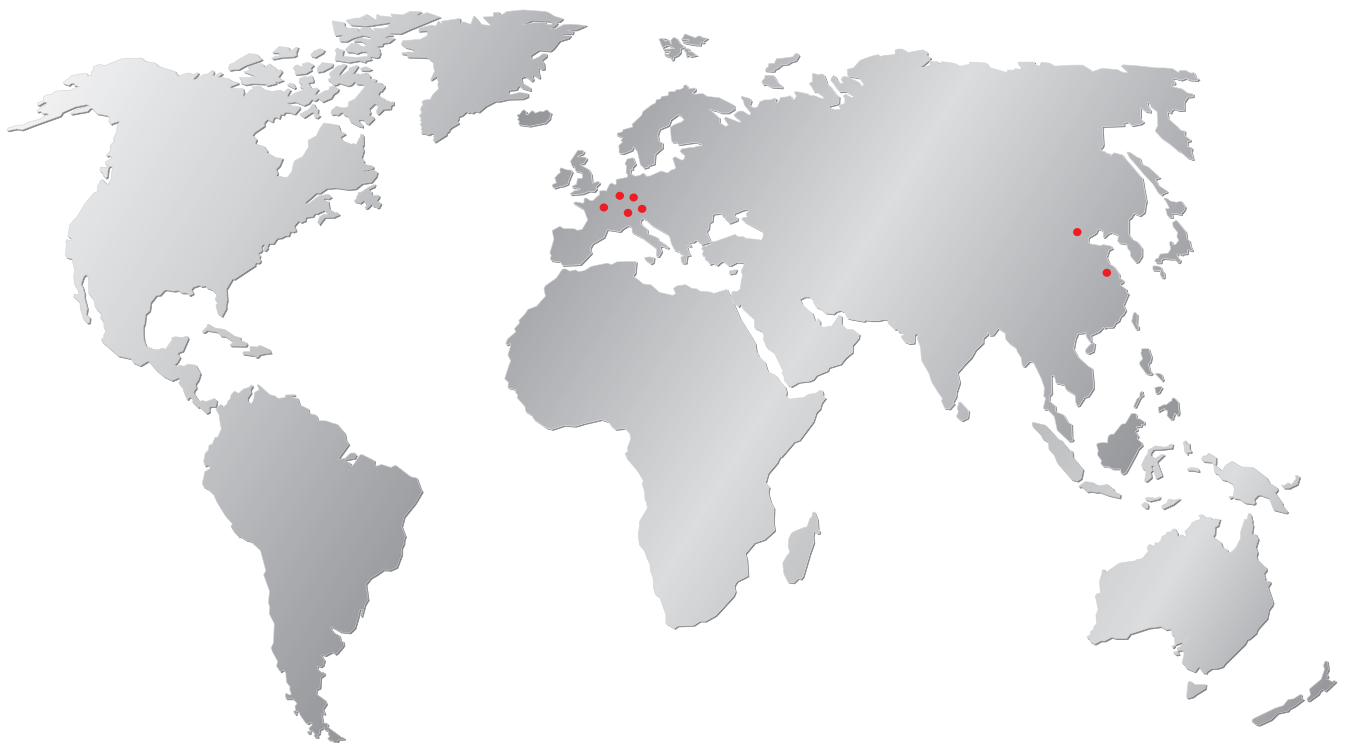
Staldenhof 1a  
6014 Luzern • Switzerland  
Tel. +41 41 25912-20 • Fax -49  
info@warema.ch • www.warema.ch

## WAREMA Sun Shading Systems (Shanghai) Co., Ltd.

Bldg. 1, No. 123, Jiu Ye Road  
Shanghai Qingpu Industrial Zone  
201799 Shanghai • P.R. China  
Tel. +86 21 59869-288 • Fax -145  
info@warema.cn • www.warema.cn

### Beijing Office:

Room 803, Building 11 • Jianwai SOHO  
39 East 3rd-Ring Road  
Chao Yang District  
100022 Beijing • P.R. China  
Tel. +86 10 586942-30 • Fax -23  
info@warema.cn • www.warema.cn







04/2020

**WAREMA International GmbH** • Dillberg 14 • 97828 Marktheidenfeld • Germany  
[www.warema.com](http://www.warema.com) • [info@warema.com](mailto:info@warema.com)

2031467/04.2020\_enINT